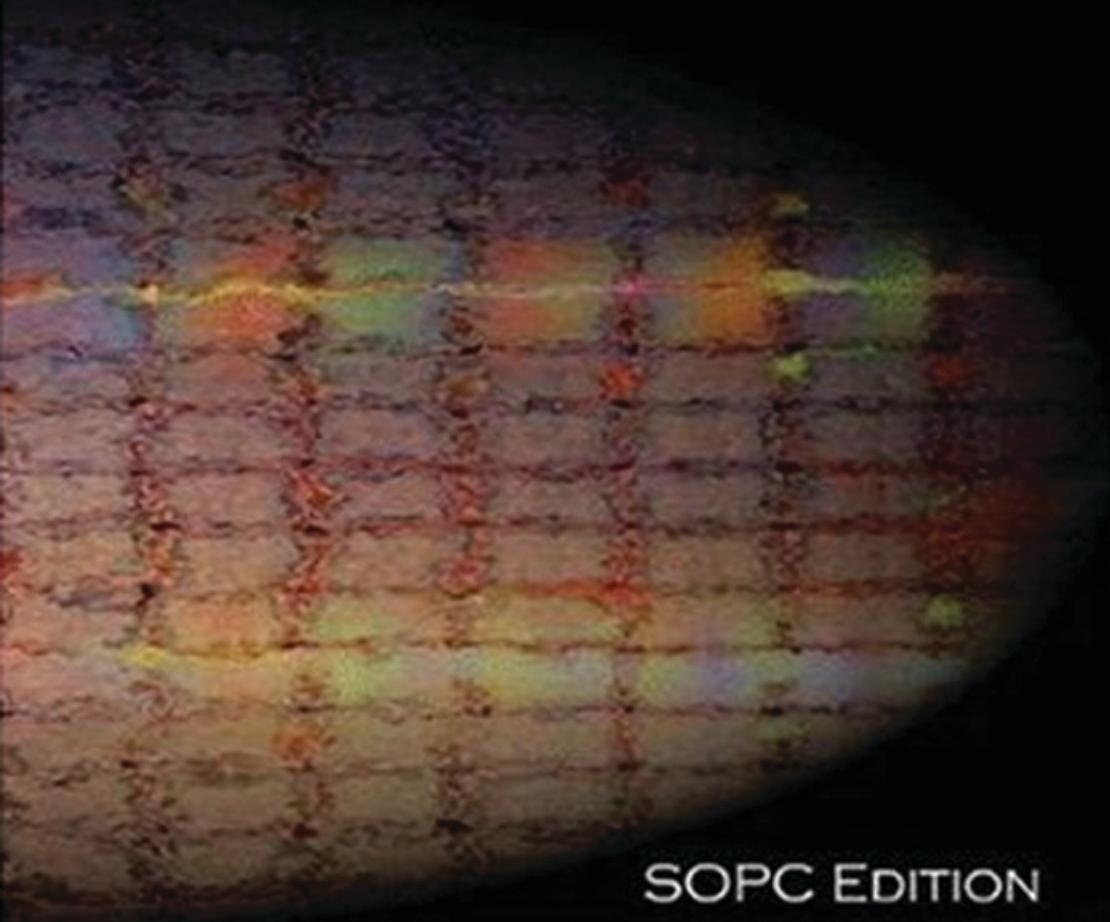


RAPID PROTOTYPING OF DIGITAL SYSTEMS



SOPC EDITION

BY J. O. HAMBLEN, T. S. HALL, AND M. D. FURMAN

RAPID PROTOTYPING OF DIGITAL SYSTEMS SOPC EDITION

RAPID PROTOTYPING OF DIGITAL SYSTEMS

SOPC EDITION

JAMES O. HAMBLEN

SCHOOL OF ELECTRICAL AND COMPUTER ENGINEERING

GEORGIA INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY

TYSON S. HALL

SCHOOL OF COMPUTING

SOUTHERN ADVENTIST UNIVERSITY

MICHAEL D. FURMAN

DEPARTMENT OF ENGINEERING

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY



Springer

James O. Hamblen
Georgia Institute of Technology
Atlanta, GA

Tyson S. Hall
Southern Adventist University
Collegedale, TN

Michael D. Furman
University of Florida
Gainesville, FL

Library of Congress Control Number: 2007934543

ISBN 978-0-387-72670-0 e-ISBN 978-0-387-72671-7

Printed on acid-free paper.

© 2008 Springer Science+Business Media, LLC

All rights reserved. This work may not be translated or copied in whole or in part without the written permission of the publisher (Springer Science+Business Media, LLC, 233 Spring Street, New York, NY 10013, USA), except for brief excerpts in connection with reviews or scholarly analysis. Use in connection with any form of information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed is forbidden. The use in this publication of trade names, trademarks, service marks and similar terms, even if they are not identified as such, is not to be taken as an expression of opinion as to whether or not they are subject to proprietary rights.

The author and publisher of this book have used their best efforts in preparing this book. These efforts include the development, research, and testing of the theories and programs to determine their effectiveness. The author and publisher make no warranty of any kind, expressed or implied, with regard to these programs or the documentation contained in this book. The author and publisher shall not be liable in any event for incidental or consequential damages in connection with, or arising out of, the furnishing, performance, or use of these programs

Springer Science+Business Media, LLC or the author(s) make no warranty or representation, either express or implied, with respect to this DVD or book, including their quality, merchantability, or fitness for a particular purpose. In no event will Springer Science+Business Media, LLC or the author(s) be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages arising out of the use or inability to use the disc or book, even if Springer Science+Business Media, LLC or the author(s) has been advised of the possibility of such damages.

Cover artwork based on FPGA image courtesy of Altera. Chip Images ©1995-2004 courtesy of Michael Davidson, Florida State University, <http://micro.magnet.fsu.edu/chipshots>. Altera, Byteblaster®, Cyclone, MAX, APEX, ACEX and QUARTUS are registered trademarks of Altera Corporation. XC4000 and Virtex are registered trademarks of Xilinx, Inc. MIPS is a registered trademark of MIPS Technologies, Inc. Plexiglas is a registered trademark of Rohn and Hass Company. This publication includes images from Corel Draw which are protected by the copyright laws of the U.S., Canada and elsewhere. Used under license.

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

springer.com

RAPID PROTOTYPING OF DIGITAL SYSTEMS

SOPC EDITION

Table of Contents

1	<i>Tutorial I: The 15 Minute Design</i>	2
1.1	Design Entry using the Graphic Editor	9
1.2	Compiling the Design	16
1.3	Simulation of the Design	17
1.4	Testing Your Design on an FPGA Board	18
1.5	Downloading Your Design to the DE1 Board	19
1.6	Downloading Your Design to the DE2 Board	22
1.7	Downloading Your Design to the UP3 Board	25
1.8	Downloading Your Design to the UP2 or UP1 Board	27
1.9	The 10 Minute VHDL Entry Tutorial	29
1.10	Compiling the VHDL Design	32
1.11	The 10 Minute Verilog Entry Tutorial	34
1.12	Compiling the Verilog Design	36
1.13	Timing Analysis	38
1.14	The Floorplan Editor	39
1.15	Symbols and Hierarchy	40
1.16	Functional Simulation	41
1.17	Laboratory Exercises	42
2	<i>FPGA Development Board Hardware and I/O Features</i>	46
2.1	FPGA and External Hardware Features	47
2.2	The FPGA Board's Memory Features	48
2.3	The FPGA Board's I/O Features	49
2.4	Obtaining an FPGA Development Board and Cables	53
3	<i>Programmable Logic Technology</i>	56
3.1	CPLDs and FPGAs	59
3.2	Altera MAX 7000S Architecture – A Product Term CPLD Device	60

3.3	Altera Cyclone Architecture – A Look-Up Table FPGA Device	62
3.4	Xilinx 4000 Architecture – A Look-Up Table FPGA Device	65
3.5	Computer Aided Design Tools for Programmable Logic	67
3.6	Next Generation FPGA CAD tools	68
3.7	Applications of FPGAs	69
3.8	Features of New Generation FPGAs	69
3.9	For additional information	70
3.10	Laboratory Exercises	71
4	Tutorial II: Sequential Design and Hierarchy	74
4.1	Install the Tutorial Files and FPGAcore Library for your board	74
4.2	Open the tutor2 Schematic	75
4.3	Browse the Hierarchy	76
4.4	Using Buses in a Schematic	78
4.5	Testing the Pushbutton Counter and Displays	79
4.6	Testing the Initial Design on the Board	80
4.7	Fixing the Switch Contact Bounce Problem	81
4.8	Testing the Modified Design on the FPGA Board	82
4.9	Laboratory Exercises	83
5	FPGAcore Library Functions	88
5.1	FPGAcore LCD_Display: LCD Panel Character Display	90
5.2	FPGAcore DEC_7SEG: Hex to Seven-segment Decoder	92
5.3	FPGAcore Debounce: Pushbutton Debounce	94
5.4	FPGAcore OnePulse: Pushbutton Single Pulse	95
5.5	FPGAcore Clk_Div: Clock Divider	96
5.6	FPGAcore VGA_Sync: VGA Video Sync Generation	97
5.7	FPGAcore Char_ROM: Character Generation ROM	99
5.8	FPGAcore Keyboard: Read Keyboard Scan Code	100
5.9	FPGAcore Mouse: Mouse Cursor	102
5.10	For additional information	103
6	Using VHDL for Synthesis of Digital Hardware	106
6.1	VHDL Data Types	106
6.2	VHDL Operators	107
6.3	VHDL Based Synthesis of Digital Hardware	108
6.4	VHDL Synthesis Models of Gate Networks	108

6.5	VHDL Synthesis Model of a Seven-segment LED Decoder	109
6.6	VHDL Synthesis Model of a Multiplexer	111
6.7	VHDL Synthesis Model of Tri-State Output	112
6.8	VHDL Synthesis Models of Flip-flops and Registers	112
6.9	Accidental Synthesis of Inferred Latches	114
6.10	VHDL Synthesis Model of a Counter	114
6.11	VHDL Synthesis Model of a State Machine	115
6.12	VHDL Synthesis Model of an ALU with an Adder/Subtractor and a Shifter	117
6.13	VHDL Synthesis of Multiply and Divide Hardware	118
6.14	VHDL Synthesis Models for Memory	119
6.15	Hierarchy in VHDL Synthesis Models	123
6.16	Using a Testbench for Verification	125
6.17	For additional information	126
6.18	Laboratory Exercises	126
7	<i>Using Verilog for Synthesis of Digital Hardware</i>	130
7.1	Verilog Data Types	130
7.2	Verilog Based Synthesis of Digital Hardware	130
7.3	Verilog Operators	131
7.4	Verilog Synthesis Models of Gate Networks	132
7.5	Verilog Synthesis Model of a Seven-segment LED Decoder	132
7.6	Verilog Synthesis Model of a Multiplexer	133
7.7	Verilog Synthesis Model of Tri-State Output	134
7.8	Verilog Synthesis Models of Flip-flops and Registers	135
7.9	Accidental Synthesis of Inferred Latches	136
7.10	Verilog Synthesis Model of a Counter	136
7.11	Verilog Synthesis Model of a State Machine	137
7.12	Verilog Synthesis Model of an ALU with an Adder/Subtractor and a Shifter	138
7.13	Verilog Synthesis of Multiply and Divide Hardware	139
7.14	Verilog Synthesis Models for Memory	140
7.15	Hierarchy in Verilog Synthesis Models	143
7.16	For additional information	144
7.17	Laboratory Exercises	144
8	<i>State Machine Design: The Electric Train Controller</i>	148
8.1	The Train Control Problem	148

8.2	Train Direction Outputs (DA1-DA0, and DB1-DB0)	149
8.3	Switch Direction Outputs (SW1, SW2, and SW3)	150
8.4	Train Sensor Input Signals (S1, S2, S3, S4, and S5)	150
8.5	An Example Controller Design	151
8.6	VHDL Based Example Controller Design	154
8.7	Verilog Based Example Controller Design	157
8.8	Automatically Generating a State Diagram of a Design	160
8.9	Simulation Vector file for State Machine Simulation	161
8.10	Running the Train Control Simulation	162
8.11	Running the Video Train System (After Successful Simulation)	162
8.12	A Hardware Implementation of the Train System Layout	164
8.13	Laboratory Exercises	166
9	<i>A Simple Computer Design: The µP 3</i>	170
9.1	Computer Programs and Instructions	171
9.2	The Processor Fetch, Decode and Execute Cycle	172
9.3	VHDL Model of the µP 3	179
9.4	Verilog Model of the µP 3	182
9.5	Automatically Generating a State Diagram of the µP3	186
9.6	Simulation of the µP3 Computer	187
9.7	Laboratory Exercises	188
10	<i>VGA Video Display Generation using FPGAs</i>	192
10.1	Video Display Technology	192
10.2	Video Refresh	192
10.3	Using an FPGA for VGA Video Signal Generation	195
10.4	A VHDL Sync Generation Example: FPGACore VGA_SYNC	196
10.5	Final Output Register for Video Signals	198
10.6	Required Pin Assignments for Video Output	198
10.7	Video Examples	199
10.8	A Character Based Video Design	200
10.9	Character Selection and Fonts	200
10.10	VHDL Character Display Design Examples	203
10.11	A Graphics Memory Design Example	206
10.12	Video Data Compression	207
10.13	Video Color Mixing using Dithering	207

10.14 VHDL Graphics Display Design Example	208
10.15 Higher Video Resolution and Faster Refresh Rates	209
10.16 Laboratory Exercises	210
11 Interfacing to the PS/2 Keyboard and Mouse	214
11.1 PS/2 Port Connections	214
11.2 Keyboard Scan Codes	215
11.3 Make and Break Codes	215
11.4 The PS/2 Serial Data Transmission Protocol	216
11.5 Scan Code Set 2 for the PS/2 Keyboard	218
11.6 The Keyboard FPGACore	220
11.7 A Design Example Using the Keyboard FPGACore	223
11.8 Interfacing to the PS/2 Mouse	224
11.9 The Mouse FPGACore	226
11.10 Mouse Initialization	226
11.11 Mouse Data Packet Processing	227
11.12 An Example Design Using the Mouse FPGACore	228
11.13 For Additional Information	229
11.14 Laboratory Exercises	229
12 Legacy Digital I/O Interfacing Standards	232
12.1 Parallel I/O Interface	232
12.2 RS-232C Serial I/O Interface	233
12.3 SPI Bus Interface	235
12.4 I ² C Bus Interface	237
12.5 For Additional Information	239
12.6 Laboratory Exercises	239
13 FPGA Robotics Projects	242
13.1 The FPGA-bot Design	242
13.2 FPGA-bot Servo Drive Motors	242
13.3 Modifying the Servos to make Drive Motors	243
13.4 VHDL Servo Driver Code for the FPGA-bot	244
13.5 Low-cost Sensors for an FPGA Robot Project	246
13.6 Assembly of the FPGA-bot Body	259
13.7 I/O Connections to the board's Expansion Headers	266
13.8 Robot Projects Based on R/C Toys, Models, and Robot Kits	267

13.9	For Additional Information	275
13.10	Laboratory Exercises	277
14	A RISC Design: Synthesis of the MIPS Processor Core	284
14.1	The MIPS Instruction Set and Processor	284
14.2	Using VHDL to Synthesize the MIPS Processor Core	287
14.3	The Top-Level Module	288
14.4	The Control Unit	291
14.5	The Instruction Fetch Stage	293
14.6	The Decode Stage	296
14.7	The Execute Stage	298
14.8	The Data Memory Stage	300
14.9	Simulation of the MIPS Design	301
14.10	MIPS Hardware Implementation on the FPGA Board	302
14.11	For Additional Information	303
14.12	Laboratory Exercises	304
15	Introducing System-on-a-Programmable-Chip	310
15.1	Processor Cores	310
15.2	SOPC Design Flow	311
15.3	Initializing Memory	313
15.4	SOPC Design versus Traditional Design Modalities	315
15.5	An Example SOPC Design	316
15.6	Hardware/Software Design Alternatives	317
15.7	For additional information	317
15.8	Laboratory Exercises	318
16	Tutorial III: Nios II Processor Software Development	322
16.1	Install the DE board files	322
16.2	Starting a Nios II Software Project	322
16.3	The Nios II IDE Software	324
16.4	Generating the Nios II System Library	325
16.5	Software Design with Nios II Peripherals	326
16.6	Starting Software Design – main()	329
16.7	Downloading the Nios II Hardware and Software Projects	330
16.8	Executing the Software	331
16.9	Starting Software Design for a Peripheral Test Program	331

16.10 Handling Interrupts	334
16.11 Accessing Parallel I/O Peripherals	335
16.12 Communicating with the LCD Display (<i>DE2 only</i>)	336
16.13 Testing SRAM	339
16.14 Testing Flash Memory	340
16.15 Testing SDRAM	341
16.16 Downloading the Nios II Hardware and Software Projects	346
16.17 Executing the Software	347
16.18 For additional information	347
16.19 Laboratory Exercises	348
17 Tutorial IV: Nios II Processor Hardware Design	352
17.1 Install the DE board files	352
17.2 Creating a New Project	352
17.3 Starting SOPC Builder	353
17.4 Adding a Nios II Processor	355
17.5 Adding UART Peripherals	358
17.6 Adding an Interval Timer Peripheral	359
17.7 Adding Parallel I/O Components	360
17.8 Adding an SRAM Memory Controller	361
17.9 Adding an SDRAM Memory Controller	362
17.10 Adding the LCD Module (<i>DE2 Board Only</i>)	362
17.11 Adding an External Bus	363
17.12 Adding Components to the External Bus	364
17.13 Global Processor Settings	364
17.14 Finalizing the Nios II Processor	365
17.15 Add the Processor Symbol to the Top-Level Schematic	366
17.16 Create a Phase-Locked Loop Component	367
17.17 Complete the Top-Level Schematic	368
17.18 Design Compilation	368
17.19 Testing the Nios II Project	369
17.20 For additional information	370
17.21 Laboratory Exercises	370
18 Operating System Support for SOPC Design	374
18.1 Nios II OS Support	376

18.2 eCos	377
18.3 µC/OS-II	378
18.4 µClinix	379
18.5 Implementing the µClinix on the DE Board	380
18.6 Hardware Design for µClinix Support	380
18.7 Configuring the DE Board	382
18.8 Exploring µClinix on the DE Board	385
18.9 PS/2 Device Support in µClinix	386
18.10 Video Display in µClinix	386
18.11 USB Devices in µClinix (<i>DE2 Board Only</i>)	387
18.12 Network Communication in µClinix (<i>DE2 Board Only</i>)	387
18.13 For additional information	388
18.14 Laboratory Exercises	388
<i>Appendix A: Generation of Pseudo Random Binary Sequences</i>	391
<i>Appendix B: Quartus II Design and Data File Extensions</i>	393
<i>Appendix C: Common FPGA Pin Assignments</i>	394
<i>Appendix D: ASCII Character Code</i>	396
<i>Appendix E: Common I/O Connector Pin Assignments</i>	397
<i>Glossary</i>	399
<i>Index</i>	407
<i>About the Accompanying DVD</i>	411

PREFACE

Changes to the SOPC Edition

Rapid Prototyping of Digital Systems provides an exciting and challenging laboratory component for undergraduate digital logic and computer design courses using FPGAs and CAD tools for simulation and hardware implementation. The more advanced topics and exercises also make this text useful for upper level courses in digital logic, programmable logic, and embedded systems. The SOPC edition includes Altera's new Quartus II CAD tool and includes laboratory projects for Altera's DE2 and the new DE1 FPGA boards. Student laboratory projects provided on the book's DVD include video graphics and text, mouse and keyboard input, and several computer designs.

Rapid Prototyping of Digital Systems includes four tutorials on the Altera Quartus II and Nios II tool environment, an overview of programmable logic, and IP cores with several easy-to-use input and output functions. These features were developed to help students get started quickly. Early design examples use schematic capture and IP cores developed for the Altera UP and DE FPGA boards. VHDL is used for more complex designs after a short introduction to VHDL-based synthesis. Verilog is also now supported as an option for the student projects.

New chapters in this edition provide an overview of System-On-a-Programmable Chip (SOPC) technology and SOPC design examples for the DE1 & 2 boards using Altera's new Nios II Processor hardware, the C software development tools, an overview of OS support for SOPC, and the uClinux operating system. A full set of Altera's FPGA CAD tools is included on the book's DVD.

Intended Audience

This text is intended to provide an exciting and challenging laboratory component for an undergraduate digital logic design class. The more advanced topics and exercises are also appropriate for consideration at schools that have an upper level course in digital logic or programmable logic. There are a number of excellent texts on digital logic design. For the most part, these texts do not include or fully integrate modern CAD tools, logic simulation, logic synthesis using hardware description languages, design hierarchy, current generation field programmable gate array (FPGA) technology and SOPC design. The goal of this text is to introduce these topics in the laboratory portion of the course. Even student laboratory projects can now implement entire digital and computer systems with hundreds of thousands of gates.

Over the past eight years, we have developed a number of interesting and challenging laboratory projects involving serial communications, state machines with video output, video games and graphics, simple computers, keyboard and mouse interfaces, robotics, and pipelined RISC processor cores.

Source files and additional example files are available on the DVD for all designs presented in the text. The student version of the PC based CAD tool on the DVD can be freely distributed to students. Students can purchase their own FPGA board for little more than the price of a contemporary textbook. As an alternative, a few of the low-cost FPGA boards can be shared among students in a laboratory. Course instructors should contact the Altera University Program for detailed information on obtaining full versions of the CAD tools for laboratory PCs and educational FPGA boards for student laboratories.

Topic Selection and Organization

Chapter 1 is a short CAD tool tutorial that covers design entry, simulation, and hardware implementation using an FPGA. The majority of students can enter the design, simulate, and have the design successfully running on the FPGA board in less than thirty minutes. After working through the tutorial and becoming familiar with the process, similar designs can be accomplished in less than 10 minutes.

Chapter 2 provides an overview of the various FPGA development boards. The features of each board are briefly described. Several tables listing pin connections of various I/O devices serve as an essential reference whenever a hardware design is implemented on the DE1, DE2, UP3, or UP 2 FPGA boards.

Chapter 3 is an introduction to programmable logic technology. The capabilities and internal architectures of the most popular CPLDs and FPGAs are described. These include the Cyclone FPGA used on the FPGA board, and the Xilinx 4000 family FPGAs.

Chapter 4 is a short CAD tool tutorial that serves as both a hierarchical and sequential design example. A counter is clocked by a pushbutton and the output is displayed in the seven-segment LEDs. The design is downloaded to the FPGA board and some real world timing issues arising from switch contact bounce are resolved. It uses several functions from the FPGACore library which greatly simplify use of the FPGA's input and output capabilities.

Chapter 5 describes the available FPGACore library I/O functions. The I/O devices include switches, the LCD, a decoder for seven segment LEDs, a multiple output clock divider, VGA output, keyboard input, and mouse input.

Chapter 6 is an introduction to the use of VHDL for the synthesis of digital hardware. Rather than a lengthy description of syntax details, models of the commonly used digital hardware devices are developed and presented. Most VHDL textbooks use models developed only for simulation and frequently use language features not supported in synthesis tools. Our easy to understand synthesis examples were developed and tested on FPGAs using the Altera CAD tools.

Chapter 7 is an introduction to the use of Verilog for the synthesis of digital hardware. The same hardware designs as Chapter 6 as modeled in Verilog. It is optional, but is included for those who would like an introduction to Verilog.

Chapter 8 is a state machine design example. The state machine controls a virtual electric train simulation with video output generated directly by the FPGA. Using track sensor input, students must control two trains and three

track switches to avoid collisions. An actual model train layout can also be built using the new digital DCC trains interfaced to an FPGA board.

Chapter 9 develops a model of a simple computer. The fetch, decode, and execute cycle is introduced and a brief model of the computer is developed using VHDL. A short assembly language program can be entered in the FPGA's internal memory and executed in the simulator.

Chapter 10 describes how to design an FPGA-based digital system to output VGA video. Numerous design examples are presented containing video with both text and graphics. Fundamental design issues in writing simple video games and graphics using an FPGA board are examined.

Chapter 11 describes the PS/2 keyboard and mouse operation and presents interface examples for integrating designs on an FPGA board. Keyboard scan code tables, mouse data packets, commands, status codes, and the serial communications protocol are included. VHDL code for a keyboard and mouse interface is also presented.

Chapter 12 describes several of the common I/O standards that are likely to be encountered in FPGA systems. Parallel, RS232 serial, SPI, and I²C standards and interfacing are discussed.

Chapter 13 develops a design for an adaptable mobile robot using an FPGA board as the controller. Servo motors and several sensor technologies for a low cost mobile robot are described. A sample servo driver design is presented. Commercially available parts to construct the robot described can be obtained for as little as \$60. Several robots can be built for use in the laboratory. Students with their own FPGA board may choose to build their own robot following the detailed instructions found in section 13.6.

Chapter 14 describes a single clock cycle model of the MIPS RISC processor based on the hardware implementation presented in the widely used Patterson and Hennessy textbook, *Computer Organization and Design the Hardware/Software Interface*. Laboratory exercises that add new instructions, features, and pipelining are included at the end of the chapter.

Chapters 15, 16, and 17 introduce students to SOPC design using the Nios II RISC processor core. Chapter 15 is an overview of the SOPC design approach. Chapter 16 contains a tutorial for the Nios II IDE software development tool and examples using the Nios II C/C++ compiler. Chapter 17 contains a tutorial on the processor core hardware configuration tool, SOPC builder. A DE2, DE1, or FPGA board is required for this new material since it is not supported on the UP2 or UP1's smaller FPGA.

Chapter 18 is new to the fourth edition and introduces students to a Linux based Real-Time Operating System (RTOS). A tutorial shows how the µClinix OS can be ported to the DE2 and DE1 FPGA boards.

We anticipate that some schools will still choose to begin with TTL designs on a small protoboard for the first few labs. The first chapter can be started at this time since only OR and NOT logic functions are used to introduce the CAD tool environment. The CAD tool can also be used for simulation of TTL labs, since a TTL parts library is included.

Even though VHDL and Verilog are complex languages, we have found after several years of experimentation that students can write HDL models to synthesize hardware designs after a short overview with a few basic hardware design examples. The use of HDL templates and online help files in the CAD tool make this process easier. After the initial experience with HDL synthesis, students dislike the use of schematic capture on larger designs since it can be time consuming. Experience in industry has been much the same since large productivity gains have been achieved using HDL based synthesis tools for FPGAs and Application Specific Integrated Circuits (ASICs).

Most digital logic classes include a simple computer design such as the one presented in Chapter 9 or a RISC processor such as the one presented in Chapter 14. If this is not covered in the first digital logic course, it could be used as a lab component for a subsequent computer architecture class.

A typical quarter or semester length course could not cover all of the topics presented. The material in Chapters 7 through 17 can be used on a selective basis. The keyboard and mouse are supported by FPGACore library functions, and the material presented in Chapter 11 is not required to use these library functions for keyboard or mouse input. A DE1, DE2, or FPGA board is required for the SOPC Nios designs in Chapters 16 and 17.

A video game based on the material in Chapter 10 can serve as the basis for a final design project. We use robots with sensors from Chapter 13 that are controlled by the simple computer in Chapter 9. Students really enjoy working with the robot, and it presents almost infinite possibilities for an exciting design competition. More advanced classes might want to develop projects based on the Nios II processor reference design in Chapter 16 and 17 using C/C++ code or use the uClinix material in Chapter 18 to develop more complex application programs for embedded devices.

Software and Hardware Packages

We recommend the use of the new 7.1 SP1 web version of Quartus II FPGA CAD included with this book; all exercises were tested using this version. FPGA boards are available from the Altera University Program at special student pricing. Although boards can be easily shared among several students in a lab setting, pricing makes it possible for students who would like to purchase their own to do so.

Details and suggestions for additional cables that may be required for a laboratory setup can be found in Section 2.4. Source files for all designs presented in the text are available on the DVD.

Additional Web Material and Resources

There is a web site for the text with additional course materials, slides, text errata, and software updates at:

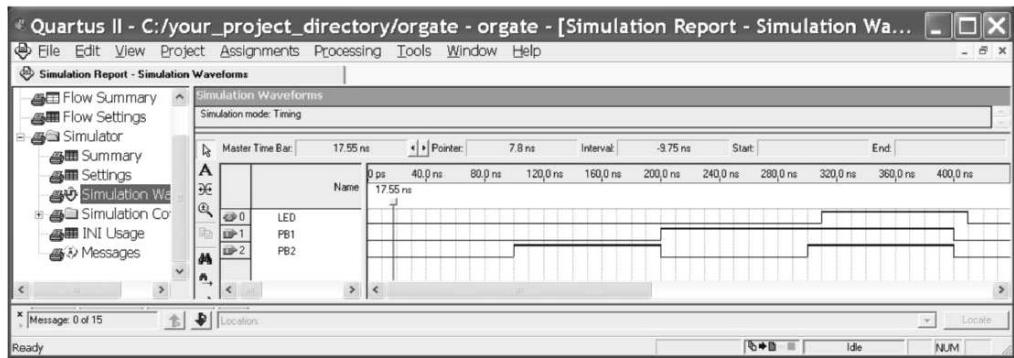
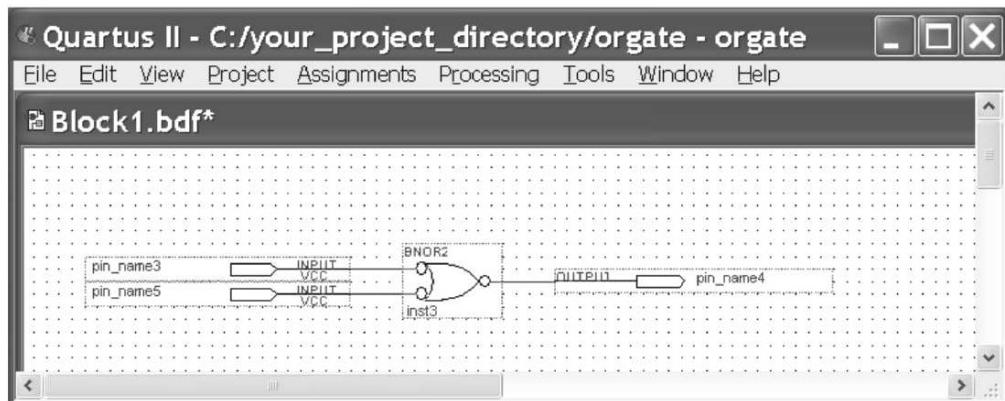
<http://www.ece.gatech.edu/users/hamblen/book/book4e.htm>

Acknowledgments

Over three thousand students and several hundred teaching assistants have contributed to this work during the past eight years. In particular, we would like to acknowledge Doug McAlister, Michael Sugg, Jurgen Vogel, Greg Ruhl, Eric Van Heest, Mitch Kispert, Evan Anderson, Zachary Folkerts, and Nick Clark for their help in testing and developing several of the laboratory assignments and tools. Stephen Brown, Mike Phipps, Joe Hanson, Tawfiq Mossadak, and Eric Shiflet at Altera provided software, hardware, helpful advice, and encouragement.

CHAPTER 1

Tutorial I: The 15-Minute Design



1 Tutorial I: The 15 Minute Design

The purpose of this tutorial is to introduce the user to the Altera CAD tools and the University Program (DE1, DE2, UP3, UP2, or UP1) FPGA Development Boards in the shortest possible time. The format is an aggressive introduction to schematic, VHDL, and Verilog entry for those who want to get started quickly. The approach is tutorial and utilizes a path that is similar to most digital design processes.

Once you have completed this tutorial, you will understand and be able to:

- Navigate the Altera schematic entry environment,
- Compile a VHDL or Verilog design file,
- Simulate, debug, and test your designs,
- Generate and verify timing characteristics, and
- Download and run your design on a DE1, DE2, UP3, UP2, or UP1 board.

Determining your FPGA Board Type

The first step is to identify which one of the various Altera Educational FPGA boards you are using for the tutorial. Examine the photographs in Figures 1.1 to 1.4 and compare them to your board to determine which type of board you are using.

There will be some minor variations in the instructions later on that depend on which board type you are using. After identifying your board, be sure to remember which model of Altera FPGA board you have (i.e., DE1, DE2, UP3, UP2 or UP1).

If your board looks like Figure 1.4 and you see UP1X printed on the board, some early UP2 production boards had the designation UP1X printed on the board. The UP1X is electronically equivalent to a UP2 board and contains the same FPGA, so follow the instructions for a UP2 board.

If you have a UP3 board, the UP3 board comes in two versions and you need to determine which version you have. The 1C12 version contains a larger EP1C12 FPGA instead of the EP1C6 FPGA. Check the part number on the FPGA chip on the left center of the board.

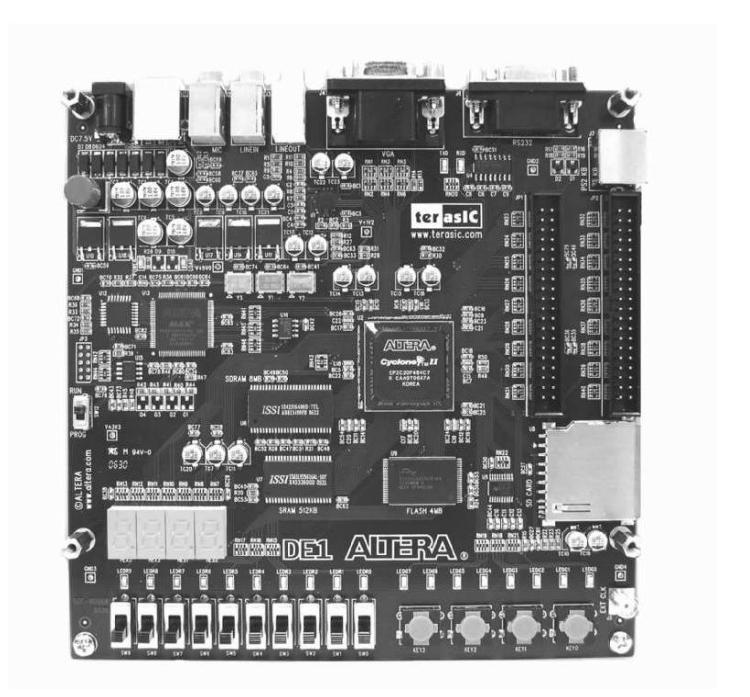


Figure 1.1 The Altera DE1 FPGA Development board.

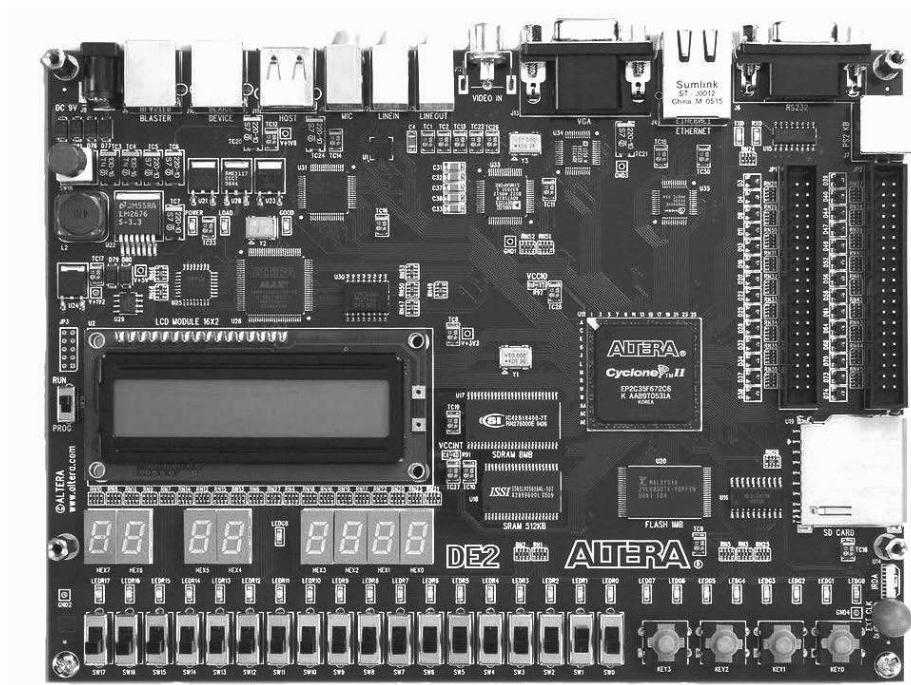


Figure 1.2 The Altera DE2 FPGA Development board.

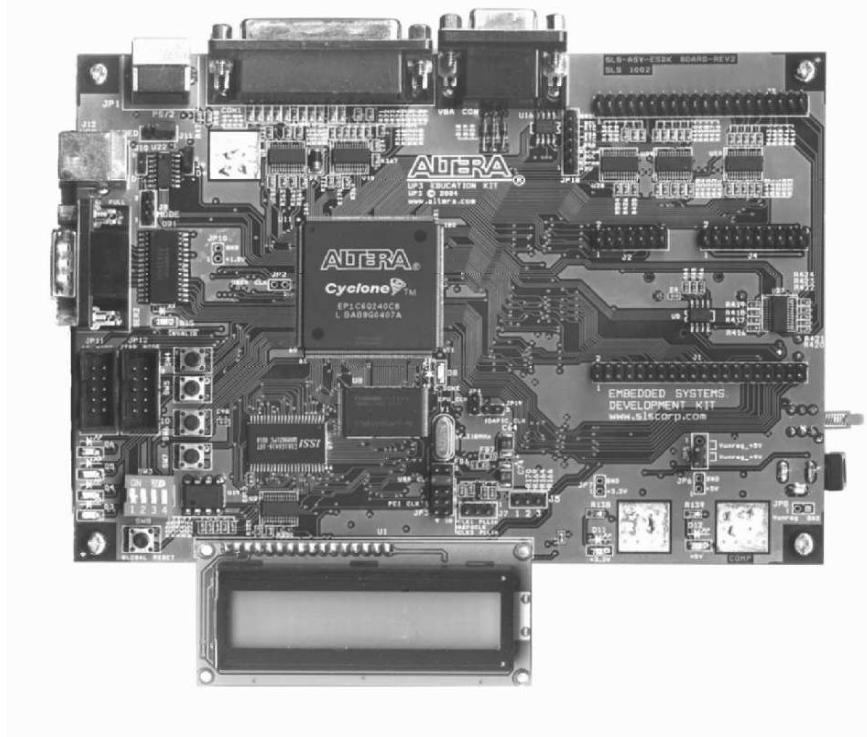


Figure 1.3 The Altera UP3 FPGA Development board. The 1C12 version has a larger EP1C12Q240 FPGA. (Check the part number on the large square FPGA chip in middle of board).

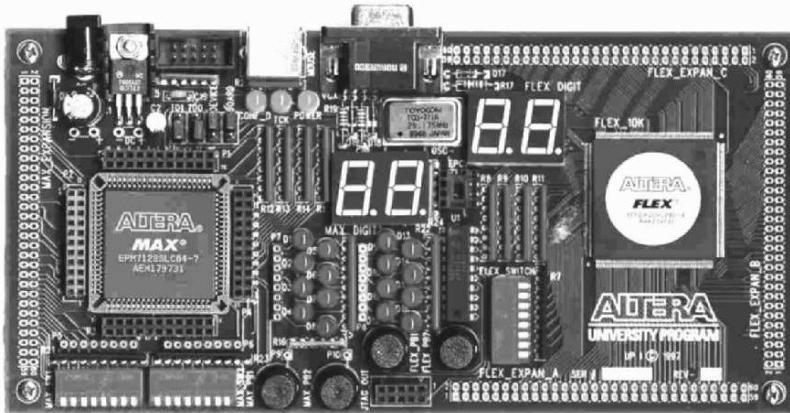


Figure 1.4 The Altera UP2 FPGA development board. UP1 boards appear very similar and can also be used, but instead of a FLEX EPF10K70 they use a smaller EPF10K20 FPGA that contains fewer logic elements. (Check the part number on the large square FPGA chip on right side of your board)

In this tutorial, a simple OR logic function will be demonstrated to provide an introduction to the Altera Quartus II CAD tools. After simulation, the design will then be used to program a field programmable gate array (FPGA) on an FPGA development board. The design will then be tested running on real hardware.

ALTERA'S NEWEST BOARDS ARE THE DE1 AND DE2. IF YOU HAVE ONE OF THE OTHER FPGA BOARDS AS SEEN IN FIGURES 1.1 TO 1.4, YOU SHOULD ALWAYS FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS AND PROCEDURES OUTLINED IN THE TEXT AND ON THE DVD FOR YOUR BOARD. THE DVD CONTAINS ADDITIONAL INFORMATION AND FILES FOR THE OLDER FPGA BOARDS.

The inputs to the OR logic will be two pushbuttons and the output will be displayed using a light emitting diode (LED). Both the pushbuttons and the LED are part of the development board, and no external wiring is required.

Of course, any actual design will be more complex, but the objective here is to quickly understand the capabilities and flow of the design tools with minimal effort and time.

More complex digital designs including computers and color video graphics will be introduced later in this text after you have become familiar with the development tools and hardware description languages (HDLs) used in digital designs.

Granted, all this may not be accomplished in just 15 minutes; however, the skills acquired from this demonstration tutorial will enable the first-time user to duplicate similar designs in less time than that!

INSTALL THE QUARTUS II WEB VERSION SOFTWARE USING THE DVD AND OBTAIN A WEB LICENSE FILE FROM ALTERA. CHECK FOR ALTERA QUARTUS II WEB VERSION SOFTWARE UPDATES AT WWW.ALTERA.COM. THE BOOKS DESIGNS WERE ALL TESTED WITH VERSION 7.1 SP1. AS NEWER VERSIONS OF THE ALTERA SOFTWARE APPEAR, MINOR CHANGES MAY BE NEEDED. CHECK THE BOOK'S WEBSITE FOR ANY UPDATES.

With the standard FPGA computer aided design tools, designs can be entered via schematic capture or by using a Hardware Description Language (HDL) such as VHDL or Verilog. It is also possible to combine blocks with different entry methods into a single design. As seen in Figure 1.5, tools can then be used to simulate, calculate timing delays, synthesize logic, and program a hardware implementation of the design on an FPGA.

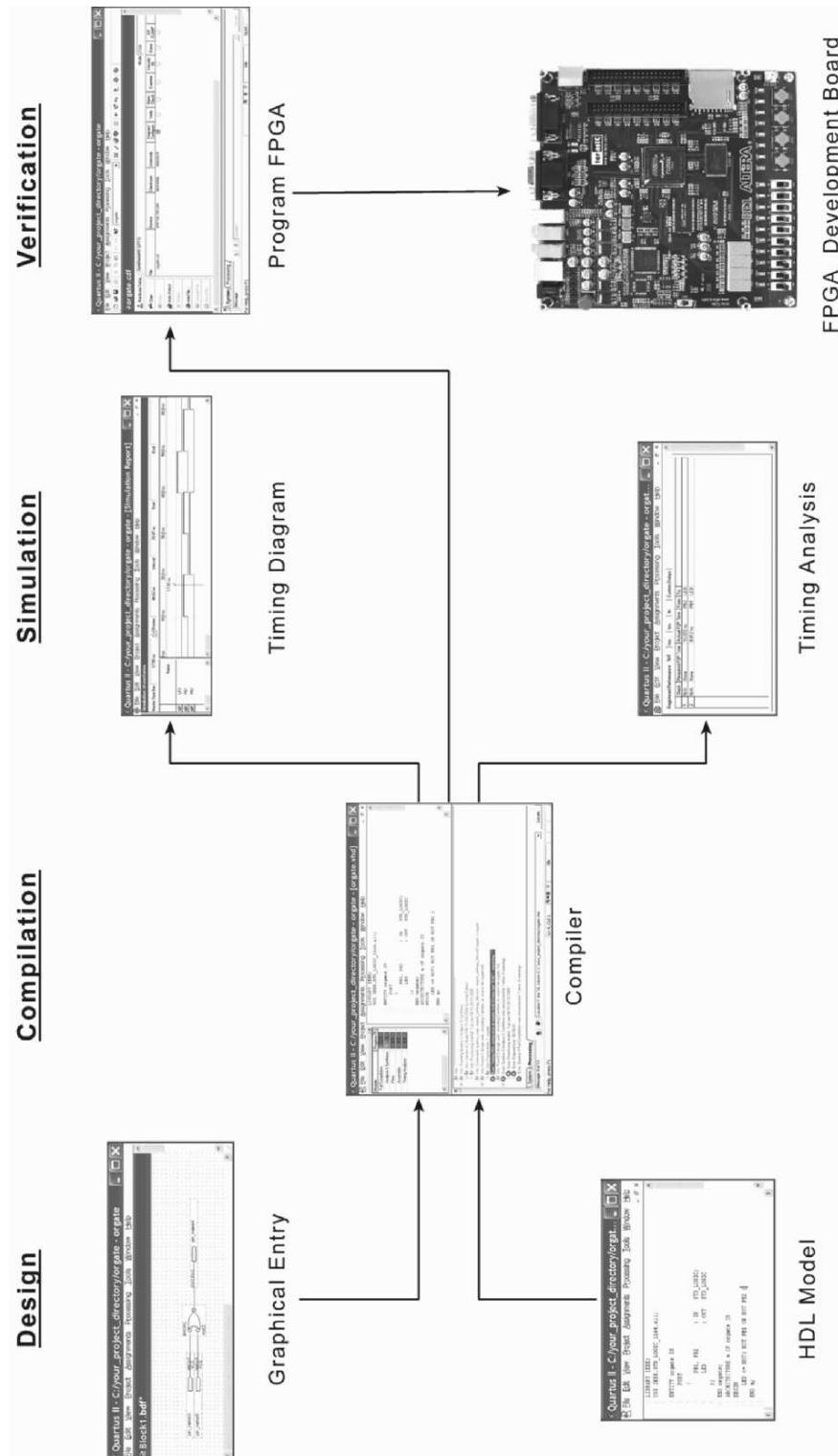


Figure 1.5 Design process for schematic or HDL entry.

The Board

The default boards that will be used are the newer DE1 and DE2 boards. Although the following tutorial can be done with any of the DE1, DE2, UP3, UP2 or UP1 boards. Some minor modifications (i.e., the FPGA device number and pin number assignments) will be needed for the other boards. In this tutorial, complete instructions will be provided for all of the different FPGA boards.

The Pushbuttons

On the FPGA board, two pushbutton switch inputs, PB1 and PB2, are connected to FPGA input pins. Each pushbutton input is tied "High" with a pull-up resistor and pulled "Low" when the respective pushbutton is pressed. One needs to remember that when using the on-board pushbuttons, this "active low" condition ties zero volts to the input when the button is pressed and the V_{cc} high supply to the input when not pressed. See Figure 1.6. V_{cc} is 3.3V on newer boards and 5V on the older UP2 and 1 boards. On the FPGA board shown on the left in Figure 1.6, a logic "0" at the output turns on the LED.

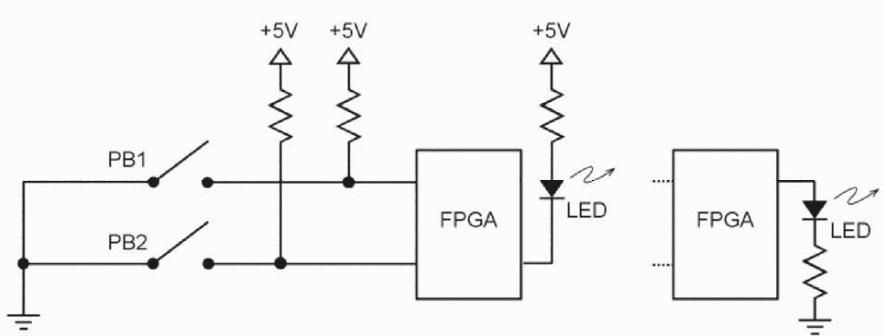


Figure 1.6 FPGA I/O connections to Pushbuttons (PBx) and LED: Right of center, active LOW LED output (i.e., UP1 and UP2 boards) or on far right active HIGH LED output (i.e., DE1, DE2, and UP3 boards). Note that a depressed pushbutton input will be LOW.

The LED Outputs

On many of the newer FPGA development boards including the DE1 and DE2, the LED is connected with active HIGH outputs as in the right LED output illustration in Figure 1.6. This allows a HIGH signal on the output pin of the FPGA to turn the LED on and a LOW signal to turn it off.

Historically, most digital logic output pins were designed to sink more current than they could source. In such cases, it makes sense to let the output pin of the FPGA tie the cathode (-) of the LED to ground to allow for a brighter LED (i.e., more current flowing); however, this configuration has the side effect of requiring a LOW signal to turn the LED on, but is generally the more common

configuration. This active LOW output is actually the arrangement used on all seven segment LED displays on all of the FPGA development boards.

The Problem Definition

To illustrate the capabilities of the software in the simplest terms, we will build a circuit that turns off the LED when one OR the other pushbutton is pushed. In a simple logic equation, one could write:

$$\text{LED_OFF} = \text{PB1_HIT} + \text{PB2_HIT}$$

At first, this may seem too simple; however, the active low inputs and outputs add just enough complication to illustrate some of the more common errors, and it provides an opportunity to compare some of the different syntax features of VHDL and Verilog. (Students needing an exercise in DeMorgan's Law will also find these exercises particularly enlightening.)

We will first build this circuit with the graphical editor and then implement it in VHDL and Verilog. As you work through the tutorial, note how the design entry method is relatively independent of the compile, timing, and simulation steps, and which FPGA board is used for the hardware implementation.

Resolving the Active Low Signals

Since the pushbuttons generate inverted signals and the LED requires an inverted or low level logic signal to turn off, we could build an OR logic circuit using the layout in Figure 1.7a. Recalling that a bubble on a gate input or output indicates inversion, careful examination shows that the two circuits in Figure 1.7 are functionally equivalent; however, the circuit in Figure 1.7a uses more gates and would take a bit longer to enter in the schematic editor. We will therefore use the single gate circuit illustrated in Figure 1.7b.

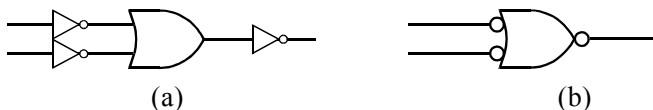


Figure 1.7a and 1.7b. Equivalent circuits for ORing active low inputs and outputs.

This form of the OR function is known as a "negative-logic OR." If you are confused, try writing a truth table to show this Boolean equality. (In Exercise 1 at the end of the chapter, this circuit will be compared with its DeMorgan's equivalent, the "positive-logic AND.").

ON THE UP2 AND UP1 BOARDS, THE LEDs OUTPUT STATE WILL APPEAR INVERTED SINCE ITS LED OUTPUT CIRCUIT IS INVERTED, SO PUSHING ONE OF THE PUSHBUTTONS WILL TURN ON THE LED.

1.1 Design Entry using the Graphic Editor

Examine the CAD tool overview diagram in Figure 1.5. The initial path in this section will be from schematic capture (Graphical Entry) to downloading the design to the FPGA board. On the way, we will pass through some of the nuances of the Compiler along with setting up and controlling a simulation. Later, after having actually tested the design, we will examine the Timing Analysis information of the design. Although relatively short, each step is carefully illustrated and explained. Install the Altera Quartus II software on your PC using the book's DVD, if it is not already installed.



Figure 1.8 Creating a new Quartus II Project.

New Project Creation

Start the Quartus II program. In Quartus II, the New Project wizard is used to create a new project. Choose **File** \Rightarrow **New Project Wizard**. Click next in the Introduction window, if it appears to continue. A second dialog box will appear asking for the working directory for your new project. Enter an appropriate directory. For the project name and top-level design entity boxes, enter **orgate**. Click **Next**. If you need to create a new project directory with that name, click **Yes**. An Add Files dialog box then appears. This page is used to enter all of the

design files (other than the top-level file). Since this simple project will only use a single top-level design file, click **Next**.

Select the FPGA Device to be Used

The next dialog box is used to select the FPGA device type as seen in Figure 1.9. The detailed instructions for this step will vary depending on your board type.

A summary of the different FPGA devices found on each board is shown in Table 1.1. Find your board's FPGA family and device part number in Table 1.1 and follow the specific instructions below for your board.



Figure 1.9 Setting the FPGA Device Type. Settings shown are for the DE1 board.

Table 1.1 FPGA Devices used on the various Altera Educational FPGA boards.

	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2 & UP1
FPGA Family	Cyclone II	Cyclone II	Cyclone	FLEX10K
FPGA Device	EP2C20F484C7	EP2C35F672C6	EP1C6Q240C8 or 1C12 version EP1C12Q240C8	EPF10K70RC240-4 or on older UP1s EPF10K20RV240-4

If you are using a DE1 or DE2 board:

Select the **Cyclone II** Family FPGA. The DE1 uses an **EP2C20F484C7** device and the DE2 uses a **EP2C35F672C6** device.

If you are using the UP3 board:

Select **Cyclone** family. You will then need to select the specific FPGA device number on your board. The UP3 is available with two different sizes of Cyclone FPGAs: an **EP1C6Q240C8** (UP3 1C6 board) or the larger **EP1C12Q240C8** (UP3 1C12 board). Check the large square chip in the middle of the board to verify the exact FPGA part number.

If you are using a UP2 or UP1:

Select **FLEX10K** family. On the UP2, it will be a **EPF10K70RC240-X** (-X is the speed grade of the chip). Check the large square chip in the middle on the right side of the board to verify the FPGA part number. If you see **EPF10K20RC240** on the FPGA, you have a UP1 board. The original UP1 boards can also be used. The UP1 looks very similar to a UP2 and they use the same pin assignments and have the same I/O features as the UP2, but they contain a EPF10K20RC240 FPGA with fewer logic elements. UP1 users should always follow the instructions for the UP2, but specify the EPF10K20RC240 device type for each project.

All Boards:

The last digit in the FPGA part number is the speed grade. The correct speed grade is needed for accurate delays in timing simulations. You may need to change the setting of the Speed Grade on Pin Count dialog box to **Any** to display your specific device. Always choose the correct speed grade to match your board's FPGA so that the correct delay times are used in the logic simulation tools.

If you choose the wrong device type, you will have errors when you attempt to download your design to the FPGA.

After selecting the correct FPGA part number, click **Next**, then on the third-party EDA tools settings box also click **Next** since we will not be using any third-party EDA tools – only Quartus II. Double check the information summary page that appears and click **Finish**. In case of problems, use the back option to make changes.

Establishing Graphics (Schematic) as the Input Format

You have now named your project and setup which FPGA will be used, now choose **File ⇒ New**, and a popup menu will appear. Select **Block Diagram/Schematic File**, then click **OK**. This will create a blank schematic worksheet – a graphics display file (*.gdf file). Note that the toolbar options in Quartus II are context sensitive and change as different tools are selected. An empty schematic window with grids will appear named Block1.bdf.

Enter and Place the OR Symbol in Your Schematic

Click on the AND gate icon  on the left-side toolbar. This selects the symbol tool. In the upper left box under Libraries, expand the library path to see the options. Find the library named primitives and click on it to expand it. Then click to expand the logic library. Scroll down the list of logic symbols and select BNOR2. An OR gate with inverted inputs and outputs should appear in the symbol window. (The naming convention is B-bubbled NOR with 2 inputs. Although considered to be a NOR with active low inputs, it is fundamentally an OR gate with active low inputs and output.) Click **OK** at the bottom of the Symbol window.

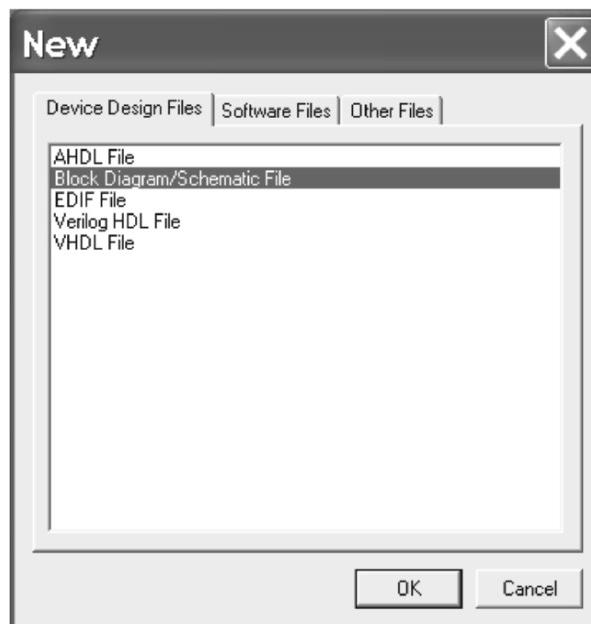
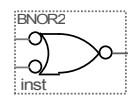


Figure 1.10 Creating the top-level project schematic design file.

Select the Block1.bdf window and the BNOR2 symbol will appear in the schematic. Drag the symbol to the middle of the window and **left click** to place it. **Click on the arrow icon  on the left side toolbar or hit escape to stop inserting the symbol.**



TO USE THE ONLINE HELP SYSTEM, CLICK **HELP** ON THE TOP MENU, SELECT SEARCH AND THEN ENTER **BNOR**. AT ANY POINT IN THE TUTORIAL, EXTENSIVE ONLINE HELP IS ALWAYS AVAILABLE. TO SEARCH BY TOPIC OR KEYWORD SELECT THE **HELP** MENU AND FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS THERE.

Assigning the Output Pin for Your Schematic



Select the **AND gate symbol** again on the left side toolbar, expand the **pin library**, select **output**, and click **OK**. Using the mouse and the left mouse button, drag the output symbol to the right of the **BNOR2** symbol leaving space between them – they will be connected later.

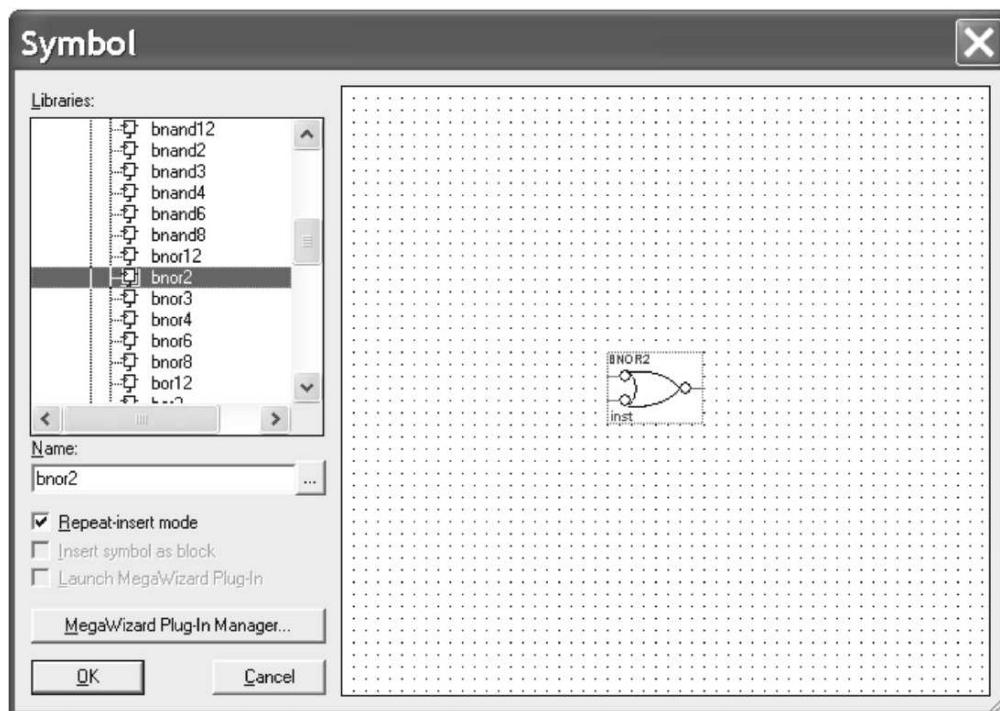


Figure 1.11 Selecting a new symbol with the Symbol Tool.

Assigning the Input Pins for Your Schematic



Find and place two pin **input** symbols to the left of the **BNOR2** symbol in the same way that you just selected and placed the **output** symbol. (Another hint: Once selected, a symbol can be copied with **Right Click** \Rightarrow **Copy** and pasted multiple times using the **Right Click** \Rightarrow **Paste** function.). Hit the arrow symbol on the left tool bar and deselect the new symbol by moving the cursor away and clicking the left mouse button a second time.

Connecting the Signal Lines

When you move the mouse cursor near a wire, the cursor changes into a crosshair. Move to one end of a wire you need to add and push and hold down the left mouse button. Hold down the left mouse button and drag the end of the wire to the other point that you want to connect. Release the left button to connect the wire. If you need to delete a wire, click on it – the wire should turn blue when selected. Hit the delete key to remove it. You can also use the **Right Click \Rightarrow Delete** function. Connect the other wires using the same process so that the diagram looks something like Figure 1.12

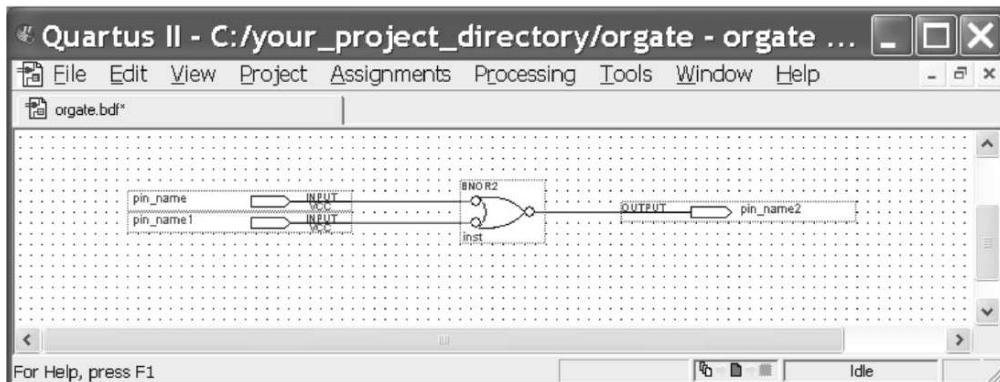


Figure 1.12 Active low OR-gate schematic example with I/O pins connected.

Enter the PIN Names

Right click on the first $\square \rightarrow$ **INPUT** symbol. It will be outlined in blue and a menu will appear. Select **Properties**, type **PB1** for the pin name and click **OK**. Name the other input pin **PB2** and the output pin for the **LED** in a similar fashion.

Assign the PIN Numbers to Connect the Pushbuttons and the LED

Since the FPGA chip is already prewired to the pushbuttons and the LED on the printed circuit board (PCB), you need to look up the correct pin numbers and designate them in your design.

Table 1.2 Hardwired I/O connections on the various FPGA boards in the design example.

I/O Device	DE1 Pin	DE2 Pin	UP3 Pin	UP2 & 1 Pin
PB1	R21 (Key1)	N23 (Key1)	62 (SW7)	28 (FLEX PB1)
PB2	T22 (Key2)	P23 (Key2)	48 (SW4)	29 (FLEX PB2)
LED	R20(LEDRO)	AE23(LEDRO)	56 (D3)	14 (7Seg Dec. pt.)

The information in Table 1.2 is from the documentation on the pinouts for the various FPGA board user's manuals. (Table 2.4 lists additional I/O pins) In the

main menu, select **Assignments** ⇒ **Pin**. (If the option to select the pin is unavailable, you need to go back and select **Assignments** ⇒ **Device**, and make sure that your device is selected correctly.) You may need to adjust the Window sizes to find the pin assignment area or select the pulldown, **View** ⇒ **All Pins List**; Figure 1.13 shows the pin list area with pin information entered. In the “Node Name” column, type the name of the new pin, **PB1**. In the “Location” column, double click, scroll down, and **select the pin number for PB1 on your board** or type in the pin number in the blank space provided (**NOTE:** pin numbers will be different on the various FPGA boards refer to Table 1.2). The software adds **PIN_** to the pin number. Repeat this process assigning **PB2** and **LED** to the correct pins for your board. After assigning all three pins and verifying your entries, click **File** ⇒ **Save Project** to save. Device and pin information is stored in the project’s *.qsf file. Pin names are also case sensitive.

CAUTION: BE SURE TO USE UNIQUE NAMES FOR DIFFERENT PINS. PINS AND WIRES WITH THE SAME NAME ARE AUTOMATICALLY CONNECTED EVEN WITHOUT A VISIBLE WIRE SHOWING UP ON THE SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM.

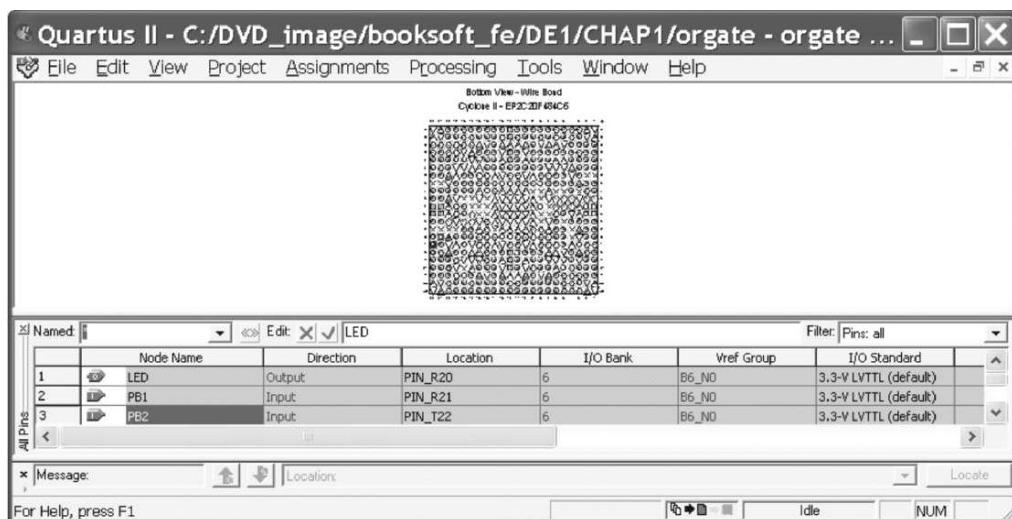


Figure 1.13 Assigning Pins with the Assignment Editor.

Saving Your Schematic

If you haven’t saved your file yet, Select **File** ⇒ **Save As** and save your project using the filename **ORGATE**. Throughout the remainder of this tutorial you should always refer to the same project directory path when saving or opening files. A number of other files are automatically created by the Quartus II tools and maintained in your project directory.

Set Unused Pins as Inputs

The memory chips on the development board could all be turned on at the same time by unused pins on the FPGA, causing their tri-state output drivers to try to force output data bus bits to different states. This causes high currents, which can overheat and damage devices after several minutes. To eliminate the possibility of any damage to the board, the following option should always be set in a new project. On the menu bar, select **Assignments** \Rightarrow **Device** then click the **Device and Pin Options** button. Click on the **Unused Pins** tab and check the **As inputs, tri-stated** option. Click **OK** and then **OK** in the first window. This setting is saved in the projects *.qsf file. Any time you create a new project repeat this step.

1.2 Compiling the Design

Compiling your design checks for syntax errors, synthesizes the logic design, produces timing information for simulation, fits the design on the selected FPGA, and generates the file required to download the program. After any changes are made to the design files or pin assignments, the project will always need to be re-compiled prior to simulation or downloading.

Compiling your Project

Compile by selecting **Processing** \Rightarrow **Start Compilation**. The compilation report window will appear in the Quartus II screen and can be used to monitor the compilation process, view warnings, and errors.

Checking for Compile Warnings and Errors

The project should compile with **0 Errors**. If a popup window appears that states, "Full Compilation was Successful," then you have not made an error. Info messages will appear in green in the message window. Warnings appear in blue in the message window and Errors will be red. Errors must be corrected. If you forget to assign pins, the compiler will select pins based on the best performance for internal timing and routing. Since the pins for the pushbuttons and the LED are pre-wired on the FPGA boards, their assignment cannot be left up to the compiler and the user must always specify them.

Examining the Report File

After compilation, the compiler window shows a summary of the compiled design including the FPGA logic and memory resources used by the design.

Select the **orgate.bdf** schematic window. Use **View** \Rightarrow **Show Location Assignments** and check the schematic's I/O pins to verify the correct pin numbers have been assigned. If a pin is not assigned you may have a typo somewhere in one of the pin names or you did not save your pin assignments earlier. You will need to recompile whenever you change pin assignments.

You can also check all of the FPGA's pins by going to the compiler report window with **Processing** \Rightarrow **Compilation Report**, expanding the **Fitter file folder**, and clicking on the **Pin-out file**.

1.3 Simulation of the Design

For complex designs, the project is normally simulated prior to downloading to a FPGA. Although the OR example is straightforward, we will take you through the steps to illustrate the simulation of the circuit.

Set Up the Simulation Traces

Choose **File** \Rightarrow **New**, select the **Other Files** tab, and then from the popup window select **Vector Waveform File** and click **OK**. A blank waveform window should be displayed. Right click on the **Name** column on the left side. Select **Insert Nodes or Bus**. Click on the **Node Finder** and then the **LIST** button. PB1, PB2 and LED should appear as trace values in the window. Then click on the center $>>$ button and click **OK** and **OK** again. The signals should appear in the waveform window.

Generate Test Vectors for Simulation

A simulation requires external input data or "stimulus" data to test the circuit. Since the PB1 and PB2 input signals have not been set to a value, the simulator sets them to a default of zero. The 'X' on the LED trace indicates that the simulator has not yet been run. (If the simulator *has* been run and you still get an 'X,' then the simulator was unable to determine the output condition.)

Right click on **PB1**; the PB1 trace will be highlighted. Select **Value** \Rightarrow **Count Value**, then click on the **Timing** tab and change the entry in the field **Multiplied By** from **1** to **5** and click **OK**. An alternating pattern of Highs and Lows should appear in the PB1 trace. (Use **View** \Rightarrow **Zoom Out**, if you cannot see the pattern.) Repeat the procedure for **PB2** but this time change the entry in **Multiplied By** from **1** to **10**. **PB2** should now be an alternating pattern of ones and zeros but at twice the frequency of PB1.

(Other useful options in the **Value** menu will generate a clock and set a signal High or Low. It is also possible to highlight a portion of a signal trace with the mouse and set the level manually.)

When you need a longer simulation time in a waveform, you can change the default simulation end time using **Edit** \Rightarrow **End Time**.

Performing the Simulation with Your Timing Diagram

Select **File** \Rightarrow **Save** and click the **Save** button to save your project's vector waveform file. Select **Processing** \Rightarrow **Start Simulation** and click **OK** on the window that appears. The simulation should run and the output waveform for LED should now appear in the Simulation Report window. You may want to right click on the timing display and use the Zoom options to adjust the time scale as seen in Figure 1.14.

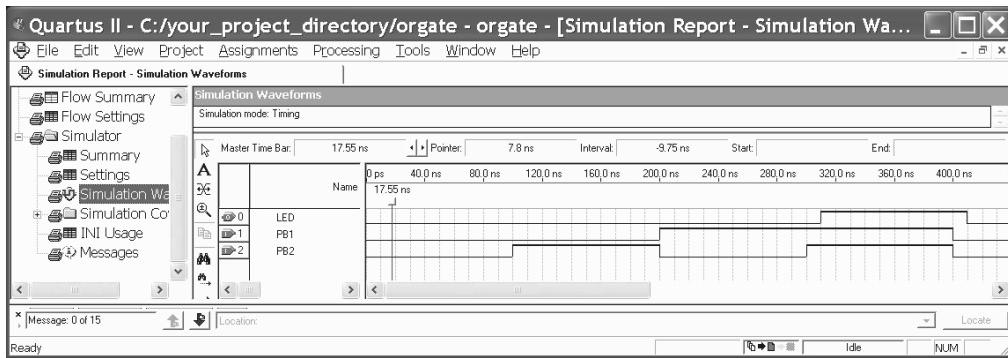


Figure 1.14 Active low OR-gate timing simulation with device time delays.

Note that the simulation includes the signal propagation timing delays through the FPGA and that it takes almost 10 ns ($\text{ns} = 10^{-9} \text{ sec.}$) for an input change to be reflected in the delayed output. Taking this LED output time delay into account, examine the Simulation Waveform to verify that the LED output is Low only when either PB1 OR PB2 inputs are Low.

1.4 Testing Your Design on an FPGA Board

The next step is to download the design to a board and test it on real hardware. At this point, the instructions vary depending on which type of board you are using for the tutorial. If you do not know your board type, refer back to Figures 1.1 to 1.4 to identify it. You will need to skip ahead to the appropriate section for each board as listed below:

- DE1 users go to Section 1.5 (next Section),
- DE2 users skip ahead to Section 1.6,
- UP3 users skip ahead to Section 1.7,
- UP2 & UP1 users skip ahead to Section 1.8.

1.5 Downloading Your Design to the DE1 Board

Hooking Up the DE1 Board to the Computer

If you have a DE2, UP2, or UP3 board refer to the specific download Section on those boards and skip this section. To try your design on a DE1 board as seen in Figure 1.15, plug the USB download cable into the DE1 board's USB connector (top left corner of the board) and attach the other end to an open USB port on the PC.

The DE1 board is normally powered using only the USB download cable's 5V power. The 7.5V AC to DC wall transformer supplied with the board attaches to the DC power connector located on the upper left corner of the DE2 board and can be used to supply power to the board when it is not attached to the PC (i.e., standalone operation).

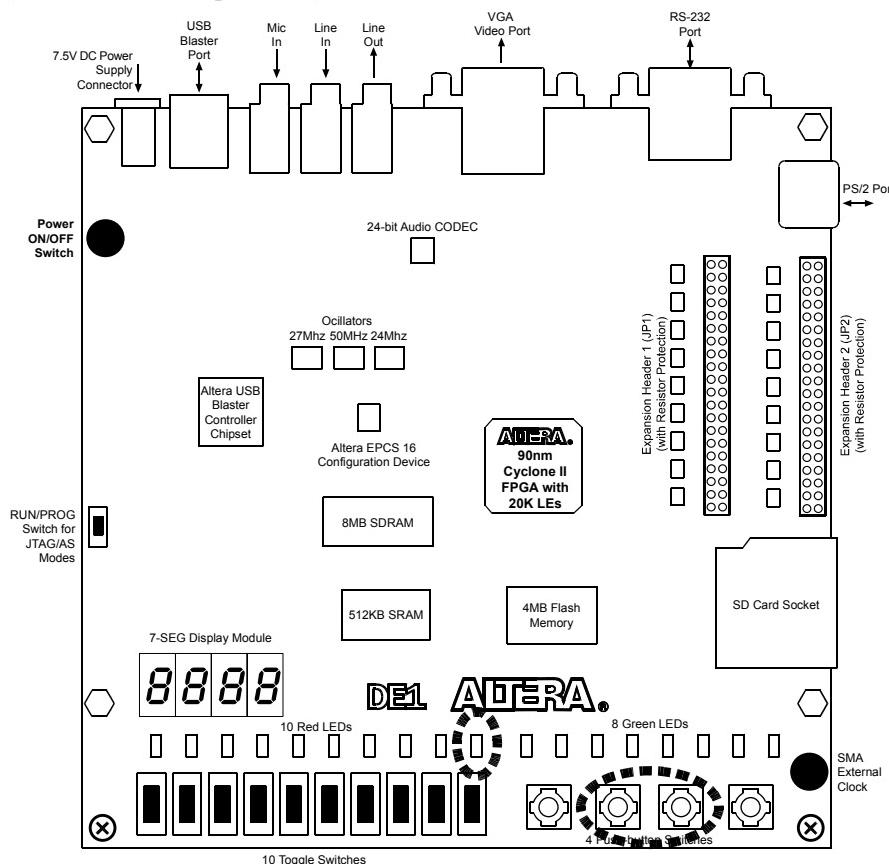


Figure 1.15 The Altera DE1 board showing Pushbutton and LED locations used in the design (enclosed in dashed ellipses seen at bottom of board).

After attaching the USB cable, press in the DE1's red power switch located on the upper left edge of the board below the USB connector to turn on the board. When properly powered, the blue power LED on the DE1 board near the power switch should light up and the other LEDs will all flash, if it is still setup to run the default demo design shipped from the factory.

Preparing for Downloading

Make sure that you have assigned the correct **Device Name** for the DE1. The DE1 contains a **EP2C20F484C7** Cyclone II FGPA. When you change the device type you will also need to redo the pin assignments. Make sure that you have also assigned the correct pin numbers for the DE1 board. PB1 is pin **R22**, PB2 is pin **R21** and the LED is pin **U22**. (refer to section 1.1 for help) Whenever you change the Device or pin assignments, it is necessary to recompile before downloading.

After checking to make sure that the cables are hooked up properly, you are ready to download the compiled circuit to the DE1 board. Select **Tools** \Rightarrow **Programmer**. Click on **Hardware Setup**, select the proper hardware, a **USB-Blaster**. (If a window comes up that displays, "**No Hardware**" to the right of the Hardware Setup button, use the Hardware Setup button to change currently selected hardware from "**No Hardware**" to "**USB-Blaster**". If a red JTAG error message appears or the start button is not working, close down the Programmer window and reopen it. If this still doesn't correct the problem, then there is something else wrong with the setup or cable connection. Go back to the beginning of this section and check each step and connection carefully.)

Final Steps to Download

The filename orgate.sof should be displayed in the programmer window. The *.sof file contains the FPGA's configuration (programming) data for your design. To the right of the filename in the Program/Configure column, check the **Program/Configure** box. To start downloading your design to the board, click on the **Start** button. Just a few seconds are required to download. If download is successful, a green info message displays in the system window notifying you the programming was successful.

Testing Your Design

On the DE1 board, the right two pushbuttons are used in the design and one of the LEDs to the right just above them. The locations of PB1 (Key0), PB2 (Key1), and the LED (LEDG0) are in the lower right corner of the board as seen in Figure 1.13. After downloading your program to the DE1 board, the LED in the lower right corner should turn off whenever a pushbutton is hit. Since the output of the OR gate is driving the LED signal, it should be on when no pushbuttons are hit. Since the buttons are active low, and the **BNOR2** gate also has active low inputs and output, hitting either button should turn off the LED.

Congratulations! You have just entered, compiled, simulated, downloaded a design to a FPGA device, and verified its operation. Since you are using a DE1 board, you can skip the next three sections on the DE2, UP3 or UP2 board and go directly to Section 1.9.



COMPLETED TUTORIAL FILES ARE AVAILABLE ON THE TEXT'S DVD.

IN THE BOOK'S DESIGN EXAMPLES, ADDITIONAL DE1 RELATED MATERIALS
CAN BE FOUND IN THE **BOOKSOFT_FE\DE1\CHAPX** DIRECTORIES.

1.6 Downloading Your Design to the DE2 Board

Hooking Up the DE2 Board to the Computer

If you have a DE1, UP2 or UP3 board refer to the download Sections on those boards. To test your design on a DE2 board as seen in Figure 1.16, plug the USB download cable into the DE2 board's USB connector (leftmost of the three USB connectors on the top left side of the board) and attach the other end to an open USB port on the PC. Using the 9V AC to DC wall transformer attach power to the DC power connector located on the upper left corner of the DE2 board.

Press the power switch located on the upper left edge of the board below the power connector. When properly powered, the blue power LED on the DE2 board next to the power switch should light up and the other LEDs will flash, if it is still setup to run the default demo design shipped from the factory.

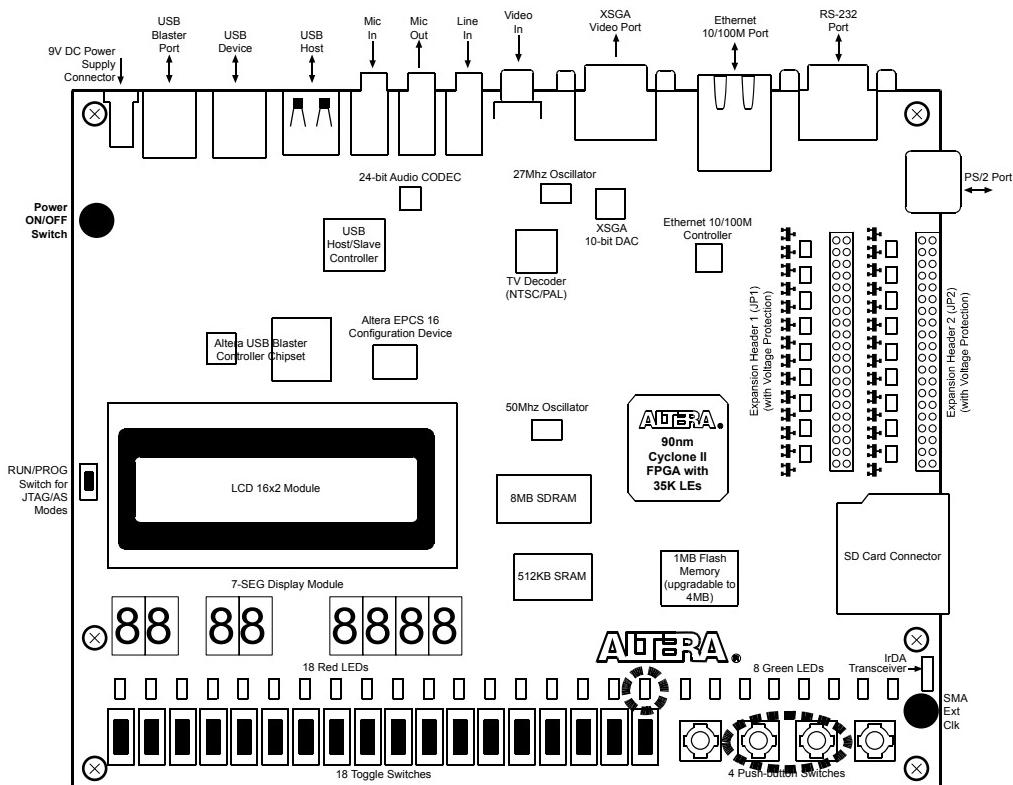


Figure 1.16 Altera DE2 board showing the Pushbutton and LED locations used in design (enclosed in dashed ellipses seen in bottom right).

Preparing for Downloading

Make sure that you have assigned the correct **Device Name** for the DE2. The DE2 contains a **EP2C35F672C6** Cyclone II FGPA. When you change the device type you will also need to redo the pin assignments. Make sure that you have also assigned the correct pin numbers for the DE2 board. PB1 is pin **N23**, PB2 is pin **P23** and the LED is pin **AE23**. (refer to section 1.1 for help) Whenever you change the Device or pin assignments, if is necessary to recompile before downloading.

After checking to make sure that the cables and jumpers are hooked up properly, you are ready to download the compiled circuit to the DE2 board. Select **Tools** \Rightarrow **Programmer**. Click on **Hardware Setup**, select the proper hardware, a **USB-Blaster**. (If a window comes up that displays, "**No Hardware**" to the right of the Hardware Setup button, use the Hardware Setup button to change currently selected hardware from "**No Hardware**" to "**USB-Blaster**". If a red JTAG error message appears or the start button is not working, close down the Programmer window and reopen it. If this still doesn't correct the problem, then there is something else wrong with the setup or cable connection. Go back to the beginning of this section and check each step and connection carefully.)

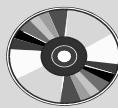
Final Steps to Download

The filename orgate.sof should be displayed in the programmer window. The *.sof file contains the FPGA's configuration (programming) data for your design. To the right of the filename in the Program/Configure column, check the **Program/Configure** box. To start downloading your design to the board, click on the **Start** button. Just a few seconds are required to download. If download is successful, a green info message displays in the system window notifying you the programming was successful.

Testing Your Design

On the DE2 board, the middle two pushbuttons are used in the design and one of the LEDs to the left just above them. The locations of PB1, PB2, and the decimal LED are in the lower right corner of the board as seen in Figure 1.16. After downloading your program to the DE2 board, the LED in the lower right corner should turn off whenever a pushbutton is hit. Since the output of the OR gate is driving the LED signal, it should be on when no pushbuttons are hit. Since the buttons are active low, and the **BNOR2** gate also has active low inputs and output, hitting either button should turn off the LED.

Congratulations! You have just entered, compiled, simulated, downloaded a design to a FPGA device, and verified its operation. Since you are using a DE2 board, you can skip the next two sections on the UP3 or UP2/1 board and go directly to Section 1.9.



COMPLETED TUTORIAL FILES ARE AVAILABLE ON THE TEXT'S DVD.

IN THE BOOK'S DESIGN EXAMPLES, ADDITIONAL DE2 RELATED MATERIALS
AND DESIGN FILES CAN BE FOUND IN THE **BOOKSOFT_FE\DE2\CHAPX**
DIRECTORIES.

1.7 Downloading Your Design to the UP3 Board

Hooking Up the UP3 Board to the Computer

If you have a UP2 board skip ahead to Section 1.8. To try your design on a UP3 board, plug the Byteblaster™ II cable into the UP3 board's JTAG connector (innermost of the two connectors on the left side of the board) and attach the other end to the parallel port on the PC (USB port if you are using a USB Blaster). If you have not done so already, make sure that the PC's BIOS setting for the printer port is ECP or EPP mode. Using the 6V AC to DC wall transformer attach power to the DC power connector (DC_IN) located on the lower right side of the UP3 board. Press in the power switch located on the right edge of the board above the power connector. When properly powered, two LEDs on the bottom of the UP3 board near the power connector should light up. A USB ByteBlaster can also be used, if one is available.

Preparing for Downloading

After checking to make sure that the cables are hooked up properly, you are ready to download the compiled circuit to the UP3 board. Select **Tools** ⇒ **Programmer**. Click on **Hardware Setup**, select the proper hardware, a **ByteBlasterII** on **LPT1**. (If a window comes up that displays, **No Hardware** to the right of the Hardware Setup button, use the Hardware Setup button to change currently selected hardware from **No Hardware** to **ByteblasterII**. If a red JTAG error message appears or the start button is not working, close down the Programmer window and reopen it. If this still doesn't correct the problem, then there is something else wrong with the setup or cable connection. Go back to the beginning of this section and check each step and connection carefully.) The new USB ByteBlaster can also be used.

Final Steps to Download

The filename orgate.sof should be displayed in the programmer window. The *.sof file contains the FPGA's configuration (programming) data for your design. To the right of the filename in the Program/Configure column, check the **Program/Configure** box. To start downloading your design to the board, click on the **Start** button. Just a few seconds are required to download. If download is successful, a green info message displays in the system window notifying you the programming was successful.

Testing Your Design

The locations of PB1, PB2, and the decimal LED are indicated in Figure 1.17. After downloading your program to the UP3 board, the LED in the lower left corner should turn off whenever a pushbutton is hit. Since the output of the OR gate is driving the LED signal, it should be on when no pushbuttons are hit. Since the buttons are active low, and the **BNOR2** gate also has active low inputs and output, hitting either button should turn off the LED.

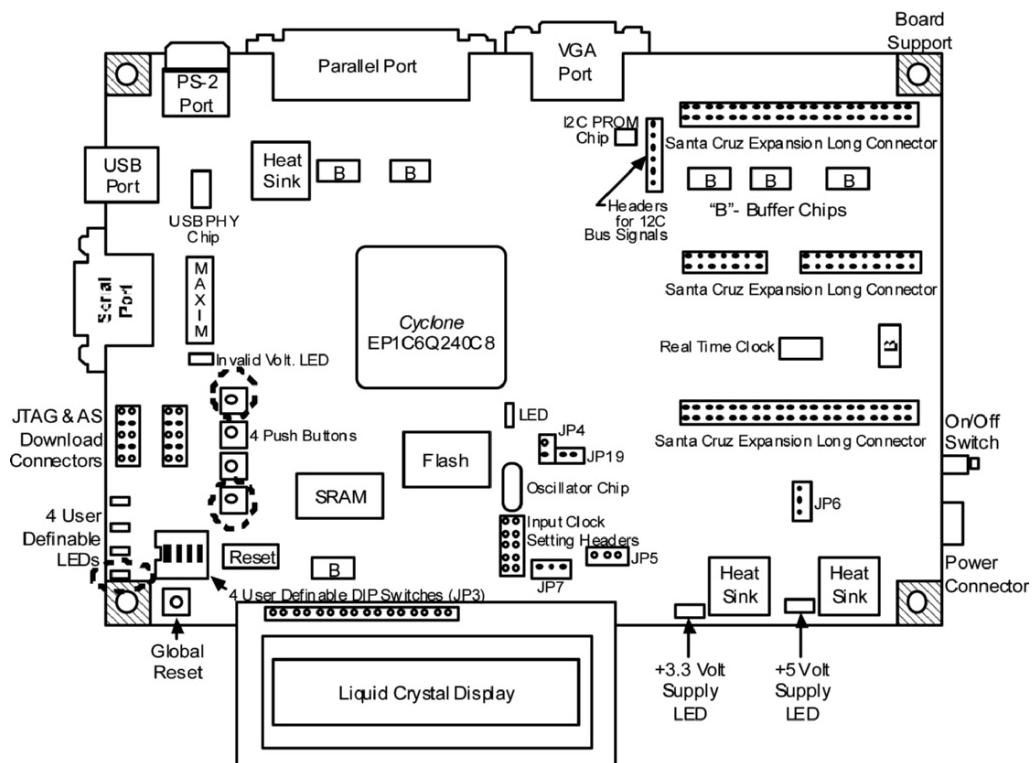


Figure 1.17 ALTERA UP3 board. Pushbuttons and LED locations used in the tutorial design are seen in the lower left corner (enclosed in dashed ellipses). Silk-screening found on the board identifies each switch and LED.

Congratulations! You have just entered, compiled, simulated, downloaded a design to a FPGA device, and verified its operation. Since you are using a UP3 board, you can skip the next section on the UP2 board and go directly to Section 1.9.

COMPLETED TUTORIAL FILES ARE AVAILABLE ON THE TEXT'S DVD.



IN THE BOOK'S DESIGN EXAMPLES, ADDITIONAL UP3 RELATED MATERIALS AND DESIGN FILES CAN BE FOUND IN THE **BOOKSOFT_FE\UP3\CHAPX** DIRECTORIES. THE **\UP3\1C12\CHAPX** DIRECTORIES CONTAINS DESIGNS FOR THE LARGER FPGA USED ON THE 1C12 VERSION OF THE UP3

1.8 Downloading Your Design to the UP2 or UP1 Board

Hooking Up the UP1 or UP 2 Board to the Computer

To try your design on a UP1 or UP2 board, plug the ByteBlaster cable into the UP board (top left) and attach the other end to the parallel port on a PC. If you have not done so already, make sure that the PC's BIOS setting for the printer port is ECP or EPP mode. Using a 9V AC to DC wall transformer or another 7 to 9V DC power source, attach power to the DC power connector (DC_IN) located on the upper left-hand corner of the UP3 board. When properly powered, one of the green LEDs on the board should light up.

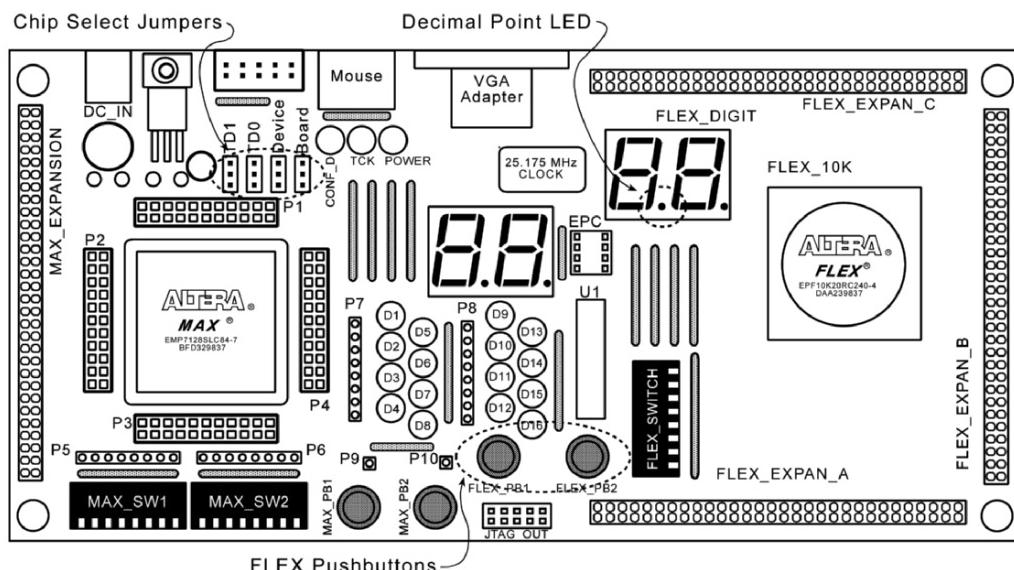


Figure 1.18 ALTERA UP2 board with jumper settings and PB1, PB2, and LED locations.

Verify that the device jumpers are set for the FLEX chip as shown in Table 1.2. The locations of the pushbuttons, PB1 and PB2, and the LED decimal point are also highlighted in Figure 1.18. (Note that for the MAX EPM7128 chip, the jumper pins are all set to the top position as indicated in Table 1.2.)

Table 1.2 Jumper settings for downloading to the MAX and FLEX devices.

MAX	FLEX
MAX Jumper Settings (P1-P4)	FLEX Jumper Settings (P1-P4)

Preparing for Downloading

After checking to make sure that the cables and jumpers are hooked up properly, you are ready to download the compiled circuit to the UP2 board. Select **Tools** ⇒ **Programmer**. Click on **Hardware Setup**, select the proper hardware, a **ByteBlasterII** on **LPT1**. (If a window comes up that displays, "**No Hardware**" to the right of the Hardware Setup button, use the Hardware Setup button to change currently selected hardware from "**No Hardware**" to "**ByteBlasterII**". If a red JTAG error message appears or the start button is not working, close down the Programmer window and reopen it. If this still doesn't correct the problem, then there is something else wrong with the setup or cable connection. Go back to the beginning of this section and check each step and connection carefully.) The new USB ByteBlaster can also be used.

Final Steps to Download

Make sure that the **Device Name** has changed to **EP10K20** or **EPF10K20RC240** for the UP1 or **EPF10K70RC240** for the UP2 (depending on the UP board and Quartus II version that you are running). Make sure you have also assigned the pin numbers for a UP2 board (see Table 1.1). If it does not display the correct device, then return to your schematic, assign the correct device first and then the pin numbers (See section 1.1.), recompile, and try again. Next, check the **Program/Configure** box.

The **Start** button in the programming window should now be highlighted. Click on the **Start** button to download to the UP2 board. Just a few seconds are required to download. If download is successful, a green info successful programmer operation message displays in the system window. (If the **Start** button is not highlighted, click **Hardware Setup** from the programmer window. Confirm the port settings and click **OK**. If you still have problems confirm that the printer port BIOS settings use ECP or EPP mode.)

Testing Your Design

The locations of PB1, PB2, and the decimal LED are indicated in Figure 1.19. On the UP2, one of the seven-segment LEDs decimal points is used for monitoring the LED output.

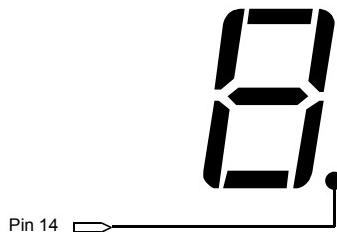


Figure 1.19 UP2's FLEX FPGA pin connection to seven-segment display decimal point.

All of these LEDs are pre-wired to the FPGA chip with a pull-up resistor as illustrated earlier in Figure 1.6. This configuration allows the external resistor

to control the amount of current through the LED; however, it also requires the FPGA chip to output a Low signal to turn on the LED. (Students regularly forget this point and have a fully working project with an inverted pattern on the LEDs.). V_{cc} is 5V on the UP2.

Figure 1.19 shows the UP2's Flex FPGA pin number 14 hard wired to the seven-segment LEDs decimal point. On the UP2, in this tutorial, only the decimal point will be used for output.

After downloading your program to the UP2 board, locate the two rightmost seven-segment displays. Since the output of the BNOR2 gate is driving the decimal LED signal on the left digit of the two seven-segment displays, it should be off (i.e., LED state is inverted on UP1 and UP2). Since the buttons are active low, and the **BNOR2** gate also has active low inputs and output, hitting either button should turn on the LED.

Congratulations! You have just entered, compiled, simulated, and downloaded a design to a FPGA device, and verified its operation.

COMPLETED TUTORIAL FILES ARE AVAILABLE ON THE TEXT'S DVD.



IN THE BOOK'S DESIGN EXAMPLES, ADDITIONAL UP2 RELATED MATERIALS
CAN BE FOUND IN THE **BOOKSOFT_FE\UP2\CHAPX** DIRECTORIES.

ADDITIONAL UP RELATED MATERIALS CAN BE FOUND IN THE
\UP1\CHAPX DIRECTORIES.

1.9 The 10 Minute VHDL Entry Tutorial

As an alternative to schematic capture, a hardware description language such as VHDL or Verilog can be used. In large designs, these languages greatly increase productivity and reduce design cycle time. Logic minimization and synthesis to a netlist are automatically performed by the compiler and synthesis tools. (A netlist is a textual representation of a schematic.) As an example, to perform addition, the VHDL statement:

A <= B + C;

will automatically generate an addition logic circuit with the correct number of bits to generate the new value of A. Using the OR-gate design from the Schematic Entry Tutorial, we will now create the same circuit using VHDL.

PRIOR KNOWLEDGE OF VHDL IS NOT NEEDED TO COMPLETE THIS TUTORIAL.

Using a Template to Begin the Entry Process

Choose **File** \Rightarrow **New**, select **VHDL File** and **OK**. Place the cursor within the text area, right click the mouse, and select **Insert Template**. Make sure **VHDL** is selected. (Note the different prewritten templates. These are provided to expedite the entry of VHDL.) Select **VHDL** \Rightarrow **Constructs** \Rightarrow **Design Units** \Rightarrow **Entity Declaration**. This template is the one you will generally start with since it also sets up the input and output declarations. The template for the ENTITY declaration appears in the Insert Template preview window. Click **Insert** and then **Close** to paste the template in your VHDL window. Since the editor knows that it is a VHDL source file, the text will appear in different context-sensitive colors. VHDL keywords appear in blue and strings in purple and comments are green. The color information should be used to detect minor syntax errors while still in the text editor.

Saving the VHDL Source File

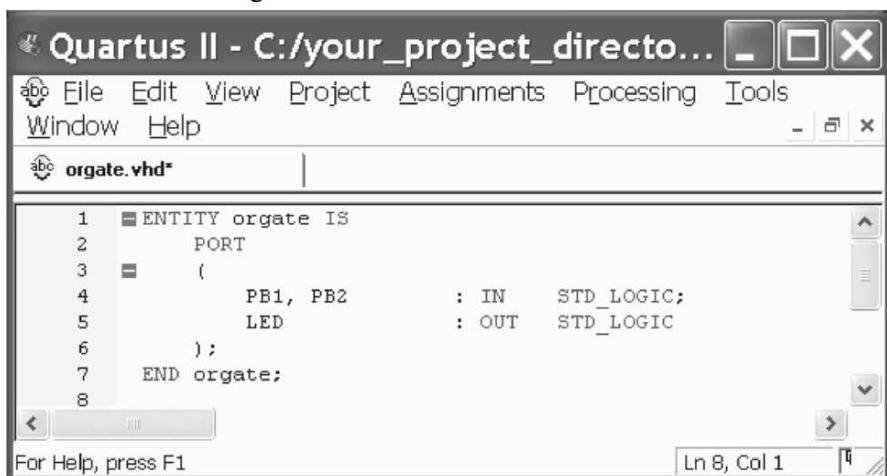
Select **File** \Rightarrow **Save As** and save the file as **orgate.vhd** – click **Save**.

Replacing Comments in the VHDL Code

The entire string indicating the position of the entity name, **<entity_name>**, should be set to the name used for the filename – in this case, **orgate**. There are two occurrences of **<entity_name>** in the text. Find and change both accordingly.

Declaring the I/O Pins

The input and output pins, PB1, PB2 and LED need to be specified in the PORT declaration. Since there are no input vectors, bi-directional I/O pins, or GENERIC declarations in this design, remove all of these lines. The source file should look like Figure 1.20.



The screenshot shows the Quartus II software interface with the title bar "Quartus II - C:/your_project_directory..." and the menu bar including File, Edit, View, Project, Assignments, Processing, Tools, Window, and Help. The main window displays the VHDL source code for "orgate.vhd". The code is as follows:

```

1  ENTITY orgate IS
2      PORT
3      (
4          PB1, PB2      : IN STD_LOGIC;
5          LED          : OUT STD_LOGIC
6      );
7  END orgate;
8

```

The code is color-coded: ENTITY, END, and PORT are in blue; STD_LOGIC is in purple; and the pin names PB1, PB2, and LED are in black. The status bar at the bottom right indicates "Ln 8, Col 1".

Figure 1.20 VHDL Entity declaration text.

Setting up the Architecture Body

Click the mouse at the bottom of the text field. (We will be inserting another template here.) Following the earlier procedure for selecting a VHDL template (start with a right click), select **VHDL** \Rightarrow **Constructs** \Rightarrow **Design Units** \Rightarrow **Architecture Body**. (The **Architecture Body** specifies the internal logic of the design.) The syntax for the **Architecture Body** appears in the text window after the other text. (You can now see why the template is left highlighted – had you not placed your cursor first, text would have appeared at your last cursor position. If you do misplace the template, hitting the Edit Undo key removes the new text.)

Editing the Architecture Body

Change the entity name in the **ARCHITECTURE** statement to **orgate**. Template lines with a "--" preceding a comment, need to be edited appropriately for each particular design. Delete the signal declaration line since this simple design does not require internal signals. Delete the remaining comment lines after BEGIN that start with "--", and insert **LED <= NOT (NOT PB1 OR NOT PB2)** as a single line. (This line contains a deliberate syntax error that will be detected and fixed later.) Insert the following two lines at the beginning of the text file to define the libraries for the **STD_LOGIC** data type.

```
LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.all;
```

This is the preferred data type for bits in VHDL. The file should now appear similar to Figure 1.21.

```
1 LIBRARY IEEE;
2 USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.all;
3
4 ENTITY orgate IS
5     PORT
6     (
7         PB1, PB2      : IN      STD_LOGIC;
8         LED          : OUT      STD_LOGIC
9     );
10 END orgate;
11 ARCHITECTURE a OF orgate IS
12 BEGIN
13     LED <= NOT( NOT PB1 OR NOT PB2 )|
14 END a;
15
```

Figure 1.21 VHDL OR-gate model (with syntax error).

Before You Compile

Before you compile the VHDL code, the FPGA device type and pin numbers need to be assigned with **Assignments** \Rightarrow **Device** and **Assignments** \Rightarrow **Pin**. If your pins are already defined from the earlier Schematic Entry Tutorial, just confirm the pin assignments. If you did not do this step earlier in the tutorial see the device and pin assignment instructions at the end of section 1.1. At this point, VHDL code is generally ready to be compiled, simulated, and downloaded to the board using steps identical to those used earlier in the schematic entry method. Once pin assignments are made, they are stored in the project's *.qsf file.

1.10 Compiling the VHDL Design

The Compile process checks for syntax errors, synthesizes the logic design, produces timing information for simulation, fits the design on the FPGA, and generates the file required to program the FPGA. After any changes are made to the design files or pin assignments, the project should always be re-compiled prior to simulation or programming.

```


1 LIBRARY IEEE;
2 USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.all;
3
4 ENTITY orgate IS
5 PORT
6 (
7     PB1, PB2      : IN STD_LOGIC;
8     LED          : OUT STD_LOGIC
9 );
10 END orgate;
11 ARCHITECTURE a OF orgate IS
12 BEGIN
13     LED <= NOT( NOT PB1 OR NOT PB2 );
14 END a;


```

Type Message

- Info: Processing started: Tue May 15 10:37:33 2007
- Info: Command: quartus_map --read_settings_files=on --write_settings_files=off orgate -c orgate
- Error (10500): VHDL syntax error at orgate.vhd(14) near text "END"; expecting ";"
- Info: Found 0 design units, including 0 entities, in source file orgate.vhd
- Error: Quartus II Analysis & Synthesis was unsuccessful. 1 error, 0 warnings
- Info: Allocated 150 megabytes of memory during processing
- Error: Processing ended: Tue May 15 10:37:41 2007
- Error: Elapsed time: 00:00:08
- Error: Quartus II Full Compilation was unsuccessful. 1 error, 0 warnings

Messages: 6 of 12 | Location 1: line 14, column 0, C:/your_project_directory/orgate.vhd | Locate

Figure 1.22 VHDL compilation with a syntax error.

Select **Project** \Rightarrow **ADD/REMOVE FILES IN CURRENT PROJECT**. Confirm that the new orgate.vhd file is now part of project and **remove** the tutorial's earlier

orgate.bdf file that the new VHDL file replaces from the project's file list, if it is present. Click **OK**. Start the compiler with **Processing** \Rightarrow **Start Compilation**.

Checking for Compile Warnings and Errors

The project should compile with an error. After compiling the VHDL code, a window indicating an error should appear. The result should look something like Figure 1.22.

Double click on the first red error line and note that the cursor is placed in the editor either on or after the line missing the semicolon (;). VHDL statements should end with a semicolon. Add the semicolon to the end of the line so that it is now reads:

```
LED <= NOT ( NOT PB1 OR NOT PB2 );
```

Now, recompile, and you should have no errors. You can simulate your VHDL code using steps identical to the tutorial's earlier schematic version of the project.

Viewing the Synthesized Logic in a Schematic

You can view the logic automatically generated by the VHDL synthesis tools using **Tools** \Rightarrow **Netlist Viewers** \Rightarrow **RTL Schematic**, after a successful compilation. A schematic of the logic synthesized by your VHDL code will be displayed as seen in Figure 1.23. This is a handy way to double check simple logic designs when first becoming familiar with VHDL or Verilog hardware description languages and their associated automatic logic synthesis tools.

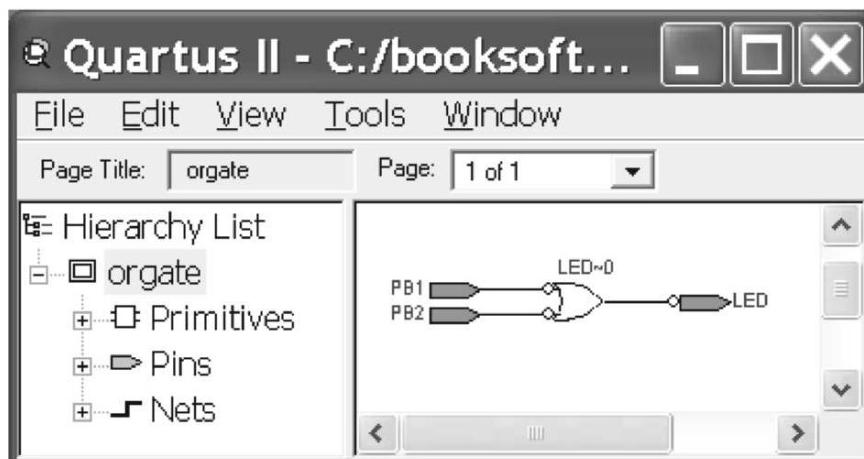


Figure 1.23 Logic schematic that was automatically synthesized from the VHDL code.

1.11 The 10 Minute Verilog Entry Tutorial

Verilog is another widely used hardware description language (HDL). Verilog and VHDL have roughly the same capabilities. VHDL is based on a PASCAL style syntax and Verilog is based on the C language. In large designs, HDLs greatly increase productivity and reduce design cycle time. Logic minimization and synthesis are automatically performed by the compiler and synthesis tools. Just like the previous VHDL example, to perform addition, the Verilog statement:

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C};$$

will automatically generate an addition logic circuit with the correct number of bits to generate the new value of A.

Using the OR-gate design from the Schematic Entry Tutorial and the VHDL Tutorial, we will now create the same circuit in Verilog.

PRIOR KNOWLEDGE OF VERILOG IS NOT NEEDED TO COMPLETE THIS TUTORIAL.

Using a Template to Begin the Entry Process

Choose **File** \Rightarrow **New**, select **Verilog HDL File** and **OK**. Place the cursor within the text area, right click the mouse, and select **Insert Template** and then select **Verilog HDL**. (Note the different prewritten templates. These are built to expedite the entry of Verilog.) Select **Constructs** \Rightarrow **Design Units** \Rightarrow **Module Declaration (style 2)** – this declaration is the one you will generally start with since it also sets up the input and output declarations. Click **Insert** then **Close** and the template for the module declaration appears in the Text editor. Since the editor knows that it is a Verilog source file, the text will appear in different context-sensitive colors. Verilog keywords appear in blue and strings in purple and comments in green. The color information should be used to detect minor syntax errors while still in the text editor.

Saving the new Verilog File

Select **File** \Rightarrow **Save As**. Note the automatic extension is **.v** (Verilog) and save the file as **orgate.v** – click **Save**.

Replacing Comments in the Verilog Code

The entire string indicating the position of the entity name, **<module_name>**, should be set to the name used for the filename – in this case, **orgate**. There is one occurrence of **<module_name>** in the text. Find and change it accordingly. Lines starting with // are comments and these will need to be replaced with the appropriate Verilog code.

Declaring the I/O Pins

The input pins, PB1 and PB2, and the output pin, LED, need to be specified in the arguments of the Module statement and Port declaration. Since there are no ‘inout pins’, ‘wire’, ‘reg’, or ‘integer’ declarations, or Always statements in this design, remove all of these lines. The source file should now look similar to Figure 1.24.

```

1  module orgate (PB1, PB2, LED);
2
3      input PB1, PB2;
4      output LED;
5
6
7  endmodule

```

Figure 1.24 Verilog module declaration text.

Setting up the Behavioral Code

Click the mouse to just before the line starting with “endmodule”. (We will be inserting another template here.) Following the earlier procedure for selecting a Verilog template (start with a right click), select a **Constructs** ⇒ **Module Items** ⇒ **Continuous Assignment**. (A single assign statement will specify the internal logic of this design.) The syntax for a **Continuous Assignment Statement** appears in the text window after the other text. (You can now see why the template is left highlighted – had you not placed your cursor first, text would have appeared at your last cursor position. If you do misplaced the template, hitting the delete key removes the highlighted text.)

Editing the Continuous Assignment Statement

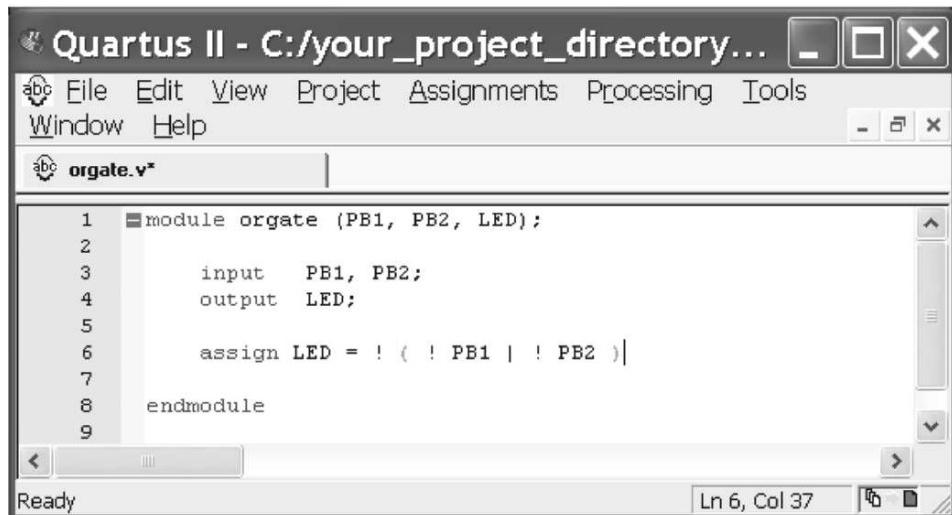
Change the <net lvalue> in the assign statement to "LED" and <value> to:

! (! PB1 | ! PB2);

Verilog is based on C and “|” (vertical line) is the bit wise OR operator. The “!” (exclamation point) is the NOT operator. Delete the remaining comment lines that start with “//”. Delete the ";" at the end of the assign LED statement (This causes a deliberate syntax error that will be detected and fixed later.) The file should now appear as in Figure 1.25.

Before You Compile

Before you compile the Verilog code, the FPGA device type and pin numbers need to be assigned with **Assignments \Rightarrow Device** and **Assignments \Rightarrow Pin**. If your pins are already defined from the earlier Schematic Entry Tutorial, just confirm the pin assignments. If you did not do this step earlier in the tutorial see the device and pin assignment instructions at the end of Section 1.1.



The screenshot shows the Quartus II software interface with the title bar "Quartus II - C:/your_project_directory...". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Project, Assignments, Processing, Tools, Window, and Help. The main window displays a Verilog source code file named "orgate.v". The code defines a module "orgate" with two inputs (PB1, PB2) and one output (LED). The logic is implemented using an assign statement: `assign LED = ! (! PB1 | ! PB2);`. The code editor shows line numbers 1 through 9. The status bar at the bottom right indicates "Ln 6, Col 37".

```
1 module orgate (PB1, PB2, LED);
2
3     input PB1, PB2;
4     output LED;
5
6     assign LED = ! ( ! PB1 | ! PB2 );
7
8 endmodule
9
```

Figure 1.25 Verilog active low OR-gate model (with syntax error).

At this point, Verilog code is generally ready to be compiled, simulated, and downloaded to the board using steps identical to those used earlier in the schematic entry method. Once pin assignments are made, they are stored in the project's *.qsf file.

1.12 Compiling the Verilog Design

The Compile process checks for syntax errors, synthesizes the logic design, produces timing information for simulation, fits the design on the FPGA, and generates the file required to program the FPGA. After any changes are made to the design files or pin assignments, the project should always be re-compiled prior to simulation or programming.

Select **Project \Rightarrow ADD/Remove Files in Current Project**. Confirm that the new **orgate.v** file is now part of project and **remove** the tutorial's earlier **orgate.bdf** or **orgate.vhd** files that the new Verilog file replaces from the project if either file is present. Click **OK**. Start the compiler with **Processing \Rightarrow Start Compilation**.

Checking for Compile Warnings and Errors

The project will compile with an error. After compiling the Verilog code, a window indicating an error should appear. (See Figure 1.26.)

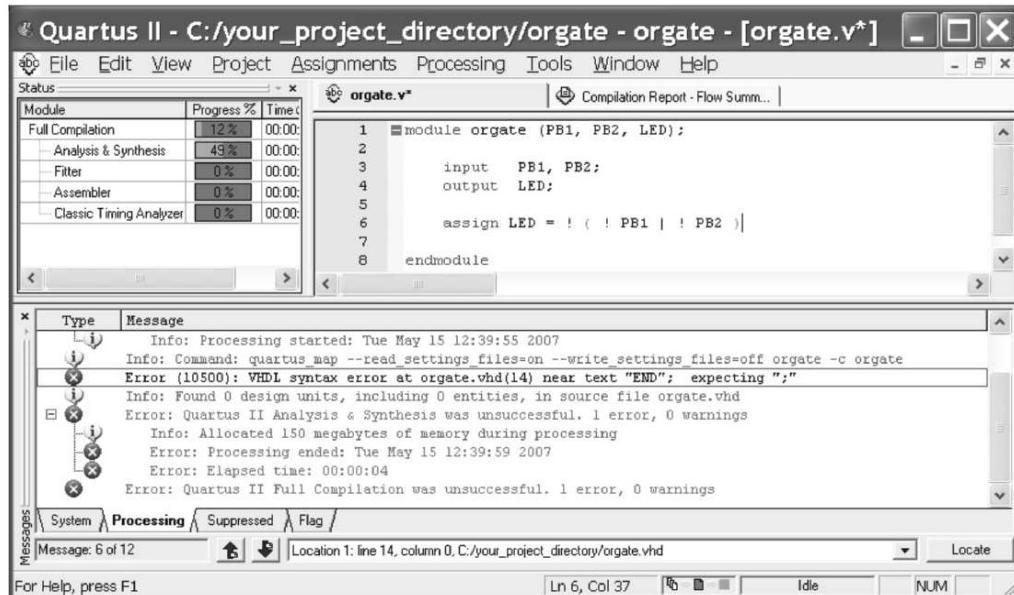


Figure 1.26 Verilog compilation with a syntax error.

Double click on the first red error line and note that the cursor is placed in the editor either on or after the line missing the semicolon (;). Verilog statements should end with a semicolon. Add the semicolon to the end of the line so that it is now reads:

```
assign LED = !( ! PB1 | ! PB2 );
```

Now, recompile, and you should have no errors. You can simulate your Verilog code using steps identical to the tutorial's earlier schematic version of the project. You can also view a schematic of the synthesized logic using **Tools** \Rightarrow **Netlist Viewers** \Rightarrow **RTL Schematic** similar to the steps previously outlined in the VHDL tutorial.

1.13 Timing Analysis

With every physical device, there are timing considerations. An FPGA's timing is affected by:

- Input buffer delays,
- Signal routing interconnect delays within the FPGA,
- The internal logic delays (in this case the OR), and
- Output buffer delays.

The timing analysis tool can be used to determine:

- The physical delay times and
- The maximum clock rates in your design.

Starting the Analyzer

At the top menu, select **Processing** \Rightarrow **Compilation Report** and then in the Compilation Report window, **expand Timing Analyzer** and **select tpd**. A matrix of input to output delay times for the project will be computed and displayed as seen in Figure 1.27.

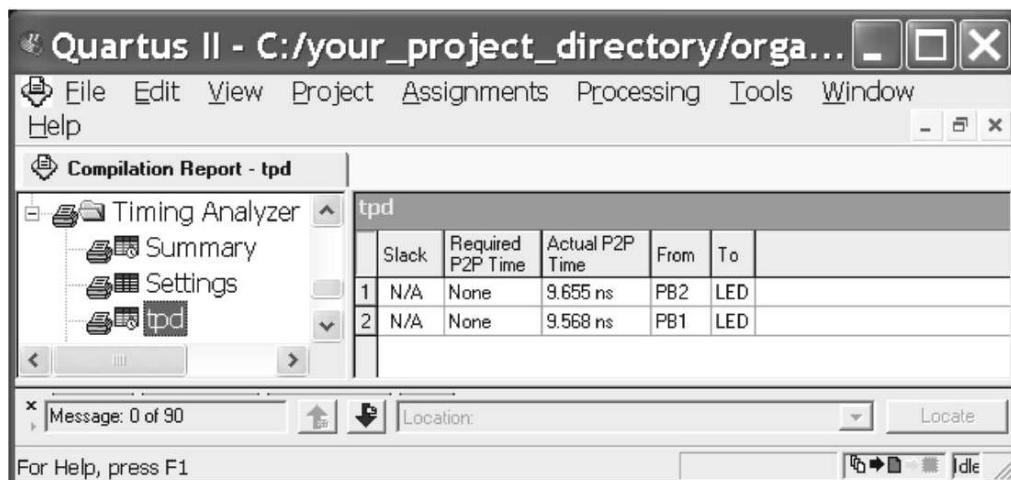


Figure 1.27 Timing analyzer showing input to output signal propagation timing delays.

Note that this is the same delay time seen in the simulator. These times include the input-to-output buffer delays at the pins and the interconnect delays inside the FPGA. The internal OR logic delay is only around a nanosecond relative to the rest of the device delay.

The exact time shown will vary with different versions of the Altera CAD tools, the different FPGA chips found on the various boards, and different FPGA chip speed grades. Other timing analysis options include setup times, hold times, and clock rates for sequential circuits.

1.14 The Floorplan Editor

A floorplan editor is a visual tool to assist expert users in manually placing and moving portions of logic circuits to different logic cells inside the FPGA. This is done in an attempt to achieve faster timing or better utilization of the FPGA.

Floorplanning is typically used only on very large designs that contain subsections of hardware with critical high-speed timing. Since the interconnect delays are as large as the design's logic delays, logic element and I/O pin placement is very critical in high speed designs. Vertical and horizontal interconnect buses are used through the FPGA to connect Logic Elements.

For all but expert users, the compiler's automatic place-and-route tools should be used. Automatic place-and-route was already performed by the fitter in the compile process of the tutorial. Timing constraints for critical signals can also be specified in some FPGA place and routing tools to help the fitter meet the design's timing goals.

To see the fitter's automatic placement of the design inside the FPGA, select **Assignment** \Rightarrow **Back-Annotate Assignments**, click **OK** and then **Assignments** \Rightarrow **Timing Closure Floorplan**. In the display that opens, zoom in and scroll around to find the colored logic element and gray shaded I/O pins used in your design. Find and select the colored Logic Element (LE), then **View** \Rightarrow **Routing** \Rightarrow **show fan in** and then **show fan out**, and a view like Figure 1.28 showing the design can be produced for the DE1.

There is a lot of empty space since the Cyclone II EP2C20 FPGA contains 18,752 Logic Elements (LEs) and 315 I/O pins. Only 1 LE and three I/O pins were used in this design. If you move the logic cell or I/O pins to other locations, it will make small changes to the circuit timing because of changes in the interconnect delays inside the FPGA.

Due to the vast number of possible combinations, FPGA CAD tools cannot explore every possible placement and routing option. The Quartus II Design Space Explorer tool can also be used to search and explore other design options in the design space. Large FPGA designs containing millions of gates can require several hours or even days of CPU time to examine many of the different place and route alternatives in the design space.

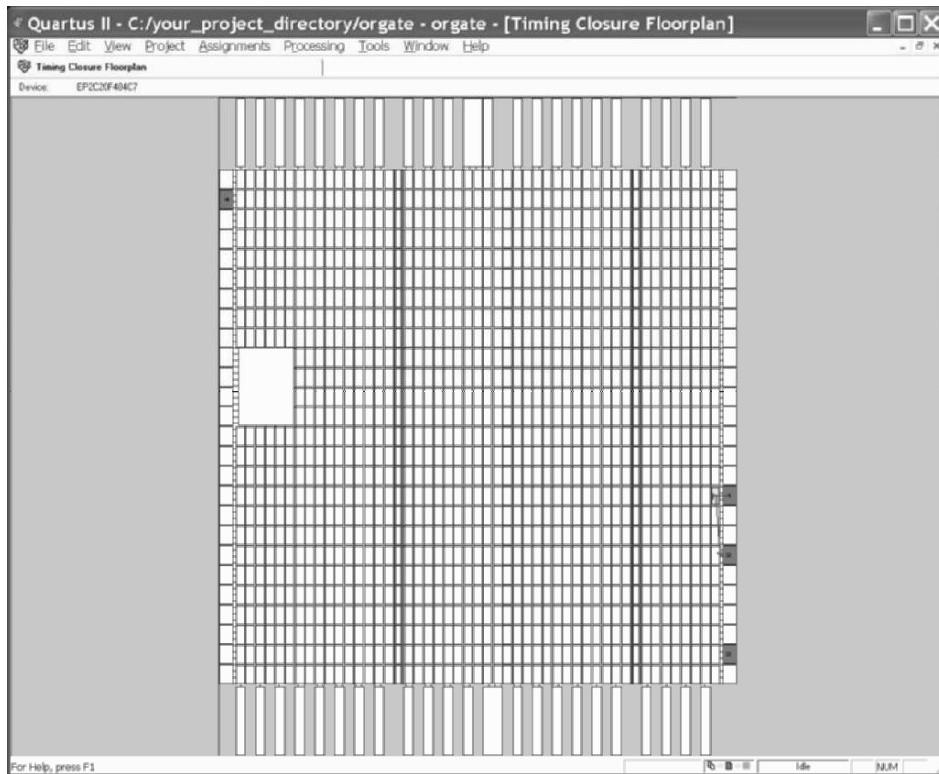


Figure 1.28 Floorplan view showing the internal FPGA I/O and LE placements of an OR-gate on a DE1. User logic and pins used in the design are seen as shaded areas in the lower right corner.

1.15 Symbols and Hierarchy

The Symbol Editor is used to edit or create a symbol to represent a logic circuit. Symbols can be created for a design whenever a VHDL or Verilog file is compiled. Create a symbol for your VHDL design by opening the orgate.vhd file, and then select **File ⇒ Create/Update ⇒ Create Symbol Files for Current File**.

Select **File ⇒ Open**, change the file type setting for *.bsf, find and chose **orgate.bsf** to see the new symbol for your VHDL based design as shown in Figure 1.29. Inputs are typically shown on the left side of the symbol and outputs on the right side. Symbols are used for design hierarchy in more complex schematics. This new symbol can be used to add the circuit to a design with the graphic editor just like the BNOR2 symbol that was used earlier in the tutorial. Double clicking on a symbol in the graphic editor will open a pop-up requesting, “Select one design file.” Selecting the appropriate *.vhd, *.v, or *.bdf, file takes the user to the underlying Verilog, VHDL, or graphic file respectively by opening the underlying file in a different screen tab.

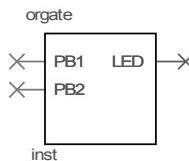


Figure 1.29 ORgate design symbol.

1.16 Functional Simulation

In large designs with long compile and simulation times, a faster *functional* simulation is commonly used initially. This type of simulation does not include device delay times and it is used solely to check for logic errors. Although a functional simulation is good for finding logic errors, a timing simulation is still necessary to check for any timing related errors as illustrated earlier in the tutorial.

Performing a Functional Simulation

To perform a functional simulation, set the simulator for functional simulation with **Assignments** \Rightarrow **Settings**. Select **Simulator Settings** in the left column and then change the simulation mode from **Timing** to **Functional**. Run **Processing** \Rightarrow **Generate Functional Simulation Netlist**. Finally, select **Processing** \Rightarrow **Start Simulation**. Open the Simulation Report waveform and note that the output changes without any delay in response to an input, unlike the earlier timing simulation. To switch back to a timing-mode simulation, change the simulator setting back to timing, recompile, and restart the simulation.

This short tutorial has gone through the basics of a simple design using a common path through the design tools. As you continue to work with the tools, you will want to explore more of the menus, options and shortcuts. Chapter 4 contains a tutorial that will introduce a more complex design example. In Quartus II, **Help** \Rightarrow **Tutorial** also contains more tutorials. Quartus II video tutorials and reference manuals are also available online at Altera's website, www.altera.com.

A number of files such as the *.q* files are maintained in the project directory to support a design. Appendix B contains a list of different file extensions used by Quartus II. One of the more important files in a project is the *.qsf file. It contains the device type and pin assignments along with a number of other project settings.

1.17 Laboratory Exercises

1. The tutorials ORed the active low signals from the pushbuttons and produced an output that was required to be low to turn off an LED. This was accomplished with the "negative-logic OR" gate illustrated to the left in Figure 1.30.

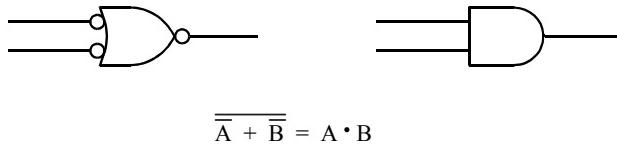


Figure 1.30 Equivalent gates: A negative logic OR and a positive-logic AND.

We know from DeMorgan's Law that the equation in Figure 1.25 represents an equivalence. We should therefore be able to substitute a simple two-input AND gate as illustrated in Figure 1.29 and accomplish the same task as the single gate used in the tutorial. Substitute the AND2 gate for the BNOR2 gate in the schematic capture, then compile, simulate, and download the AND circuit. What can you conclude?

2. Substitute in the VHDL code:

LED <= PB1 AND PB2;

Or into the Verilog code:

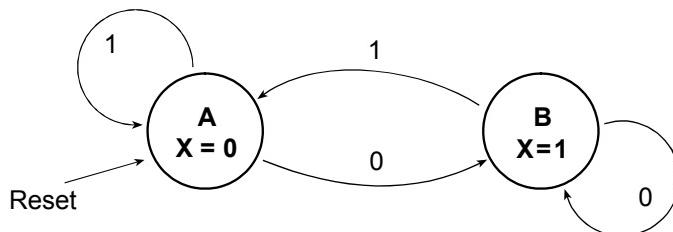
assign LED = PB1 & PB2;

Compile, simulate, and download and test the new circuit. What can you conclude about gate equivalence using DeMorgan's Theorem?

3. Design a logic circuit to turn on the LED when both pushbuttons are pressed. Compile, simulate, and download the new circuit.
4. Try a different logic function such as XOR. Start at the beginning or edit your existing schematic by deleting and replacing the BNOR2 symbol. Next repeat the tutorial steps to compile, simulate, download and test.
5. Repeat problem 2 for all of the basic gates including, OR, NOR, NAND, XOR, XNOR, and NOT. Try using different LEDs and output your results simultaneously. Look up the pin connections for the FPGA chip in Table 2.4 and be sure to give each pinout a different name.
6. Design, enter, simulate and implement a more complex logic gate network. One suggestion is a half adder. You will need two LED outputs.

7. In the schematic editor, try building the design with some 74xx TTL parts from the others maxplus2 symbol library.
8. Draw a schematic and develop a simulation to test the 2-to-1 Mux function in the others maxplus2 symbol library.
9. View the orgate.rpt file and find the device utilization, the pin assignments, and the netlist. A substantial portion of the time delay in this simple logic design is the input and output buffer delays and the internal routing of this signal inside the FPGA. Find this delay time by removing the BNOR2 gate and one of the inputs in the schematic. Connect the input pin to the output pin, recompile and rerun the timing analyzer to estimate this time delay.
10. Use the chip editor to move the logic cell used in the OR-gate design to another location inside the FPGA. For information of the chip editor, use the Quartus II Help function. Try moving the LE used several columns farther away from the pushbutton and LED pins. Not all locations of the logic cell will work and some trial and error will be required. Save the edited design, rerun the timing analyzer, and compare the resulting time delays with the original time delays. See if you are able to achieve a faster implementation than the automatic place-and-route tools.
11. Remove the pin number constraints from the schematic and let the compiler assign the pin locations. Rerun the timing analyzer and compare the time delays. Are they faster or slower than having specified the input pins?
12. If you are using a UP2 board, retarget the example design to the MAX chip. Pin numbers for the MAX decimal point LED can be found in the UP2 User manual. It will be necessary to connect jumper wires from the MAX header to the pushbuttons. Select pins near the pushbuttons. Pin numbers can be seen on the board's silk-screen. Compare the timing from the MAX implementation to the Flex implementation.
13. If a storage oscilloscope or a fast logic analyzer is available, compare the predicted delay times from the simulation and timing analysis to the actual delays measured on the FPGA board. Force the pins to a header connector so that you can attach probes to the signal wires.
14. Draw a schematic that uses the LPM_ADD_SUB megafunction to add two signed numbers on the Cyclone device. Use **Tools** \Rightarrow **Megawizard** to start the megawizard to help configure LPM symbols. Verify the proper operation using a simulation with two 4-bit numbers. Do not use pipelining, clock, or carry in. Vary the number of bits in the adder and find the maximum delay time using the timing analyzer. Plot delay time versus number of bits for adder sizes of 4, 8, 16, 32, and 64 bits. Using the LC percentages listed in the compiler's report file, estimate the hardware size in LEs. Plot LEs required versus number of bits.

15. Use the DFF part from the primitives storage library and enter the symbol in a schematic using the graphical editor. Develop a simulation that exercises all of the features of the D flip-flop. Use Help on DFF for more information on this primitive.
16. Use the DFFE part from the primitives storage library and enter the symbol in a schematic using the graphical editor. Develop a simulation that exercises all of the features of the D flip-flop with a clock enable. Use Help on DFFE for more information on this primitive.
17. Use gates and a DFF part from the primitives storage library with graphical entry to implement the state machine shown in the following state diagram. Verify correct operation with a simulation using the Altera CAD tools. The simulation should exercise all arcs in the state diagram. A and B are the two states, X is the output and Y is the input. Use the timing analyzer's **Processing** \Rightarrow **Classic Timing Analyzer Tool** \Rightarrow **Registered performance** option tab to determine the maximum clock frequency on the Cyclone device. Reset is asynchronous and the DFF Q output should be high for state B.



18. Repeat the previous problem but use one-hot encoding on the state machine. For one-hot encoding use two flip-flops with only one active for each state. For state A the flip-flop outputs would be "10" and for state B "01". One-hot encoding is common in FPGAs.

CHAPTER 2

FPGA Development Board Hardware and I/O Features

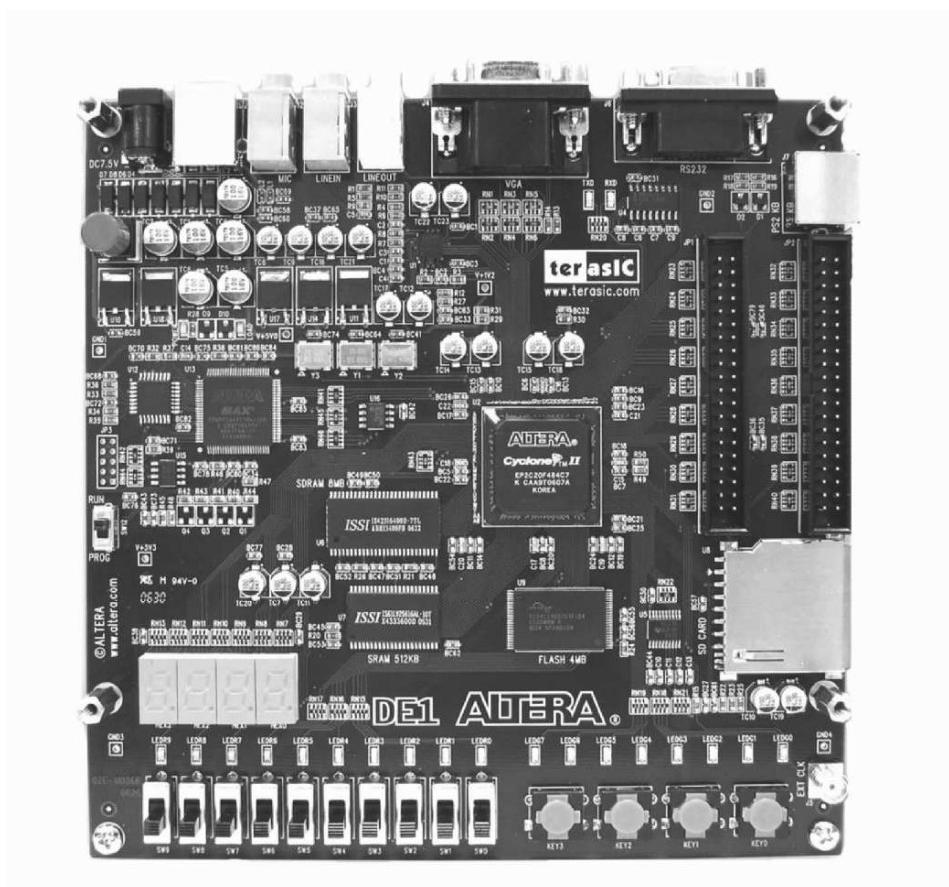


Photo: The Altera DE1 board contains a Cyclone II FPGA, external SRAM, SDRAM & Flash memory, and a wide assortment of I/O devices and connectors.

2 FPGA Development Board Hardware and I/O Features

Each of the five different FPGA boards (DE1, DE1, UP3, UP2, and UP1) have a slightly different feature set of logic, I/O interfaces, memory and other assorted hardware. As long as the FPGA board has enough logic and it has the required I/O features, a project can be implemented on any of the boards.

FPGAs are available in a wide range of sizes with different feature sets. In general, FPGAs with more logic, more I/O pins, higher speed, or more memory are more expensive. When designing new products, choosing the FPGA with the proper feature set at the lowest cost is an important design consideration.

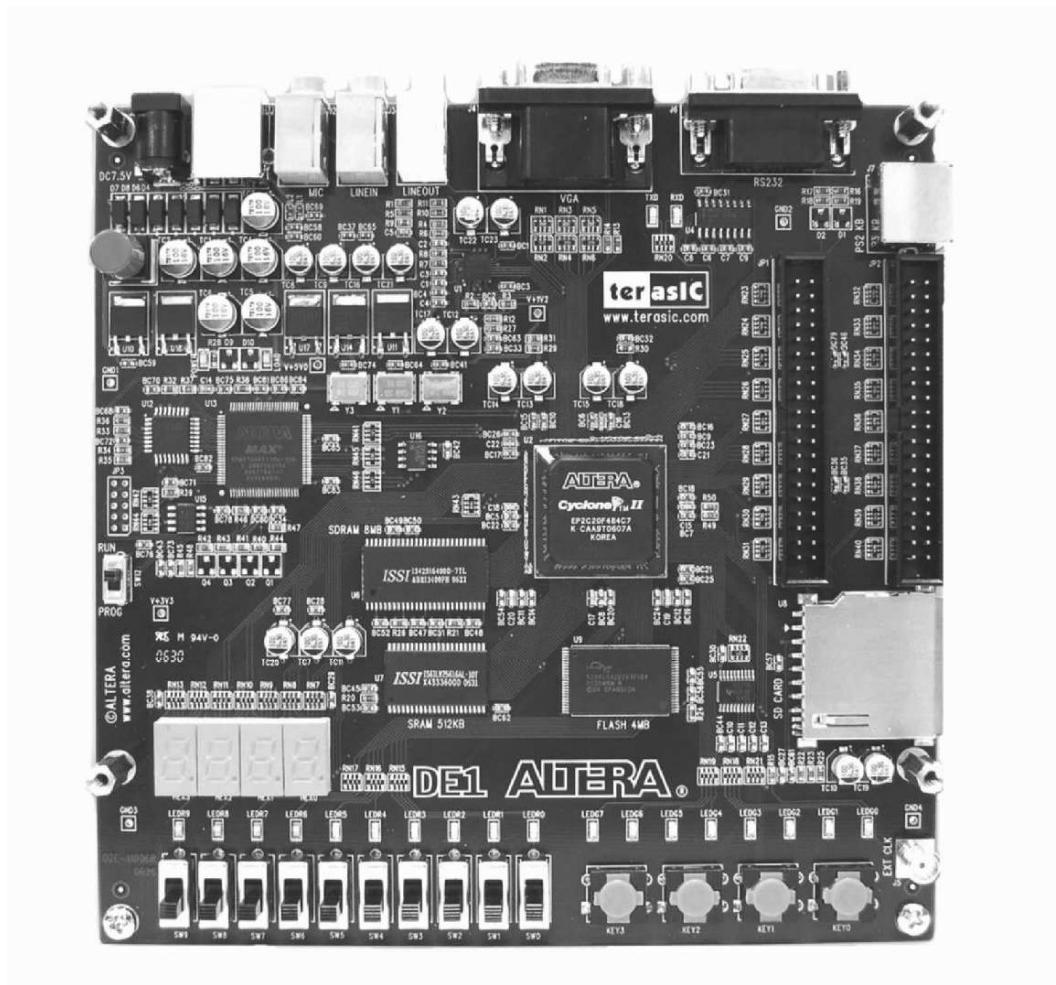


Figure 2.1 The Altera DE1 board has a number of onboard I/O devices.

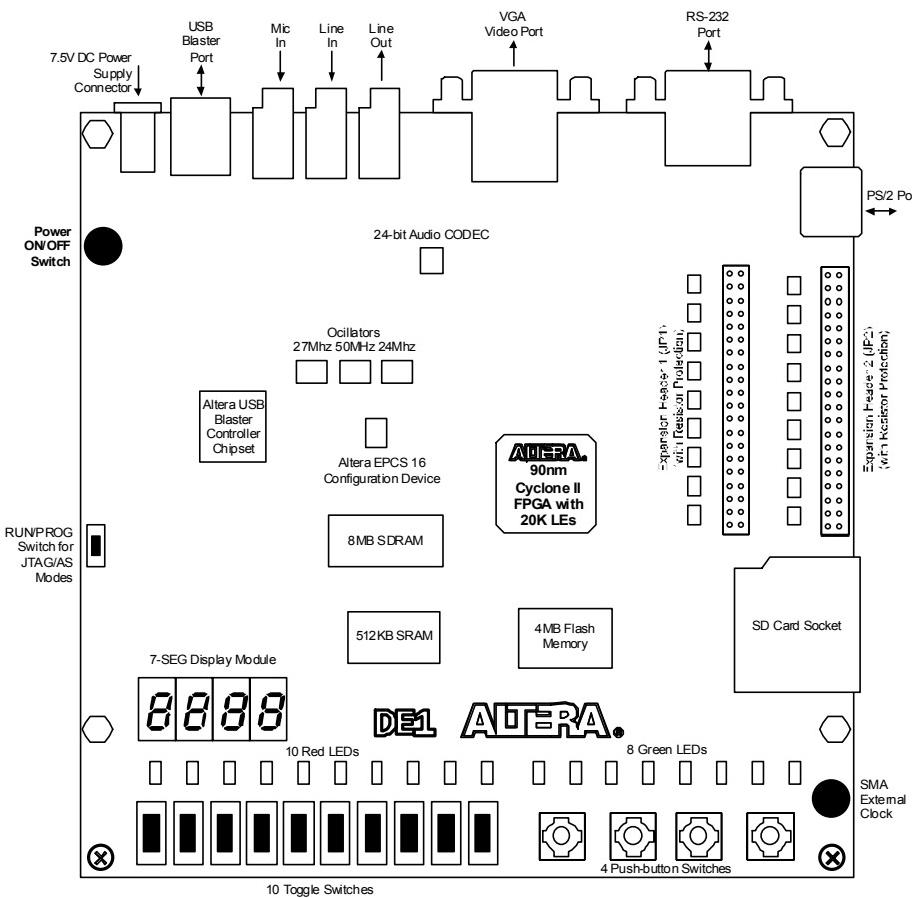


Figure 2.2 The Altera DE1 board's I/O features.

2.1 FPGA and External Hardware Features

On each of the boards, the FPGA is the large square chip located near the center of the development board. Locate the FPGA chip on the DE1 board as seen in Figures 2.1 and 2.2. Each of the various board's FPGAs has a different array of features. These are summarized for the different boards in Table 2.1. Each FPGA has a different number of logic elements (LE) that are used to implement user logic. They also contain varying amounts of both internal embedded memory blocks and the newer boards also have external memory.

FPGAs such as the Cyclone II found on the DE1 and DE2 boards are designed to support Digital Signal Processing (DSP) applications, so they also contain hardware integer multipliers.

On larger FPGAs, phase locked loops (PLLs) are used to divide, multiply, and shift the phase of clock signals. Remember that you must always compile your design for the correct board's FPGA device and pin assignments or it will not download to the device and operate correctly.

Table 2.1 FPGA and Hardware Features of the different development boards.

FPGA & Hardware Features	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2 & 1
Introduction Year	2006	2006	2004	2001 & 1999
FPGA Family	Cyclone II	Cyclone II	Cyclone	Flex10K
Logic Elements (LEs)	18,752	35,000	6,000 (1C6) or 12,000 (1C12)	3,744 or 1,152 (UP1)
Approximate Max. Logic Gate Count¹	500,000	1,000,000	189,000 (1C6) or 378,000	118,000 or 63,000(UP1)
FPGA Device Part Number	EP2C20F484C7	EP2C35F672 C6	EP1C6Q240C8 or (1C12) EP1C12Q240C 8	EPF10K70 RC240-4 or EPF10K20 RC240-4 (UP1)
Memory in bits	204K bits	483K bits	80K or 208K bits	18K bits 12K (UP1)
PLLs	4	4	2	No
Integer 18 by 18 bit Multipliers	26	35	No	No
External Clocks	24, 27, 50 Mhz	27, 50Mhz	48, 66, or 100Mhz	25Mhz
External SRAM Memory	256K by 16 bits	256K by 16 bits	64k by 16 bits	No
External SDRAM Memory	1M by 16 bits with 4 banks	1M by 16 bits with 4 banks	1M by 16 bits	No
Ext. Flash Memory	4M by 8 bits	4M by 8 bits	1M by 8 bits	No
Nios II Processor SoC Designs Supported	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

2.2 The FPGA Board's Memory Features

In addition to the FPGA's internal memory, the newer boards provide several external ROM and RAM memory devices as seen in Table 2.1. Capacities of external memory are much larger than the internal memory, but they will have a slower access time.

FPGA processor cores such as the Nios II used in System-on-a-Chip (SoC) designs use external memory for program and data memory, and typically use the FPGA's smaller and faster internal memory for register files and a cache. Flash and EEPROM are used to provide non-volatile memory storage. The EPCS1 serial Flash chip is used to automatically load the FPGA's serial configuration data at power up in final systems where you do not want to download the board with the ByteBlaster each time power is applied.

¹ This is only a very crude estimate of the number of equivalent two input NANDs in the FPGA's hardware design. This should be viewed only as a very rough estimate since any real design cannot use every feature of every logic element. The estimates given here also include additional gates in the total count to account for the FPGA's embedded memory blocks and hardware multipliers. Such crude gate count estimates can also vary by a factor of two or more between different FPGA vendors for a similar device and they are rarely used now in industry.

A larger Flash memory chip is typically used to boot the initial program code on SoC designs that include a processor. Note that the older UP2 and UP1s cannot support a Nios processor since they lack external memory and have a smaller older FPGA. Links to detailed datasheets for many of the different board's memory chips can be found on the book's DVD or at the book's website.

Each board contains a crystal controlled clock circuit that is normally used as the master clock for the user's digital logic circuit. Note that the frequency of the clock is different on the boards as seen in table 2.1. PLLs can be used to scale the crystal controlled clock to provide other clock frequencies.

2.3 The FPGA Board's I/O Features

Each board provides a wide variety of I/O features as summarized in Table 2.2. For most devices, the FPGA board's hardware provides only an electrical interface to the FPGA's I/O pins. Logic that provides a device interface circuit or controller will need to be constructed by the user using the FPGA's internal logic. Many design examples of interfacing to these various I/O devices can be found in the following chapters of this book.

Standard 0.1 inch headers on each of the boards can be used to interface to external devices off of the board. A small custom PCB can be designed or a 0.1 inch predrilled perforated protoboard can be used to plug into the header connectors on the board. Standard 0.1 inch ribbon cable connector technology can also be used to connect to another board with custom user hardware.

Table 2.2 The I/O Features of the different development boards.

I/O Features	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP1& 2
Pushbuttons	4 - debounced	4 - debounced	4 – no debounce	2 – no debounce
User Switches	18	10	4	8
User LEDs	8 green 10 red	9 green 18 red	4	No
LCD Panel	No	16 char x 2 line	16 char x 2 line	No
Seven Segment LED Displays	4	8	No	2
PS/2	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RS-232 Serial	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
VGA output	2^{12} colors	2^{30} colors	8 colors	8 colors
I/O Expansion Header Pins	2 – 40 Pin connectors	2 – 40 Pin connectors	4 – 72 I/O Pins total	3 – add 60 Pin headers
TV Decoder	No	Yes	No	No
SD Card slot	Yes	Yes	No	No
Printer Port	No	No	Yes	No
Audio CODEC	24-bit	24-bit	No	No
User USB	No	Yes	No	No
IrDA	No	Yes	No	No
Network	No	10/100Mhz	No	No
Optional Camera and Color LCD Panel	Yes	Yes	No	No

Modern FPGAs are surface-mount chips that are soldered directly to the board. It is difficult if not impossible to replace the FPGA chip without expensive surface mount soldering equipment, so extreme care should be exercised when interfacing the FPGA I/O pins to any external devices.

Standard I/O connector pin assignments used for external PS/2, serial, parallel, VGA, network and USB I/O cables can be found in Appendix F.

Table 2.3 Requirements to use the different I/O Features

I/O Device	Description	Hardware Interface Needed
USB 1.1	Full Speed and Low Speed	Processor & USB SIE engine core
Serial Port	RS 232 Full Modem	UART to send and receive data
Parallel Port	IEEE 1284	State machine or Proc. for handshake
PS/2 Port	PC Keyboard or Mouse	Serial Data - PS/2 state machine
VGA Port for Video Display on Monitor	RGB three 1-bit signals on UP1,2,3, 10-bits on DE2 and 3-bits on DE1	State machine for sync signals & user logic to generate RGB color signals
IDE Port	Connector on UP3	Processor & IDE Device Driver
Reset Switch	Global Reset on UP3	Must use a reset in design
Pushbutton Switches	debounced on DE1 & DE2 but not on the UP1,2, & 3	Most applications will need a switch debounce Circuit on UP1,2,3
Expansion Cards	Connect to .1 inch headers	Depends on expansion card used
LEDs	1=ON (DE1 & DE2)	None, but uses 1 FPGA I/O pin
LCD Display	16 Character by 2 line ASCII Characters on DE2& UP3	State machine or Processor to send ASCII characters and LCD commands
Real Time Clock	I ² C clock chip on UP3	Serial Data - I ² C state machine
DIP/Slide Switch	Switches (1=ON)	None or Synchronizer Circuit

WHEN CONNECTING EXTERNAL HARDWARE, ADDITIONAL PINS ARE AVAILABLE FOR USE ON THE HEADER CONNECTORS ON THE BOARD. FOR DETAILS, REFER TO THE BOARD'S REFERENCE MANUAL, WHICH IS ON THE BOOK'S DVD, AND IS ALSO AVAILABLE FREE AT [HTTP://WWW.ALTERA.COM](http://WWW.ALTERA.COM) OR AT [HTTP://WWW.TERASIC.COM](http://WWW.TERASIC.COM).

Also, remember to assign pins as shown in the tutorials to avoid randomly turning on several of the memory devices at the same time. A tri-state bus conflict occurs when several tri-state outputs are turned on and they attempt to drive a single signal line to different logic levels. It is possible that such a tri-state bus conflict on the memory data bus could damage the devices by overheating after several minutes of operation.

Table 2.4 contains the pin assignments and names used for the DE1, DE2, UP3, and UP2 board's most commonly used I/O devices that are used in basic digital designs. A complete list of all pin assignments for all of the boards is too lengthy to include here; however, they can be found in each of the FPGA board's user manuals that are available on the book's DVD in \Board\Chap2.

Table 2.4 DE1, DE2, UP3, and UP2 Board's FPGA I/O pin names and assignments

Pin Name	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2, UP1	Pin Type	Function of Pin
KEY0	R22	G26	48	28 PB1	Input	Pushbutton KEY0 (debounced, 0 = button hit)
KEY1	R21	N23	49	29 PB2	Input	Pushbutton KEY1 (debounced, 0 = button hit)
KEY2	T22	P23	57	-	Input	Pushbutton KEY2 (debounced, 0 = button hit)
KEY3	T21	W26	62	-	Input	Pushbutton KEY3 (debounced, 0 = button hit)
LEDR0	R20	AE23	56	25 0=on	Output	RED LED R0 (1 = LED ON, 0= LED OFF)
LEDR1	R19	AF23	55	14 0=on	Output	RED LED R1 (1 = LED ON, 0= LED OFF)
LEDR2	U19	AB21	54	-	Output	RED LED R2 (1 = LED ON, 0= LED OFF)
LEDR3	Y19	AC22	53	-	Output	RED LED R3 (1 = LED ON, 0= LED OFF)
SW0	L22	N25	58	41	Input	Slide or DIP Switch (0=Down, non-debounced)
SW1	L21	N26	59	40	Input	Slide or DIP Switch (0=Down, non-debounced)
SW2	M22	P25	60	39	Input	Slide or DIP Switch (0=Down, non-debounced)
SW3	V12	AE14	61	38	Input	Slide or DIP Switch (0=Down, non-debounced)
HEX0[0]	J2	AF10	-	6	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment A (0=on)
HEX0[1]	J1	AB12	-	7	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment B (0=on)
HEX0[2]	H2	AC12	-	8	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment C (0=on)
HEX0[3]	H1	AD11	-	9	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment D (0=on)
HEX0[4]	F2	AE11	-	11	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment E (0=on)
HEX0[5]	F1	V14	-	12	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment F (0=on)
HEX0[6]	E2	V13	-	13	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment G (0=on)
HEX1[0]	E1	V20	-	17	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment A (0=on)
HEX1[1]	H6	V21	-	18	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment B (0=on)
HEX1[2]	H5	W21	-	19	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment C (0=on)
HEX1[3]	H4	Y22	-	20	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment D (0=on)

Pin Name	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2, UP1	Pin Type	Function of Pin
HEX1[4]	G3	AA24	-	21	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment E (0=on)
HEX1[5]	D2	AA23	-	23	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment F (0=on)
HEX1[6]	D1	AB24	-	24	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment G (0=on)
LCD_E	-	K3	50	-	Output	LCD Enable line
LCD_RW	-	K4	73	-	Output	LCD R/W control line
LCD_RS	-	K1	108	-	Output	LCD Register Select Line
LCD_DATA[0]	-	J1	94	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[1]	-	J2	96 (133)	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[2]	-	H1	98	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[3]	-	H2	100	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[4]	-	J4	102 (108)	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[5]	-	J3	104	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[6]	-	H4	106	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[7]	-	H3	113	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
PS2_CLK	H15	D26	12	30	Bidir.	PS2 Connector
PS2_DATA	J14	C24	13	31	Bidir.	PS2 Connector
CLOCK	L1	N2	153 48Mhz	91 25Mhz	Input	50MHz Crystal Controlled Clock
VGA_RED	B7	E10	228	236	Output	VGA Red Video Signal (highest bit)
VGA_GREEN	A8	D12	122	237	Output	VGA Green Video Signal (highest bit)
VGA_BLUE	B10	B12	170	238	Output	VGA Blue Video Signal (highest bit)
VGA_VSYNC	B11	D8	226	239	Output	VGA Connector Vertical Sync Signal
VGA_HSYNC	A11	A7	227	240	Output	VGA Connector Horizontal Sync Signal

The pushbuttons are not debounced on the UP3 and its clock frequency depends on the board's JP3 jumper settings. Set JP3 to short pins 3-4 for the 48Mhz clock. UP3 pins enclosed in parenthesis in table 2.4 are for the larger FPGA used in the 1C12 version of the UP3 board. It requires more power and ground pins so there are some minor pin differences.

On the UP2 board, the two pushbuttons are not debounced, the LEDs are the seven segment decimal points, and its clock is 25Mhz. The original UP1 boards look very similar to a UP2 and they use the same pin assignments as the UP2, but they contain a smaller EPF10K20RC240 FPGA. Verify the part number on the large FPGA chip on the right side of the board, if you are uncertain.

NOTE: If you ever switch a design to a different board, you will need to change the device type, redo all of the pin assignments, and then recompile for the new FPGA device. The voltage levels on FPGA pins can vary (3.3V or 5V), so be sure to check for the proper voltage levels when selecting an I/O pin to interface external hardware to the board.

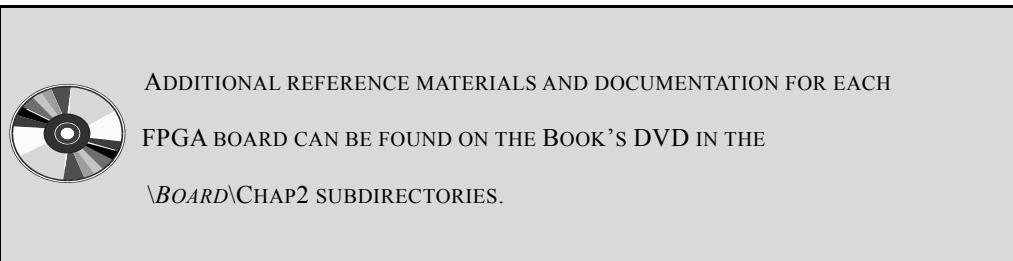
Do not connect high current devices such as motors or relay coils directly to FPGA I/O pins. These pins cannot provide the high current levels needed, and it may damage the FPGA's.

2.4 Obtaining an FPGA Development Board and Cables

FPGA boards are available for purchase from Altera's University Program at special educational pricing for schools and students (www.altera.com in the University Program area). The newest board, the DE1, is ordered, produced, and shipped directly from the manufacturer to minimize cost (www.terasic.com). Other DE2 and DE1 accessories such as a camera module and a small 320 by 240 color LCD panel are also available. Some UP3 add-on boards such as an A/D card can also be found at www.slscorp.com.

A Longer Cable for the ByteBlaster on UP3, UP2, and UP1 boards

For use with the UP3, UP2 or UP1 boards, a longer 25pin to 25pin PC M/F parallel printer cable is useful since the 1 foot Byteblaster II cable provided with the boards is often too short to reach the PC's printer port. All 25 wires must be connected in the printer extension cable. Any computer store should have these cables. A three-foot well-shielded cable works best. Avoid using extra long cables or very low-cost cables without good shielding as they can cause problems. The newer DE1 and DE2 boards come with a newer USB-based ByteBlaster that has a longer USB cable, so no additional cable is needed.



CHAPTER 3

Programmable Logic Technology

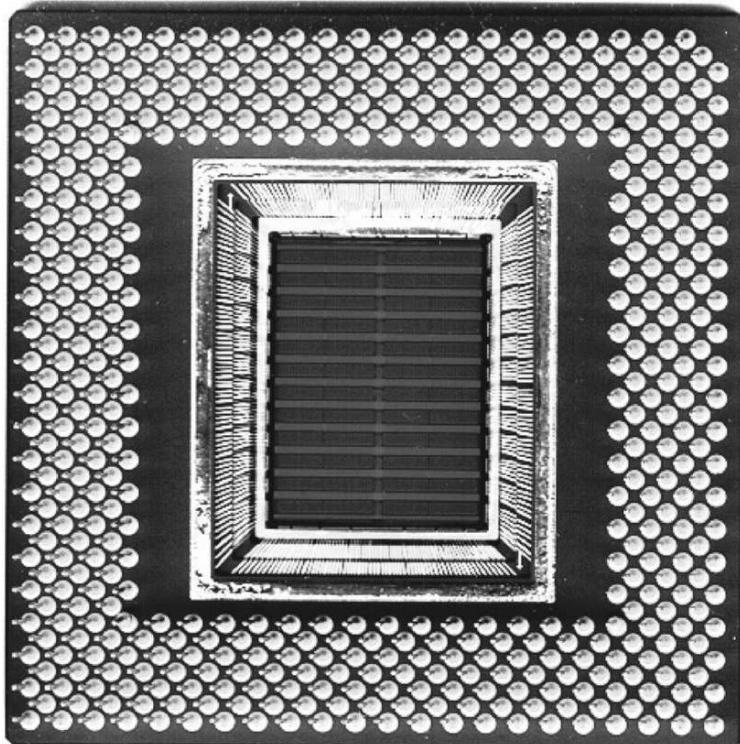


Photo: An Altera Flex 10K100 FPGA containing 10,000,000 Transistors and 100,000 gates. The FPGA is in a pin grid array (PGA) package. The cover has been removed so that the chip die is visible in the center of the package.

3 Programmable Logic Technology

A wide spectrum of devices is available for the implementation of digital logic designs as shown in Figure 3.1. Older traditional off-the-shelf integrated circuit chips, such as SSI and MSI TTL, performed a fixed operation defined by the device manufacturer. A user must connect a number of different chip types to build even a simple logic circuit with this older technology. A large number of chips will also be required as each chip contains only a few basic logic gates. Application specific integrated circuits (ASICs), complex programmable logic devices (CPLDs), and field programmable gate arrays (FPGAs) are integrated circuits whose internal functional operation is defined by the user. ASICs require a final customized manufacturing step for the user-defined function. A CPLD or FPGA requires user programming to perform the desired operation.

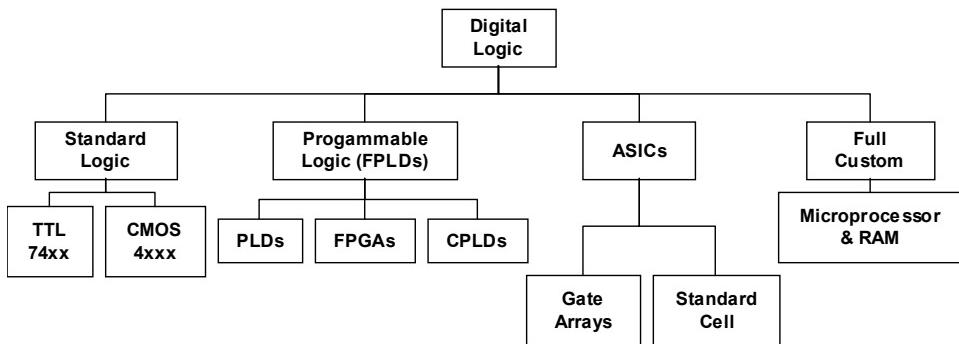


Figure 3.1 Digital logic technologies.

The design tradeoffs of the different technologies are seen in Figure 3.2. Full custom VLSI development of a design at the transistor level can require several years of engineering effort for design and testing. Such an expensive development effort is warranted only for the highest volume devices. This approach can generate the highest performance devices. Examples of full custom devices include the microprocessor and RAM chips used in PCs.

ASICs can be divided into three categories, Gate Arrays, Standard Cell and Structured. Gate Arrays are built from arrays of pre-manufactured logic cells. A single logic cell can implement a few gates or a flip-flop. A final manufacturing step is required to interconnect the sea of logic cells on a gate array. This interconnection pattern is created by the user to implement a particular design. Standard Cell devices contain no fixed internal structure. For standard cell devices, the manufacturer creates a custom photographic mask to build the chip based on the user's selection of devices, such as controllers, ALUs, RAM, ROM, and microprocessors from the manufacturer's standard cell library. New Structured ASICs are similar to gate arrays but each array element contains more logic. They offer tradeoffs somewhere between other ASICs and FPGAs.

Since ASICs require custom manufacturing, additional time and development costs are involved. Several months are normally required and substantial setup fees are charged. ASIC setup fees can be as high as a few million dollars. Additional effort in testing must be performed by the user since chips are tested after the final custom-manufacturing step. Any design error in the chip will lead to additional manufacturing delays and costs. For products with long lifetimes and large volumes, this approach has a lower cost per unit than CPLDs or FPGAs. Economic and performance tradeoffs between ASICs, CPLDs, and FPGAs are changing with each new generation of devices and design tools.

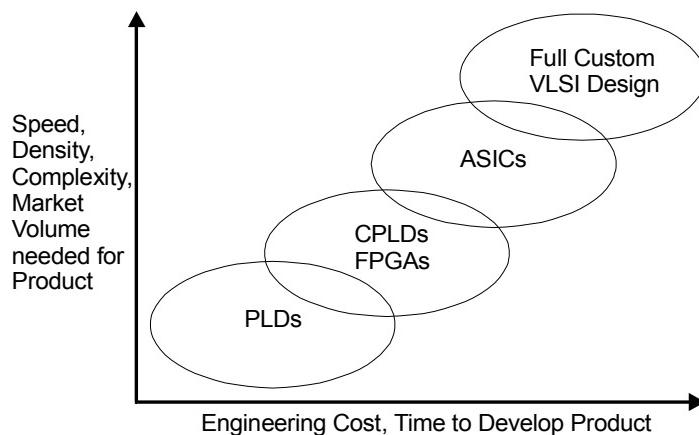


Figure 3.2 Digital logic technology tradeoffs.

Simple programmable logic devices (PLDs), such as programmable array logic (PALs), and programmable logic arrays (PLAs), have been in use for over thirty years. An example of a small PLA is shown in Figure 3.3. First, the logic equation is minimized and placed in sum of products (SOP) form. The PLA has four inputs, A, B, C, and D shown in the upper left corner of Figure 3.3. Every input connects to an inverter, making the inverted values of A, B, C, and D available for use. Each product term is implemented using an AND gate with several inputs. Outputs from the two product term's AND gates then feed into an OR gate.

A special shorthand notation is used in PLAs and PALs to represent the large number of inputs present in the AND and OR gate arrays. A gate input is present at each point where the vertical and horizontal signal lines cross in Figure 3.3. Note that this means that the two AND gates actually have eight inputs and the OR gate has two inputs in the PLA. Every input signal and its complement is available as an input to the AND gates. Each gate input in the PLA is controlled by a fuse. Initially all fuses are intact. By blowing selected fuses, or programming the PLA, the desired SOP equation is produced. The top AND gate in Figure 3.3 has fuses intact to the A and B inputs, so it produces the AB product term. The lower AND gate has fuses set to produce \bar{CD} . The OR gate has both fuses intact, so it ORs both product terms from the AND gates to produce the final output, $F = AB + \bar{CD}$.

Small PLDs can replace several older fixed function TTL-style parts in a design. Most PLDs contain a PLA-like structure in which a series of AND gates with selectable or programmable inputs, feed into an OR gate. In PALs, the OR gate has a fixed number of inputs and is not programmable. The AND gates and OR gate are programmed to directly implement a sum-of-products Boolean equation. On many PLDs, the output of the OR gate is connected to a flip-flop whose output can then be feed back as an input into the AND gate array. This provides PLDs with the capability to implement simple state machines. A PLD can contain several of these AND/OR networks.

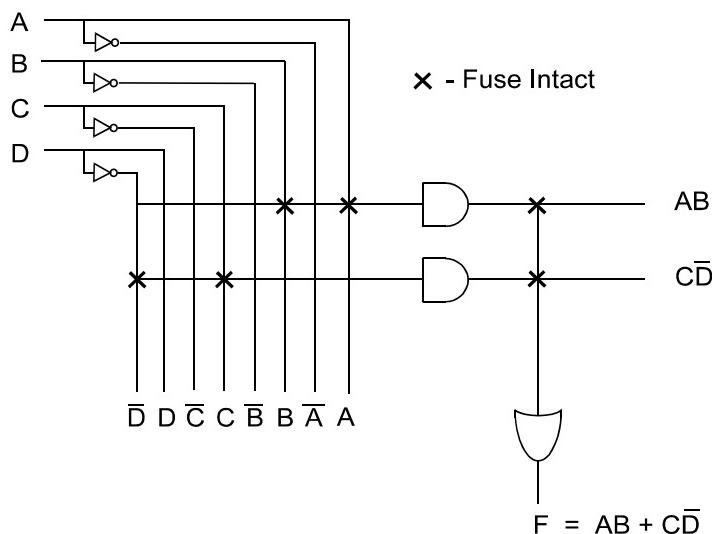


Figure 3.3 Using a PLA to implement a Sum of Products equation.

In more recent times, higher densities, higher speed, and cost advantages have enabled the use of programmable logic devices in a wider variety of designs. CPLDs and FPGAs are the highest density and most advanced programmable logic devices. Designs using a CPLD or FPGA typically require several weeks of engineering effort instead of months. These devices are also sometimes collectively called field programmable logic devices (FPLDs).

ASICs and full custom designs provide faster clock times than CPLDs or FPGAs since they are hardwired and do not have programmable interconnect delays. Since ASICs and full custom designs do not require programmable interconnect circuitry they use less chip area, less power, and have a lower per unit manufacturing cost in large volumes. Initial engineering and setup costs for ASICs and full custom designs are much higher.

For all but the most time critical design applications, CPLDs and FPGAs have adequate speed with maximum clock rates typically in the range of 50-400MHz; however, clock rates up to 1GHz have been achieved on new generation FPGAs and many have a few high-speed 1-10 GHz output pins.

3.1 CPLDs and FPGAs

Internally, CPLDs and FPGAs typically contain multiple copies of a basic programmable logic element (LE) or cell. The logic element can implement a network of several logic gates that then feed into 1 or 2 flip-flops. Logic elements are arranged in a column or matrix on the chip. To perform more complex operations, logic elements can be automatically connected to other logic elements on the chip using a programmable interconnection network. The interconnection network is also contained in the CPLD or FPGA. The interconnection network used to connect the logic elements contains row and/or column chip-wide interconnects. In addition, the interconnection network often contains shorter and faster programmable interconnects limited only to neighboring logic elements.

When a design approaches the device size limits, it is possible to run out of either gate, interconnect, or pin resources when using a CPLD or FPGA. CPLDs tend to have faster and more predictable timing properties while FPGAs offer the highest gate densities and more features.

Clock signals in large FPGAs normally use special low-skew global clock buffer lines. These are dedicated pins connected to an internal high-speed bus. This special bus is used to distribute the clock signal to all flip-flops in the device at the same time to minimize clock skew. If the global clock buffer line is not used, the clock is routed through the chip just like a normal signal. The clock signal could arrive at flip-flops at widely different times since interconnect delays will vary in different parts of the chip. This delay time can violate flip-flop setup and hold times and can cause metastability or unpredictable operation in flip-flops. Most large designs with a common clock that is used throughout the FPGA will require the use of the global clock buffer.



Figure 3.4 Examples of FPGAs and advanced high pin count package types.

The size of CPLDs and FPGAs is typically described in terms of useable or equivalent gates. This refers to the maximum number of two input NAND gates available in the device. This should be viewed as a rough estimate of size only.

The internal architecture of three examples of CPLD and FPGA device technologies, the Altera MAX 7000, the Altera Cyclone, and the Xilinx 4000 family will now be examined. An example of each of these devices is shown in Figure 3.4. From left to right the chips are an Altera MAX 7128S CPLD in a Plastic J-Lead Chip Carrier (PLCC), an Altera Cyclone 10K70 FPGA in a Plastic Quad Flat Pack (PQFP), and a Xilinx XC4052 FPGA in a ceramic Pin Grid Array Package (PGA). The PGA package has pins on .1" centers while the PQFP has pins on .05" centers at the edges of the package. Both Altera and Xilinx devices are available in a variety of packages.

Packaging can represent a significant portion of the FPGA chip cost. The number of I/O pins on the FPGA package often limits designs. Larger ceramic packages such as a PGA with more pins are more expensive than plastic.

3.2 Altera MAX 7000S Architecture – A Product Term CPLD Device

The multiple array matrix (MAX) 7000S is a CPLD device family with 600 to 20,000 gates. This device is configured by programming an internal electrically erasable programmable read only memory (EEPROM). Since an EEPROM is used for programming, the configuration is retained when power is removed. This device also allows in-circuit reprogrammability.

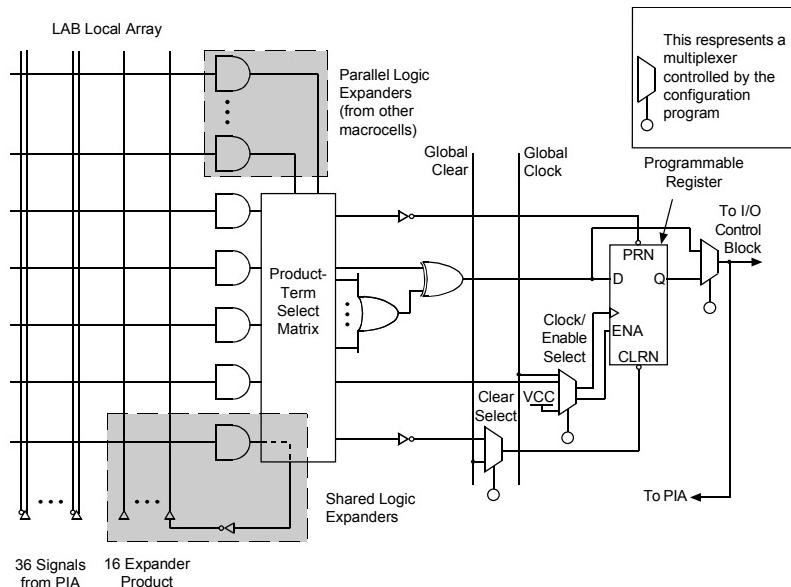


Figure 3.5 MAX 7000 macrocell.

The 7000 device family contains from 32 to 256 macrocells of the type seen in Figure 3.5. Similar to the early PALs, an individual macrocell contains five programmable AND gates with wide inputs that feed into an OR gate with a programmable inversion at the output. Just like a PAL, the AND/OR network is

designed to implement Boolean equations expressed in sum-of-products form. Inputs to the wide AND gate are available in both normal and inverted forms. Parallel expanders are included that are used to borrow extra product terms from adjacent macrocells for logic functions needing more than five product terms.

The output from the AND/OR network can then be fed into a programmable flip-flop. Inputs to the AND gates include product terms from other macrocells in the same local block or signals from the chip-wide programmable interconnect array (PIA). The flip-flop contains Bypass, Enable, Clear and Preset functions and can be programmed to act as a D flip-flop, Toggle flip-flop, JK flip-flop, or SR latch.

Macrocells are combined into groups of 16 and called logic array blocks (LABs), for the overall device architecture as shown in Figure 3.6. The PIA can be used to route data to or from other LABs or external pins on the device. Each I/O pin contains a programmable tri-state output buffer. An FPGA's I/O pin can thus be programmed as input, output, output with a tri-state driver, or even tri-state bi-directional.

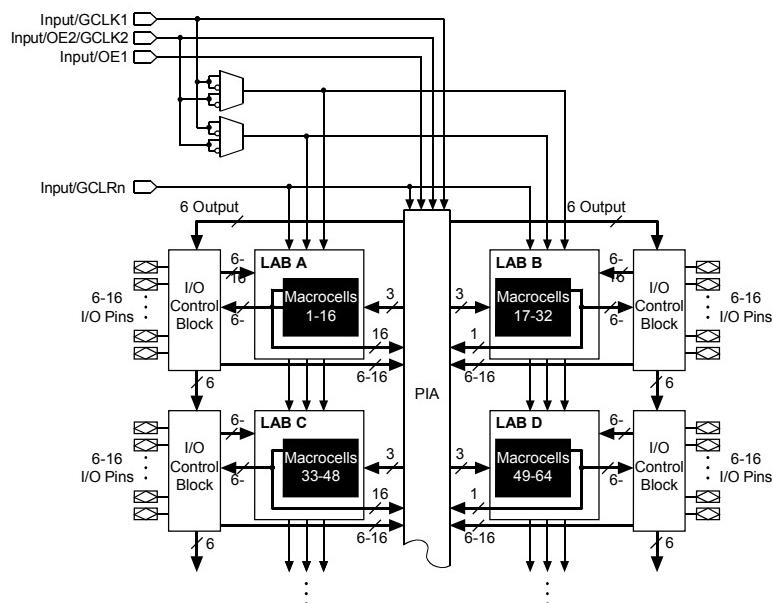


Figure 3.6 MAX 7000 CPLD architecture.

3.3 Altera Cyclone Architecture – A Look-Up Table FPGA Device

The Cyclone device is configured by loading internal static random access memory (SRAM). Since SRAM is used in FPGAs, the configuration will be lost whenever power is removed. In actual systems, a small external low-cost serial flash memory or programmable read only memory (PROM) is normally used to automatically load the FPGA's programming information when the device powers up.

FPGAs contain a two-dimensional row and column-based architecture to implement user logic. A column and row interconnection network provides signal connections between Logic Array Blocks (LABs) and embedded memory blocks. Interconnect delay times are on the same order of magnitude as logic delays.

The Cyclone FPGA's logic array consists of LABs, with 10 Logic Elements (LEs) in each LAB. An LE is a small unit of logic providing efficient implementation of user logic functions. LABs are grouped into rows and columns across the device. Cyclone devices range from 2,910 to 20,060 LEs.

M4K RAM embedded memory blocks are dual-port memory blocks with 4K bits of memory plus parity (4,608 bits). These blocks provide dual-port or single-port memory from 1 to 36-bits wide at up to 200 MHz. These blocks are grouped into columns across the device in between certain LABs. The Cyclone EP1C6 and EP1C12 contain 92K and 239K bits of embedded RAM respectively.

Each of the Cyclone device's I/O pins is fed by an I/O element (IOE) located at the ends of LAB rows and columns around the periphery of the device. I/O pins support various single-ended and differential I/O standards. Each IOE contains a bidirectional I/O buffer and three registers for registering input, output, and output-enable signals.

Cyclone devices also provide a global low-skew clock network and up to two Phase Locked Loops (PLLs). The global clock network consists of eight global clock lines that drive throughout the entire device. The global clock network can provide clocks for all resources within the device, such as IOEs, LEs, and memory blocks. Cyclone PLLs provide general-purpose clocking with clock multiplication/division and phase shifting as well as external outputs for high-speed differential I/O support.

Figure 3.7 shows a Cyclone logic element. Logic gates are implemented using a look-up table (LUT), which is a high-speed 16 by 1 SRAM. Four inputs are used to address the LUT's memory. The truth table for the desired gate network is loaded into the LUT's SRAM during programming. A single LUT can therefore model any network of gates with four inputs and one output. The multiplexers seen in Figure 3.7 are all controlled by bits in the FPGA's SRAM configuration memory.

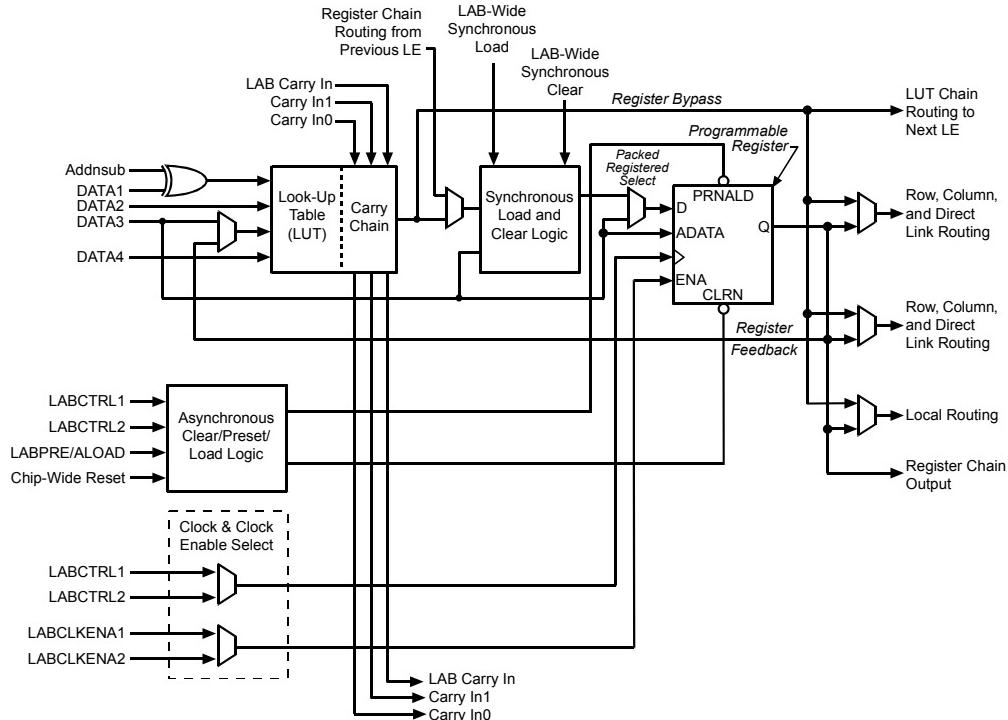


Figure 3.7 Cyclone Logic Element (LE).

An example showing how a LUT can model a gate network is shown in Figure 3.8. First, the gate network is converted into a truth table. Since there are four inputs and one output, a truth table with 16 rows and one output is needed. The truth table is then loaded into the LUT's 16 by 1 high-speed SRAM when the FPGA is programmed.

Note that the four gate inputs, A, B, C, and D, are used as address lines for the RAM and that F, the output of the truth table, is the data that is stored in the LUT's RAM. In this manner, the LUT's RAM implements the gate network by performing a RAM based table lookup instead of using actual logic gates.

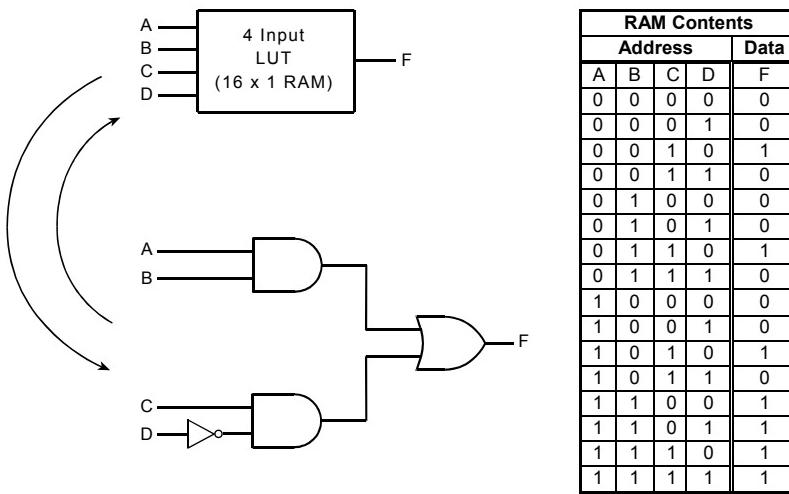


Figure 3.8 Using a look-up table (LUT) to model a gate network.

More complex gate networks require interconnections with additional neighboring logic elements. The output of the LUT can be fed into a D flip-flop and then to the interconnection network. The clock, Clear, and Preset can be driven by internal logic or an external I/O pin. The flip-flop can be programmed to act as a D flip-flop, T flip-flop, JK flip-flop, or SR latch. Carry and Cascade chains connect to all LEs in the same row.

Figure 3.9 shows a Logic Array Block (LAB). A logic array block is composed of ten logic elements (LEs). Both programmable local LAB and chip-wide row and column interconnects are available. Carry chains are also provided to support faster addition operations.

Input-output elements (IOEs) are located at each of the device's I/O pins. IOEs contain a programmable tri-state driver and an optional 1-bit flip-flop register. Each I/O pin can be programmed as input, output, output with a tri-state driver, or even tri-state bi-directional with or without a register. Four clock I/O pins connect to the eight low-skew global clock buffer lines that are provided in the device.

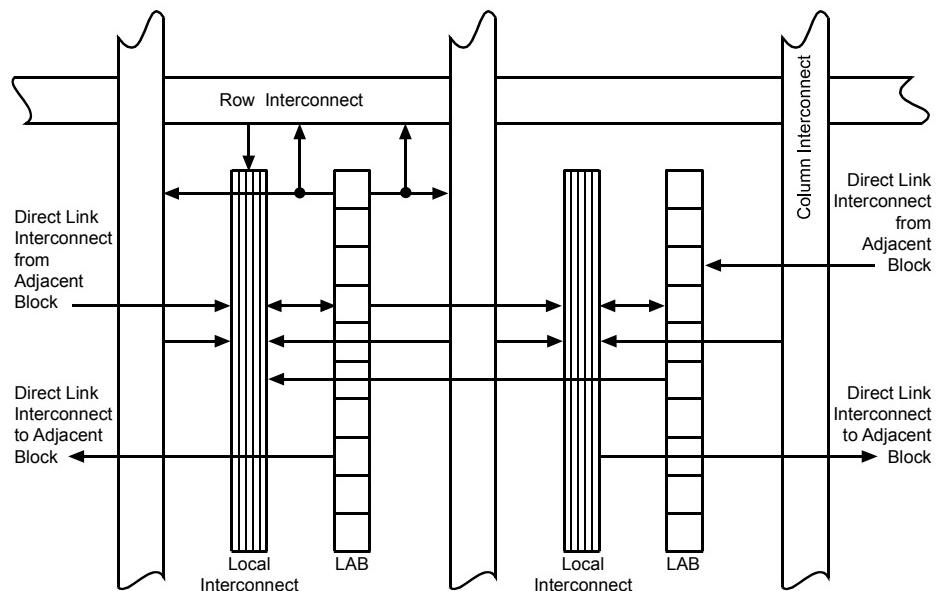


Figure 3.9 Cyclone Logic Array Blocks (LAB) and Interconnects.

3.4 Xilinx 4000 Architecture – A Look-Up Table FPGA Device

The Xilinx 4000 Family was a popular first generation FPGA device family with 2,000 to 180,000 usable gates. It is configured by programming internal SRAM. Figure 3.10 is a photograph of a six-inch silicon wafer containing several XC4010E 10,000 gate FPGA chip dice. Figure 3.11 is a contrast-enhanced view of a single XC4010E die. If you look closely, you can see the 20 by 20 array of logic elements and the surrounding interconnect lines. Die that pass wafer-level inspection and testing are sliced from the wafer and packaged in a chip. FPGA yields are typically 90% or higher after the first few production runs.

As seen in Figure 3.12, this device contains a more complex logic element called a configurable logic block (CLB). Each CLB contains three SRAM-based lookup tables. Outputs from the LUTs can be fed into two flip-flops and routed to other CLBs. A CLB's lookup tables can also be configured to act as a 16 by 2 RAM or a dual-port 16 by 1 RAM. High-speed carry logic is provided between adjacent CLBs.

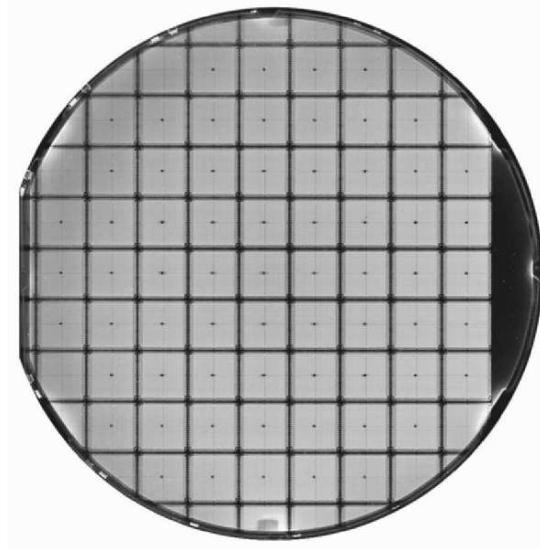


Figure 3.10 Silicon wafer containing XC4010E 10,000 gate FPGAs.

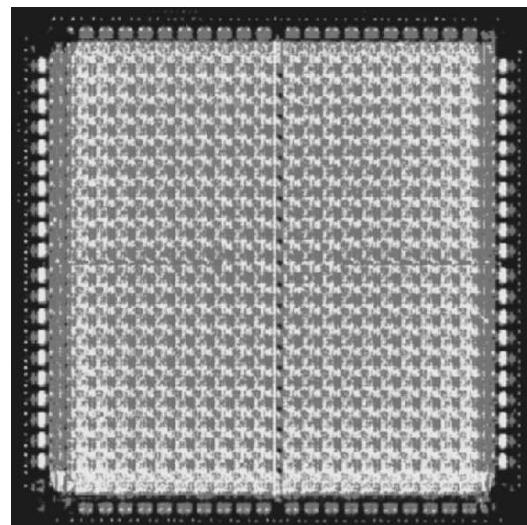


Figure 3.11 Single XC4010E FPGA die showing 20 by 20 array of logic elements and interconnect.

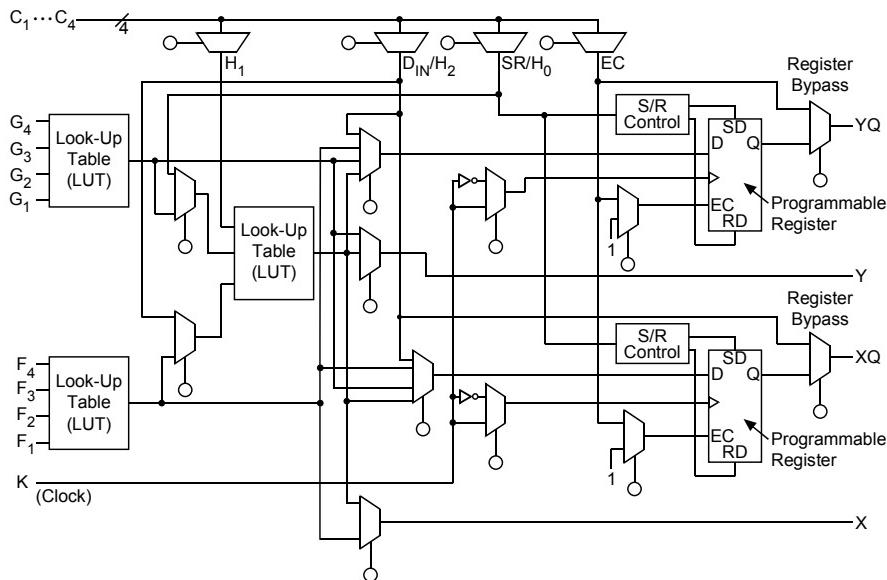


Figure 3.12 Xilinx 4000 Family Configurable Logic Block (CLB).

CLBs are arranged in a square matrix with a programmable hierarchical interconnection network. Devices in the family contain from 100 to 3,136 CLBs. The multiplexers seen in Figure 3.12 are all controlled by bits in the FPGA's SRAM configuration memory.

The complex hierarchical interconnection network contains varying length row, column, and neighboring CLB interconnect structures. Eight low-skew global clock buffers are also provided. Input-output blocks (IOBs), contain programmable tri-state drivers and optional registers. Each I/O pin can be programmed as input, output, output with a tri-state driver, or tri-state bi-directional with or without a register. In the more recent Xilinx Virtex 4 FPGAs, each CLB now contains four circuits similar to the earlier 4000 CLBs.

3.5 Computer Aided Design Tools for Programmable Logic

Increasing design complexity and higher gate densities are forcing digital designs to undergo a paradigm shift. Old technology, low-density logic families, such as the TTL 7400 or simple PLD families are rarely if ever used in new designs. With logic capacities of an individual FPGA chip approaching 10,000,000 gates, manual design at the gate level is no longer a viable option in complex systems. Rapid prototyping using hardware description languages (HDLs), IP cores, and logic synthesis tools has all but replaced traditional gate-level design with schematic capture entry. These new HDL-based logic synthesis tools can be used for both ASIC and FPGA-based designs. The two most widely used HDLs at the present time are VHDL and Verilog.

The typical FPGA CAD tool design flow is shown in Figure 3.13. After design entry using an HDL or schematic, the design is automatically translated, optimized, synthesized, and saved as a netlist. (A netlist is a text-based representation of a logic diagram.) A functional simulation step is often added prior to the synthesis step to speed up simulations of large designs.

An automatic tool then fits the design onto the device by converting the design to use the FPGA's logic elements, first by placing the design in specific logic element locations in the FPGA and then by selecting the interconnection network routing paths. The place and route process can be quite involved and can take several minutes to compute on large designs. On large devices, combinatorial explosion (exponential growth) will prevent the tool from examining all possible place and route combinations. When designs require critical timing, some tools support timing constraints that can be placed on critical signal lines. These optional constraints are added to aid the place and route tool in finding a design placement with improved performance.

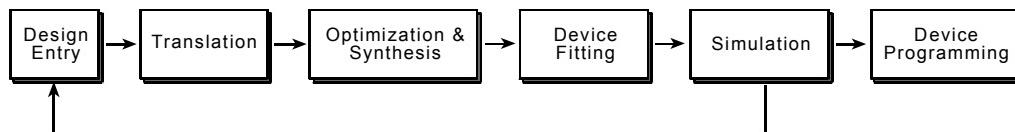


Figure 3.13 CAD tool design flow for FPGAs.

After place and route, simulation can be performed using actual gate and interconnect time delays from a detailed timing model of the device. Although errors can occur at any step, the most common path is to find errors during an exhaustive simulation. The final step is device programming and hardware verification on the FPGA.

3.6 Next Generation FPGA CAD tools

A few HDL synthesis tools now support behavioral synthesis. Unlike the more widely used register transfer level (RTL) models contained in this book, behavioral synthesis models do not specify the exact states and sequence of register transfers. A separate constraint file specifies the number of clocks needed to obtain selected signals and the tool automatically generates the state machines, logic, and register transfers needed.

Although not currently in widespread use for current designs, newer FPGA CAD tools are also appearing based on other languages such as C and Java. Some of these system-level tools output VHDL or Verilog models as an intermediate step. New HDLs such as SystemVerilog (www.systemverilog.org) and SystemC (www.systemC.org) provide enhanced support for verification.

Tools that automatically generate an FPGA design from other engineering tools such as MATLAB-Simulink or LabVIEW have also been introduced. These graphical based tools are primarily aimed at DSP application development for FPGAs using a library of specialized DSP blocks.

3.7 Applications of FPGAs

The last decade has seen ever increasing application areas for FPGAs. A recent market study found over twelve times as many new FPGA-based designs as ASIC-based designs, and ASIC setup costs continue to increase. New generation FPGAs can have nearly ten million gates with clock rates approaching 1GHz. Example application areas include single chip replacements for old multichip technology designs, Digital Signal Processing (DSP), image processing, multimedia applications, high-speed communications and networking equipment such as routers and switches, the implementation of bus protocols such as peripheral component interconnect (PCI), microprocessor glue logic, co-processors, and microperipheral controllers.

Several large FPGAs with an interconnection network are used to build hardware emulators. Hardware emulators are specially designed commercial devices used to prototype and test complex hardware designs that will later be implemented on gate arrays or custom VLSI devices. Hardware emulators are commonly used to build a prototype quickly during the development and testing of microprocessors. Several of the recent Intel and AMD processors used in PCs were tested on FPGA-based hardware emulators before the full custom VLSI processor chip was produced.

A newer application area is reconfigurable computing. In reconfigurable computing, FPGAs are quickly reprogrammed or reconfigured multiple times during normal operation to enable them to perform different computations at different times for a particular application.

3.8 Features of New Generation FPGAs

Each new generation of FPGAs increases in size and performance. In addition to more logic elements, embedded memory blocks, and interconnects, other new features are appearing. Some FPGAs contain a mix of both product term and lookup tables to implement logic. Such product term structures typically require less chip area to implement the complex gating logic present in large state machines and address decoders. Many FPGAs include several phase-locked loops (PLLs). These PLLs are used to multiply, divide, and adjust high-speed clock signals. Similar to microprocessors used in PCs, many new FPGAs use a lower 1.5 to 3 Volt internal core power supply. To easily interface to external processor and memory chips, new FPGAs feature selectable I/O standards on I/O pins.

High-speed hardware multipliers and multiply accumulators (MACs) are also available in FPGA families targeted for multiply intensive DSP and graphics applications. Several FPGAs from Altera and Xilinx are available with commercial internal RISC microprocessor intellectual property (IP) cores. These include the Nios, ARM, Microblaze, and PowerPC. The Nios and Microblaze processors are an HDL model that is synthesized using the FPGA's standard logic elements. The ARM, and PowerPC are commercial IP cores with custom VLSI layouts. These new devices are a hybrid that contains both ASIC and FPGA features. Several processors can be implemented in a single FPGA.

These FPGAs come with additional software tools for the processor, including C/C++ compilers. Some processor cores are available with a small operating system kernel. These new large FPGAs with a microprocessor IP core are targeted for System on-a-Chip (SOC) applications. When an FPGA is used for SOC applications it is also called System on-a-Programmable Chip (SOPC).

On many of the largest FPGAs, redundant rows of logic elements are included to increase yields. As any VLSI device gets larger the probability of a manufacturing defect increases. If a defective logic element is found during initial testing, the entire row is mapped out and replaced with a spare row of logic elements. This operation is transparent to the user.

3.9 For additional information

This short overview of programmable logic technology has provided a brief introduction to FPGA architectures. Altera and Xilinx have the largest market share of current FPGA vendors. Additional CPLD and FPGA manufacturers include Lattice, Actel, Atmel, Quicklogic, and Cypress. Actel, Quicklogic, and Cypress have one-time programmable FPGA devices. These devices utilize antifuse programming technology. Antifuses are open circuits that short circuit or have low impedance only after programming. Trade publications such as *Electronic Design News* periodically have a comparison of the available devices and manufacturers.

The March 2007 issue of *IEEE Computer* contains several articles on recent developments in FPGA tools and reconfigurable computing using FPGAs.

Altera MAX 7000, Cyclone, Cyclone II, and Stratix II family data manuals with a more in-depth explanation of device hardware details are available free online at Altera's website, <http://www.altera.com>.

For other examples of FPGA architectures, details on the Xilinx Spartan 3E and Virtex II Pro families can be found at <http://www.xilinx.com>.

An introduction to the mathematics and algorithms used internally by digital logic CAD tools can be found in *Synthesis and Optimization of Digital Circuits* by Giovanni De Micheli, McGraw-Hill, 1994 and *Logic Synthesis and Verification Algorithms* by Hachtel and Somenzi, Springer Publishers, 1996. *The Design Warrior's Guide to FPGAs* by Clive Maxfield, Elsevier, 2004 contains an overview of commercial FPGA devices and commercial EDA tool flows for FPGA design.

3.10 Laboratory Exercises

1. Show how the logic equation $(A \text{ AND } \text{NOT}(B)) \text{ OR } (C \text{ AND } \text{NOT}(D))$ can be implemented using the following:

- A. The PLA in Figure 3.3
- B. The LUT in Figure 3.9

Be sure to include the PLA fuse pattern and contents of the LUT.

2. Examine the compiler report file and use the chip editor to explain how the OR-gate design in the tutorial in Chapter 1 was mapped into the Cyclone device.
3. Retarget the design from Chapter 1 to a MAX 7000S device. Examine the compiler report file and use the chip editor to explain how the OR-gate design in the tutorial in Chapter 1 was mapped into the MAX device.
4. Show how the logic equation $(A \text{ AND } \text{NOT}(B)) \text{ OR } (C \text{ AND } \text{NOT}(D))$ can be implemented in the following:

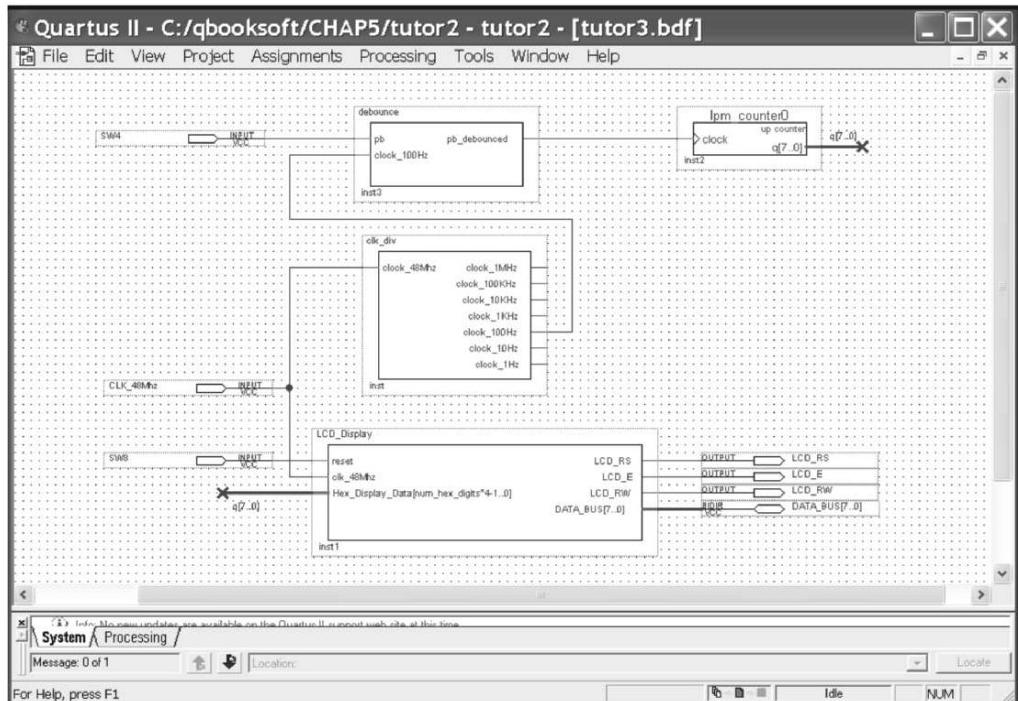
- A. A MAX Logic Element
- B. A Cyclone Logic Element
- C. An XC4000 CLB

Be sure to include the contents of any LUTs required and describe the required mux settings.

5. Using data sheets available on the web, compare and contrast the features of newer generation FPGAs such as Altera's Cyclone III and Stratix III, and Xilinx's Virtex II and Virtex 4 families.

CHAPTER 4

Tutorial II: Sequential Design and Hierarchy



4 Tutorial II: Sequential Design and Hierarchy

The second tutorial contains a more complex design containing sequential logic and hierarchy with a counter and a Hex display. To save time, much of the design has already been entered. The existing design will require some modifications. Once again, any of the Altera educational FPGA boards can be used.

Once completed, you will:

- Understand the fundamentals of hierarchical design tools,
- Complete an example of a sequential logic design,
- Use the FPGACore library designed for the FPGA boards,
- Use a hex display, pushbuttons, and the onboard clock,
- Use buses in a schematic, and
- Be able to perform automatic timing analysis of sequential circuits.

4.1 Install the Tutorial Files and FPGACore Library for your board

Depending on your FPGA board type, slightly different I/O features are used in this tutorial as seen in Table 4.1. DE2 and UP3 boards will use their LCD display module to display a counter value in hexadecimal. On the DE1, UP2, and UP1 boards, two seven-segment LEDs will be used to display counter value in hex. A slide switch, SW0, is used on the DE2 and DE1 for the count up operation, and pushbuttons on the other boards.

Table 4.1 FPGA I/O Devices used in the tutorial on the various FPGA boards.

I/O Device	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2 & 1
SW4 – count	SW0	SW0	SW4	Flex PB1
SW8 - reset	KEY3	KEY3	SW8	Flex PB2
Hex Display	7-Segment LEDs HEX0 & HEX1	LCD module	LCD module	Flex 7-Segment LEDs
Clock	50Mhz	50Mhz	48Mhz	25Mhz

Locate the **\BOARD\chap4** directory on the DVD that came with the book. Each board type has a subdirectory with the required project files for that board. Copy all of the Chapter 4 tutorial files in this directory to your **drive:\mydesigns** directory or another subdirectory.

In the UP3 directory, A special version of the files for the larger 1C12 UP3 board is in the subdirectory **\UP3\1C12\chap4**. If you are using the UP2, a version of the files for the UP2 board is in the subdirectory, **\UP2\chap4**.

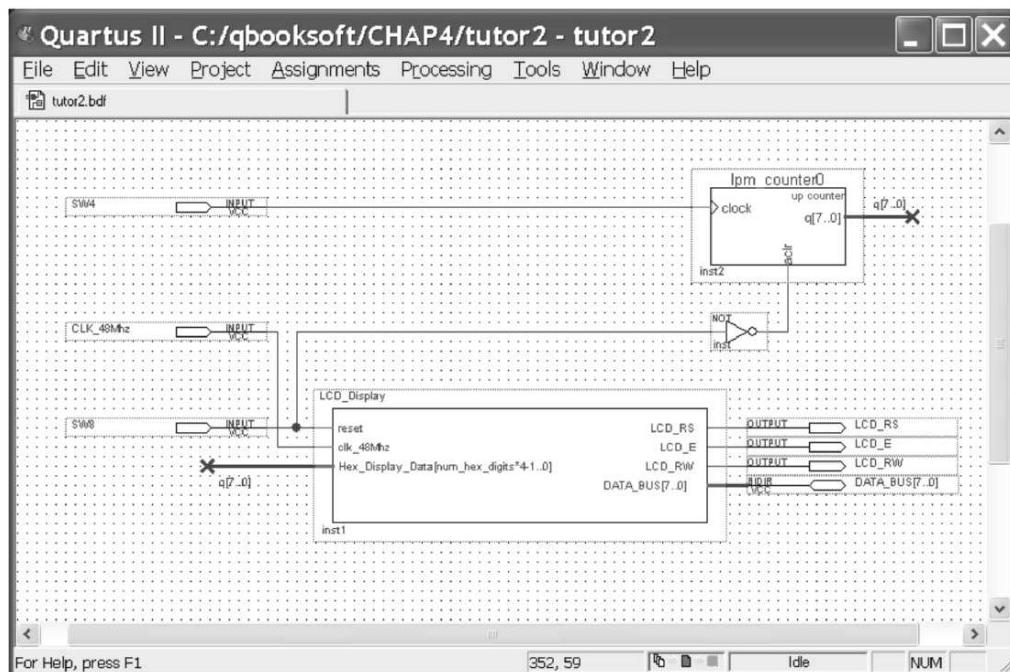


Figure 4.1 The tutor2.gdf schematic uses the LCD module on the DE2 and UP3 boards to display an 8-bit counter value in hex. DE1 and UP2 boards use two seven-segment LED displays instead.

4.2 Open the tutor2 Schematic

After setting up the files in your directory, select **File** \Rightarrow **Open Project** \Rightarrow *drive:\mydesigns\tutor2.qpf*. Open the top-level schematic by selecting **File** \Rightarrow **Open** \Rightarrow *drive:\mydesigns\tutor2.bdf* (not *tutor2.gdf*) and a schematic similar to Figure 4.1 should be displayed. This design has been partially entered to save time. This is an 8-bit counter design that outputs the counter value to a two digit hexadecimal display.

On the DE1 and UP2 version of the tutorial, you will see the counter value in two seven-segment LED displays and the DE2 and UP3 boards will use their LCD module.

Click on the *lpm_counter0* symbol to activate the MegaWizard Plug-In Manager. The MegaWizard seen in Figure 4.2 can be used to create and edit megafunctions. In this case, you can see that *lpm_counter0* is an 8-bit binary counter that counts up. You can click on the documentation button and then generate sample waveforms to view more details about the counter's operation. You can create new functions with the MegaWizard using **Tools** \Rightarrow **MegaWizard Plug-In Manager**. Close the MegaWizard window to continue.

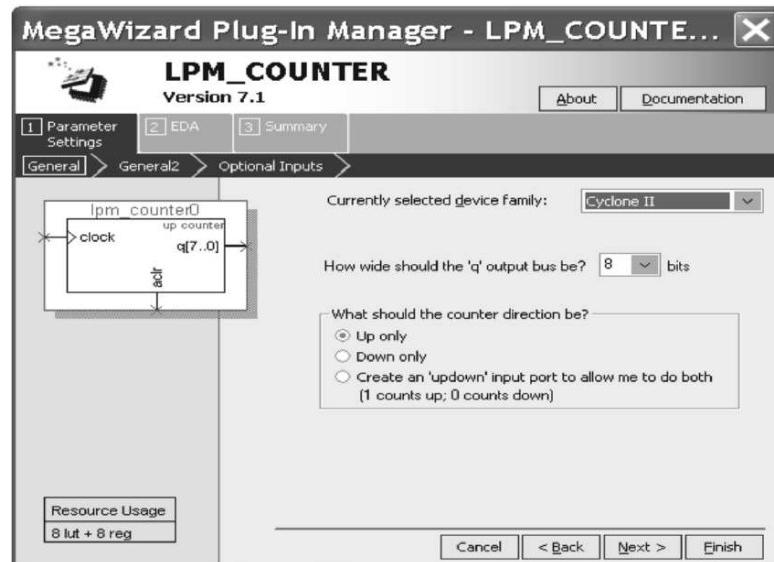


Figure 4.2 Lpm_counter0 MegaWizard edit window.

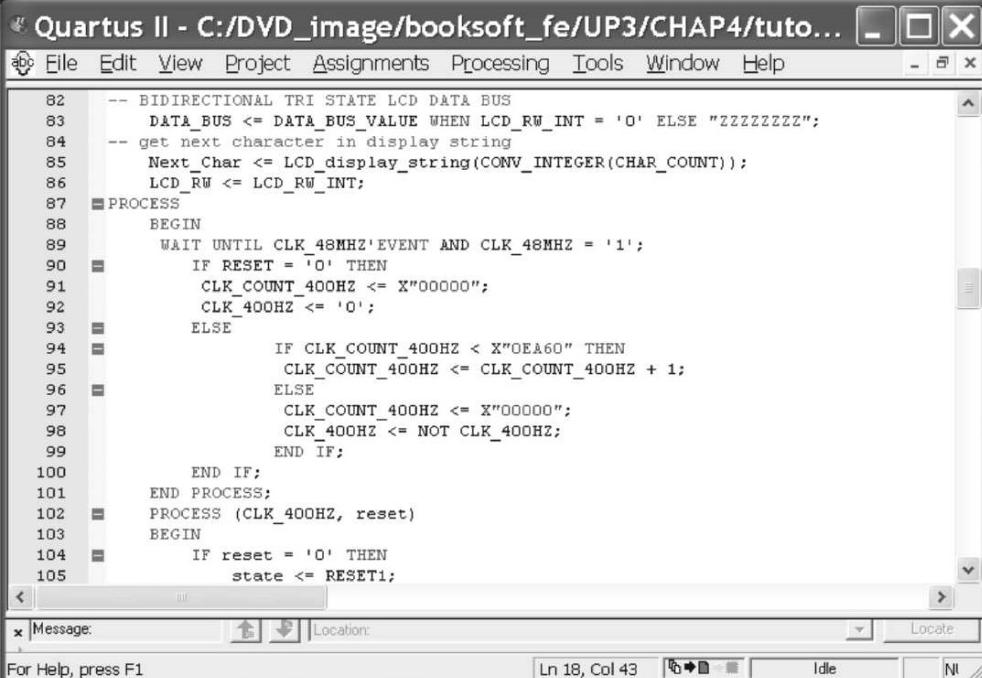
Special hardware blocks have been designed to support the easy use of the advanced I/O features found on the FPGA board. They include pushbuttons, LCD displays, keyboard, mouse, and video output. More details on all of these FPGACore functions are provided in Chapter 5. The FPGACore functions needed for this tutorial have already been placed in this project's directory. Several symbols from the FPGACore library appear in the project library and are available to be entered in a design.

As an alternative to copying these files to each project's directory, under **Project ⇒ Add/Remove Files in Project**, in the left column you can click on **Libraries** and enter another path to an external library such as the FPGACore library.

4.3 Browse the Hierarchy

In engineering, the principle of functional decomposition is normally used in large designs. Complex designs are typically broken into smaller design units. The smaller design units are then more easily understood and implemented. The smaller designs are interconnected to form the complex system. The overall design is a hierarchy of interconnected smaller design units. This also promotes the re-use of portions of the design.

The current schematic is a view of the top level of the design. In this design, the problem was decomposed into a module (design unit) or symbol with logic for a counter and another design unit to display the count. Each symbol also has an internal design that can be any combination of another schematic, megafunction, VHDL, or Verilog file.



The screenshot shows the Quartus II software interface with the title bar "Quartus II - C:/DVD_image/booksoft_fe/UP3/CHAP4/tuto...". The main window displays a VHDL code editor containing the following code:

```

82    -- BIDIRECTIONAL TRI STATE LCD DATA BUS
83    DATA_BUS <= DATA_BUS_VALUE WHEN LCD_RW_INT = '0' ELSE "ZZZZZZZZ";
84    -- get next character in display string
85    Next_Char <= LCD_display_string(CONV_INTEGER(CHAR_COUNT));
86    LCD_RW <= LCD_RW_INT;
87    PROCESS
88        BEGIN
89            WAIT UNTIL CLK_48MHZ'EVENT AND CLK_48MHZ = '1';
90            IF RESET = '0' THEN
91                CLK_COUNT_400HZ <= X"00000";
92                CLK_400HZ <= '0';
93            ELSE
94                IF CLK_COUNT_400HZ < X"0EA60" THEN
95                    CLK_COUNT_400HZ <= CLK_COUNT_400HZ + 1;
96                ELSE
97                    CLK_COUNT_400HZ <= X"00000";
98                    CLK_400HZ <= NOT CLK_400HZ;
99                END IF;
100           END IF;
101    END PROCESS;
102    PROCESS (CLK_400HZ, reset)
103        BEGIN
104            IF reset = '0' THEN
105                state <= RESET1;

```

The code implements a state machine for an LCD display. It includes a process for reading data from the bus and another process for generating the required clock signals (CLK_400HZ) and handling a reset signal.

Figure 4.3 Internal VHDL code for LCD_Display function.

On schematic for the DE2 or UP3, double click on the **LCD_Display** symbol to see the underlying VHDL code that describes the internal operation of the LCD_Display block. As shown in Figure 4.3, it contains a complex state machine that sends commands and ASCII character data to the LCD controller.

DE1 and UP2 users should click on the **DEC_7SEG** symbol. It contains VHDL code with a case statement to implement the seven-segment LED decoder hardware for the count display.

As an alternative, the module could be designed in Verilog or even at the gate level using basic logic symbols (if you had infinite time and patience to work at that low of a level!). Close the VHDL text editor and return to the graphic editor.

To see the overall hierarchy of the design, select **View** \Rightarrow **Utility Windows** **Project Navigator** and make sure the **Hierarchy** tab is selected. After expanding this window as seen in Figure 4.4, note that the tutor2 schematic is comprised of two symbols.

For the DE2 and UP3, the LCD_Display symbol is used in the design to output the count to the LCD display. The lpm_counter0 symbol contains the 8-bit binary counter. If you click on the "+" block on the lpm_counter symbol, you will see that it contains an lpm_counter megafunction. In this case, the design hierarchy is three levels deep. After examining the hierarchy display window, close it and return to the graphic editor window that contains the tutor2 schematic.

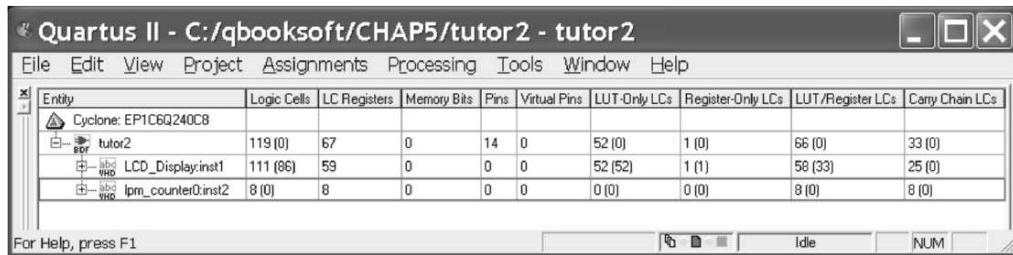


Figure 4.4 Hierarchy display window for the tutor2 design.

4.4 Using Buses in a Schematic

In Figure 4.5, find the heavy purple lines flowing out of the `lpm_counter0` symbol in the upper right corner and into the `LCD_Display` (DE2 and UP3) or `DEC_7SEG` (DE1 and UP2) symbol in the lower left corner. This is an example of a bus. A bus is just a parallel collection of numbered bits. The bus is labeled `q[7..0]` indicating the bus has eight signals (bits) named `q[7]`, `q[6]` ... `q[0]`. `q[3..0]` would be the low four bits of the `q[7..0]` bus and `q[7..4]` would be the high four bits. The `q[7..0]` bus sends the counter's eight output bits to the appropriate display function for each FPGA board.

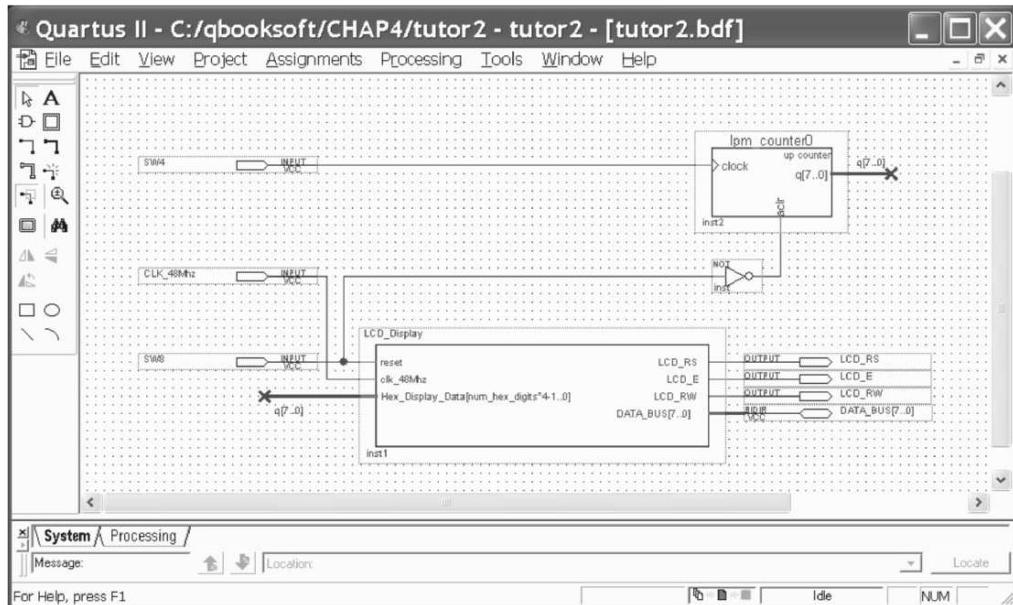


Figure 4.5 Enlarged view of tutor2 design showing `q[7..0]` bus connections.

To connect single node lines to a bus, it is first necessary to assign a name such as `q[7..0]` to the bus. Then the node line that needs to connect to a bus line is

given the name of one or more of the bus elements. As an example, the counter output MSB signal line is labeled q[7]. To label a bus or node, right click on the node or bus line and select **Properties**. You can then type in or edit the name. When signal lines have the same name, they are automatically connected in the graphic editor. A physical node line connecting a node and a bus with the same name is optional. Leaving it out often times makes a complex schematic easier to follow since there will be fewer lines crossing on the schematic. Node and bus names must be assigned first when connecting a node to a bus.

4.5 Testing the Pushbutton Counter and Displays

Compile the design with **Processing** ⇒ **Start Compilation**. Wait a few seconds for the “Full Compilation was successful” message to appear. Select **Processing** ⇒ **Classic Timing Analyzer Tool**. This counter circuit is a sequential design. The primary timing issue in sequential circuits is the maximum clock rate. Whenever you compile, a timing analysis tool automatically runs that will determine the maximum clock frequency of the logic circuit.

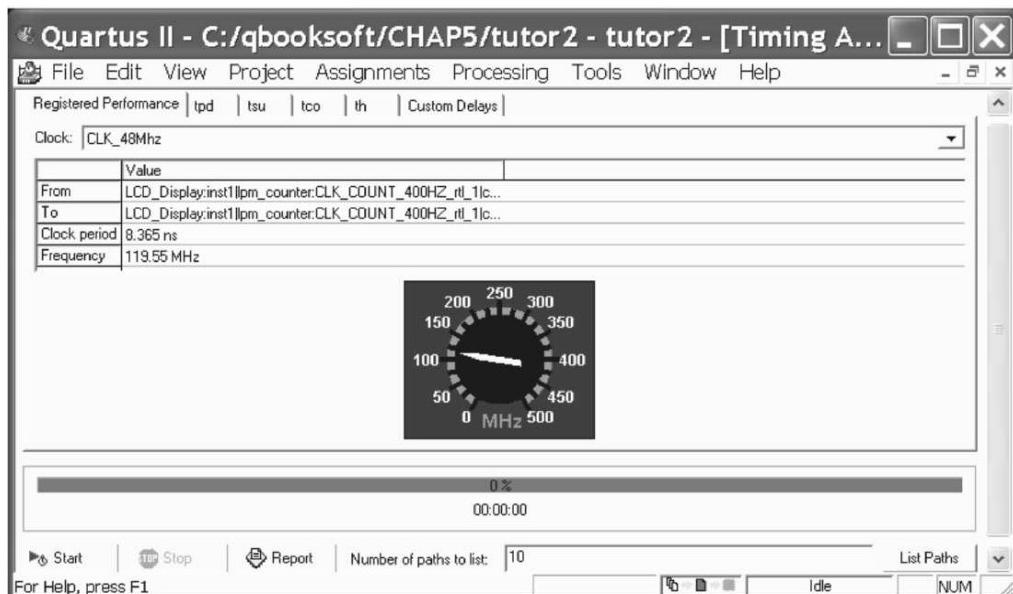


Figure 4.6 Timing analysis of a Sequential Circuit

The Timing Analyzer shows the maximum clock frequency of this logic circuit to be approximately 120 MHz. Clock rates you will obtain will vary depending on the FPGA device type, the complexity and size of the logic circuits, the speed grade of the chip, and the CAD tool version and settings. In this design, the clock is supplied by a manual switch input so a clock input of only a few hertz will be used for the counter.

Since the FPGA's clock input on the DE2 and UP3 is only 50 or 48 MHz for the LCD_Display core, this simple counter cannot be overclocked. Close and exit the timing analyzer.

4.6 Testing the Initial Design on the Board

Download the design to the FPGA board. If you need help downloading to the board, refer back to Sections 1.5 to 1.8 depending on board type.

The name of the specific switch assigned for each FPGA board is shown in Table 4.2. Hit or turn on the count switch several times to clock the counter and watch the count display as it counts up. When the switch is hit, it will occasionally count up by more than one. This is a product of mechanical bounce in the switch. A switch contains a metal spring that actually forces contact and bounces several times before stabilizing. The high-speed logic circuits will react to the switch contact bounce just as if several clock signals have occurred. This makes the counter count up by more than one randomly.

Table 4.2 Location of Switches on each FPGA board.

I/O Device	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2 & 1
SW4 – count up	SW0	SW0	SW4	Flex PB1
SW8 - reset	KEY3	KEY3	SW8	Flex PB2

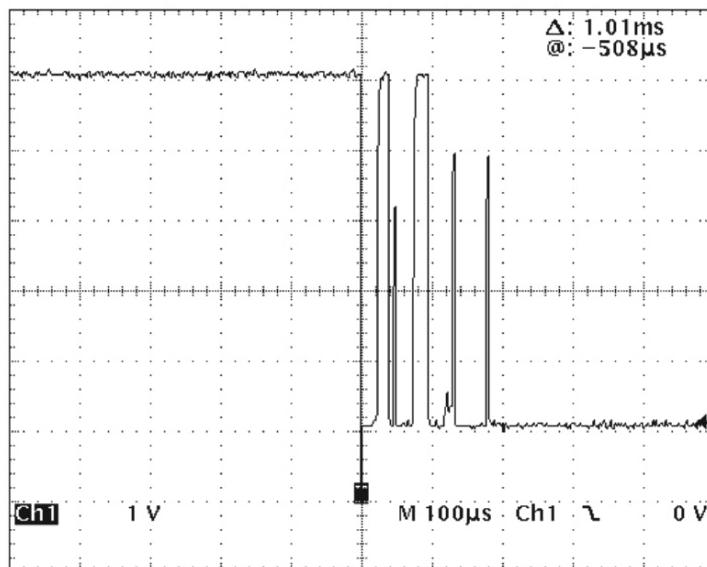


Figure 4.7 Oscilloscope display of switch contact bounce.

The actual output of the switch as it appears on a digital oscilloscope is shown in Figure 4.7. When the switch is hit, a random number of pulses appear as the switch's mechanical metal contacts bounce several times and then finally stabilize. Several of the pulses will have a voltage and duration long enough to generate extra clock pulses to the counter. An FPGA will respond to pulses in the nanosecond (ns) range, and these pulses are in the microsecond (μ s) range. This problem occurs with all slide switches or pushbuttons in digital designs. If the pushbutton is a double-pole double-throw (DPDT; i.e., has both an ON and an OFF contact), an SR latch is commonly used to remove the contact bounce. The pushbutton on the FPGA boards are single pole single throw (SPST), so a time averaging filter is used. This example demonstrates why designs must be tested on actual hardware after simulation. This problem would not have shown up in a simulation. Verify that the reset switch resets the display and the counter. DE1 and DE2 boards already have a hardware debounce circuit on the four pushbuttons and that is why the undebounced slide switch (SW0) was used instead. The other boards do not have this built-in hardware debounce circuit on their pushbuttons.

4.7 Fixing the Switch Contact Bounce Problem

For the hardware implementation to work correctly, the switch contact bounce must be removed. A logic circuit that filters the pushbutton output using a small shift register can be added to filter the output. This process is called switch debouncing. Using the right click, insert the symbol **debounce** from the project library into the schematic.

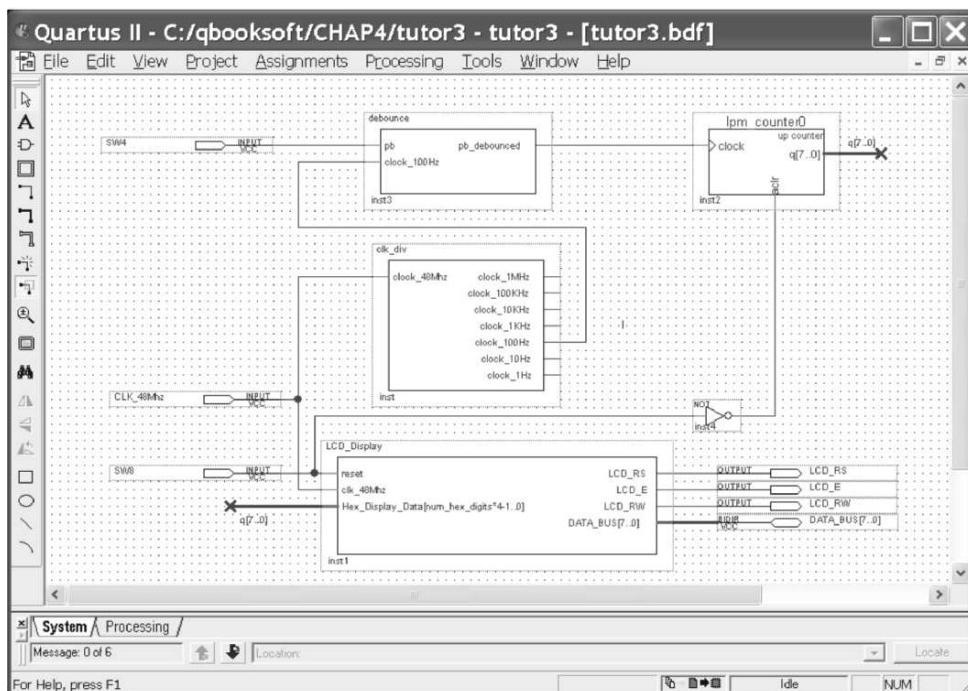


Figure 4.8 Modified tutor2 design schematic.

Disconnect the pushbutton from the lpm_counter0's clock pin and connect it to the pushbutton input pin, PB, on the debounce symbol. Now connect the PB_DEBOUNCE pin to the lpm_counter0's clock pin. The debounce circuit needs a 100Hz clock signal for the time averaging filter. The clock needed is much slower than a 25-50MHz system clock, so a clock prescalar is needed. A clock prescalar is a logic circuit that divides a clock signal.

Add the **clk_div** symbol from the project library to the schematic. Connect the 100Hz input pin on the debounce symbol to the 100Hz output pin on the clock prescalar. Connect the 48MHz clock input on the **clk_div** symbol to the **clk_48MHz** (or **clk_50Mhz** on DE1 and DE2) input pin.

The internal VHDL design in the debounce module generates the switch debounce circuit. The debounce circuit contains a 4-bit shift register that is clocked at 100Hz. The shift register shifts in the inverted pushbutton output. When any of the four bits of the shift register (i.e., four 10 ms time-spaced samples of the pushbutton's output) are High the output of the debounce circuit changes to High. When all four bits of the shift register are Low the output goes Low. This delays the High to Low change until after the switch contact bounce stops.

If the external input signal being counted or used for a reset was a fast clock that was not synchronized to the internal FPGA clock, another problem with the simple counter circuit could appear that would cause problems. If the external input signal changes right at a clock edge, it could violate the flip-flop setup and hold times and cause unpredictable results (metastability). The traditional solution for this problem is to feed any external input signals through two cascaded D flip-flops that are clocked by the system clock. This reduces the probability of a such an error to only once in several years even for a rapidly changing clock input signal. This circuit is sometimes called a synchronizer. A very slowly changing signal, such as a user input switch, has a very low probability of such an event occurring even without a synchronizer circuit, but it could still occur and would require a synchronizer in mission critical applications where such a failure could be catastrophic.

4.8 Testing the Modified Design on the FPGA Board

Verify that your schematic has the same connections to the new debounce and clock divide symbols as seen in Figure 4.8. Compile the design and download the design to the board again. Hit the count switch several times to clock the counter and watch the LCD display as it counts up. It should now count up reliably by one whenever the pushbutton is hit. Hit the reset switch and verify that the count resets to zero.

The FPGACore functions **LCD_Display** or **DEC_7SEG**, **clk_div**, and **debounce** will be useful in future design projects using the FPGA board. They can be used in any VHDL, Verilog, or schematic designs by using the graphical editor and FPGACore symbols or by using an HDL component instantiation statement.



ALL SOURCE CODE FOR THE BOOK'S DESIGNS IS AVAILABLE ON THE DVD.
MATERIALS CAN BE FOUND IN THE \BOOKSOFT_FE\BOARD\CHAPX
DIRECTORIES FOR EACH SPECIFIC BOARD (I.E., DE1, DE2, UP3, UP2)

4.9 Laboratory Exercises

1. Simulate the initial design without the switch debounce circuit by setting up an initial reset pulse and a periodic 200 ns clock input in the simulator. In sequential simulations, turn on the **setup and hold time violation detection** simulator setting option before running the simulator. This will check for flip-flop timing problems that would otherwise go undetected in the simulation. Adjust the reset pulse so that it changes right before the clock edge and run another simulation to see if you can produce a setup or hold violation.
2. Modify the counter circuit so that it counts down or up depending on the state of a switch input. See Table 2.4 for the pin assignment for the new switch input.
3. Modify the counter circuit so that it parallel loads a count value from the four switches on the FPGA board when PB2 is pushed. Zero out the low four counter bits during a load. Since the switch inputs are only used when PB2 is hit, they do not need to be debounced. See Table 2.4 for the pin assignments for the new switch inputs.
4. Build a stopwatch with the following modifications to the design. Disconnect the counter clk line and connect it to the clock_10hz pin on the clock_div symbol. Clock a toggle flip-flop with the pb_debounce output. A toggle flip-flop, tff, can be found in the prim symbol library. A toggle flip-flop's output changes state every time it is clocked. Connect the output of the toggle flip-flop to a new count enable input added to the counter with the megawizard. The count should start and stop when PB1 is hit. Elapsed time in tenths of seconds should be displayed in hexadecimal. Pushing PB2 should reset the stopwatch.
5. The elapsed time in the stopwatch from problem 3 is displayed in hexadecimal. Replace the counter with two cascaded binary-coded-decimal (BCD) counters so that it displays the elapsed time as two decimal digits.

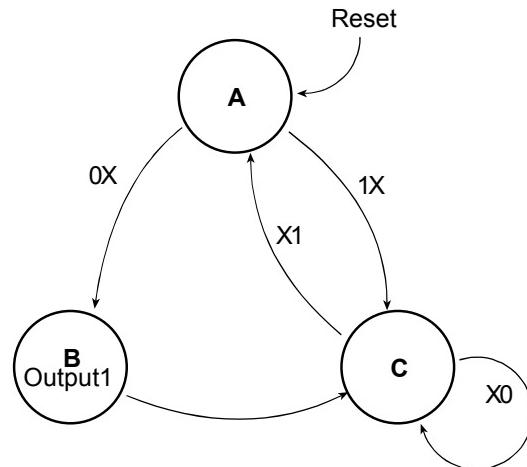
6. Build a watch by expanding the counter circuit to count seconds, hours, and minutes. The two pushbuttons reset and start the watch.
7. Replace the lpm_counter0 logic with a VHDL or Verilog counter design, simulate the design, and verify operation on the FPGA board. Read Chapter 5 and note the example counter design in section 6.10.
8. Draw a schematic, develop a simulation, and download a design to the FPGA board that uses the LCD displays for outputs and the DIP switch for input, to test the 74161 4-bit TTL counter function found in the /others/maxplus2 symbol library. Use the DIP or slide switch to provide four inputs for a parallel load of the count. Use a debounced pushbutton input for the clock. Use the second pushbutton for the load input.
9. Draw a schematic, develop a simulation, and download a design to the FPGA board to test the following functions that can be created with the MegaWizard:

LPM_ADD_SUB:	a 2-bit adder/subtractor; test the add operation
LPM_ADD_SUB:	a 2-bit adder/subtractor; test the subtract operation
LPM_COMPARE:	compare two 2-bit unsigned numbers
LPM_DECODE:	a 4 to 16-bit decoder
LPM_CLSHIFT:	a 4-bit shift register
LPM_MULT:	a 2-bit unsigned multiply

The LPM megafunctions require several parameters to specify bus size and other various options. For this problem, do not use pipelining and use the unregistered input options. Refer to the online help files for each LPM function for additional information. In the **enter symbol** window, use the megawizard button to help configure LPM symbols. Use the FPGA boards switches for four inputs as needed and display the output in hex on the two seven-segment displays. Use a debounced pushbutton input for the clock, if one is required. Use the second pushbutton for a Clear or Reset input. Use the timing analyzer to determine the worst-case delay time for each function.

10. Draw a schematic and develop a simulation to test the LPM_ROM megafunction. Create a sixteen word ROM with eight data bits per word. Specify initial values in hex for the ROM in a memory initialization file (*.mif) file. The contents of each memory location should be initialized to four times its address. See MIF in the online help for details on the syntax of a MIF file. Enter the address in four switches and display the data from the ROM in the two seven-segment LEDs or the LCD. Determine the access time of the ROM.

11. Using gates and the DFF part from the primitives/storage library, design a circuit that implements the state machine shown below. Use two D flip-flops with an encoded state.

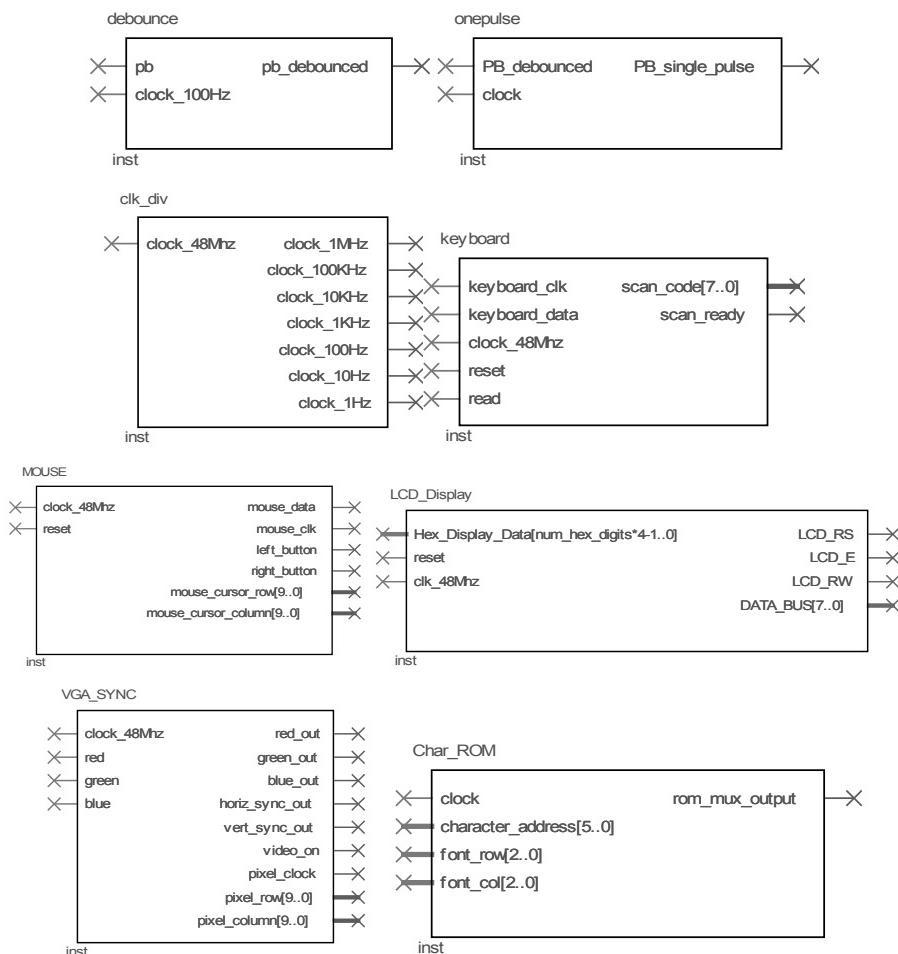


For the encoded states use $A = "00"$, $B = "01"$, and $C = "10"$. Ensure that the undefined "11" state enters a known state. Enter the design using the graphical editor. Develop a simulation that tests the state machine for correct operation. The simulation should test all states and arcs in the state diagram and the "11" state. Use the **Processing** \Rightarrow **Classic Timing Analyzer Tool** option to determine the maximum clock frequency on the Cyclone device. Use an asynchronous reset.

12. Repeat the previous problem using one-hot encoding. Recall that one-hot encoding uses one flip-flop per state, and only one flip-flop is ever active at any given time in valid states. The state encoding for the one-hot state machine would be $A = "100"$, $B = "010"$, and $C = "001"$. Start with a reset in the simulation. It is not necessary to test illegal states in the one-hot simulation. One-hot state machine encoding is recommended by many FPGA device manufacturers.

CHAPTER 5

FPGACore Library Functions



5 FPGACore Library Functions

In complex hierarchical designs, intellectual property (IP) cores are frequently used. An IP core is a previously developed synthesizable hardware design that provides a widely used function. Commercially licensed IP cores include functions such as microprocessors, microcontrollers, bus interfaces, multimedia and DSP functions, and communications controllers. IP cores promote design reuse and reduce development time by providing common hardware functions for use in a new design.

The FPGACore functions listed in Table 5.1 are designed to simplify use of the FPGA board's pushbuttons, keyboard, mouse, LCD display, seven-segment LEDs, and video output features. They can be used in schematic capture, VHDL, or Verilog based designs. Full source code is provided on the DVD.

Table 5.1 The FPGACore Functions.

FPGACore Name	Description
LCD_Display	Displays ASCII Characters and Hex Data on an LCD Panel
DEC_7SEG	Display Hex Data on a seven-segment LED Display
Debounce	Pushbutton Debounce Circuit
OnePulse	Pushbutton Single Pulse Circuit
Clk_Div	Clock Prescaler with 7 slower frequency outputs (1MHz to 1hz)
VGA_Sync	VGA Sync signal generator for FPGA that outputs pixel addresses
Video_PLL	Used by VGA Sync to generate the video pixel clock using a PLL
Char_ROM	Small Character Font ROM for video character generation
Keyboard	Reads keyboard scan codes from the board's PS/2 connector
Mouse	Reads PS/2 mouse data and outputs cursor row and column address

FPGACores can be used as symbols from the FPGACore library, accessed via a VHDL package, or used as a component in other VHDL or Verilog files. An example of using the FPGACore package in VHDL can be found in the file `\board\chap5\FPGApack.vhd` available on the DVD. The use of FPGApack's VHDL package saves retyping lengthy component declarations for the core functions in each VHDL-based design.

This section contains a one-page summary of each FPGACore interface. VHDL source code is provided for all FPGACores on the DVD. Additional documentation, examples, and interface details can be found in later chapters on video signal generation, the keyboard, and the mouse. The Clk_Div, LCD_Display, and Debounce functions were already used in the tutorial design example in Chapter 4.

For correct operation of the FPGACore functions, I/O pin assignments must be made as shown in the description of each FPGACore function. Clock inputs are also required on several of the FPGACore functions. The Clk_Div FPGACore is setup to provide the slower clock signals needed by some of the core functions.

Source code for the FPGACore functions must be in the project directory or in the user's library search path. Review Section 4.2 for additional information on checking the library path. The VGA_Sync, Video_PLL, and LCD_Display core functions are often modified by the user to support different display resolutions and message options for each design. Be sure to select the right version of these core functions when adding file paths for a new project.

For UP2 and UP1 users, the same functionality is provided in the FPGACore library functions found on the DVD in the \UP2\Chap5 and \UP1\Chap5 directories. Since the DE1 and UP2 do not have an LCD display, the seven segment display core, DEC_7SEG, must be used instead.

On the UP2 and UP1, only the 640 by 480 video mode is possible since the FPGA on these boards does not have a Phase Locked Loop (PLL) to generate the higher clock frequencies needed for other video display resolutions.



ALL OF THE SOURCE CODE FOR THE VARIOUS FPGACORE FUNCTIONS
CAN BE FOUND ON THE DVD IN THE \BOARD\CHAP5 SUBDIRECTORIES.

5.1 FPGACore LCD_Display: LCD Panel Character Display

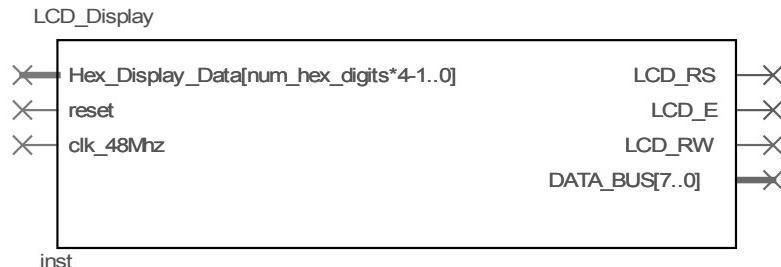


Figure 5.1 Symbol for LCD_Display FPGACore.

The LCD_Display core is used to display static ASCII characters and changing hex values from hardware on the DE2's or UP3's 16 by 2 line LCD display panel. The core's VHDL code can be configured internally by the user to display different ASCII strings and hex data fields. Instructions can be found in comments in the core's VHDL code. A Generic, *Num_Hex_Digits*, is used to set the size of the Hex_Display_Data input (i.e., Each hex digit displayed requires a 4-bit signal).

The LCD controller datasheet contains information on graphics characters and LCD commands. A state machine is used to send data and commands to the LCD controller and to generate the required handshake signals. An ASCII to hex table can be found in Appendix D. See *LCD_Display.vhd* for more information.

5.1.1 VHDL Component Declaration

```

COMPONENT LCD_Display
    PORT(Hex_Display_Data: IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR
        ((Num_Hex_Digits*4)-1 DOWNTO 0);
        reset, clock_48MHz: IN STD_LOGIC;
        LCD_RS, LCD_E: OUT STD_LOGIC;
        LCD_RW: INOUT STD_LOGIC;
        DATA_BUS: INOUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR(7 DOWNTO 0));
END COMPONENT;
    
```

5.1.2 Inputs

Hex_Display_Data contains the 4-bit hexadecimal hardware signal values to convert to ASCII hex digits and send to the LED display. The Generic, Num_Hex_Digits, adjusts the size of the input hex data. Generics can be assigned a value in an HDL file or with a block's parameter assignment in a schematic. In a schematic, use **View** \Rightarrow **Parameter assignment** to see the generic value and the symbol's properties parameters tab to set it.

5.1.3 Outputs

Outputs control an 8-bit tri-state bidirectional data bus to the LCD panel. Handshake lines are used to transfer ASCII data to the display. Pin assignments for the LCD module on the DE2 and UP3 boards are listed below. The DE1, UP2, and UP1 boards do not have a built-in LCD display module.

Table 5.2 The LCD Pin Assignments

Pin Name	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2, UP1	Pin Type	Function of Pin
LCD_E	-	K3	50	-	Output	LCD Enable line
LCD_RW	-	K4	73	-	Output	LCD R/W control line
LCD_RS	-	K1	108	-	Output	LCD Register Select Line
LCD_DATA[0]	-	J1	94	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[1]	-	J2	96(133)	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[2]	-	H1	98	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[3]	-	H2	100	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[4]	-	J4	102(108)	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[5]	-	J3	104	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[6]	-	H4	106	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[7]	-	H3	113	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus

5.2 FPGACore DEC_7SEG: Hex to Seven-segment Decoder

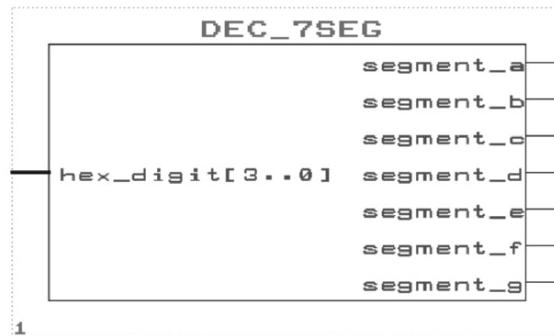


Figure 5.2 Symbol for DEC_7SEG FPGACore.

The FPGACore Dec_7seg shown in Figure 5.2 is a hexadecimal to seven-segment display decoder with active low outputs. This function is used to display hex numbers on an FPGA board's seven-segment LED displays.

5.2.1 VHDL Component Declaration

```
COMPONENT dec_7seg
    PORT( hex_digit      : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR ( 3 DOWNTO 0 );
          seg_a, seg_b, seg_c,
          seg_d, seg_e, seg_f,
          seg_g           : OUT STD_LOGIC );
END COMPONENT;
```

5.2.2 Inputs

Hex_digit is the 4-bit hexadecimal value to send to the LED display. Hex_digit[3] is the most-significant bit.

5.2.3 Outputs

Segments a through g are active low and should be connected as output pins to the corresponding pin on a seven-segment display. Table 5.3 lists the pin assignments for the first two hex displays on the FPGA boards. The UP3 does not contain seven segment displays, but it does have an LCD module. More than two seven segment displays are available on both the DE1 and DE2 boards, see the appropriate board's user manuals for a complete list of pin assignments.

Table 5.3 The Seven Segment Display Pin Assignments

Pin Name	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2, UP1	Pin Type	Function of Pin
HEX0[0]	J2	AF10	-	6	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment A (0=on)
HEX0[1]	J1	AB12	-	7	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment B (0=on)
HEX0[2]	H2	AC12	-	8	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment C (0=on)
HEX0[3]	H1	AD11	-	9	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment D (0=on)
HEX0[4]	F2	AE11	-	11	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment E (0=on)
HEX0[5]	F1	V14	-	12	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment F (0=on)
HEX0[6]	E2	V13	-	13	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment G (0=on)
HEX1[0]	E1	V20	-	17	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment A (0=on)
HEX1[1]	H6	V21	-	18	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment B (0=on)
HEX1[2]	H5	W21	-	19	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment C (0=on)
HEX1[3]	H4	Y22	-	20	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment D (0=on)
HEX1[4]	G3	AA24	-	21	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment E (0=on)
HEX1[5]	D2	AA23	-	23	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment F (0=on)
HEX1[6]	D1	AB24	-	24	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment G (0=on)

5.3 FPGACore Debounce: Pushbutton Debounce

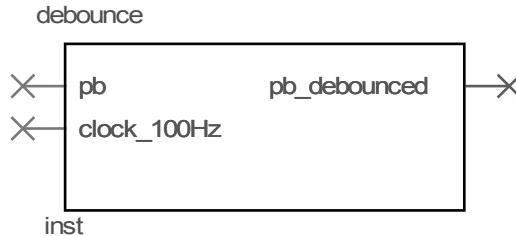


Figure 5.3 Symbol for Debounce FPGACore.

The FPGACore Debounce shown in Figure 5.3 is a pushbutton debounce circuit. This function is used to filter mechanical contact bounce in a switch or pushbutton. A shift register is used to filter out the switch contact bounce. The shift register takes several time spaced samples of the switch input and changes the output only after several sequential samples are the same value.

5.3.1 VHDL Component Declaration

```

COMPONENT debounce
    PORT( pb, clock_100Hz      : IN      STD_LOGIC;
          pb_debounced       : OUT     STD_LOGIC;
    );
END COMPONENT;

```

5.3.2 Inputs

PB is the raw pushbutton input. It should be tied to an input pin connected to a pushbutton or slide switch. See Chapter 2 for pushbutton and switch pin numbers. Clock is a clock signal of approximately 100Hz that is used for the internal 50ms switch debounce filter circuits. UP3, UP2, and UP1 board pushbuttons are not debounced in hardware, but DE2 and DE1 boards are.

5.3.3 Outputs

PB_debounced is the debounced pushbutton output. The output will remain Low until the pushbutton is released. If a pulse is needed to be only 1 clock period long, add the OnePulse core function to the debounced switch output.

Table 5.4 The Pushbutton Switch Pin Assignments

Pin Name	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2, UP1	Pin Type	Function of Pin
KEY0	R22	G26	48	28 PB1	Input	Pushbutton KEY0 (debounced, 0 = button hit)
KEY1	R21	N23	49	29 PB2	Input	Pushbutton KEY1 (debounced, 0 = button hit)
KEY2	T22	P23	57	-	Input	Pushbutton KEY2 (debounced, 0 = button hit)
KEY3	T21	W26	62	-	Input	Pushbutton KEY3 (debounced, 0 = button hit)

5.4 FPGACore OnePulse: Pushbutton Single Pulse

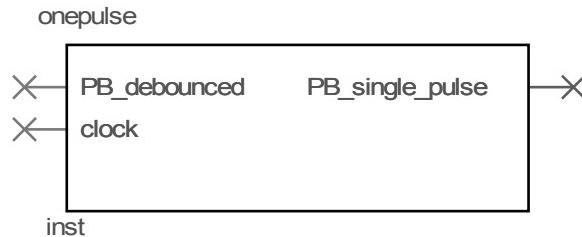


Figure 5.4 Symbol for OnePulse FPGACore.

The FPGACore OnePulse shown in Figure 5.4 is a pushbutton single-pulse circuit. Output from the pushbutton is High for only one clock cycle no matter how long the pushbutton is pressed. This function is useful in state machines that read external pushbutton inputs. In general, fewer states are required when it is known that inputs only activate for one clock cycle. Internally, an edge-triggered flip-flop is used to build a simple state machine.

5.4.1 VHDL Component Declaration

```

COMPONENT onepulse
    PORT( PB_debounced, clock : IN STD_LOGIC;
          PB_single_pulse : OUT STD_LOGIC );
END COMPONENT;
    
```

5.4.2 Inputs

PB_debounced is the debounced pushbutton input. It should be connected to a debounced pushbutton.

Clock is the user's state-machine clock. It can be any frequency. In some designs, the user may want to edit the VHDL code to add a reset input.

5.4.3 Outputs

PB_single_pulse is the output, which is High for only one clock cycle when a pushbutton is hit.

5.5 FPGACore Clk_Div: Clock Divider

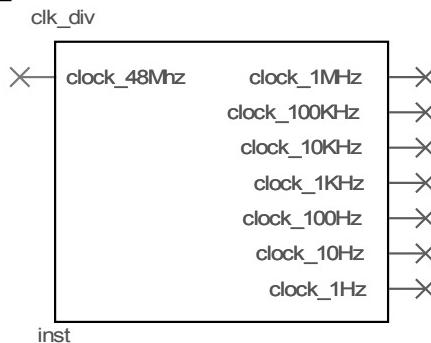


Figure 5.5 Symbol for Clk_Div FPGACore.

The FPGACore Clk_Div shown in Figure 5.5 is used to provide clock signals slower than the on-board clock oscillator. The output signals are obtained by dividing down the clock input signal. Multiple output taps provide clock frequencies in powers of ten.

5.5.1 VHDL Component Declaration

```
COMPONENT clk_div
    PORT(
        clock_48MHz      : IN      STD_LOGIC;
        clock_1MHz       : OUT     STD_LOGIC;
        clock_100kHz     : OUT     STD_LOGIC;
        clock_10kHz      : OUT     STD_LOGIC;
        clock_1kHz       : OUT     STD_LOGIC;
        clock_100Hz      : OUT     STD_LOGIC;
        clock_10Hz       : OUT     STD_LOGIC;
        clock_1Hz        : OUT     STD_LOGIC );
END COMPONENT;
```

5.5.2 Inputs

A different frequency input clock is used on different FPGA boards, so each board has a slightly different version of this function. The UP3 version is shown. Clock_48MHz is an input pin that should be connected to the UP3 on-board 48MHz USB clock. The pin number for the UP3's 48MHz USB clock is 29. Make sure the JP3 jumper selects the 48MHz USB clock (default setting).

5.5.3 Outputs

Clock_1MHz through clock_1Hz provide output signals of the specified frequency. Based on a crystal oscillator, the actual frequency is $1.007 \pm .005\%$ times the listed value.

Table 5.5 The Crystal Oscillator Clock Pin Assignments

Pin Name	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2, UP1	Pin Type	Function of Pin
CLOCK	L1 50Mhz	N2 50Mhz	153 48Mhz	91 25Mhz	Input	25-50MHz Clock

5.6 FPGACore VGA_Sync: VGA Video Sync Generation

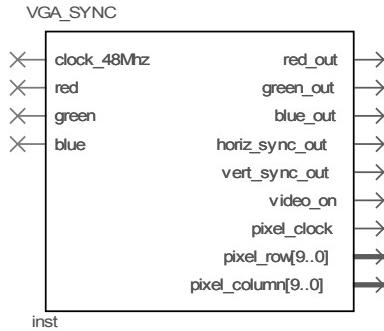


Figure 5.6 Symbol for VGA_Sync FPGACore.

The FPGACore VGA_Sync shown in Figure 5.6 provides horizontal and vertical sync signals to generate an 8-color 640 by 480 pixel VGA video image. For more detailed information on video signal generation see Chapter 9.

A table of the common screen resolutions and refresh rates along with the required pixel clocks and sync count values can be found at the end of the VGA_Sync IP core source code. When changing resolutions or refresh rates, use the MegaWizard edit feature to adjust the *video_pll.vhd* code to output a different pixel clock rate and change the horizontal and vertical sync counter limits to the six new values found in the table.

Video_pll.vhd must be present to compile VGA_Sync since it uses this component for the clock.

5.6.1 VHDL Component Declaration

```

COMPONENT vga_sync
    PORT( clock_48MHz, red, green, blue: IN STD_LOGIC;
          red_out, green_out, blue_out,
          horiz_sync_out, vert_sync_out:
          pixel_row, pixel_column:           OUT STD_LOGIC;
                                         OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 ) );
END COMPONENT;
    
```

5.6.2 Inputs

Clock is an input pin that must be connected to the on-board clock. One of the FPGA's Phase Locked Loops (PLL) is used to generate the exact video clock rate required in the *video_pll.vhd* code. Red, Green, and Blue inputs provide the color information for the video signal. External user logic must generate the RGB input signals. One of the FPGA's PLLs is used to generate the required pixel clock on all boards except the UP2 and UP1, which only provide a 25Mhz clock for 640 by 480 modes. An external reference clock of 48 or 50MHz is used by the PLL for the input clock on the other FPGA boards.

5.6.3 Outputs

- Horiz_sync is an output pin that should be tied to the VGA horizontal sync.
- Vert_sync is an output pin that should be tied to the VGA vertical sync.
- Red_out is an output pin that should be tied to the red RGB signal.
- Green_out is an output pin that should be tied to the green RGB signal.
- Blue_out is an output pin that should be tied to the blue RGB signal.

An interface circuit on the UP2 & UP3 boards converts the digital red, green, and blue video color signals to the appropriate analog voltage for the monitor. On the UP3, set jumper JP3 to short pins 3-4 for the 48Mhz clock. Eight colors are possible using the three digital color signals. A four-bit signal is used on the DE1 for a total of 4096 colors and the DE2 has 10-bits per color. Just wiring up a signal to a couple of the high color bits on boards with more colors gives a solid color for simple designs that use only a few colors.

Pixel_clock, pixel_row, and pixel_column are outputs that provide the current pixel clock and the pixel address. Video_on indicates that pixel data is being displayed and a retrace cycle is not presently occurring. These outputs are used by user logic to generate RGB color input data.

Table 5.6 The VGA Video Display Pin Assignments

Pin Name	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2, UP1	Pin Type	Function of Pin
CLOCK	L1 50Mhz	N2 50Mhz	153 48Mhz	91 25Mhz	Input	25-50MHz Clock - PLL input on DEx and UP3
VGA_RED	B7	E10	228	236	Output	VGA Red Video Signal (highest bit)
VGA_GREEN	A8	D12	122	237	Output	VGA Green Video Signal (highest bit)
VGA_BLUE	B10	B12	170	238	Output	VGA Blue Video Signal (highest bit)
VGA_VSYNC	B11	D8	226	239	Output	VGA Connector Vertical Sync Signal
VGA_HSYNC	A11	A7	227	240	Output	VGA Connector Horizontal Sync Signal

5.7 FPGACore Char_ROM: Character Generation ROM

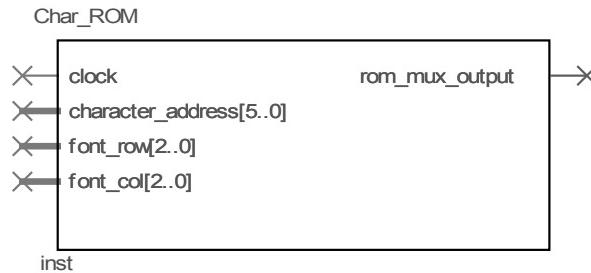


Figure 5.7 Symbol for Char_ROM FPGACore.

The FPGACore Char_ROM shown in Figure 5.7 is a character generation ROM used to generate text in a video display. Each character is represented by an 8 by 8 pixel font. For more information on video character generation see Chapter 10. Character codes are listed in Table 10.2 of Section 10.9. Font data is contained in the memory initialization file, tcgrom.mif. One Cyclone M4K memory block is required for the ROM that holds the font data.

5.7.1 VHDL Component Declaration

```

COMPONENT char_rom
  PORT(
    clock : IN STD_LOGIC;
    character_address : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 5 DOWNTO 0 );
    font_row, font_col : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 2 DOWNTO 0 );
    rom_mux_output : OUT STD_LOGIC);
END COMPONENT;
  
```

5.7.2 Inputs

Character_address is the address of the alphanumeric character to display. Font_row and font_col are used to index through the 8 by 8 font to address the single pixels needed for video signal generation. Clock loads the address register and should be tied to the video pixel_clock.

5.7.3 Outputs

Rom_mux_output is the pixel font value indexed by the address inputs. It is used by user logic to generate the RGB pixel color data for the video signal.

5.8 FPGACore Keyboard: Read Keyboard Scan Code

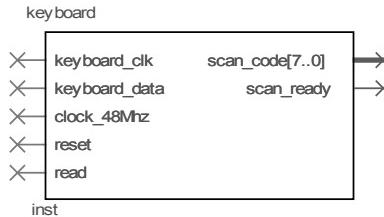


Figure 5.8 Symbol for Keyboard FPGACore.

The FPGACore Keyboard shown in Figure 5.8 is used to read the PS/2 keyboard scan code from a keyboard attached to the FPGA board's PS/2 connector. This function converts the serial data from the keyboard to parallel format to produce the scan code output. For detailed information on keyboard applications and scan codes see Table 11.2 in Chapter 11.

5.8.1 VHDL Component Declaration

```

COMPONENT keyboard
  PORT( keyboard_clk, keyboard_data, clock_48MHz ,
        reset, read      : IN  STD_LOGIC;
        scan_code   : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        scan_ready  : OUT STD_LOGIC);
END COMPONENT;
  
```

5.8.2 Inputs

- Clock_48MHz is an input pin that must be connected to the on-board clock oscillator.
- Keyboard_clk and keyboard_data are PS/2 input data lines from the keyboard.
- Pin assignments for the FPGA boards are listed in Table 5.7.

Read is a handshake input signal. The rising edge of the read signal clears the scan ready signal. Reset is an input that clears the internal registers and flags used for serial-to-parallel conversion.

Table 5.7 The PS/2 Keyboard Pin Assignments

Pin Name	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2, UP1	Pin Type	Function of Pin
PS2_CLK	H15	D26	12	30	Bidir.	PS2 Connector
PS2_DATA	J14	C24	13	31	Bidir.	PS2 Connector

5.8.3 Outputs

Scan_code contains the bytes transmitted by the keyboard when a key is pressed or released. See Table 11.2 in Chapter 11 for a listing of keyboard scan codes. Scan codes for a single key are a sequence of several bytes. A make code is sent when a key is hit, and a break code is sent whenever a key is released. When typing, it is normal to have several keys on a keyboard depressed at the same time on different fingers. Also, some features require holding down multiple keys, so several make codes may be seen before the break code for a particular key.

Scan_ready is a handshake output signal that goes High when a new scan code is sent by the keyboard. The read input clears scan_ready. The scan_ready handshake line should be used to ensure that a new scan code is read only once.

5.9 FPGACore Mouse: Mouse Cursor

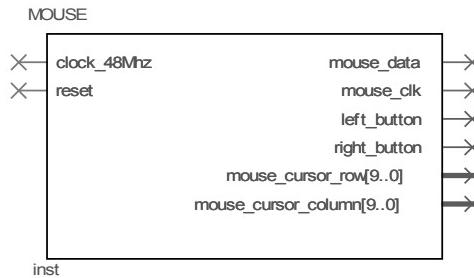


Figure 5.9 Symbol for Mouse FPGACore.

The FPGACore Mouse shown in Figure 5.9 is used to read position data from a mouse attached to the UP3's PS/2 connector. It outputs a row and column cursor address for use in video applications. The mouse must be attached to the FPGA board prior to downloading for proper initialization.

The internal operation of the core and more detailed information on mouse applications, commands, and data formats can be found in Chapter 11.

5.9.1 VHDL Component Declaration

```

COMPONENT mouse
    PORT( clock_48MHz, reset : IN STD_LOGIC;
          mouse_data      : INOUT STD_LOGIC;
          mouse_clk       : INOUT STD_LOGIC;
          left_button, right_button : OUT STD_LOGIC;
          mouse_cursor_row : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 );
          mouse_cursor_column : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 ) );
END COMPONENT;
    
```

5.9.2 Inputs

Clock_48MHz is an input pin that must be connected to the on-board clock. On DE1 and DE2 boards a 50Mhz clock is used. Mouse_clk and mouse_data are bi-directional PS/2 signal lines from the mouse.

Table 5.8 The PS/2 Mouse Pin Assignments

Pin Name	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2, UP1	Pin Type	Function of Pin
PS2_CLK	H15	D26	12	30	Bidir.	PS2 Clk Connector
PS2_DATA	J14	C24	13	31	Bidir.	PS2 Data Connector

5.9.3 Outputs

Mouse_cursor_row and mouse_cursor_column are outputs that contain the current address of the mouse cursor in the 640 by 480 screen area. The cursor is initialized to the center of the screen. Left_button and right_button outputs are High when the corresponding mouse button is pressed.

5.10 For additional information

The FPGA cores summarized in this chapter are used extensively in the textbook's design examples, and complete source code is provided on the DVD. They are provided to support any new FPGA designs that you may develop. Extensive lists of more complex commercial third-party IP cores available for purchase can be found at the major FPGA vendor web sites, www.altera.com and www.xilinx.com. Pricing on commercial cores can be expensive and access to source code may not be provided. An assortment of free open source IP cores for FPGAs is available at www.opencores.org.

SOURCE CODE FOR THE FPGACORE FUNCTIONS IS ON THE DVD.

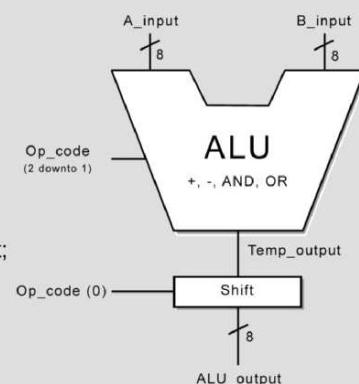


IN THE BOOK'S DESIGN EXAMPLES, ADDITIONAL MATERIALS
CAN BE FOUND IN EACH \BOARD\CHAPX DIRECTORY.

CHAPTER 6

Using VHDL for Synthesis of Digital Hardware

```
ARCHITECTURE behavior OF ALU IS
SIGNAL temp_output: STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
BEGIN
PROCESS (Op_code, A_input, B_input)
BEGIN
-- Select Arithmetic/Logical Operation
CASE Op_Code ( 2 DOWNTO 1 ) IS
WHEN "00" =>
    temp_output <= A_input + B_input;
WHEN "01" =>
    temp_output <= A_input - B_input;
WHEN "10" =>
    temp_output <= A_input AND B_input;
WHEN "11" =>
    temp_output <= A_input OR B_input;
WHEN OTHERS =>
    temp_output <= "00000000";
END CASE;
-- Select Shift Operation
IF Op_Code( 0 ) = '1' THEN
    Alu_output <= temp_output( 6 DOWNTO 0 ) & '0';
ELSE
    Alu_output <= temp_output;
END IF;
END PROCESS;
END behavior;
```



6 Using VHDL for Synthesis of Digital Hardware

In the past, most digital designs were manually entered into a schematic entry tool. With increasingly large and more complex designs, this is a tedious and time-consuming process. Logic synthesis using hardware description languages is becoming widely used since it greatly reduces development time and cost. It also enables more exploration of design alternatives, more flexibility to changes in the hardware technology, and promotes design reuse.

VHDL is a language widely used to model and design digital hardware. VHDL is the subject of IEEE standards 1076 and 1164 and is supported by numerous CAD tool and programmable logic vendors. VHDL is an acronym for VHSIC Hardware Description Language. VHSIC, Very High Speed Integrated Circuits, was a USA Department of Defense program in the 1980s that sponsored the early development of VHDL. VHDL has syntax similar to ADA and PASCAL.

Conventional programming languages are based on a sequential operation model. Digital hardware devices by their very nature operate in parallel. This means that conventional programming languages cannot accurately describe or model the operation of digital hardware since they are based on the sequential execution of statements. VHDL is designed to model parallel operations.

IT IS CRUCIAL TO REMEMBER THAT VHDL MODULES, CONCURRENT STATEMENTS, AND PROCESSES ALL OPERATE IN PARALLEL.

In VHDL, variables change without delay and signals change with a small delay. For VHDL synthesis, signals are normally used instead of variables so that simulation works the same as the synthesized hardware.

A subset of VHDL is used for logic synthesis. In this section, a brief introduction to VHDL for logic synthesis will be presented. It is assumed that the reader is already familiar with basic digital logic devices and PASCAL, ADA, or VHDL.

Whenever you need help with VHDL syntax, VHDL templates of common statements are available in the Quartus II online help. In the text editor, just click the right mouse button and **Insert** \Rightarrow **Templates** and select **VHDL**.

6.1 VHDL Data Types

In addition to the normal language data types such as Boolean, integer, and real, VHDL contains new types useful in modeling digital hardware. For logic synthesis, the most important type is standard logic. Type standard logic, STD_LOGIC, is normally used to model a logic bit. To accurately model the operation of digital circuits, more values than "0" or "1" are needed for a logic bit. In the logic simulator, a standard logic bit can have nine values, U, X, 0, 1, Z, W, L, H, and "-". U is uninitialized and X is forced unknown. Z is tri-state or high impedance. L and H are weak "0" and weak "1". "-" is don't care. Type STD_LOGIC_VECTOR contains a one-dimensional array of STD_LOGIC bits. Using these types normally requires the inclusion of special standard logic libraries at the beginning of each VHDL module. The value of a standard logic

bit can be set to ‘0’ or ‘1’ using single quotes. A standard logic vector constant, such as the 2-bit zero value, "00" must be enclosed in double quotes. X”F” is the four bit hexadecimal value F.

6.2 VHDL Operators

Table 6.1 lists the VHDL operators and their common function in VHDL synthesis tools.

Table 6.1 VHDL Operators.

VHDL Operator	Operation
+	Addition
-	Subtraction
*	Multiplication*
/	Division*
MOD	Modulus*
REM	Remainder*
&	Concatenation – used to combine bits
SLL**	logical shift left
SRL**	logical shift right
SLA**	arithmetic shift left
SRA**	arithmetic shift right
ROL**	rotate left
ROR**	rotate right
=	equality
/=	Inequality
<	less than
<=	less than or equal
>	greater than
>=	greater than or equal
NOT	logical NOT
AND	logical AND
OR	logical OR
NAND	logical NAND
NOR	logical NOR
XOR	logical XOR
XNOR*	logical XNOR

*Not supported in many VHDL synthesis tools. In the Quartus II tools, only multiply and divide by integers are supported. Mod and Rem are not supported in Quartus II. Efficient design of multiply or divide hardware may require the user to specify the arithmetic algorithm and design in VHDL.

** Supported only in 1076-1993 VHDL only.

Table 6.2 illustrates two useful VHDL conversion functions for type STD_LOGIC and integer.

Table 6.2 STD_LOGIC conversion functions.

Function	Example:
CONV_STD_LOGIC_VECTOR(integer, bits) Converts an integer to a standard logic vector. Useful to enter constants. CONV_SIGNED and CONV_UNSIGNED work in a similar way to produce signed and unsigned values.	CONV_STD_LOGIC_VECTOR(7, 4) Produces a standard logic vector of "0111".
CONV_INTEGER(std_logic_vector) Converts a standard logic vector to an integer. Useful for array indexing when using a std_logic_vector signal for the array index.	CONV_INTEGER("0111") Produces an integer value of 7.

6.3 VHDL Based Synthesis of Digital Hardware

VHDL can be used to construct models at a variety of levels such as structural, behavioral, register transfer level (RTL), and timing. An RTL model of a circuit described in VHDL describes the input/output relationship in terms of dataflow operations on signal and register values. If registers are required, a synchronous clocking scheme is normally used. Sometimes an RTL model is also referred to as a dataflow-style model.

VHDL simulation models often include physical device time delays. In VHDL models written for logic synthesis, timing information should not be provided.

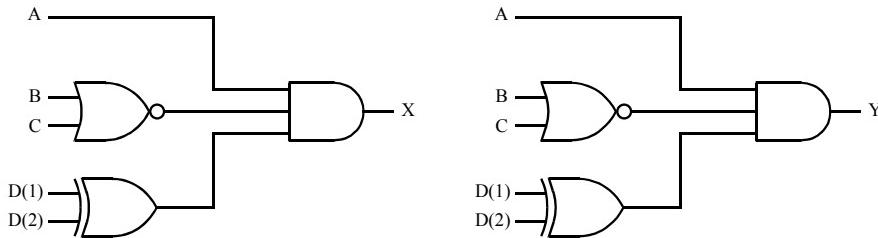
For timing simulations, the CAD tools automatically include the actual timing delays for the synthesized logic circuit. A FPGA timing model supplied by the CAD tool vendor is used to automatically generate the physical device time delays inside the FPGA. Sometimes this timing model is also written in VHDL. For a quick overview of VHDL, several constructs that can be used to synthesize common digital hardware devices will be presented.

6.4 VHDL Synthesis Models of Gate Networks

The first example consists of a simple gate network. In this model, both a concurrent assignment statement and a sequential process are shown which generate the same gate network. X is the output on one network and Y is the output on the other gate network. The two gate networks operate in parallel.

In VHDL synthesis, inputs and outputs from the port declaration in the module will become I/O pins on the programmable logic device. Comment lines begin with "--". The Quartus II editor performs syntax coloring and is useful to quickly find major problems with VHDL syntax.

Inside a process, statements are executed in sequential order, and all processes are executed in parallel. If multiple assignments are made to a signal inside a process, the last assignment is taken as the new signal value.



```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
-- Include Libraries for standard logic data types

ENTITY gate_network IS
    PORT( A, B, C : IN STD_LOGIC;
          -- Standard Logic Vector ( Array of 4 Bits )
          D      : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 3 DOWNTO 0 );
          -- Output Signals
          X, Y   : OUT STD_LOGIC );
    -- Entity name normally the same as file name
    -- Ports: Declares module inputs and outputs
END gate_network;

-- Defines internal module architecture
ARCHITECTURE behavior OF gate_network IS
BEGIN
    -- Concurrent assignment statements operate in parallel
    -- D(1) selects bit 1 of standard logic vector D
    X <= A AND NOT( B OR C ) AND ( D( 1 ) XOR D( 2 ) );
    -- Process must declare a sensitivity list,
    -- In this case it is ( A, B, C, D )
    -- List includes all signals that can change the outputs
    PROCESS ( A, B, C, D )
        BEGIN
            -- Statements inside process execute sequentially
            Y <= A AND NOT( B OR C ) AND ( D( 1 ) XOR D( 2 ) );
    END PROCESS;
END behavior;

```

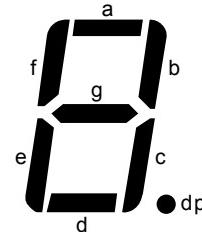
6.5 VHDL Synthesis Model of a Seven-segment LED Decoder

The following VHDL code implements a seven-segment decoder for seven-segment LED displays. A 7-bit standard logic vector is used to assign the value of all seven bits in a single case statement. In the logic vector, the most-significant bit is segment ‘a’ and the least-significant bit is segment ‘g’. The logic synthesis CAD tool automatically minimizes the logic required for implementation. The signal MSD contains the 4-bit binary value to be

displayed in hexadecimal. MSD is the left or most-significant digit. Another identical process with a different input variable is needed for the second display digit.

```
LED_MSD_DISPLAY:          -- BCD to 7 Segment Decoder for LED Displays

PROCESS (MSD)
BEGIN
    CASE MSD IS
        WHEN "0000" =>
            MSD_7SEG <= "1111110";
        WHEN "0001" =>
            MSD_7SEG <= "0110000";
        WHEN "0010" =>
            MSD_7SEG <= "1101101";
        WHEN "0011" =>
            MSD_7SEG <= "1111001";
        WHEN "0100" =>
            MSD_7SEG <= "0110011";
        WHEN "0101" =>
            MSD_7SEG <= "1011011";
        WHEN "0110" =>
            MSD_7SEG <= "1011111";
        WHEN "0111" =>
            MSD_7SEG <= "1110000";
        WHEN "1000" =>
            MSD_7SEG <= "1111111";
        WHEN "1001" =>
            MSD_7SEG <= "1111011";
        WHEN OTHERS =>
            MSD_7SEG <= "0111110";
    END CASE;
END PROCESS LED_MSD_DISPLAY;
```



The following VHDL concurrent assignment statements provide the value to be displayed and connect the individual segments. NOT is used since a logic zero actually turns on the LED. Automatic minimization in the synthesis process will eliminate the extra inverter in the logic circuit. Pin assignments for the seven-segment display must be included in the project's *.qsf file or in the top-level schematic.

```
-- Provide 4-bit value to display
MSD <= PC ( 7 DOWNTO 4 );
-- Drive the seven-segments (LEDs are active low)
MSD_a <= NOT MSD_7SEG( 6 );
MSD_b <= NOT MSD_7SEG( 5 );
MSD_c <= NOT MSD_7SEG( 4 );
MSD_d <= NOT MSD_7SEG( 3 );
MSD_e <= NOT MSD_7SEG( 2 );
```

```
MSD_f <= NOT MSD_7SEG(1);
MSD_g <= NOT MSD_7SEG(0);
```

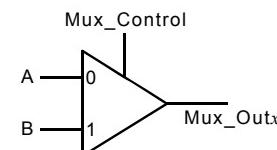
6.6 VHDL Synthesis Model of a Multiplexer

The next example shows several alternative ways to synthesize a 2-to-1 multiplexer in VHDL. Four identical multiplexers that operate in parallel are synthesized by this example. In VHDL, IF and CASE statements must be inside a process. The inputs and outputs from the multiplexers could be changed to standard logic vectors if an entire bus is multiplexed. Multiplexers with more than two inputs can also be easily constructed. Nested IF-THEN-ELSE statements generate priority-encoded logic that requires more hardware and produce a slower circuit than a CASE statement.

```
LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
```

```
ENTITY multiplexer IS
  PORT( A, B, Mux_Control : IN STD_LOGIC;
        Mux_Out1, Mux_Out2,
        Mux_Out3, Mux_Out4 : OUT STD_LOGIC );
END multiplexer;

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF multiplexer IS
BEGIN
  -- selected signal assignment statement...
  Mux_Out1 <= A WHEN Mux_Control = '0' ELSE B;
  -- ... with Select Statement
  WITH Mux_Control SELECT
    Mux_Out2 <= A WHEN '0',
    B WHEN '1',
    A WHEN OTHERS;
  PROCESS ( A, B, Mux_Control)
  BEGIN
    IF Mux_Control = '0' THEN
      Mux_Out3 <= A;
    ELSE
      Mux_Out3 <= B;
    END IF;
    CASE Mux_Control IS
      WHEN '0' =>
        Mux_Out4 <= A;
      WHEN '1' =>
        Mux_Out4 <= B;
      WHEN OTHERS =>
        Mux_Out4 <= A;
    END CASE;
  END PROCESS;
END behavior;
```



6.7 VHDL Synthesis Model of Tri-State Output

Tri-state gates are supported in VHDL synthesis tools and are supported in many programmable logic devices. Most programmable logic devices have tri-state output pins. Some programmable logic devices do not support internal tri-state logic. Here is a VHDL example of a tri-state output. In VHDL, the assignment of the value "Z" to a signal produces a tri-state output.

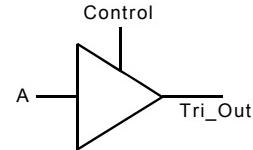
```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;

ENTITY tristate IS
  PORT( A, Control : IN STD_LOGIC;
        Tri_out      : inout STD_LOGIC); -- Use Inout for bi-directional tri-state
                                         -- signals or out for output only
END tristate;

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF tristate IS          -- defines internal module architecture
BEGIN
  Tri_out <= A WHEN Control = '0' ELSE 'Z';    -- Assignment of 'Z' value generates
                                                 -- tri-state output
END behavior;

```



6.8 VHDL Synthesis Models of Flip-flops and Registers

In the next example, several flip-flops will be generated. Unlike earlier combinational hardware devices, a flip-flop can only be synthesized inside a process. In VHDL, Clock'EVENT is true whenever the clock signal changes. The positive clock edge is selected by (clock'EVENT AND clock = '1') and positive edge triggered D flip-flops will be used for synthesis.

The following module contains a variety of Reset and Enable options on positive edge-triggered D flip-flops. Processes with a wait statement do not need a process sensitivity list. A process can only have one clock or reset type.

The negative clock edge is selected by (clock'EVENT AND clock = '0') and negative edge-triggered D flip-flops will be generated during synthesis. If (Clock = '1') is substituted for (clock'EVENT AND clock = '1') level-triggered latches will be selected for logic synthesis. Rising_edge(clock) can also be used instead of clock'EVENT AND clock = '1'. Falling_edge(clock) is also supported for negative clock edges.

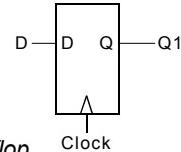
```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
ENTITY DFFs IS
  PORT( D, Clock, Reset, Enable : IN STD_LOGIC;
        Q1, Q2, Q3, Q4      : OUT STD_LOGIC );
END DFFs;

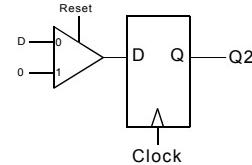
```

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF DFFs IS
BEGIN

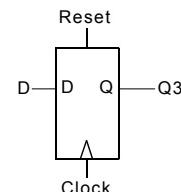
```
PROCESS                                -- Positive edge triggered D flip-flop
BEGIN
  WAIT UNTIL ( Clock 'EVENT AND Clock = '1' );
  Q1 <= D;
END PROCESS;
```



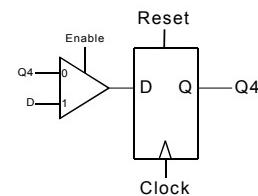
```
PROCESS                                -- Positive edge triggered D flip-flop
BEGIN
  WAIT UNTIL ( Clock 'EVENT AND Clock = '1' );
  IF reset = '1' THEN
    Q2 <= '0';
  ELSE
    Q2 <= D;
  END IF;
END PROCESS;
```



```
PROCESS (Reset,Clock)                  -- Positive edge triggered D flip-flop
BEGIN
  IF reset = '1' THEN
    Q3 <= '0';
  ELSIF ( clock 'EVENT AND clock = '1' ) THEN
    Q3 <= D;
  END IF;
END PROCESS;
```



```
PROCESS (Reset,Clock)                  -- Positive edge triggered D flip-flop
BEGIN
  IF reset = '1' THEN
    Q4 <= '0';
  ELSIF ( clock 'EVENT AND clock = '1' ) THEN
    IF Enable = '1' THEN
      Q4 <= D;
    END IF;
  END IF;
END PROCESS;
```



END behavior;

In VHDL, as in any digital logic designs, it is not good design practice to AND or gate other signals with the clock. Use a flip-flop with a clock enable instead to avoid timing and clock skew problems. In some limited cases, such as power management, a single level of clock gating can be used. This works only when a small amount of clock skew can be tolerated and the signal gated with the clock is known to be hazard or glitch free. A particular programmable logic

device may not support every flip-flop or latch type and Set/Reset and Enable option.

If D and Q are replaced by standard logic vectors in these examples, registers with the correct number of bits will be generated instead of individual flip-flops.

6.9 Accidental Synthesis of Inferred Latches

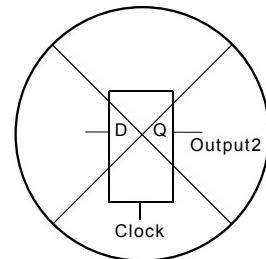
Here is a very common problem to be aware of when coding VHDL for synthesis. If a non-clocked process has any path that does not assign a value to an output, VHDL assumes you want to use the previous value. A level triggered latch is automatically generated or inferred by the synthesis tool to save the previous value. In many cases, this can cause serious errors in the design. Edge-triggered flip-flops should not be mixed with level-triggered latches in a design, or serious timing problems will result. Typically this can happen in CASE statements or nested IF statements. In the following example, the signal OUTPUT2 infers a latch when synthesized. Assigning a value to OUTPUT2 in the last ELSE clause will eliminate the inferred latch.

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
ENTITY ilatch IS
    PORT( A, B           : IN STD_LOGIC;
          Output1, Output2   : OUT STD_LOGIC );
END ilatch;

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF ilatch IS
BEGIN
    PROCESS ( A, B )
    BEGIN
        IF A = '0' THEN
            Output1 <= '0';
            Output2 <= '0';
        ELSE
            IF B = '1' THEN
                Output1 <= '1';
                Output2 <= '1';
            ELSE
                Output1 <= '0'; -- Latch inferred since no value is assigned
                Output2 <= '1'; -- to output2 in the else clause!
            END IF;
        END IF;
    END PROCESS;
END behavior;

```



6.10 VHDL Synthesis Model of a Counter

Here is an 8-bit counter design. This design performs arithmetic operations on standard logic vectors. Since this example includes arithmetic operations, two new libraries must be included at the beginning of the module. Either signed or unsigned libraries can be selected, but not both. Since the unsigned library was

used, an 8-bit magnitude comparator is automatically synthesized for the internal_count < max_count comparison.

Compare operations between standard logic and integer types are supported. The assignment internal_count <= internal_count + 1 synthesizes an 8-bit incrementer. An incrementer circuit requires less hardware than an adder that adds one. The operation, "+1", is treated as a special incrementer case by synthesis tools.

VHDL does not allow reading of an "OUT" signal so an internal_count signal is used which is always the same as count. This is the first example that includes an internal signal. Note its declaration at the beginning of the architecture section.

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;
ENTITY Counter IS
  PORT( Clock, Reset : IN STD_LOGIC;
        Max_count    : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        Count        : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 ) );
END Counter;

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF Counter IS          -- Declare signal(s) internal to module
  SIGNAL internal_count: STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
BEGIN
  count <= internal_count;

  PROCESS ( Reset,Clock )
  BEGIN
    IF reset = '1' THEN                         -- Reset counter
      internal_count <= "00000000";
    ELSIF ( clock 'EVENT AND clock = '1' ) THEN
      IF internal_count < Max_count THEN        -- Check for maximum count
        internal_count <= internal_count + 1;   -- Increment Counter
      ELSE
        internal_count <= "00000000";           -- Count >= Max_Count
      END IF;
    END IF;
  END PROCESS;
END behavior;

```

6.11 VHDL Synthesis Model of a State Machine

The next example is a Moore state machine with three states, two inputs and a single output. A state diagram of the example state machine is shown in Figure 6.1. In VHDL, an enumerated data type is specified for the current state using the TYPE statement. This allows the synthesis tool to assign the actual "0" or "1" values to the states. In many cases, this will produce a smaller hardware design than direct assignment of the state values in VHDL.

Depending on the synthesis tool settings, the states may be encoded or constructed using the one-hot technique. Outputs are defined in the last WITH... SELECT statement. This statement lists the output for each state and eliminates possible problems with inferred latches. To avoid possible timing problems, unsynchronized external inputs to a state machine should be synchronized by passing them through one or two D flip-flops that are clocked by the state machine's clock.

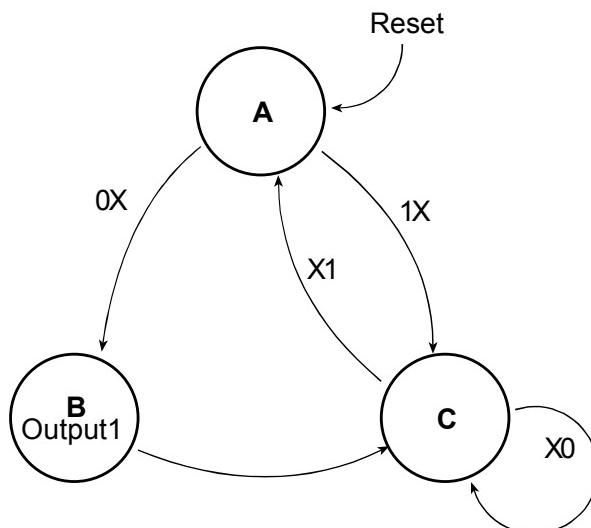


Figure 6.1 State Diagram for st_mach VHDL example

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;

ENTITY st_mach IS
  PORT( clk, reset      : IN      STD_LOGIC;
        Input1, Input2   : IN      STD_LOGIC;
        Output1          : OUT     STD_LOGIC);
END st_mach;

ARCHITECTURE A OF st_mach IS
  -- Enumerated Data Type for State
  TYPE STATE_TYPE IS ( state_A, state_B, state_C );
  SIGNAL state: STATE_TYPE;

BEGIN
  PROCESS ( reset, clk )
  BEGIN
    IF reset = '1' THEN          -- Reset State
      state <= state_A;
    ELSIF clk 'EVENT AND clk = '1' THEN
  
```

```

CASE state IS                                -- Define Next State Transitions using a Case
                                                -- Statement based on the Current State
    WHEN state_A =>
        IF Input1 = '0' THEN
            state <= state_B;
        ELSE
            state <= state_C;
        END IF;

    WHEN state_B =>
        state <= state_C;

    WHEN state_C =>
        IF Input2 = '1' THEN
            state <= state_A;
        END IF;

    WHEN OTHERS =>
        state <= state_A;
    END CASE;
END IF;
END PROCESS;

WITH state SELECT                                -- Define State Machine Outputs
    Output1 <= '0' WHEN state_A,
                '1' WHEN state_B,
                '0' WHEN state_C;
END a;

```

6.12 VHDL Synthesis Model of an ALU with an Adder/Subtractor and a Shifter

Here is an 8-bit arithmetic logic unit (ALU) that adds, subtracts, bitwise ANDs, or bitwise ORs, two operands and then performs an optional shift on the output. The most-significant two bits of the Op-code select the arithmetic logical operation. If the least-significant bit of the op_code equals '1' a 1-bit left-shift operation is performed. An addition and subtraction circuit is synthesized for the "+" and "-" operator. Depending on the number of bits and the speed versus area settings in the synthesis tool, ripple carry or carry-lookahead circuits will be used. Several "+" and "-" operations in multiple assignment statements may generate multiple ALUs and increase the hardware size, depending on the VHDL CAD tool and compiler settings used. If a single ALU is desired, muxes can be placed at the inputs and the "+" operator would be used only in a single assignment statement.

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;
ENTITY ALU IS

```

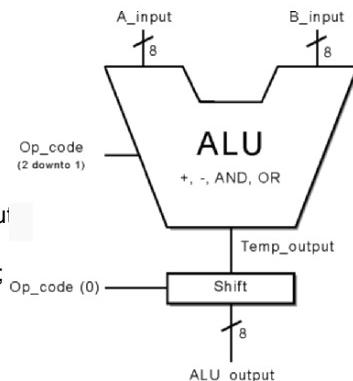
```

PORT( Op_code : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 2 DOWNTO 0 );
      A_input, B_input : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
      ALU_output : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 ) );
END ALU;

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF ALU IS
    -- Declare signal(s) internal to module here
    SIGNAL temp_output : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
BEGIN

    PROCESS ( Op_code, A_input, B_input )
    BEGIN
        --Select Arithmetic/Logical Operation
        CASE Op_Code ( 2 DOWNTO 1 ) IS
            WHEN "00" =>
                temp_output <= A_input + B_input;
            WHEN "01" =>
                temp_output <= A_input - B_input;
            WHEN "10" =>
                temp_output <= A_input AND B_input;
            WHEN "11" =>
                temp_output <= A_input OR B_input;
            WHEN OTHERS =>
                temp_output <= "00000000";
        END CASE;
        -- Select Shift Operation: Shift bits left with zero fill using concatenation operator
        -- Can also use VHDL 1076-1993 shift operator such as SLL
        IF Op_Code( 0 ) = '1' THEN
            Alu_output <= temp_output( 6 DOWNTO 0 ) & '0';
        ELSE
            Alu_output <= temp_output;
        END IF;
    END PROCESS;
END behavior;

```



6.13 VHDL Synthesis of Multiply and Divide Hardware

In the Quartus II tool, integer multiply and divide is supported using VHDL's "*" and "/" operators. Mod and Rem are not supported in Quartus II. In current generation tools, efficient design of multiply or divide hardware typically requires the use of a vendor-specific library function or even the specification of the arithmetic algorithm and hardware implementation in VHDL.

A wide variety of multiply and divide algorithms that trade off time versus hardware size can be found in most computer arithmetic texts. Several such references are listed at the end of this chapter. These algorithms require a sequence of add/subtract and shift operations that can be easily synthesized in VHDL using the standard operators. The LPM_MULT function in Quartus II can be used to synthesize integer multipliers. LPM_DIVIDE, is also available. When using LPM functions, **Tools** ⇒ **MegaWizard Plug-in Manager** can be

used to help generate VHDL code. The LPM functions also support pipeline options. Array multiply and divide hardware for more than a few bits requires extensive hardware and a large FPGA.

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;
LIBRARY lpm;
USE lpm.lpm_components.ALL;

ENTITY mult IS
    PORT( A, B      : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
          Product   : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 15 DOWNTO 0 ) );
END mult;

ARCHITECTURE a OF mult IS
BEGIN
    multiply: lpm_mult
        GENERIC MAP( LPM_WIDTHA          => 8,
                      LPM_WIDTHB          => 8,
                      LPM_WIDTHS          => 16,
                      LPM_WIDTHP          => 16,
                      LPM REPRESENTATION  => "UNSIGNED" )
    PORT MAP ( data  => A,
                datab => B,
                result => Product );
END a;

```

Floating-point operations can be implemented on very large FPGAs; however, performance is lower than current floating-point DSP and microprocessor chips. The floating-point algorithms must be coded by the user in VHDL using integer add, multiply, divide, and shift operations. The LPM_CLSHIFT function is useful for the barrel shifter needed in a floating-point ALU. Some floating point IP cores are starting to appear. Many FPGA vendors also have optimized arithmetic packages for DSP applications such as FIR filters.

6.14 VHDL Synthesis Models for Memory

Typically, it is more efficient to call a vendor-specific function to synthesize RAM. These functions typically use the FPGA's internal RAM blocks rather than building a RAM using FPGA logic elements. The memory function in the Altera toolset is the ALTSYNCRAM function. On the UP2 board's older FPGA, the LPM_RAM_DQ memory function can also be used. The memory can be set to an initial value using a separate memory initialization file with the extension *.mif. A similar call, LPM_ROM, can be used to synthesize ROM.

If small blocks of multi-ported or other special-purpose RAM are needed, they can be synthesized using registers with address decoders for the write operation and multiplexers for the read operation. Additional read or write ports can be

added to synthesized RAM. An example of this approach is a dual-ported register file for a computer processor core. Most RISC processors need to read two registers on each clock cycle and write to a third register.

VHDL Memory Model - Example One

The first memory example synthesizes a memory that can perform a read and a write operation every clock cycle. Memory is built using arrays of positive edge-triggered D flip-flops. Memory write, memwrite, is gated with an address decoder output and used as an enable to load each memory location during a write operation. A synchronous write operation is more reliable. Asynchronous write operations respond to any logic hazards or momentary level changes on the write signal. As in any synchronous memory, the write address must be stable before the rising edge of the clock signal. A non-clocked mux is used for the read operation. If desired, memory can be initialized by a reset signal.

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;

ENTITY memory IS
  PORT( read_data      : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        read_address   : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 2 DOWNTO 0 );
        write_data      : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        write_address   : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 2 DOWNTO 0 );
        Memwrite        : IN  STD_LOGIC;
        clock,reset     : IN  STD_LOGIC );
END memory;

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF memory IS
  SIGNAL mem0, mem1 : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );

BEGIN
  PROCESS (read_address, mem0, mem1) -- Process for memory read operation
  BEGIN
    CASE read_address IS
      WHEN "000" =>
        read_data <= mem0;
      WHEN "001" =>
        read_data <= mem1;
      WHEN OTHERS =>          -- Unimplemented memory locations
        read_data <= X"FF";
    END CASE;
  END PROCESS;

  PROCESS
  BEGIN
    WAIT UNTIL clock 'EVENT AND clock = '1';
    IF ( reset = '1' ) THEN
      mem0 <= X"55"; -- Initial values for memory (optional)
      mem1 <= X"AA";
    ELSE

```

```

IF memwrite = '1' THEN                                -- Write to memory?
  CASE write_address IS                            -- Use a flip-flop with
    WHEN "000" =>                                --      an enable for memory
      mem0 <= write_data;
    WHEN "001" =>
      mem1 <= write_data;
    WHEN OTHERS =>                         -- unimplemented memory locations
      NULL;
  END CASE;
  END IF;
END IF;
END PROCESS;
END behavior;

```

VHDL Memory Model - Example Two

The second example uses an array of standard logic vectors to implement memory. This approach is easier to write in VHDL since the array index generates the address decoder and multiplexers automatically; however, it is a little more difficult to access the values of individual array elements during simulation. There are a few VHDL synthesis tools that do not support array types. Synthesizing RAM requires a vast amount of programmable logic resources. Only a few hundred bits of RAM can be synthesized, even on large devices. Each bit of RAM requires 10 to 20 logic gates and a large amount of FPGA interconnect resources. Some tools may automatically detect synthesized RAM and use the FPGA's embedded memory blocks.

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;

ENTITY memory IS
  PORT( read_data    : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        read_address : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 2 DOWNTO 0 );
        write_data   : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        write_address: IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 2 DOWNTO 0 );
        Memwrite     : IN  STD_LOGIC;
        Clock        : IN  STD_LOGIC );
END memory;
ARCHITECTURE behavior OF memory IS
  -- define new data type for memory array
  TYPE memory_type IS ARRAY ( 0 TO 7 ) OF STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
  SIGNAL memory       : memory_type;
BEGIN
  -- Read Memory and convert array index to an integer with CONV_INTEGER
  read_data <= memory( CONV_INTEGER( read_address( 2 DOWNTO 0 )));

  PROCESS                               -- Write Memory?
  BEGIN
    WAIT UNTIL clock 'EVENT AND clock = '1';
    IF ( memwrite = '1' ) THEN
      -- convert array index to an integer with CONV_INTEGER
      memory( CONV_INTEGER( write_address( 2 DOWNTO 0 )) ) <= write_data;
  END;

```

```

END IF;
END PROCESS;
END behavior;

```

VHDL Memory Model - Example Three

The third example shows the use of the ALTSYNCRAM megafunction to implement a block of memory. An additional library is needed for the megafunctions. (For more information on the megafunctions see the online help guide in the Quartus II tool.) In single port mode, the ALTSYNCRAM memory can do either a read or a write operation in a single clock cycle since there is only one address bus. In dual port mode, it can do both a read and write. If this is the only memory operation needed, the ALTSYNCRAM function produces a more efficient hardware implementation than synthesis of the memory in VHDL. In the ALTSYNCRAM megafunction, the memory address must be clocked into a dedicated address register located inside the FPGA's synchronous memory block. Asynchronous memory operations without a clock can cause timing problems and are not supported on many FPGAs including the Cyclone.

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
LIBRARY Altera_mf;
USE altera_mf.altera_mf_components.all;

ENTITY amemory IS
  PORT( read_data      : OUT  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        memory_address : IN   STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 2 DOWNTO 0 );
        write_data      : IN   STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        Memwrite        : IN   STD_LOGIC;
        clock_reset     : IN   STD_LOGIC );
END amemory;

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF amemory IS
BEGIN
  data_memory: altsyncram          -- Altsyncram memory function
  GENERIC MAP ( operation_mode => "SINGLE_PORT",
                width_a           => 8,
                widthad_a         => 3,
                lpm_type          => "altsyncram",
                outdata_reg_a     => "UNREGISTERED",
                -- Reads in mif file for initial data values (optional)
                init_file          => "memory.mif",
                intended_device_family => "Cyclone"  )
  PORT MAP (wren_a => Memwrite, clock0 => clock,
            address_a => memory_address( 2 DOWNTO 0 ),
            data_a => write_data, q_a => read_data );
END behavior;

```

On the Cyclone FPGA chip, the memory can be implemented using the M4K memory blocks, which are separate from the FPGA's logic cells. In the Cyclone EP1C6 chip there are 20 M4K RAM blocks at 4Kbits each for a total of 92,160 bits. In the Cyclone EP1C12 there are 52 M4K blocks for a total of 239,616 bits. Each M4K block can be setup to be 4K by 1, 2K by 2, 1K by 4, 512 by 8, 256 by 16, 256 by 18, 128 by 32 or 128 by 36 bits wide. The **Tools** \Rightarrow **MegaWizard Plug-in Manager** feature is useful to configure the Altsyncram parameters.

6.15 Hierarchy in VHDL Synthesis Models

Large VHDL models should be split into a hierarchy using a top-level structural model in VHDL or by using the symbol and graphic editor in the Quartus II tool. In the graphical editor, a VHDL file can be used to define the contents of a symbol block. Synthesis tools run faster using a hierarchy on large models and it is easier to write, understand, and maintain a large design when it is broken up into smaller modules.

An example of a hierarchical design with three submodules is seen in the schematic in Figure 6.2. Following the schematic, the same design using a top-level VHDL structural model is shown. This VHDL structural model provides the same connection information as the schematic seen in Figure 6.2.

Debounce, Onepulse, and Clk_div are the names of the VHDL submodules. Each one of these submodules has a separate VHDL source file. In the Quartus II tool, compiling the top-level module will automatically compile the lower-level modules.

In the example, VHDL structural-model example, note the use of a component declaration for each submodule. The component statement declares the module name and the inputs and outputs of the module. Internal signal names used for interconnections of components must also be declared at the beginning of the component list.

In the final section, port mappings are used to specify the module or component interconnections. Port names and their order must be the same in the VHDL submodule file, the component instantiations, and the port mappings. Component instantiations are given unique labels so that a single component can be used several times.

Note that node names in the schematic or signals in VHDL used to interconnect modules need not always have the same names as the signals in the components they connect. Just like signal or wire names in a schematic are not always the same as the pin names on chips that they connect. As an example, pb_debounced on the debounce component connects to an internal signal with a different name, pb1_debounced.

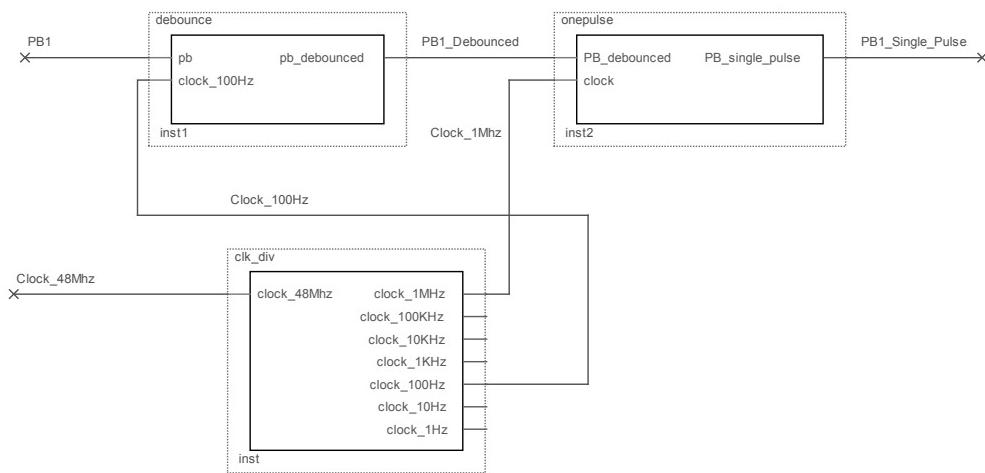


Figure 6.2 Schematic of Hierarchical Design Example

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;
ENTITY hierach IS
    PORT (    clock_48MHz, pb1      : IN STD_LOGIC;
              pb1_single_pulse   : OUT STD_LOGIC);
END hierach;
ARCHITECTURE structural OF hierach IS
-- Declare internal signals needed to connect submodules
SIGNAL clock_1MHz, clock_100Hz, pb1_debounced : STD_LOGIC;
-- Use Components to Define Submodules and Parameters
COMPONENT debounce
    PORT(    pb, clock_100Hz      : IN      STD_LOGIC;
              pb_debounced       : OUT     STD_LOGIC);
END COMPONENT;

COMPONENT onepulse
    PORT(pb_debounced, clock      : IN      STD_LOGIC;
          pb_single_pulse    : OUT     STD_LOGIC);
END COMPONENT;

COMPONENT clk_div
    PORT(    clock_48MHz        : IN      STD_LOGIC;
              clock_1MHz         : OUT     STD_LOGIC;
              clock_100kHz        : OUT     STD_LOGIC;
              clock_10kHz         : OUT     STD_LOGIC;
              clock_1kHz          : OUT     STD_LOGIC;
              clock_100Hz         : OUT     STD_LOGIC;
              clock_10Hz          : OUT     STD_LOGIC;
              clock_1Hz           : OUT     STD_LOGIC);
END COMPONENT;
BEGIN

```

```
-- Use Port Map to connect signals between components in the hierarchy
debounce1 : debounce PORT MAP (pb => pb1, clock_100Hz =>clock_100Hz,
                                pb_debounced =>pb1_debounced);

prescalar : clk_div PORT MAP (clock_48MHz =>clock_48MHz,
                               clock_1MHz =>clock_1MHz,
                               clock_100hz =>clock_100hz);

single_pulse : onepulse PORT MAP (pb_debounced =>pb1_debounced,
                                   clock => clock_1MHz,
                                   pb_single_pulse => pb1_single_pulse);

END structural;
```

6.16 Using a Testbench for Verification

Complex VHDL synthesis models are frequently verified by simulation of the model's behavior in a specially written entity called a testbench. As seen in Figure 6.3, the top-level testbench module contains a component instantiation of the hardware unit under test (UUT). The testbench also contains VHDL code used to automatically generate input stimulus to the UUT and automatically monitor the response of the UUT for correct operation.

The testbench contains test vectors and timing information used in testing the UUT. The testbench's VHDL code is used only for testing, and it is not synthesized. This keeps the test-only code portion of the VHDL model separate from the UUT's hardware synthesis model. Third party simulation tools such as ModelSIM or Active-HDL are typically required for this approach. Unfortunately, full versions of these third party simulation tools are currently very expensive for students or individuals.

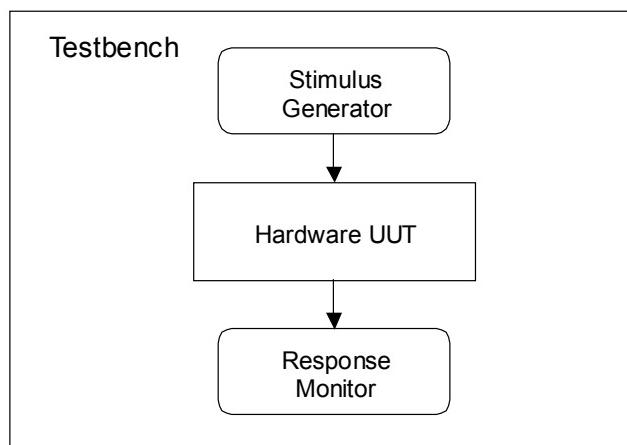


Figure 6.3 Using a testbench for automatic verification during simulation.

The testbench approach is critical in large ASIC designs where all errors are costly. Automatic Test Equipment (ATE) can also use a properly written testbench and its test vector and timing information to physically test each ASIC chip for correct operation after production. In large designs, the testbench can require as much time and effort as the UUT's synthesis model. By performing both a functional simulation and a timing simulation of the UUT with the same test vectors, it is also possible to check for any synthesis-related errors.

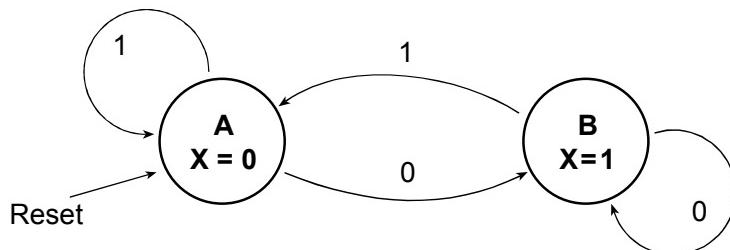
6.17 For additional information

The chapter has introduced the basics of using VHDL for digital synthesis. It has not explored all of the language options available. The Altera online help contains VHDL syntax and templates. A large number of VHDL reference textbooks are also available. Unfortunately, only a few of them currently examine using VHDL models that can be used for digital logic synthesis. One such text is *HDL Chip Design* by Douglas J. Smith, Doone Publications, 1996.

A number of alternative integer multiply, divide, and floating-point algorithms with different speed versus area tradeoffs can be found in computer arithmetic textbooks. Two such examples are *Digital Computer Arithmetic Design and Implementation* by Cavanagh, McGraw Hill, 1984, and *Computer Arithmetic Algorithms* by Israel Koren, Prentice Hall, 1993.

6.18 Laboratory Exercises

1. Rewrite and compile the VHDL model for the seven-segment decoder in Section 6.5 replacing the PROCESS and CASE statements with a WITH...SELECT statement.
2. Write a VHDL model for the state machine shown in the following state diagram and verify correct operation with a simulation using the Altera CAD tools. A and B are the two states, X is the output, and Y is the input. Use the timing analyzer to determine the maximum clock frequency on the Cyclone EP1C6Q240C8 device.



3. Write a VHDL model for a 32-bit, arithmetic logic unit (ALU). Verify correct operation with a simulation using the Altera CAD tools. A and B are 32-bit inputs to the ALU, and Y is the output. A shift operation follows the arithmetic and logical operation. The opcode controls ALU functions as follows:

Opcode	Operation	Function
000XX	ALU_OUT <= A	Pass A
001XX	ALU_OUT <= A + B	Add
010XX	ALU_OUT <= A-B	Subtract
011XX	ALU_OUT <= A AND B	Logical AND
100XX	ALU_OUT <= A OR B	Logical OR
101XX	ALU_OUT <= A + 1	Increment A
110XX	ALU_OUT <= A-1	Decrement A
111XX	ALU_OUT <= B	Pass B
XXX00	Y <= ALU_OUT	Pass ALU_OUT
XXX01	Y<= SHL(ALU_OUT)	Shift Left
XXX10	Y<=SHR(ALU_OUT)	Shift Right (unsigned-zero fill)
XXX11	Y<= 0	Pass 0's

4. Use the Cyclone chip as the target device. Determine the worst case time delay of the ALU using the timing analyzer. Examine the report file and find the device utilization. Use the logic element (LE) device utilization percentage found in the compilation report to compare the size of the designs.
5. Explore different synthesis options for the ALU from problem 3. Change the area and speed synthesis settings in the compiler under **Assignments** \Rightarrow **Settings** \Rightarrow **Analysis and Synthesis Settings**, rerun the timing analyzer to determine speed, and examine the report file for hardware size estimates. Include data points for the default, optimized for speed, balanced, and optimized for area settings. Build a plot showing the speed versus area trade-offs possible in the synthesis tool. Use the logic element (LE) device utilization percentage found in the compilation report to compare the size of the designs.
6. Develop a VHDL model of one of the TTL chips listed below. The model should be functionally equivalent, but there will be timing differences. Compare the timing differences between the VHDL FPGA implementation and the TTL chip. Use a data book or find a data sheet using the World Wide Web.
 - A. 7400 Quad nand gate
 - B. 74LS241 Octal buffer with tri-state output
 - C. 74LS273 Octal D flip-flop with Clear
 - D. 74163 4-bit binary counter
 - E. 74LS181 4-bit ALU
7. Replace the 8count block used in the tutorial in Chapter 4, with a new counter module written in VHDL. Simulate the design and download a test program to the UP3 board.
8. Implement a 128 by 32 RAM using VHDL and the Altsyncram function. Do not use registered output options. Target the design to the Cyclone EP1C6240C8 device. Use the timing analyzer to determine the worst-case read and write access times for the memory.
9. Study the VHDL code in the LCD Display FPGACore function and draw a state diagram of the initialization and data transfer operations and explain its operation. You may find it helpful to examine the data sheet for the LCD display's microcontroller.

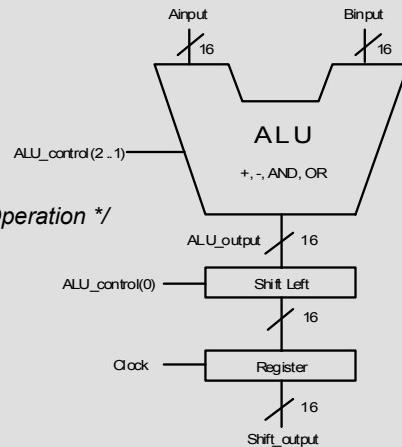
CHAPTER 7

Using Verilog for Synthesis of Digital Hardware

```
module ALU ( ALU_control, Ainput, Binput, Clock, Shift_output);
    input [2:0] ALU_control;
    input [15:0] Ainput;
    input [15:0] Binput;
    input Clock;
    output[15:0] Shift_output;
    reg [15:0] Shift_output;
    reg [15:0] ALU_output;

    /* Select ALU Arithmetic/Logical Operation */
    always @((ALU_control or Ainput or Binput))
        case (ALU_control[2:1])
            0: ALU_output = Ainput + Binput;
            1: ALU_output = Ainput - Binput;
            2: ALU_output = Ainput & Binput;
            3: ALU_output = Ainput | Binput;
            default: ALU_output = 0;
        endcase

        /* Shift bits left using shift left operator if required and load register */
        always @(posedge Clock)
            if (ALU_control[0]==1)
                Shift_output = ALU_output << 1;
            else
                Shift_output = ALU_output;
endmodule
```



7 Using Verilog for Synthesis of Digital Hardware

Verilog is another language that, like VHDL, is widely used to model and design digital hardware. In the early years, Verilog was a proprietary language developed by one CAD vendor, Gateway. Verilog was developed in the 1980's and was initially used to model high-end ASIC devices. In 1990, Verilog was released into the public domain, and Verilog now is the subject of IEEE standard 1364. Today, Verilog is supported by numerous CAD tool and programmable logic vendors. Verilog has a syntax style similar to the C programming language. Schools are more likely to cover VHDL since it was in the public domain several years earlier; however, in the FPGA industry, VHDL and Verilog have an almost equal market share for new design development.

Conventional programming languages are based on a sequential operation model. Digital hardware devices by their very nature operate in parallel. This means that conventional programming languages cannot accurately describe or model the operation of digital hardware since they are based on the sequential execution of statements. Like VHDL, Verilog is designed to model parallel operations.

IT IS CRUCIAL TO REMEMBER THAT VERILOG MODULES AND CONCURRENT STATEMENTS ALL OPERATE IN PARALLEL.

In this section, a brief introduction to Verilog for logic synthesis will be presented. It is assumed that the reader is already familiar with basic digital logic devices and some basic C syntax.

Whenever you need help with Verilog syntax, Verilog templates of common statements are available in the Quartus II online help. In the text editor, just click the right mouse button and **Insert** \Rightarrow **Templates** select Verilog.

7.1 Verilog Data Types

For logic synthesis, Verilog has simple data types. The net data type, wire, and the register data type, reg. A model with a net data type, wire, has a corresponding electrical connection or wire in the modeled device. Type reg is updated under the control of the surrounding procedural flow constructs typically inside an always statement. Type reg does not necessarily imply that the synthesized hardware for a signal contains a register, digital storage device, or flip-flop. It can also be purely combinational logic.

Table 7.1 lists the Verilog operators and their common function in Verilog synthesis tools.

7.2 Verilog Based Synthesis of Digital Hardware

Verilog can be used to construct models at a variety of abstraction levels such as structural, behavioral, register transfer level (RTL), and timing. An RTL model of a circuit described in Verilog describes the input/output relationship in terms of dataflow operations on signal and register values. If registers are

required, a synchronous clocking scheme is normally used. Sometimes an RTL model is also referred to as a dataflow-style model.

Verilog simulation models often include physical device time delays. In Verilog models written for logic synthesis, timing information should not be provided.

For timing simulations, the CAD tools automatically include the actual timing delays for the synthesized logic circuit. An FPGA timing model supplied by the CAD tool vendor is used to automatically generate the physical device time delays inside the FPGA. Sometimes this timing model is also written in Verilog. For a quick overview of Verilog, several constructs that can be used to synthesize common digital hardware devices will be presented.

7.3 Verilog Operators

Table 7.1 lists the Verilog operators and their common function in Verilog synthesis tools.

Table 7.1 Verilog Operators.

Verilog Operator	Operation
+	Addition
-	Subtraction
*	Multiplication*
/	Division*
%	Modulus*
{ }	Concatenation – used to combine bits
<<	rotate left
>>	rotate right
=	equality
!=	Inequality
<	less than
<=	less than or equal
>	greater than
>=	greater than or equal
!	logical negation
&&	logical AND
||	logical OR
&	Bitwise AND
|	Bitwise OR
^	Bitwise XOR
~	Bitwise Negation

*Not supported in some Verilog synthesis tools. In the Quartus II tools, multiply , divide, and mod of integer values is supported. Efficient design of multiply or divide hardware may require the user to specify the arithmetic algorithm and design in Verilog.

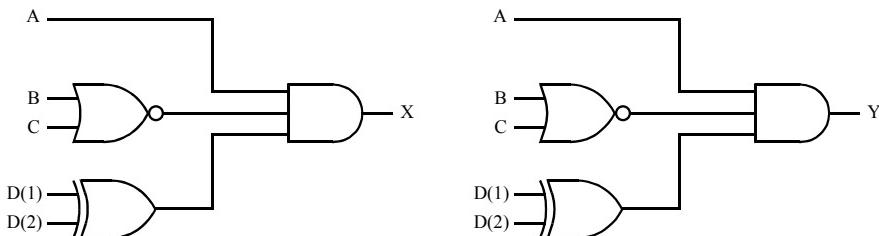
7.4 Verilog Synthesis Models of Gate Networks

The first example consists of a simple gate network. In this model, both a concurrent assignment statement and a sequential always block are shown that generate the same gate network. X is the output on one network and Y is the output on the other gate network. The two gate networks operate in parallel.

In Verilog synthesis, inputs and outputs from the module will become I/O pins on the programmable logic device. For comments “//” makes the rest of a line a comment and “/*” and “*/” can be used to make a block of lines a comment.

The Quartus II editor performs syntax coloring and is useful to quickly find major problems with Verilog syntax. Verilog is case sensitive just like C.

Verilog concurrent statements are executed in parallel. Inside an always statement, statements are executed in sequential order, and all of the always statements are executed in parallel. The *always* statement is Verilog’s equivalent of a *process* in VHDL.



```

module gatenetwork(A, B, C, D, X, Y);
    input A;
    input B;
    input C;
    input [2:1] D;
    output X, Y;
    reg Y;
    // concurrent assignment statement
    wire X = A & ~B|C & (D[1] ^ D[2]);
    /* Always concurrent statement- sequential execution inside */
    always @ (A or B or C or D)
        Y = A & ~B|C & (D[1] ^ D[2]);
endmodule

```

7.5 Verilog Synthesis Model of a Seven-segment LED Decoder

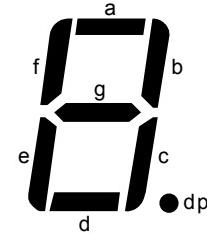
The following Verilog code implements a seven-segment decoder for seven-segment LED displays. A 7-bit vector is used to assign the value of all seven bits in a single case statement. In the 7-bit logic vector, the most-significant bit is segment ‘a’ and the least-significant bit is segment ‘g’. The logic synthesis CAD tool automatically minimizes the logic required for implementation. The signal Hex_digit contains the 4-bit binary value to be displayed in hexadecimal.

```

module DEC_7SEG(Hex_digit, segment_a, segment_b, segment_c,
    segment_d, segment_e, segment_f, segment_g);
    input [3:0] Hex_digit;
    output segment_a, segment_b, segment_c, segment_d;
    output segment_e, segment_f, segment_g;
    reg [6:0] segment_data;

    always @(Hex_digit)
        /* Case statement implements a logic truth table using gates*/
        case (Hex_digit)
            4'b 0000: segment_data = 7'b 1111110;
            4'b 0001: segment_data = 7'b 0110000;
            4'b 0010: segment_data = 7'b 1101101;
            4'b 0011: segment_data = 7'b 1111001;
            4'b 0100: segment_data = 7'b 0110011;
            4'b 0101: segment_data = 7'b 1011011;
            4'b 0110: segment_data = 7'b 1011111;
            4'b 0111: segment_data = 7'b 1110000;
            4'b 1000: segment_data = 7'b 1111111;
            4'b 1001: segment_data = 7'b 1111011;
            4'b 1010: segment_data = 7'b 1110111;
            4'b 1011: segment_data = 7'b 0011111;
            4'b 1100: segment_data = 7'b 1001110;
            4'b 1101: segment_data = 7'b 0111101;
            4'b 1110: segment_data = 7'b 1001111;
            4'b 1111: segment_data = 7'b 1000111;
            default: segment_data = 7'b 0111110;
        endcase

```



The following Verilog concurrent assignment statements extract the seven 1-bit values needed to connect the individual segments. The not operator (~) is used since a logic zero actually turns on most LEDs. Automatic minimization in the synthesis process will eliminate the extra inverter in the logic circuit.

```

        /* extract segment data bits and invert */
        /* LED driver circuit is inverted */
        wire segment_a = ~segment_data[6];
        wire segment_b = ~segment_data[5];
        wire segment_c = ~segment_data[4];
        wire segment_d = ~segment_data[3];
        wire segment_e = ~segment_data[2];
        wire segment_f = ~segment_data[1];
        wire segment_g = ~segment_data[0];
    endmodule

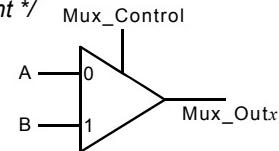
```

7.6 Verilog Synthesis Model of a Multiplexer

The next example shows several alternative ways to synthesize a 2-to-1 multiplexer in Verilog. Three identical multiplexers that operate in parallel are synthesized by this example. The wire conditional continuous assignment

statement can be used for a 2-to-1 mux. A concurrent assign statement can also be used instead of wire, if the output signal is already declared. In Verilog, IF and CASE statements must be inside an always statement. The inputs and outputs from the multiplexers could be changed to bit vectors if an entire bus is multiplexed. Multiplexers with more than two inputs can also be easily constructed and a case statement is preferred. Nested IF statements generate priority-encoded logic that requires more hardware and produce a slower circuit than a CASE statement.

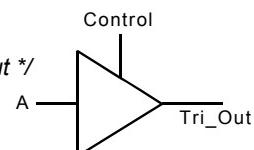
```
/* Multiplexer example shows three ways to model a 2 to 1 mux */
module multiplexer(A, B, mux_control, mux_out1, mux_out2, mux_out3);
    input A;                      /* Input Signals and Mux Control */
    input B;
    input mux_control;
    output mux_out1, mux_out2, mux_out3;
    reg mux_out2, mux_out3;
    /* Conditional Continuous Assignment Statement */
    /* works like an IF - ELSE */
    wire mux_out1 = (mux_control)? B:A;
    /* If statement inside always statement */
    always @(A or B or mux_control)
        if (mux_control)
            mux_out2 = B;
        else
            mux_out2 = A;
    /* Case statement inside always statement */
    always @(A or B or mux_control)
        case (mux_control)
            0: mux_out3 = A;
            1: mux_out3 = B;
            default: mux_out3 = A;
        endcase
    endmodule
```



7.7 Verilog Synthesis Model of Tri-State Output

Tri-state gates are supported in Verilog synthesis tools and are supported in many programmable logic devices. Most programmable logic devices have tri-state output pins. Some programmable logic devices do not support internal tri-state logic. Here is a Verilog example of a tri-state output. In Verilog, the assignment of the value "Z" to a signal produces a tri-state output.

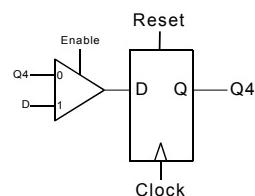
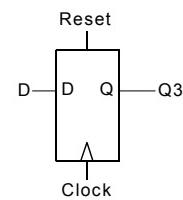
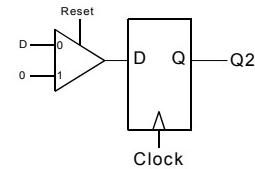
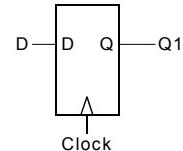
```
module tristate(a, control, tri_out);
    input a, control;
    output tri_out;
    reg tri_out;
    always @(control or a)
        if (control)
            /* Assignment of Z value generates a tri-state output */
            tri_out = 1'bZ;
        else
            tri_out = a;
    endmodule
```



7.8 Verilog Synthesis Models of Flip-flops and Registers

In the next example, several flip-flops will be generated. Unlike earlier combinational hardware devices, a flip-flop can only be synthesized inside an always statement. The positive clock edge is selected by **posedge clock** and positive edge triggered D flip-flops will be used for synthesis. The following module contains a variety of Reset and Enable options on positive edge-triggered D flip-flops. The negative clock edge is selected by **negedge clock** and negative edge-triggered D flip-flops used during synthesis.

```
module DFFs(D, clock, reset, enable, Q1, Q2, Q3, Q4);
input D;
input clock;
input reset;
input enable;
output Q1, Q2, Q3, Q4;
reg Q1, Q2, Q3, Q4;
    /* Positive edge triggered D flip-flop */
always @(posedge clock)
    Q1 = D;
        /* Positive edge triggered D flip-flop */
        /* with synchronous reset */
always @(posedge clock)
    if (reset)
        Q2 = 0;
    else
        Q2 = D;
            /* Positive edge triggered D flip-flop */
            /* with asynchronous reset */
always @(posedge clock or posedge reset)
    if (reset)
        Q3 = 0;
    else
        Q3 = D;
            /* Positive edge triggered D flip-flop */
            /* with asynchronous reset and enable */
always @(posedge clock or posedge reset)
    if (reset)
        Q4 = 0;
    else if (enable)
        Q4 = D;
endmodule
```



In Verilog, as in any digital logic designs, it is not good design practice to AND or gate other signals with the clock. Use a flip-flop with a clock enable instead to avoid timing and clock skew problems. In some limited cases, such as power management, a single level of clock gating can be used. This works only when a small amount of clock skew can be tolerated and the signal gated with the clock is known to be hazard or glitch free. A particular programmable logic

device may not support every flip-flop or latch type and all of the Set/Reset and Enable options.

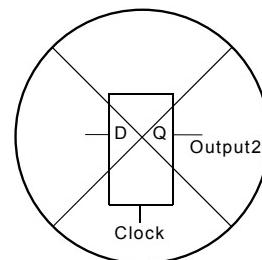
If D and Q are replaced by bit vectors in any of these examples, registers with the correct number of bits will be generated instead of individual flip-flops.

7.9 Accidental Synthesis of Inferred Latches

Here is a very common problem to be aware of when coding Verilog for synthesis. If a non-clocked process has any path that does not assign a value to an output, Verilog assumes you want to use the previous value. A level triggered latch is automatically generated or inferred by the synthesis tool to save the previous value. In many cases, this can cause serious errors in the design. Edge-triggered flip-flops should not be mixed with level-triggered latches in a design or serious timing problems will result. Typically this can happen in CASE statements or nested IF statements. In the following example, the signal Output2 infers a latch when synthesized. Assigning a value to Output2 in the last ELSE clause will eliminate the inferred latch. Warning messages may be generated during compilation when a latch is inferred on some tools. Note the use of *begin...end* is somewhat different than the use of braces in C.

```
module ilatch( A, B, Output1, Output2);
  input A, B;
  output Output1, Output2;
  reg Output1, Output2;

  always@( A or B)
    if (A)
      begin
        Output1 = 0;
        Output2 = 0;
      end
    else
      if (B)
        begin
          Output1 = 1;
          Output2 = 1;
        end
      else           /*latch inferred since no value */
        Output1 = 0; /*is assigned to Output2 here */
  endmodule
```



7.10 Verilog Synthesis Model of a Counter

Here is an 8-bit counter design. Compare operations such as “<” are supported and they generate a comparator logic circuit to test for the maximum count value. The assignment count = count+1; synthesizes an 8-bit incrementer. An incrementer circuit requires less hardware than an adder that adds one. The operation, "+1", is treated as a special incrementer case by synthesis tools.

```

module counter(clock, reset, max_count, count);
    input clock;
    input reset;
    input [7:0] max_count;
    output [7:0] count;
    reg [7:0] count;
        /* use positive clock edge for counter */
    always @(posedge clock or posedge reset)
        begin
            if (reset)
                count = 0;           /* Reset Counter */
            else if (count < max_count)   /* Check for maximum count */
                count = count + 1;   /* Increment Counter */
            else
                count = 0;           /* Counter set back to 0*/
        end
    endmodule

```

7.11 Verilog Synthesis Model of a State Machine

The next example shows a Moore state machine with three states, two inputs and a single output. A state diagram of the example state machine is shown in Figure 7.1. Unlike VHDL, A direct assignment of the state values is required in Verilog's parameter statement. The first Always block assigns the next state using a case statement that is updated on the positive clock edge, posedge.

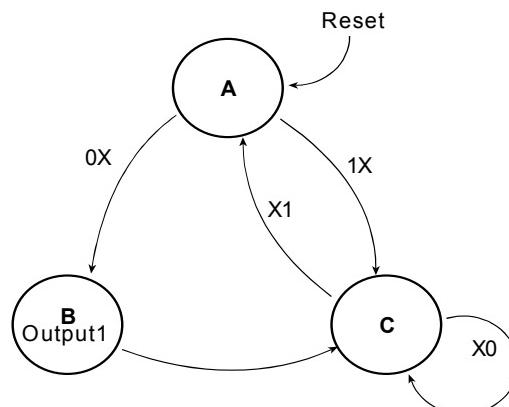


Figure 7.1 State Diagram for state_mach Verilog example

```

module state_mach (clk, reset, input1, input2, output1);
    input clk, reset, input1, input2;
    output output1;
    reg output1;
    reg [1:0] state;

```

```

/* Make State Assignments */
parameter [1:0] state_A = 0, state_B = 1, state_C = 2;

always@(posedge clk or posedge reset)
begin
    if (reset)
        state = state_A;
    else
        /* Define Next State Transitions using a Case */
        /* Statement based on the Current State */
        case (state)
            state_A:
                if (input1==0)
                    state = state_B;
                else
                    state = state_C;
            state_B:
                state = state_C;
            state_C:
                if (input2) state = state_A;
                default: state = state_A;
        endcase
    end
    /* Define State Machine Outputs */
always @(state)
begin
    case (state)
        state_A: output1 = 0;
        state_B: output1 = 1;
        state_C: output1 = 0;
        default: output1 = 0;
    endcase
end
endmodule

```

7.12 Verilog Synthesis Model of an ALU with an Adder/Subtractor and a Shifter

Here is an 8-bit arithmetic logic unit (ALU) that adds, subtracts, bitwise ANDs, or bitwise ORs, two operands and then performs an optional shift on the output. The most-significant two bits of the Op-code select the arithmetic logical operation. If the least-significant bit of the op_code equals '1' a 1-bit left-shift operation is performed. An addition and subtraction circuit is synthesized for the "+" and "-" operator.

Depending on the number of bits and the speed versus area settings in the synthesis tool, ripple carry or carry-lookahead circuits will be used. Several "+" and "-" operations in multiple assignment statements may generate multiple ALUs and increase the hardware size, depending on the Verilog CAD tool and compiler settings used. If a single ALU is desired, muxes can be placed at the

inputs and the "+" operator would be used only in a single assignment statement.

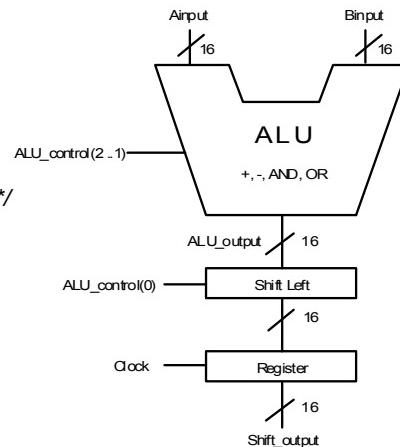
```

module ALU ( ALU_control, Ainput, Binput, Clock, Shift_output);
    input [2:0] ALU_control;
    input [15:0] Ainput;
    input [15:0] Binput;
    input Clock;
    output[15:0] Shift_output;
    reg [15:0] Shift_output;
    reg [15:0] ALU_output;
    ALU_control(2 .. 1);

    /* Select ALU Arithmetic/Logical Operation */
    always @ (ALU_control or Ainput or Binput)
        case (ALU_control[2:1])
            0: ALU_output = Ainput + Binput;
            1: ALU_output = Ainput - Binput;
            2: ALU_output = Ainput & Binput;
            3: ALU_output = Ainput | Binput;
            default: ALU_output = 0;
        endcase

        /* Shift bits left using shift left operator if required and load into Shift_output */
        always @(posedge Clock)
            if (ALU_control[0]==1)
                Shift_output = ALU_output << 1;
            else
                Shift_output = ALU_output;
endmodule

```



7.13 Verilog Synthesis of Multiply and Divide Hardware

In the Quartus II tool, integer multiply and divide is supported using Verilog's "*" and "/" operators. In current generation tools, efficient design of multiply or divide hardware typically requires the use of a vendor-specific library function or even the specification of the arithmetic algorithm and hardware implementation in Verilog.

A wide variety of multiply and divide algorithms that trade off time versus hardware size can be found in most computer arithmetic texts. Several such references are listed at the end of this chapter. These algorithms require a sequence of add/subtract and shift operations that can be easily synthesized in Verilog using the standard operators. The LPM_MULT function in Quartus II can be used to synthesize integer multipliers. LPM_DIVIDE, is also available. When using LPM functions, **Tools** \Rightarrow **MegaWizard Plug-in Manager** can be used to help generate Verilog code. The LPM functions also support pipeline options. Array multiply and divide hardware for more than a few bits requires extensive hardware and a large FPGA. A few large FPGAs now contain multiplier blocks.

```

module mult (dataaa, datab, result);
    input [7:0] dataaa;
    input [7:0] datab;
    output [15:0] result;

    wire [15:0] sub_wire0;
    wire [15:0] result = sub_wire0[15:0];
        /* Altera LPM 8x8 multiply function result = dataaa * datab */
    lpm_mult lpm_mult_component (
        .dataaa (dataaa),
        .datab (datab),
        .result (sub_wire0) );
    defparam
        lpm_mult_component.lpm_widtha = 8,
        lpm_mult_component.lpm_widthb = 8,
        lpm_mult_component.lpm_widthp = 16,
        lpm_mult_component.lpm_widths = 1,
        lpm_mult_component.lpm_type = "LPM_MULT",
        lpm_mult_component.lpm_representation = "UNSIGNED",
    endmodule

```

Floating-point operations can be implemented on very large FPGAs; however, performance is lower than current floating-point DSP and microprocessor chips. The floating-point algorithms must be coded by the user in Verilog using integer add, multiply, divide, and shift operations. The LPM_CLSHIFT function is useful for the barrel shifter needed in a floating-point ALU. Some floating point IP cores are starting to appear. Many FPGA vendors also have optimized arithmetic packages for DSP applications such as FIR filters.

7.14 Verilog Synthesis Models for Memory

Typically, it is more efficient to call a vendor-specific function to synthesize RAM. These functions typically use the FPGA's internal RAM blocks rather than building a RAM using FPGA logic elements. The memory function in the Altera toolset is the ALTSYNCRAM function. On the UP2 board's older FPGA, the LPM_RAM_DQ memory function should be used. The memory can be set to an initial value using a separate memory initialization file with the extension *.mif. A similar call, LPM_ROM, can be used to synthesize ROM.

If small blocks of multi-ported or other special-purpose RAM are needed, they can be synthesized using registers with address decoders for the write operation and multiplexers for the read operation. Additional read or write ports can be added to synthesize RAM. An example of this approach is a dual-ported register file for a computer processor core. Most RISC processors need to read two registers on each clock cycle and write to a third register.

Verilog Memory Model - Example One

The first memory example synthesizes a memory that can perform a read and a write operation every clock cycle. Memory is built using arrays of positive edge-triggered D flip-flops. Memory write, memwrite, is gated with an address decoder output and used as an enable to load each memory location during a write operation. A synchronous write operation is more reliable. Asynchronous write operations respond to any logic hazards or momentary level changes on the write signal. As in any synchronous memory, the write address must be stable before the rising edge of the clock signal. A non-clocked mux is used for the read operation. If desired, memory can be initialized by a reset signal.

```
module memory(read_data, read_address, write_data, write_address,
               memwrite, clock, reset);
  output [7:0] read_data;
  input [2:0] read_address;
  input [7:0] write_data;
  input [2:0] write_address;
  input memwrite;
  input clock;
  input reset;
  reg [7:0] read_data, mem0, mem1;

  /* Block for memory read */
  always @(read_address or mem0 or mem1)
    begin
      case(read_address)
        3'b 000: read_data = mem0;
        3'b 001: read_data = mem1;
        /* Unimplemented memory */
        default: read_data = 8'h FF;
      endcase
    end

  /* Block for memory write */
  always @(posedge clock or posedge reset)
    begin
      if (reset)
        begin
          /* Initial values for memory (optional) */
          mem0 = 8'h AA ;
          mem1 = 8'h 55;
        end
      else if (memwrite)
        /* write new value to memory */
        case (write_address)
          3'b 000 : mem0 = write_data;
          3'b 001 : mem1 = write_data;
        endcase
    end
endmodule
```

Verilog Memory Model - Example Two

The second example shows the use of Altera's ALTSYNCRAM megafunction to implement a block of memory. For more information on the megafunctions see the online help guide in the Quartus II tool. In single port mode, the ALTSYNCRAM memory can do either a read or a write operation in a single clock cycle since there is only one address bus. In dual port mode, it can do both a read and write. If this is the only memory operation needed, the ALTSYNCRAM function produces a more efficient hardware implementation than synthesis of the memory in Verilog. In the ALTSYNCRAM megafunction, the memory address must be clocked into a dedicated address register located inside the FPGA's synchronous memory block. Asynchronous memory operations without a clock can cause timing problems and are not supported on many FPGAs including the Cyclone.

```
module amemory ( write_data, write_enable, address, clock, read_data);

input [7:0] write_data;
input write_enable;
input [2:0] address;
input clock;
output [7:0] read_data;
wire [7:0] sub_wire0;
wire [7:0] read_data = sub_wire0[7:0];
    /* Use Altera Altsyncram function for memory */
altsyncram altsyncram_component (
    .wren_a (write_enable),
    .clock0 (clock),
    .address_a (address),
    .data_a (write_data),
    .q_a (sub_wire0));

defparam
    altsyncram_component.operation_mode = "SINGLE_PORT",
        /* 8 data bits, 3 address bits, and no register on read data */
    altsyncram_component.width_a = 8,
    altsyncram_component.widthad_a = 3,
    altsyncram_component.outdata_reg_a = "UNREGISTERED",
        /* Reads in mif file for initial memory data values (optional) */
    altsyncram_component.init_file = "memory.mif";
endmodule
```

On the Cyclone FPGA chip, the memory can be implemented using the M4K memory blocks, which are separate from the FPGA's logic cells. In the Cyclone EP1C6 chip there are 20 M4K RAM blocks at 4Kbits each for a total of 92,160 bits. In the Cyclone EP1C12 there are 52 M4K blocks for a total of 239,616 bits. Each M4K block can be setup to be 4K by 1, 2K by 2, 1K by 4, 512 by 8, 256 by 16, 256 by 18, 128 by 32 or 128 by 36 bits wide. The **Tools** \Rightarrow **Megawizard Plug-in Manager** feature is useful to configure the Altsyncram parameters.

7.15 Hierarchy in Verilog Synthesis Models

Large Verilog models should be split into a hierarchy using a top-level structural model in Verilog or by using the symbol and graphic editor in the Quartus II tool. In the graphical editor, a Verilog file can be used to define the contents of a symbol block. Synthesis tools run faster using a hierarchy on large models and it is easier to write, understand, and maintain a large design when it is broken up into smaller modules.

An example of a hierarchical design with three submodules is seen in the schematic in Figure 7.2. Following the schematic, the same design using a top-level Verilog structural model is shown. This Verilog structural model provides the same connection information as the schematic seen in Figure 7.2.

Debounce, Onepulse, and Clk_div are the names of the Verilog submodules. Each one of these submodules has a separate Verilog source file. In the Quartus II tool, compiling the top-level module will automatically compile the lower-level modules.

In the example Verilog structural-model example for Figure 7.2, note the use of a component instantiation statement for each of the three submodules. The component instantiation statement declares the module name and connects inputs and outputs of the module. New internal signal names used for interconnections of modules should also be declared at the beginning of the top level module.

The order of each module's signal names must be the same as in the Verilog submodule files. Each instantiation of a module is given a unique name so that a single module can be used several times. As an example, the single instantiation of the debounce module is called debounce1 in the example code.

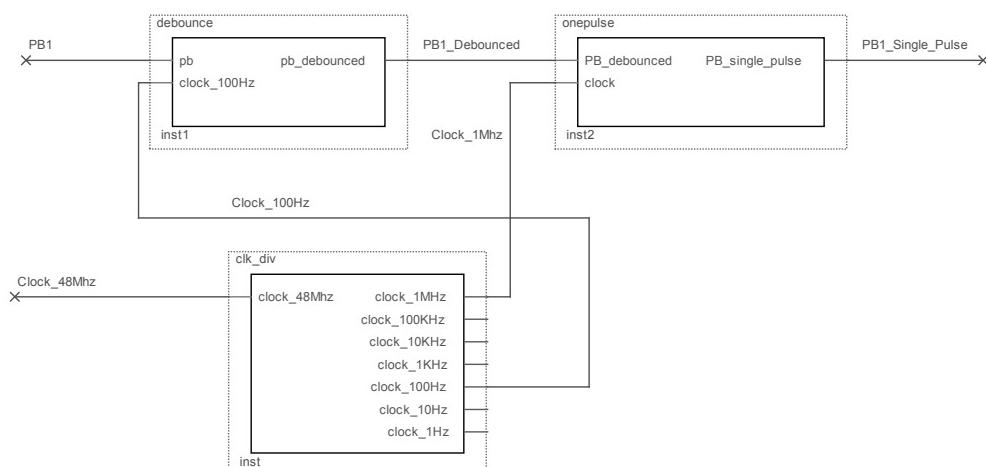


Figure 7.2 Schematic of Hierarchical Design Example

Note that node names in the schematic or signals in Verilog used to interconnect modules need not always have the same names as the signals in the components they connect. As an example, PB_debounced on the debounce component connects to an internal signal with a different name, PB1_debounced.

```
module hierach(Clock_48MHz, PB1, PB1_Single_Pulse);
input Clock_48MHz, PB1;
output PB1_Single_Pulse;
    /* Declare internal interconnect signals */
reg Clock_100Hz, Clock_1MHz, PB1_Debounced;

    /* declare and connect all three modules in the hierarchy */
debounce debounce1( PB1, Clock_100Hz, PB1_Debounced);

clk_div clk_div1( Clock_48MHz, Clock_1MHz, Clock_100Hz);

onepulse onepulse1( PB1_Debounced, Clock_100Hz, PB1_Single_Pulse);

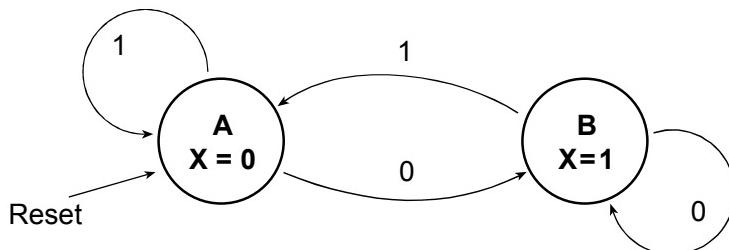
endmodule
```

7.16 For additional information

The chapter has introduced the basics of using Verilog for digital synthesis. It has not explored all of the language options available. The Altera online help contains Verilog syntax and templates. A number of Verilog reference textbooks are also available. Unfortunately, not all of them currently contain Verilog models that can be used for digital logic synthesis. Two recommendations are *HDL Chip Design* by Douglas J. Smith, Doone Publications, 1996 and *Modeling, Synthesis, and Rapid Prototyping with the Verilog HDL* by Michael Ciletti, 1999. An interesting free VHDL to Verilog conversion program is also available at www.ocean-logic.com/downloads.htm.

7.17 Laboratory Exercises

1. Write a Verilog model for the state machine shown in the following state diagram and verify correct operation with a simulation using the Altera CAD tools. A and B are the two states, X is the output, and Y is the input. Use the timing analyzer to determine the maximum clock frequency on the Cyclone EP1C6Q240C8 device.



2. Write a Verilog model for a 32-bit, arithmetic logic unit (ALU). Verify correct operation with a simulation using the Altera CAD tools. A and B are 32-bit inputs to the ALU, and Y is the output. A shift operation follows the arithmetic and logical operation. The opcode controls ALU functions as follows:

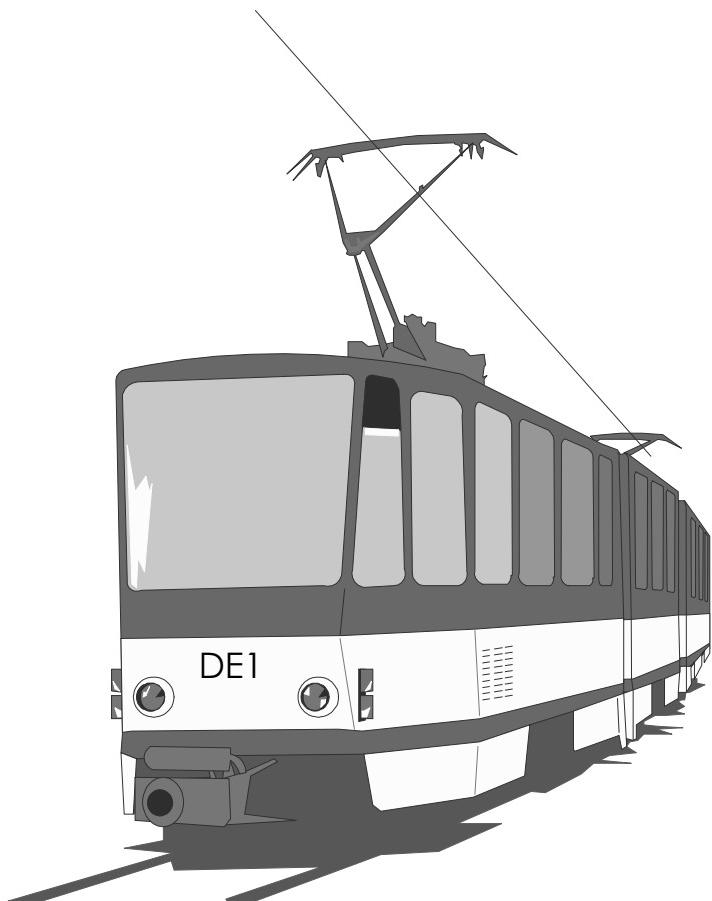
Opcode	Operation	Function
000XX	ALU_OUT <= A	Pass A
001XX	ALU_OUT <= A + B	Add
010XX	ALU_OUT <= A-B	Subtract
011XX	ALU_OUT <= A AND B	Logical AND
100XX	ALU_OUT <= A OR B	Logical OR
101XX	ALU_OUT <= A + 1	Increment A
110XX	ALU_OUT <= A-1	Decrement A
111XX	ALU_OUT <= B	Pass B
XXX00	Y <= ALU_OUT	Pass ALU_OUT
XXX01	Y<= SHL(ALU_OUT)	Shift Left
XXX10	Y<=SHR(ALU_OUT)	Shift Right (unsigned-zero fill)
XXX11	Y<= 0	Pass 0's

3. Use the Cyclone chip as the target device. Determine the worst case time delay of the ALU using the timing analyzer. Examine the report file and find the device utilization. Use the logic element (LE) device utilization percentage found in the compilation report to compare the size of the designs.
4. Explore different synthesis options for the ALU from problem 3. Change the area and speed synthesis settings in the compiler under **Assignments** \Rightarrow **Settings** \Rightarrow **Analysis and Synthesis Settings**, rerun the timing analyzer to determine speed, and examine the report file for hardware size estimates. Include data points for the default, optimized for speed, balanced, and optimized for area settings. Build a plot showing the speed versus area trade-offs possible in the synthesis tool. Use the logic element (LE) device utilization percentage found in the compilation report to compare the size of the designs.
5. Develop a Verilog model of one of the TTL chips listed below. The model should be functionally equivalent, but there will be timing differences. Compare the timing differences between the Verilog FPGA implementation and the TTL chip. Use a data book or find a data sheet using the World Wide Web.
- F. 7400 Quad nand gate
 - G. 74LS241 Octal buffer with tri-state output
 - H. 74LS273 Octal D flip-flop with Clear
 - I. 74163 4-bit binary counter
 - J. 74LS181 4-bit ALU
6. Replace the 8count block used in the tutorial in Chapter 4, with a new counter module written in Verilog. Simulate the design and download a test program to the UP3 board.

7. Implement a 128 by 32 RAM using Verilog and the Altsyncram function. Do not use registered output options. Target the design to the Cyclone II device. Use the timing analysis tools to determine the worst-case read and write access times for the memory.

CHAPTER 8

State Machine Design: The Electric Train Controller



8 State Machine Design: The Electric Train Controller

8.1 The Train Control Problem

The track layout of a small electric train system is shown in Figure 8.1. Two trains, we'll call A and B, run on the tracks, hopefully without colliding. To avoid collisions, the trains require a safety controller that allows trains to move in and out of intersections without mishap.

For safe operation, only one train at a time can be present on any given track segment. The track layout seen in Figure 8.1 is divided into four track segments. Each track segment has sensors that are used to detect trains at the entry and exit points.

In Figure 8.1, there are two Trains A and B. As an example, assume Train A always runs on the outer track loop and Train B on the inner track loop. Assume for a moment that Train A has just passed Sensor 4 and is near Switch 3 moving counterclockwise. Let's also assume that Train B is moving counterclockwise and approaching Sensor 2. Since Train B is entering the common track (Track 2), Train A must be stopped when it reaches Sensor 1, and must wait until Train B has passed Sensor 3 (i.e., Train B is out of the common track). At this point, the track switches should switch for Train A, Train A will be allowed to enter Track 2, and Train B will continue moving toward Sensor 2.

The controller is a state machine that uses the sensors as inputs. The controller's outputs control the direction of the trains and the position of the switches. However, the state machine does not control the speed of the train. This means that the system controller must function correctly independent of the speed of the two trains.

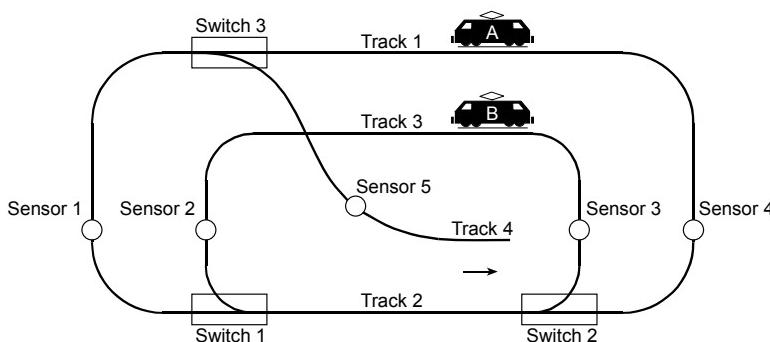


Figure 8.1 Track layout with input sensors and output switches and output tracks.

An FPGA-based "virtual" train simulation will be used that emulates this setup and provides video output. Since there are no actual power circuits connected to a train on the FPGA board, it is only intended to give you a visual indication of how the output signals work in the real system. The following sections describe how the state machine should control each signal to operate the trains properly.

8.2 Train Direction Outputs (DA1-DA0, and DB1-DB0)

The direction for each train is controlled by four output signals (two for each train), DA (DA1-DA0) for train A, and DB (DB1-DB0) for train B². When these signals indicate forward "01" for a particular train, a train will move counterclockwise (on track 4, the train moves toward the outer track). When the signals imply reverse "10", the train(s) will move clockwise. The "11" value is illegal and should not be used. When these signals are set to "00", a train will stop. (See Figure 8.2.)

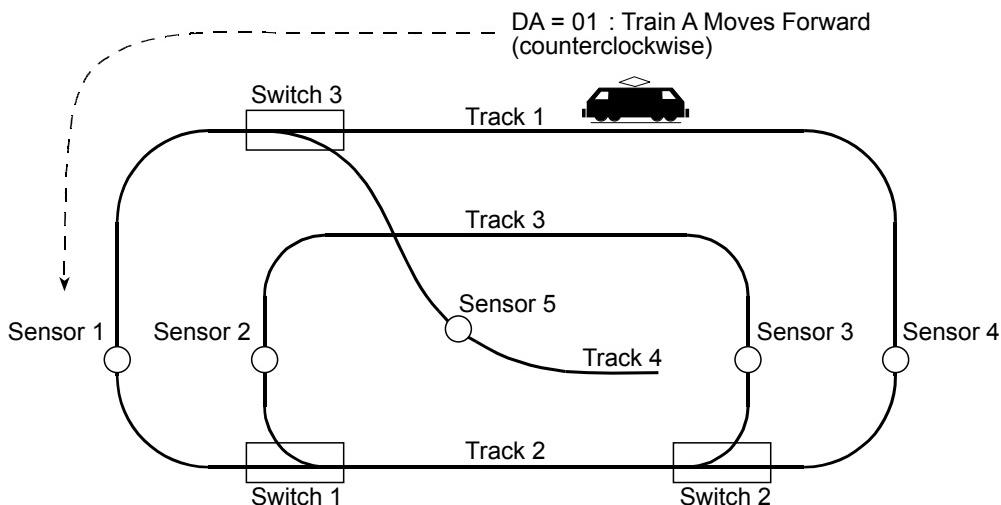


Figure 8.2 Controlling the train's motion with the train direction signals.

² For those familiar with earlier editions of this book, additional track power signals were required for power control relays. This new train problem is based on newer digital DCC model trains and it no longer needs the track power signals and relays, so they have been eliminated. The signals work exactly the same as the previous train setup, if you assume that track power supply A always runs train A and track power supply B always runs train B.

8.3 Switch Direction Outputs (SW1, SW2, and SW3)

Switch directions are controlled by asserting the SW1, SW2, and SW3 output signals either high (outside connected with inside track) or low (outside tracks connected). That is, anytime all of the switches are set to 1, the tracks are setup such that the outside tracks are connected to the inside tracks. (See Figure 8.3.)

If a train moves the wrong direction through an open switch it will derail. Be careful. If a train is at the point labeled "Track 1" in Figure 8.3 and is moving to the left, it will derail at Switch 3. To keep it from derailing, SW3 would need to be set to 0.

Also, note that Tracks 3 and 4 cross at an intersection and care must be taken to avoid a crash at this point.

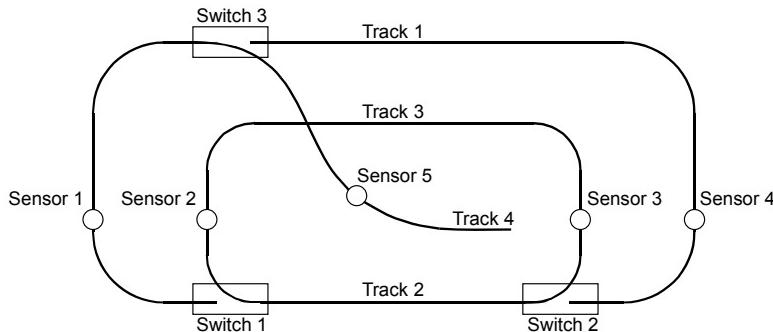


Figure 8.3 Track direction if all switches are asserted ($SW1 = SW2 = SW3 = 1$)

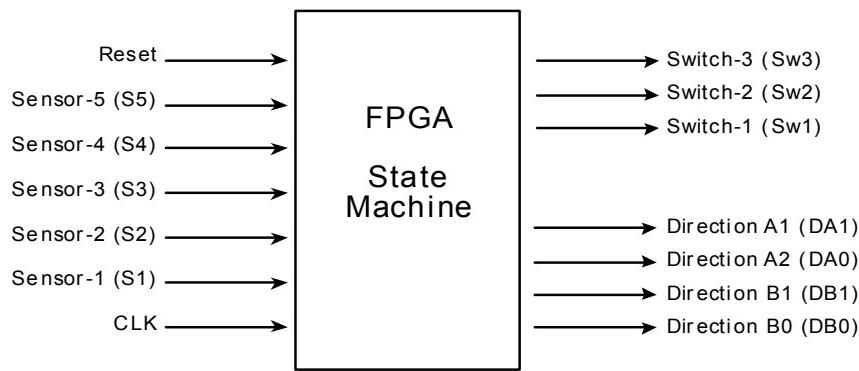
8.4 Train Sensor Input Signals (S1, S2, S3, S4, and S5)

The five train sensor input signals (S1, S2, S3, S4, and S5) go high when a train is near the sensor location. It should be noted that sensors (S1, S2, S3, S4, and S5) *do not go high for only one clock cycle*. In fact, the sensors fire continuously for *many* clock cycles per passage of a train. This means that if your design is testing the same sensor from one state to another, you must wait for the signal to change from high to low.

As an example, if you wanted to count how many times that a train passes Sensor 1, you can not just have an "IF S1 GOTO count-one state" followed by "IF S1 GOTO count-two state." You would need to have a state that sees $S1='1'$, then $S1='0'$, then $S1='1'$ again before you can be sure that it has passed S1 twice. If your state machine has two concurrent states that look for $S1='1'$, the state machine will pass through both states in two consecutive clock cycles although the train will have passed S1 only once.

Another way would be to detect $S1='1'$, then $S4='1'$, then $S1='1'$ if, in fact, the train was traversing the outside loop continuously. Either method will ensure that the train passed S1 twice.

The state machine's signal inputs and outputs have been summarized in the following figure:



Sensor (S1, S2, S3, S4, S5) = 1 Train Present

= 0 Train not Present

Switches (SW1, SW2, SW3) = 0 Connected to Outside Track

= 1 Connected to Inside Track

Train Direction (DA1-DA0) and (DB1-DB0) = 00 Stop

= 01 Forward (Counterclockwise)

= 10 Backward (Clockwise)

Figure 8.4 Train Control State Machine I/O Configuration.

8.5 An Example Controller Design

We will now examine a working example of a train controller state machine. For this controller, two trains run counterclockwise at various speeds and avoid collisions. One Train (A) runs on the outer track and the other train (B) runs on the inner track. Only one train at a time is allowed to occupy the common track. Both an ASM chart and a classic state bubble diagram are illustrated in Figures 8.5 and 8.6 respectively. In the ASM chart, state names, ABout, Ain, Bin, Bstop, and Astop indicate the active and possible states. The rectangles contain

the active (High) outputs for the given state. Outputs not listed are always assumed to be inactive (Low).

The diamond shapes in the ASM chart indicate where the state machine tests the condition of the inputs (S1, S2, etc.). When two signals are shown in a diamond, they are both tested at the same time for the indicated values.

A state machine classic bubble diagram is shown in Figure 8.6. Both Figures 8.5 and 8.6 contain the same information. They are simply different styles of representing a state diagram. The track diagrams in Figure 8.7 show the states visually. In the state names, "in" and "out" refer to the state of track 2, the track that is common to both loops.

Description of States in Example State Machine

All States

- All signals that are not "Asserted" are zero and imply a logical result as described.

ABout: "Trains A and B Outside"

- DA0 Asserted: Train A is on the outside track and moving counterclockwise (forward).
- DB0 Asserted: Train B is on the inner track (not the common track) and also moving forward.
- Note that by NOT Asserting DA1, it is automatically zero -- same for DB1. Hence, the outputs are DA = "01" and DB = "01".

Ain: "Train A moves to Common Track"

- Sensor 1 has fired either first or at the same time as Sensor 2.
- Either Train A is trying to move towards the common track, or
- Both trains are attempting to move towards the common track.
- Both trains are allowed to enter here; however, state Bstop will stop B if both have entered.
- DA0 Asserted: Train A is on the outside track and moving counterclockwise (forward).
- DB0 Asserted: Train B is on the inner track (not the common track) and also moving forward.

Bstop: "Train B stopped at S2 waiting for Train A to clear common track"

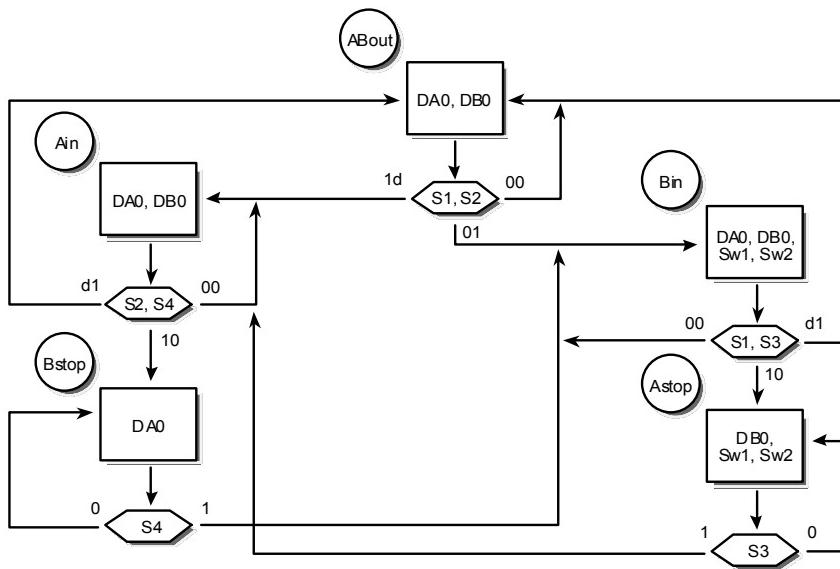
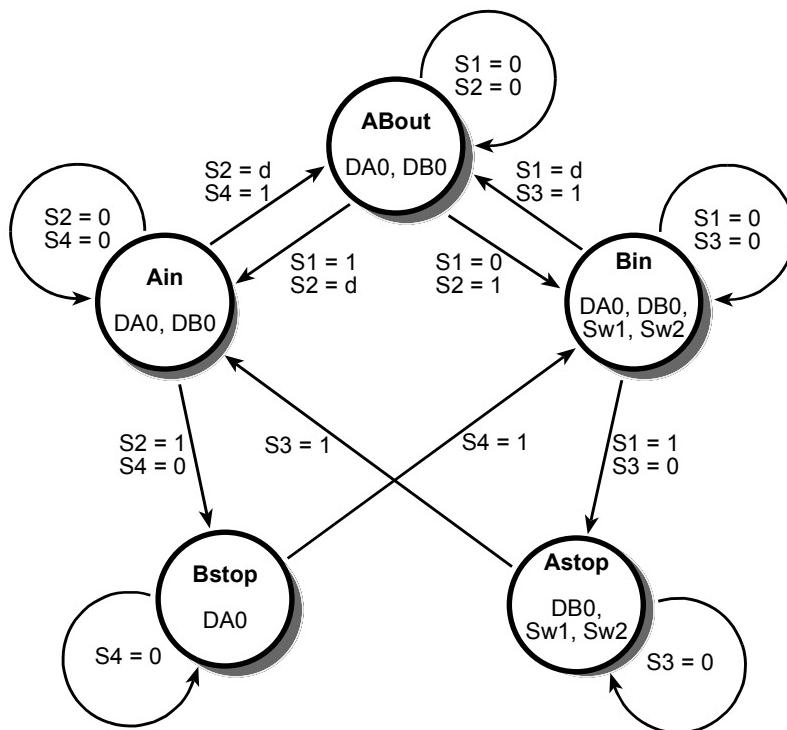
- DA0 Asserted: Train A is moving from the outside track to the common track.
- Train B has arrived at Sensor 2 and is stopped and waits until Sensor 4 fires.
- SW1 and SW2 are NOT Asserted to allow the outside track to connect to common track.

Bin: "Train B has reached Sensor 2 before Train A reaches Sensor 1"

- Train B is allowed to enter the common track. Train A is approaching Sensor 1.
- DA0 Asserted: Train A is on the outside track and moving counterclockwise (forward).
- DB0 Asserted: Train B is on the inner track moving towards the common track.
- SW1 Asserted: Switch 1 is set to let the inner track connect to the common track.
- SW2 Asserted: Switch 2 is set to let the outer track connect to the common track.

Astop: "Train A stopped at S1 waiting for Train B to clear the common track"

- DB0 Asserted: Train B is on the inner track moving towards the common track.
- SW1 and SW2 Asserted: Switches 1 and 2 are set to connect the inner track to the common track.

**Figure 8.5** Example Train Controller ASM Chart.**Figure 8.6** Example Train Controller State Diagram.

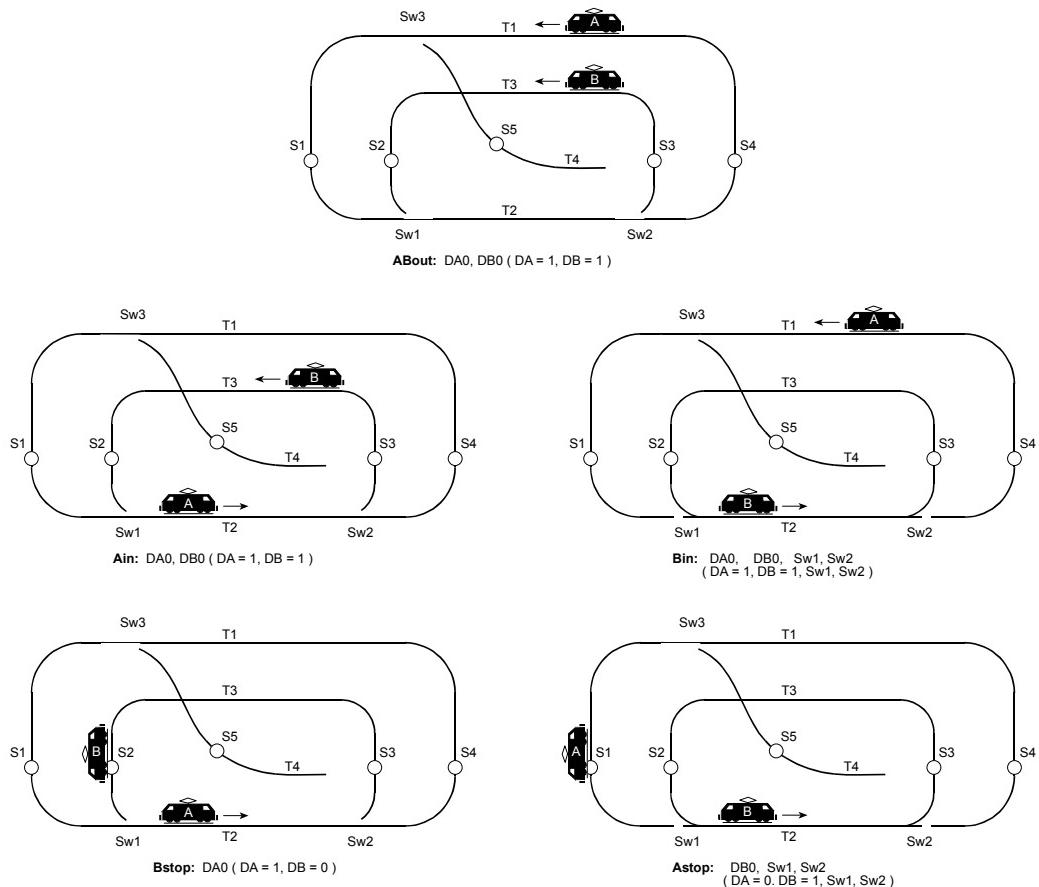
**Figure 8.7** Working diagrams of train positions for each state.

Table 8.1 Outputs corresponding to states.

State	ABout	Ain	Astop	Bin	Bstop
Sw1	0	0	1	1	0
Sw2	0	0	1	1	0
Sw3	0	0	0	0	0
DA(1-0)	01	01	00	01	01
DB(1-0)	01	01	01	01	00

8.6 VHDL Based Example Controller Design

The corresponding VHDL code for the state machine in Figures 8.5 and 8.6 is shown below. A CASE statement based on the current state examines the inputs to select the next state. At each clock edge, the next state becomes the current state. WITH...SELECT statements at the end of the program specify the

outputs for each state. For additional VHDL help, see the help files in the Altera CAD tools or look at the VHDL examples in Chapter 6.

```
-- Example State machine to control trains-- File: Tcontrol.vhd
--
-- These libraries are required in all VHDL source files
LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;

-- This section defines state machine inputs and outputs
-- No modifications should be needed in this section
ENTITY Tcontrol IS
PORT( reset, clock, sensor1, sensor2,
       sensor3, sensor4, sensor5      : IN      STD_LOGIC;
       switch1, switch2, switch3     : OUT      STD_LOGIC;
       -- dirA and dirB are 2-bit logic vectors(i.e. an array of 2 bits)
       dirA, dirB                  : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 1 DOWNTO 0 );
);
END Tcontrol;

-- This code describes how the state machine operates
-- This section will need changes for a different state machine
ARCHITECTURE a OF Tcontrol IS

-- Define local signals (i.e. non input or output signals) here
TYPE STATE_TYPE IS ( ABout, Ain, Bin, Astop, Bstop );
SIGNAL state: STATE_TYPE;
SIGNAL sensor12, sensor13, sensor24 : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR(1 DOWNTO 0);

BEGIN
    -- This section describes how the state machine behaves
    -- this process runs once every time reset or the clock changes
PROCESS ( reset, clock )
BEGIN
    -- Reset to this state (i.e. asynchronous reset)
    IF reset = '1' THEN
        state <= ABout;
    ELSIF clock'EVENT AND clock = '1' THEN
        -- clock'EVENT means value of clock just changed
        --This section will execute once on each positive clock edge
        --Signal assignments in this section will generate D flip-flops
        -- Case statement to determine next state
        CASE state IS
            WHEN ABout =>
                -- This Case checks both sensor1 and sensor2 bits
            CASE Sensor12 IS
                -- Note: VHDL's use of double quote for bit vector versus
                -- a single quote for only one bit!
                WHEN "00" => state <= About;
                WHEN "01" => state <= Bin;
```

```

WHEN "10" => state <= Ain;
WHEN "11" => state <= Ain;
-- Default case is always required
WHEN OTHERS => state <= ABout;
END CASE;

WHEN Ain =>
CASE Sensor24 IS
    WHEN "00" => state <= Ain;
    WHEN "01" => state <= ABout;
    WHEN "10" => state <= Bstop;
    WHEN "11" => state <= ABout;
    WHEN OTHERS => state <= ABout;
END CASE;

WHEN Bin =>
CASE Sensor13 IS
    WHEN "00" => state <= Bin;
    WHEN "01" => state <= ABout;
    WHEN "10" => state <= Astop;
    WHEN "11" => state <= About;
    WHEN OTHERS => state <= ABout;
END CASE;

WHEN Astop =>
IF Sensor3 = '1' THEN
    state <= Ain;
ELSE
    state <= Astop;
END IF;

WHEN Bstop =>
IF Sensor4 = '1' THEN
    state <= Bin;
ELSE
    state <= Bstop;
END IF;
END CASE;
END IF;
END PROCESS;
-- combine sensor bits for case statements above
-- "&" operator combines bits
sensor12 <= sensor1 & sensor2;
sensor13 <= sensor1 & sensor3;
sensor24 <= sensor2 & sensor4;

-- These outputs do not depend on the state
Switch3 <= '0';

```

```

-- Outputs that depend on state, use state to select value
-- Be sure to specify every output for every state
-- values will not default to zero!
WITH state SELECT
    Switch1 <=      '0'      WHEN ABout,
                  '0'      WHEN Ain,
                  '1'      WHEN Bin,
                  '1'      WHEN Astop,
                  '0'      WHEN Bstop;
WITH state SELECT
    Switch2 <=      '0'      WHEN ABout,
                  '0'      WHEN Ain,
                  '1'      WHEN Bin,
                  '1'      WHEN Astop,
                  '0'      WHEN Bstop;
WITH state SELECT
    DirA     <=      "01"    WHEN ABout,
                  "01"    WHEN Ain,
                  "01"    WHEN Bin,
                  "00"    WHEN Astop,
                  "01"    WHEN Bstop;
WITH state SELECT
    DirB     <=      "01"    WHEN ABout,
                  "01"    WHEN Ain,
                  "01"    WHEN Bin,
                  "01"    WHEN Astop,
                  "00"    WHEN Bstop;
END a;

```

8.7 Verilog Based Example Controller Design

The corresponding Verilog code for the state machine in Figures 8.5 and 8.6 is shown below. A CASE statement based on the current state examines the inputs to select the next state. At each clock edge, the next state becomes the current state. A second CASE statement at the end of the program specifies the outputs for each state. For additional Verilog help, see the help files in the Altera CAD tools or look at the Verilog examples in Chapter 7.

```

// Example Verilog State machine to control trains
module Tcontrol (reset, clock, sensor1, sensor2, sensor3, sensor4, sensor5,
                 switch1, switch2, switch3, dirA, dirB);
    // This section defines state machine inputs and outputs
    // No modifications should be needed in this section
    input reset, clock, sensor1, sensor2, sensor3, sensor4, sensor5;
    output switch1, switch2, switch3;
    output [1:0] dirA, dirB;
    reg switch1, switch2;
    // dirA and dirB are 2-bit logic vectors(i.e. an array of 2 bits)
    reg [1:0] dirA, dirB;
    reg [2:0] state;

```

```

// This code describes how the state machine operates
// This section will need changes for a different state machine
// State assignments are needed in Verilog
parameter ABout = 0, Ain = 1, Bin = 2, Astop = 3, Bstop = 4;
// This section describes how the state machine behaves
// this process runs once every time reset or the clock changes
always @(posedge clock or posedge reset)
begin
    // Reset to this state (i.e. asynchronous reset)
    if (reset)
        state = ABout;
    else
        // posedge clock means positive clock edge
        // This section will execute once on each positive clock edge
        // Signal assignments in this section will generate D flip-flops
    case (state) // Case statement to determine next state
        ABout:
            // This Case checks both sensor1 and sensor2 bits
            case (sensor12)
                2'b 00: state = ABout;
                2'b 01: state = Bin;
                2'b 10: state = Ain;
                2'b 11: state = Ain;
                // Default case is needed here
                default: state = ABout;
        endcase
        Ain:
            case (sensor24)
                2'b 00: state = Ain;
                2'b 01: state = ABout;
                2'b 10: state = Bstop;
                2'b 11: state = ABout;
                default: state = ABout;
        endcase
        Bin:
            case (sensor13)
                2'b 00: state = Bin;
                2'b 01: state = ABout;
                2'b 10: state = Astop;
                2'b 11: state = ABout;
                default: state = ABout;
        endcase
        Astop:
            if (sensor3)
                state = Ain;
            else
                state = Astop;
        Bstop:
            if (sensor4)
                state = Bin;
            else
                state = Bstop;

```

```
        default: state = ABout;
    endcase
end
        // combine sensor bits for case statements above
        // {} operators combine bits
wire [1:0] sensor12 = {sensor1, sensor2};
wire [1:0] sensor13 = {sensor1, sensor3};
wire [1:0] sensor24 = {sensor2, sensor4};
        // These outputs do not depend on the state
wire switch3 = 0;
        // Outputs that depend on state, use state to select value
        // Be sure to specify every output for every state
        // values will not default to zero!
always @(state)
    begin
        case (state)
            ABout:
                begin
                    switch1 = 0;
                    switch2 = 0;
                    dirA = 2'b 01;
                    dirB = 2'b 01;
                end
            Ain:
                begin
                    switch1 = 0;
                    switch2 = 0;
                    dirA = 2'b 01;
                    dirB = 2'b 01;
                end
            Bin:
                begin
                    switch1 = 1;
                    switch2 = 1;
                    dirA = 2'b 01;
                    dirB = 2'b 01;
                end
            Astop:
                begin
                    switch1 = 1;
                    switch2 = 1;
                    dirA = 2'b 00;
                    dirB = 2'b 01;
                end
            Bstop:
                begin
                    switch1 = 0;
                    switch2 = 0;
                    dirA = 2'b 01;
                    dirB = 2'b 00;
                end
```

```

default:
begin
    switch1 = 0;
    switch2 = 0;
    dirA = 2'b 00;
    dirB = 2'b 00;
end
endcase
end
endmodule

```

8.8 Automatically Generating a State Diagram of a Design

You can use **Tools** \Rightarrow **Netlist Viewers** \Rightarrow **State Diagram Viewer** to automatically generate a state diagram and state table of a VHDL or Verilog based state machine after it has been compiled successfully as seen in Figure 8.8. The encoding tab at the bottom will also display the state encodings which typically use the one-hot encoding scheme (i.e., one flip-flop is used per state and the active flip-flop indicates the current state).

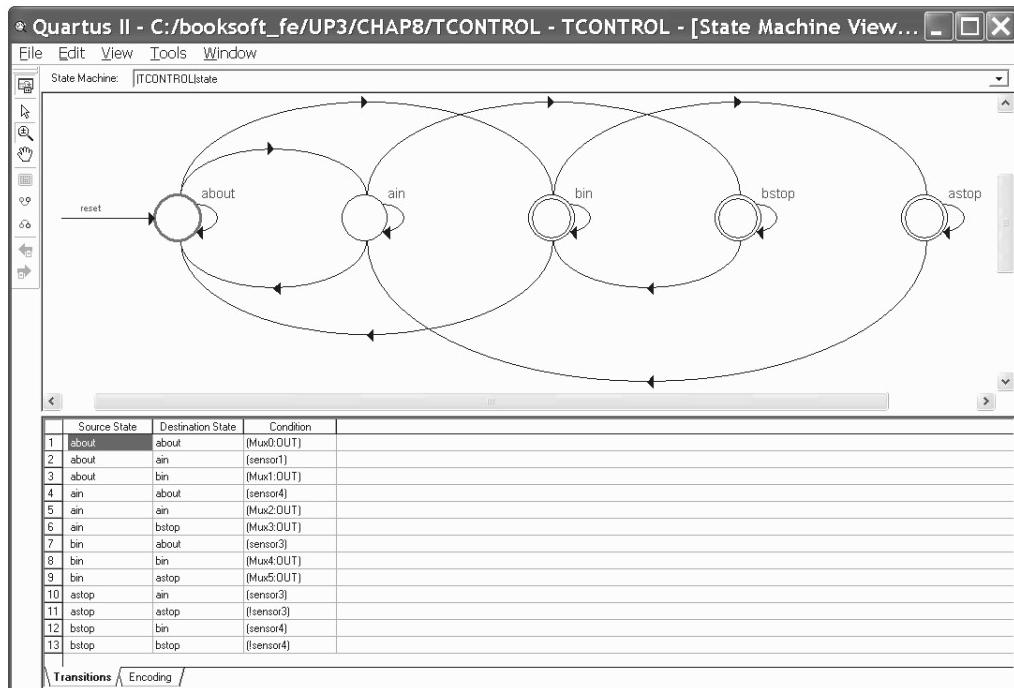


Figure 8.8 Automatically generated state diagram of Tcontrol.vhd.

8.9 Simulation Vector file for State Machine Simulation

The vector waveform file, *tcontrol.vwf*, seen in Figure 8.9 controls the simulation and tests the state machine. A vector waveform file specifies the simulation stimulus and display. This file sets up a 40ns clock and specifies sensor patterns (inputs to the state machine), which will be used to test the state machine. These patterns were chosen by picking a path in the state diagram that moves to all of the different states.

The sensor-input patterns will need to be changed if you change to a different train pattern, and therefore, the state machine. Sensor inputs should not change faster than the clock cycle time of 40ns. As a minimum, try to test all of the states and arcs in your state machine simulation.

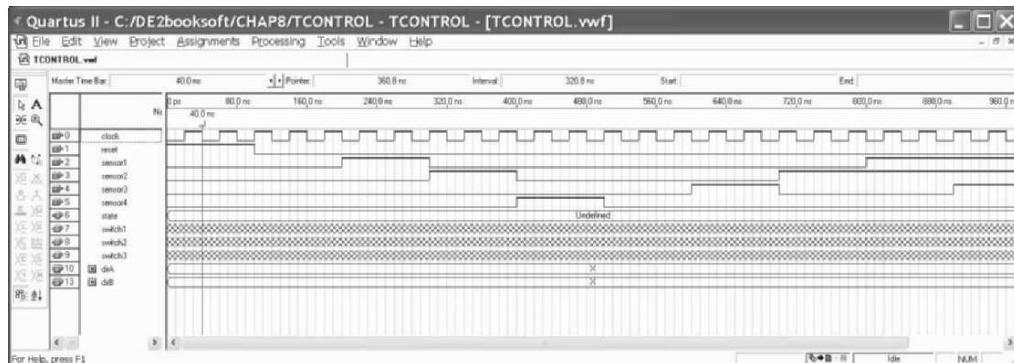


Figure 8.9 Tcontrol.vwf vector waveform file for simulation.

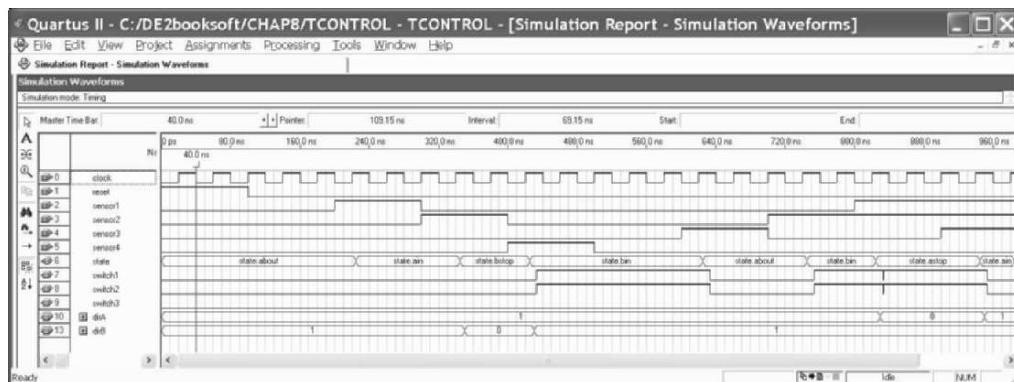


Figure 8.10 Simulation of Tcontrol.vhd using the Tcontrol.vwf vector waveform file in Figure 8.9.

8.10 Running the Train Control Simulation

Follow these steps to compile and simulate the state machine for the electric train controller.

Select Current Project

Make Tcontrol.vhd the current project with **File** \Rightarrow **Open Project** \Rightarrow *Name*. Then find and select **Tcontrol.vhd**.

Compile and Simulate

Select **Processing** \Rightarrow **Start Compilation and Simulation**. The simulator will run automatically if there are no compile errors. Select **Processing** \Rightarrow **Simulation Report** to see the timing diagram display of your simulation as seen in Figure 8.10. Whenever you change your VHDL (or Verilog) source you will need to repeat this step. If you get compile errors, clicking on the error will move the text editor to the error location. The Altera software has extensive online help including HDL syntax examples.

Make any text changes to Tcontrol.vhd or Tcontrol.vwf (test vector waveform file) with **File** \Rightarrow **Open**. This brings up a special editor window. Note that the menus at the top of the screen change depending on which window is currently open.

Updating new Simulation Test Vectors

To update the simulation with new test vectors from a modified Tcontrol.vwf, select **Processing** \Rightarrow **Start Simulation**. The simulation will then run with the new test vectors. If you modify Tcontrol.vhd, you will need to recompile first.

8.11 Running the Video Train System (After Successful Simulation)

A simulated or "virtual" train system is provided to test the controller without putting trains and people at risk. The simulation runs on the FPGA chip. The output of the simulation is displayed on a VGA monitor connected directly to the FPGA board. A typical video output display is seen in Figure 8.11. This module is also written in VHDL and it provides the sensor inputs and uses the outputs from the state machine to control the trains. The module tcontrol.vhd is automatically connected to the train simulation.

Here are the steps to run the virtual train system simulation:

Select the top-level project

Make Train.vhd the current project with **File** \Rightarrow **Open Project** \Rightarrow *Name*.

Then find and select **Train.qpf**. Train.qsf must be in the project directory since it contains the FPGA chip pin assignment information needed for video outputs and switch inputs. Double check that your FPGA Device type is correct.

Compile the Project

Select **Processing** \Rightarrow **Start Compilation**. Train.vhd will link in your tcontrol.vhd file if it is in the same directory, when compiled. This is a large program, so it will take a few seconds to compile.

Download the Video Train Simulation

Select **Tools** \Rightarrow **Programmer**. When the programmer window opens click on the Program/Configure box if it is not already selected. In case of problems, see the FPGA board download tutorials in Chapter 1 for more details. The FPGA board must be turned on the power supply must be connected, and the Byteblaster* cable must be plugged into the PC. When everything is setup, the start button in the programming window should highlight. If the start button is not highlighted, try closing and reopening the programmer window. Under Hardware setup the Byteblaster should be selected. To download the board, click on the highlighted **start** button. Attach a VGA monitor to the FPGA board.

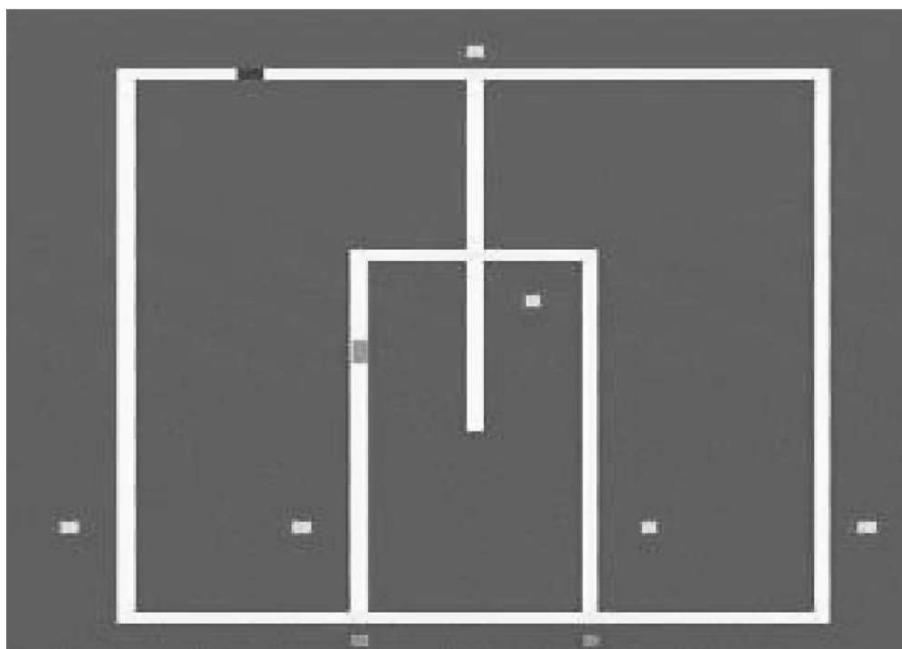


Figure 8.11 Video Image from Train System Simulation.

Viewing the Video Train Simulation

Train output should appear on the VGA monitor after downloading is complete as seen in Figure 8.11. On the DE1 and DE2, FPGA KEY2 is run/step/stop and FPGA KEY1 is the reset. Train A is displayed in black and Train B is displayed

in red. On the DE1 and DE2, hit KEY2 once to start the train simulation running. Hitting KEY2 again will stop the simulation. If you hit KEY2 twice quickly while trains are stopped, it will single step to the next track sensor state change. Other boards also use two pushbuttons for these functions.

Sensor and switch values are indicated with a green or red square on the display. Switch values are the squares next to each switch location. Green indicates no train present on a sensor and it indicates switch connected to outside track for a switch.

On the DE2 and UP3 board's, the LCD display top line shows the values of the sensor (s), and switch (sw) signals in binary and the bottom line indicates the values of DirA and DirB in binary. The most significant bit in each field is the highest numbered bit.

If a possible train wreck is detected by two trains running on the same track segment, the simulation halts and the monitor will flash. The FPGA board's slide or DIP switches control the speed of Train A (low 2 bits) and B (high 2 bits). Be sure to check operation with different train speeds. Many problems occur more often with a fast moving and a slow moving train.

8.12 A Hardware Implementation of the Train System Layout

Using the new Digital Command Control (DCC) model trains³, a model train system with a similar track layout and control scheme can be setup and controlled by the FPGA board⁴. In DCC model trains, the train speed, direction, and other special features are controlled via a bipolar bit stream that is transmitted on the train tracks along with the power. A DCC decoder is located inside each train's engine that interprets the DCC signals and initiates the desired action (i.e., change in speed, direction, or feature status).

On a DCC system, trains are individually addressable. As seen in Figure 8.12, the DCC signal's frequency or zero crossing rate is changed in the DCC signal to transmit the data bits used for a command. A DCC command contains both a train address and a speed command. Each train engine is assigned a unique address. The electric motors in the train's engine are powered by a simple diode circuit that provides full-wave rectification of the bipolar DCC signal that is present on the track. In this way, the two metal train tracks can simultaneously provide both direct current (DC) power and speed control commands for the trains.

The output voltages and current levels provided by an FPGA output pin cannot drive the DCC train signals directly, but an FPGA can send the DCC data streams to the train track with the addition of a higher current H-bridge circuit that controls the train's power supply. An H-bridge contains four large power transistors that provide the higher drive current needed for DC motors and they

³ DCC standards are approved by the National Model Railroad Association and are available online at http://www.nmra.org/standards/DCC/standards_rps/DCCStds.html.

⁴ Additional details on using FPGAs for DCC can be found in "Using the Using FPGAs to Simulate and Implement Digital Design Systems in the Classroom", by T. S. Hall and J. O. Hamblen in the *Proceedings of the 2006 ASEE Southeast Section Conference*.

can also reverse the motor. Integrated H-bridge modules are available that can minimize the number of discrete components used. One such example is the National Semiconductor LMD18200 integrated H-bridge module. The LMD18200 supports TTL and CMOS compatible inputs allowing the FPGA board's output pins to be connected directly to the H-bridge inputs. A H-bridge typically requires two digital input control pins (i.e., forward, reverse, and stop). The H-bridge switches the train's power supply and in addition to the FPGA output pins that drive the H-bridge inputs, a ground connection is required between the train's power supply and the FPGA power supply.

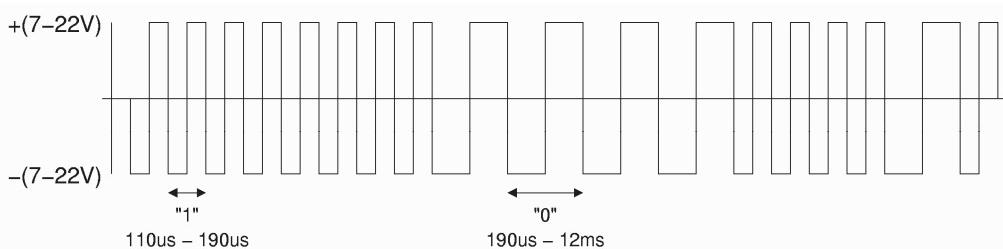


Figure 8.12 A portion of a DCC train signal is seen above. The zero crossing rate of a DCC signal is used to send data bits for train speed commands. The DCC signal is also rectified in each train's engine to provide 7-22V DC power for the train's electric motor and decoder circuits.

For the train sensors, Sharp GP2L26 infrared (IR) photointerrupter sensors can be used to detect when a train passes each sensor point. These sensors emit IR light from an LED and detect when the light is reflected back with an IR detector circuit. These sensors are very small (3mm x 4mm) and can fit between the rails on the track. Wires can be run down through the roadbed to a central protoboard where the discrete components needed for interfacing to this sensor are connected. Many model trains have dark underbodies, and the IR photo sensors can not always detect the trains passing over them. To increase the visibility of the trains to the photo sensors, pieces of reflective tape can be taped to the bottom of the trains.

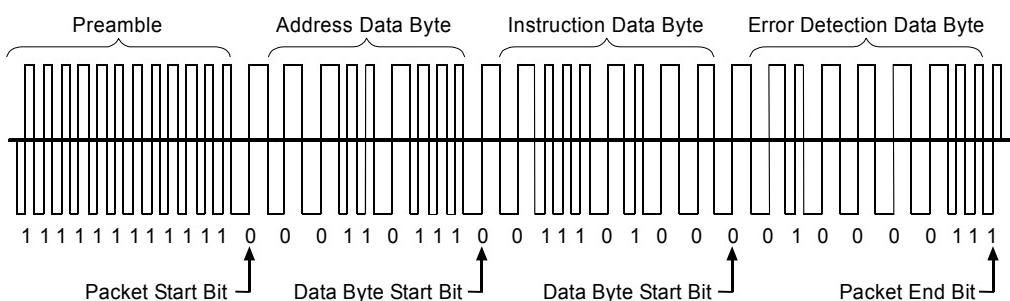


Figure 8.13 An example DCC model train speed and direction command packet.

Another version of the train.VHD program, `dcc_train.zip` is available on the book's DVD that will control a DCC train setup. It replaces the video train simulation module and produces the outputs needed to run the real DCC train system. It contains a DCC IP core, `DCC_low_level.vhd`, which generates the appropriate DCC signal packets as seen in Figure 8.13. The DCC data stream is generated by combining the Speed switch inputs and the Train direction signals (i.e., DA, DB) from the Tcontrol module. The appropriate DCC command packet is created from these signals and then saved in a register. The registered command is shifted out to produce a serial bit stream. The DCC standard only provides for one-way communication, and thus, no transmission guarantee can be made (i.e., no acknowledgement is sent back by the train). Therefore, a given DCC command is repeatedly shifted out until another command is received to ensure transmission of each command. Continuous transmission also insures a consistent power level on the tracks.

Additional construction details for anyone building the FPGA-based DCC model train setup are available at the book's website. The FPGA uses five input pins to read in from the IR photointerrupter track sensors, two output bits to send DCC commands, and two output bits to control each of the three track switches. Each track switch has two solenoid drivers that open and close a switch. The proper solenoid must be briefly turned on or pulsed to move the switch and then turned off. Leaving the solenoid turned on continuously will overheat and eventually burn out the solenoid. The 50ms timed pulse required to briefly energize a track switch's solenoid is already provided in the IP core.

To connect the train setup to all of the FPGA I/O pins, a ribbon cable can be attached to one of the I/O expansion headers on the FPGA board with the other end attached to the train interface circuitry on a protoboard or custom printed circuit board (PCB). The FPGA device type and I/O pin assignments for the train.VHD project will need to be changed depending on each user's custom train interface circuitry and the FPGA board I/O expansion connector used. Consult each FPGA board's reference manual for complete details on the I/O expansion header's FPGA pin numbers.

8.13 Laboratory Exercises

1. Assuming that train A now runs clockwise and B remains counterclockwise, draw a new state diagram and implement the new controller. If you use VHDL to design the new controller, you can modify the code presented in section 8.7. Simulate the controller and then run the video train simulation.
2. Design a state machine to operate the two trains avoiding collisions but minimizing their idle time. Trains must not crash by moving the wrong direction into an open switch. Develop a simulation to verify your state machine is operating correctly before running the video train system. The trains are assumed to be in the initial positions as shown in Figure 8.14. Train A is to move counterclockwise around the outside track until it comes to Sensor 1, then move to the inside track stopping at Sensor 5 and waiting for B to pass Sensor 3 twice. Trains can move at different speeds, so no assumption should be made

about the train speeds. A train hitting a sensor can be stopped before entering the switch area.

Once B has passed Sensor 3 twice, Train A moves to the outside track and continues around counterclockwise until it picks up where it left off at the starting position as shown in Figure 8.15. Train B is to move as designated only stopping at a sensor to avoid collisions with A. Train B will then continue as soon as there is no potential collision and continue as designated. Trains A and B should run continuously, stopping only to avoid a potential collision.

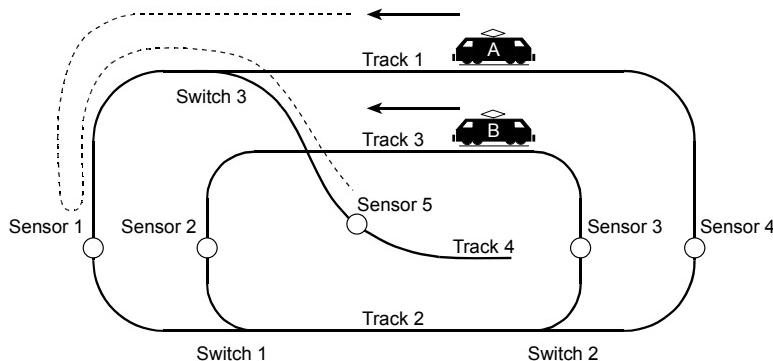


Figure 8.14 Initial Positions of Trains at State Machine Reset with Initial Paths Designated.

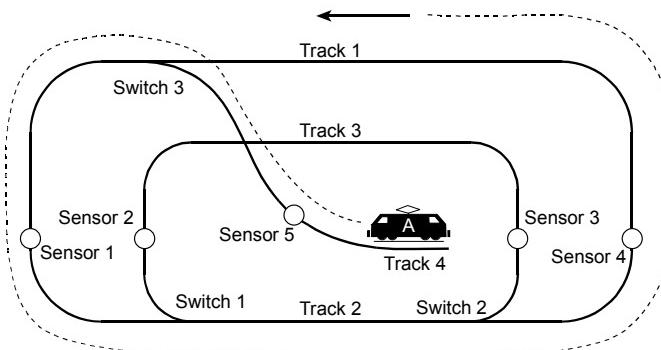
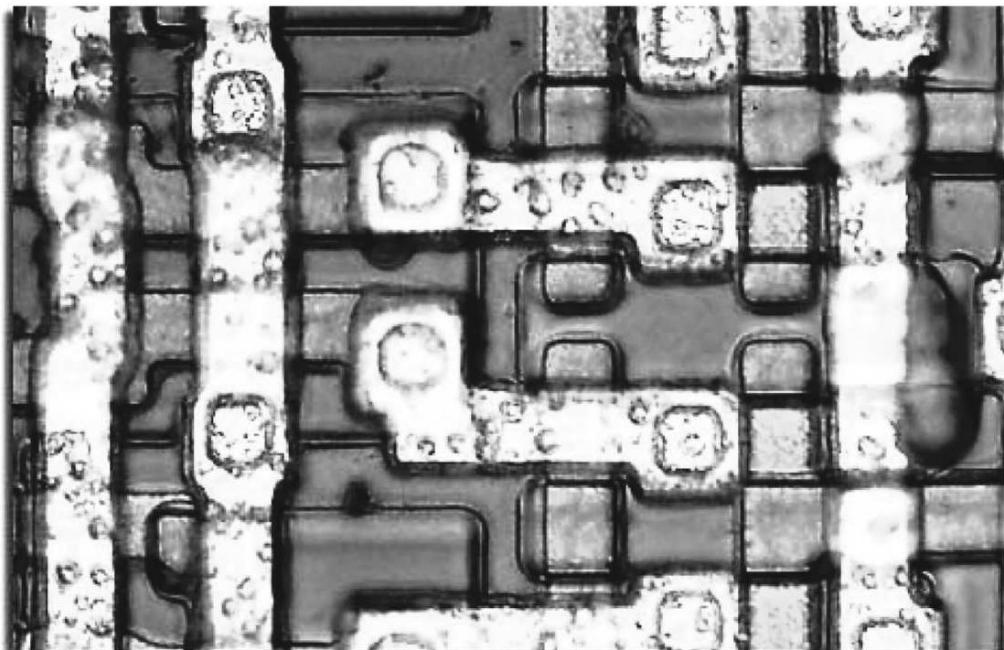


Figure 8.15 Return Path of Train A.

3. Use the single pulse FPGACore functions on each raw sensor input to produce state machine sensor inputs that go High for only one clock cycle per passage of a train. Rework the state machine design with this assumption and repeat problem 1 or 2.
4. Develop another pattern of train movement and design a state machine to implement it.
5. Implement a real train setup using DCC model trains. Debug your control module using the video simulation module first, to avoid any real train crashes that may damage the trains. Typically laboratory space is limited, so keep in mind that the smaller gauge model trains will require less space for the track layout.

CHAPTER 9

A Simple Computer Design: The μ P 3



A partial die photograph of individual transistors about 10 microns tall on the Intel i4004 microprocessor is seen above. The 1971 Intel 4004 was the world's first single chip microprocessor. Prior to the 4004, Intel made memory chips. The 4004 was a 4-bit CPU with a clock rate of 108 kHz that contains 2,300 transistors. Photograph ©1995-2004 courtesy of Michael Davidson, <http://micro.magnet.fsu.edu/chipshots>.

9 A Simple Computer Design: The μ P 3

A traditional digital computer consists of three main units, the processor or central processing unit (CPU), the memory that stores program instructions and data, and the input/output hardware that communicates to other devices. As seen in Figure 9.1, these units are connected by a collection of parallel digital signals called a bus. Typically, signals on the bus include the memory address, memory data, and bus status. Bus status signals indicate the current bus operation, memory read, memory write, or input/output operation.

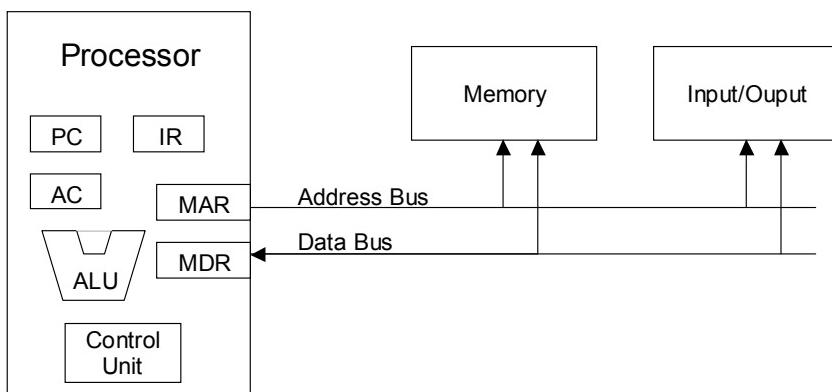


Figure 9.1 Architecture of a Simple Computer System.

Internally, the CPU contains a small number of registers that are used to store data inside the processor. Registers such as PC, IR, AC, MAR and MDR are built using D flip-flops for data storage. One or more arithmetic logic units (ALUs) are also contained inside the CPU. The ALU is used to perform arithmetic and logical operations on data values. Common ALU operations include add, subtract, and logical and/or operations. Register-to-bus connections are hard wired for simple point-to-point connections. When one of several registers can drive the bus, the connections are constructed using multiplexers, open collector outputs, or tri-state outputs. The control unit is a complex state machine that controls the internal operation of the processor.

The primary operation performed by the processor is the execution of sequences of instructions stored in main memory. The CPU or processor reads or fetches an instruction from memory, decodes the instruction to determine what operations are required, and then executes the instruction. The control unit controls this sequence of operations in the processor.

9.1 Computer Programs and Instructions

A computer program is a sequence of instructions that perform a desired operation. Instructions are stored in memory. For the following simple µP 3 computer design, an instruction consists of 16 bits. As seen in Figure 9.2 the high eight bits of the instruction contain the opcode. The instruction operation code or "opcode" specifies the operation, such as add or subtract, that will be performed by the instruction. Typically, an instruction sends one set of data values through the ALU to perform this operation. The low eight bits of each instruction contain a memory address field. Depending on the opcode, this address may point to a data location or the location of another instruction. Some example instructions are shown in Figure 9.3.

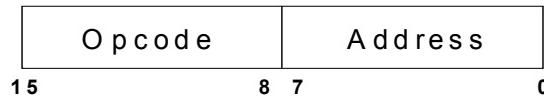


Figure 9.2 Simple µP 3 Computer Instruction Format.

Instruction Mnemonic	Operation Preformed	Opcode Value
ADD <i>address</i>	AC <= AC + contents of memory address	00
STORE <i>address</i>	contents of memory address <= AC	01
LOAD <i>address</i>	AC <= contents of memory address	02
JUMP <i>address</i>	PC <= address	03
JNEG <i>address</i>	If AC < 0 Then PC <= address	04

Figure 9.3 Basic µP 3 Computer Instructions.

An example program to compute $A = B + C$ is shown in Figure 9.4. This program is a sequence of three instructions. Program variables such as A, B, and C are typically stored in dedicated memory locations. The symbolic representation of the instructions, called assembly language, is shown in the first column. The second column contains the same program in machine language (the binary pattern that is actually loaded into the computer's memory).

The machine language can be derived using the instruction format in Figure 9.2. First, find the opcode for each instruction in the first column of Figure 9.3. This provides the first two hexadecimal digits in machine language. Second, assign the data values of A, B, and C to be stored in hexadecimal addresses 10,11, and 12 in memory. The address provides the last two hexadecimal digits of each machine instruction.

<u>Assembly Language</u>	<u>Machine Language</u>
LOAD B	0211
ADD C	0012
STORE A	0110

Figure 9.4 Example Computer Program for $A = B + C$.

The assignment of the data addresses must not conflict with instruction addresses. Normally, the data is stored in memory after all of the instructions in the program. In this case, if we assume the program starts at address 0, the three instructions will use memory addresses 0,1, and 2.

The instructions in this example program all perform data operations and execute in strictly sequential order. Instructions such as JUMP and JNEG are used to transfer control to a different address. Jump and Branch instructions do not execute in sequential order. Jump and Branch instructions must be used to implement control structures such as an IF...THEN statement or program loops. Details are provided in an exercise at the end of this section.

Assemblers are computer programs that automatically convert the symbolic assembly language program into the binary machine language. Compilers are programs that automatically translate higher-level languages, such as C or Pascal, into a sequence of machine instructions. Many compilers also have an option to output assembly language to aid in debugging.

The programmer's view of the computer only includes the registers (such as the program counter) and details that are required to understand the function of assembly or machine language instructions. Other registers and control hardware, such as the instruction register (IR), memory address register (MAR), and memory data register (MDR), are internal to the CPU and are not described in the assembly language level model of the computer. Computer engineers designing the processor must understand the function and operation of these internal registers and additional control hardware.

9.2 The Processor Fetch, Decode and Execute Cycle

The processor reads or fetches an instruction from memory, decodes the instruction to determine what operations are required, and then executes the instruction as seen in Figure 9.5. A simple state machine called the control unit controls this sequence of operations in the processor. The fetch, decode, and execute cycle is found in machines ranging from microprocessor-based PCs to supercomputers. Implementation of the fetch, decode, and execute cycle requires several register transfer operations and clock cycles in this example design.

The program counter contains the address of the current instruction. Normally, to fetch the next instruction from memory the processor must increment the program counter (PC). The processor must then send the address value in the PC to memory over the bus by loading the memory address register (MAR) and start a memory read operation on the bus. After a small delay, the instruction

data will appear on the memory data bus lines, and it will be latched into the memory data register (MDR).

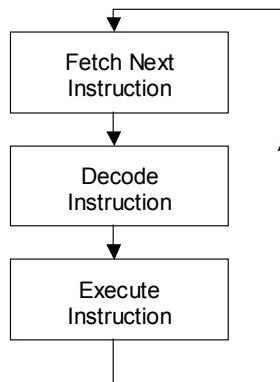


Figure 9.5 Processor Fetch, Decode and Execute Cycle.

Execution of the instruction may require an additional memory cycle so the instruction is normally saved in the CPU's instruction register (IR). Using the value in the IR, the instruction can now be decoded. Execution of the instruction will require additional operations in the CPU and perhaps additional memory operations.

The Accumulator (AC) is the primary register used to perform data calculations and to hold temporary program data in the processor. After completing execution of the instruction the processor begins the cycle again by fetching the next instruction.

The detailed operation of a computer is often modeled by describing the register transfers occurring in the computer system. A variety of register transfer level (RTL) languages such as VHDL or Verilog are designed for this application. Unlike more traditional programming languages, RTL languages can model parallel operations and map easily into hardware designs. Logic synthesis tools can also be used to implement a hardware design automatically using an RTL description.

To explain the function and operation of the CPU in detail, consider the example computer design in Figure 9.1. The CPU contains a general-purpose data register called the accumulator (AC) and the program counter (PC). The arithmetic logic unit (ALU) is used for arithmetic and logical operations.

The fetch, decode, and execute cycle can be implemented in this computer using the sequence of register transfer operations shown in Figure 9.6. The next instruction is fetched from memory with the following register transfer operations:

$$\text{MAR} = \text{PC}$$

Read Memory, MDR = Instruction value from memory

$$\text{IR} = \text{MDR}$$

$$\text{PC} = \text{PC} + 1$$

After this sequence of operations, the current instruction is in the instruction register (IR). This instruction is one of several possible machine instructions such as ADD, LOAD, or STORE. The opcode field is tested to decode the specific machine instruction. The address field of the instruction register contains the address of possible data operands. Using the address field, a memory read is started in the decode state.

The decode state transfers control to one of several possible next states based on the opcode value. Each instruction requires a short sequence of register transfer operations to implement or execute that instruction. These register transfer operations are then performed to execute the instruction. Only a few of the instruction execute states are shown in Figure 9.6. When execution of the current instruction is completed, the cycle repeats by starting a memory read operation and returning to the fetch state. A small state machine called a control unit is used to control these internal processor states and control signals.

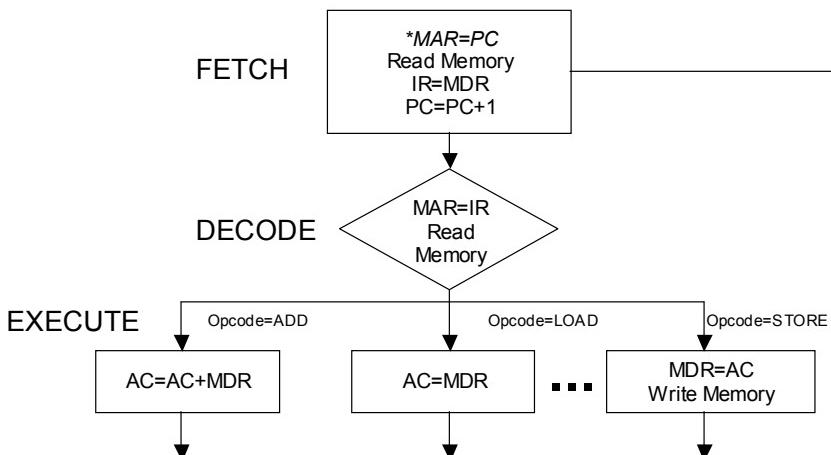


Figure 9.6 Detailed View of Fetch, Decode, and Execute for the μ P 3 Computer Design.

Figure 9.7 is the datapath used for the implementation of the μ P 3 Computer. A computer's datapath consists of the registers, memory interface, ALUs, and the bus structures used to connect them. The vertical lines are the three major busses used to connect the registers. On the bus lines in the datapath, a “/” with a number indicates the number of bits on the bus. Data values present on the active busses are shown in hexadecimal. MW is the memory write control line.

A reset must be used to force the processor into a known state after power is applied. The initial contents of registers and memory produced by a reset can also be seen in Figure 9.7. Since the PC and MAR are reset to 00, program execution will start at 00.

Note that memory contains the machine code for the example program presented earlier. Recall that the program consists of a LOAD, ADD, and

STORE instruction starting at address 00. Data values for this example program are stored in memory locations, 10, 11, and 12.

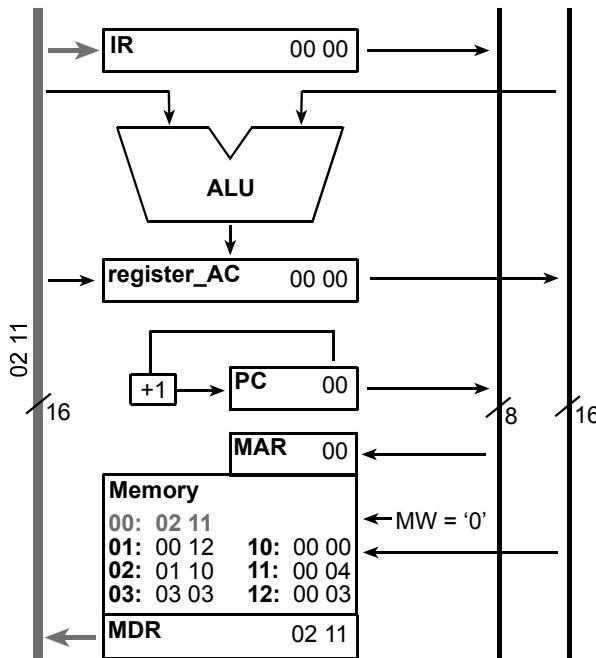


Figure 9.7 Datapath used for the μ P 3 Computer Design after applying reset.

Consider the execution of the ADD machine instruction (0012) stored at program location 01 in detail. The instruction, ADD *address*, adds the contents of the memory location at address 12 to the contents of AC and stores the result in AC. The following sequence of register transfer operations will be required to fetch and execute this instruction.

FETCH: REGISTER TRANSFER CYCLE I:

MAR = PC prior to fetch, read memory, IR = MDR, PC = PC + 1

First, the memory address register is loaded with the PC. In the example program, the ADD instruction (0012) is at location 01 in memory, so the PC and MAR will both contain 01. In this implementation of the computer, the MAR=PC operation will be moved to the end of the fetch, decode, and execute loop to the execute state in order to save a clock cycle. To fetch the instruction, a memory read operation is started. After a small delay for the memory access time, the ADD instruction is available at the input of the instruction register. To set up for the next instruction fetch, one is added to the program counter. The last two operations occur in parallel during one clock cycle using two different data busses.

At the rising edge of the clock signal, the decode state is entered. A block diagram of the register transfer operations for the fetch state is seen in Figure 9.8. Inactive busses are not shown.

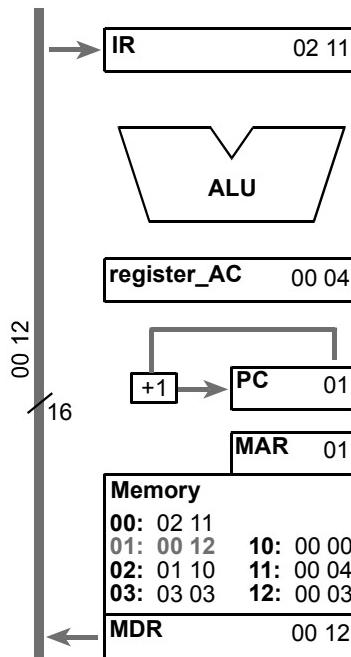


Figure 9.8 Register transfers in the ADD instruction’s Fetch State.

DECODE: REGISTER TRANSFER CYCLE 2:

Decode Opcode to find Next State, MAR = IR, and start memory read

Using the new value in the IR, the CPU control hardware decodes the instruction's opcode of 00 and determines that this is an ADD instruction. Therefore, the next state in the following clock cycle will be the execute state for the ADD instruction.

Instructions typically are decoded in hardware using combinational circuits such as decoders, programmable logic arrays (PLAs), or perhaps even a small ROM. A memory read cycle is always started in decode, since the instruction may require a memory data operand in the execute state.

The ADD instruction requires a data operand from memory address 12. In Figure 9.9, the low 8-bit address field portion of the instruction in the IR is transferred to the MAR. At the next clock, after a small delay for the memory access time, the ADD instruction’s data operand value from memory (0003) will be available in the MDR.

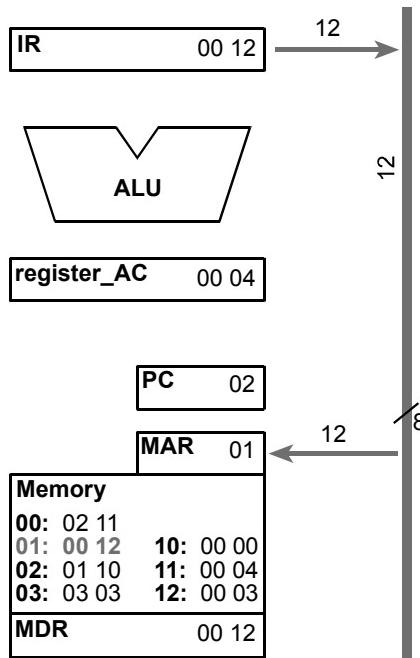


Figure 9.9 Register transfers in the ADD instruction's Decode State.

EXECUTE ADD: REGISTER TRANSFER CYCLE 3:

AC = AC + MDR, MAR = PC*, and GOTO FETCH

The two values can now be added. The ALU operation input is set for addition by the control unit. As shown in Figure 9.10, the MDR's value of 0003 is fed into one input of the ALU. The contents of register AC (0004) are fed into the other ALU input. After a small delay for the addition circuitry, the sum of 0007 is produced by the ALU and will be loaded into the AC at the next clock. To provide the address for the next instruction fetch, the MAR is loaded with the current value of the PC (02). Note that by moving the operation, MAR=PC, to every instruction's final execute state, the fetch state can execute in one clock cycle. The ADD instruction is now complete and the processor starts to fetch the next instruction at the next clock cycle. Since three states were required, an ADD instruction will require three clock cycles to complete the operation.

After considering this example, it should be obvious that a thorough understanding of each instruction, the hardware organization, busses, control signals, and timing is required to design a processor. Some operations can be performed in parallel, while others must be performed sequentially. A bus can only transfer one value per clock cycle and an ALU can only compute one value per clock cycle, so ALUs, bus structures, and data transfers will limit those operations that can be done in parallel during a single clock cycle. In the

states examined, a maximum of three buses were used for register transfers. Timing in critical paths, such as ALU delays and memory access times, will determine the clock speed at which these operations can be performed.

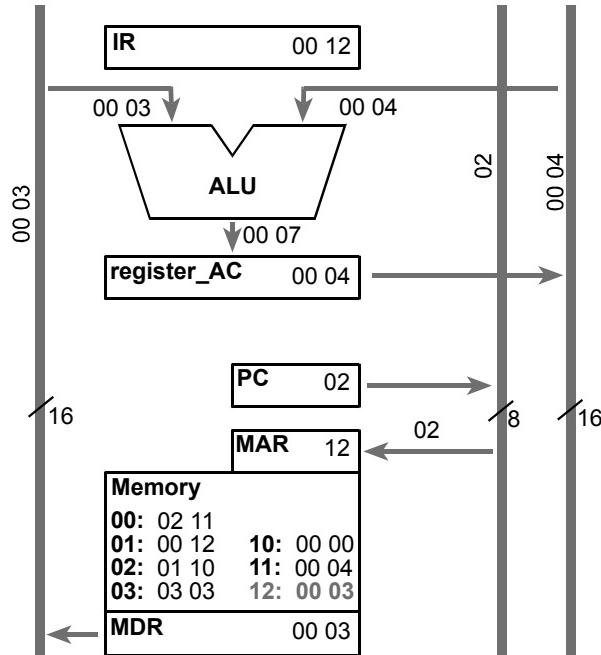


Figure 9.10 Register transfers in the ADD instruction's Execute State.

The μ P 3's multiple clock cycles per instruction implementation approach was used in early generation microprocessors. These computers had limited hardware, since the VLSI technology at that time supported orders of magnitude fewer gates on a chip than is now possible in current devices. Current generation processors, such as those used in personal computers, have a hundred or more instructions, and use additional means to speedup program execution. Instruction formats are more complex with up to 32 data registers and with additional instruction bits that are used for longer address fields and more powerful addressing modes.

Pipelining converts fetch, decode, and execute into a parallel operation mode instead of sequential. As an example, with three stage pipelining, the fetch unit fetches instruction $n + 2$, while the decode unit decodes instruction $n + 1$, and the execute unit executes instruction n . With this faster pipelined approach, an instruction finishes execution every clock cycle rather than three as in the simple computer design presented here.

Superscalar machines are pipelined computers that contain multiple fetch, decode and execute units. Superscalar computers can execute several instructions in one clock cycle. Most current generation processors including

those in personal computers are both pipelined and superscalar. An example of a pipelined, reduced instruction set computer (RISC) design can be found in Chapter 14.

9.3 VHDL Model of the μ P 3

To demonstrate the operation of a computer, a VHDL model of the μ P 3 computer is shown in Figure 9.11. The simple μ P 3 computer design fits easily into a FPGA device using less than 1-10% of its logic. The computer's RAM memory is implemented using the Altsyncram function which uses the FPGA's internal memory blocks.

The remainder of the computer model is basically a VHDL-based state machine that implements the fetch, decode, and execute cycle. The first few lines declare internal registers for the processor along with the states needed for the fetch, decode and execute cycle. A long CASE statement is used to implement the control unit state machine. A reset state is needed to initialize the processor. In the reset state, several of the registers are reset to zero and a memory read of the first instruction is started. This forces the processor to start executing instructions at location 00 in a predictable state after a reset.

The fetch state adds one to the PC and loads the instruction into the instruction register (IR). After the rising edge of the clock signal, the decode state starts. In decode, the low eight bits of the instruction register are used to start a memory read operation in case the instruction needs a data operand from memory. The decode state contains another CASE statement to decode the instruction using the opcode value in the high eight bits of the instruction. This means that the computer can have up to 256 different instructions, although only four are implemented in the basic model. Other instructions can be added as exercises. After the rising edge of the clock signal, control transfers to an execute state that is specific for each instruction.

Some instructions can execute in one clock cycle and some instructions may take more than one clock cycle. Instructions that write to memory will require more than one state for execute because of memory timing constraints. As seen in the STORE instruction, the memory address and data needs to be stable before and after the memory write signal is High, hence, additional states are used to avoid violating memory setup and hold times. When each instruction finishes the execute state, MAR is loaded with the PC to start the fetch of the next instruction. After the final execute state for each instruction, control returns to the fetch state.

Since the FPGA's synchronous memory block requires and contains an internal memory address and memory write register, it is necessary to make all assignments to the memory address register and memory write outside of the process to avoid having two cascaded registers. Recall that any assignment made in a clocked process synthesizes registers. Two cascaded MAR registers would require a delay of two clocks to load a new address for a memory operation.

The machine language program shown in Figure 9.12 is loaded into memory using a memory initialization file (*.mif). This produces 256 words of 16-bit

memory for instructions and data. The memory initialization file, program.mif can be edited to change the loaded program. A write is performed only when the memory_write signal is High. On a Cyclone FPGA device, the access time for memory operations is in the range of 5-10ns.

```
-- Simple Computer Model Scomp.vhd
LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;
LIBRARY altera_mf;
USE altera_mf.altera_mf_components.ALL;

ENTITY SCOMP IS
PORT( clock, reset : IN STD_LOGIC;
      program_counter_out : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
      register_AC_out : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR(15 DOWNTO 0 );
      memory_data_register_out : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR(15 DOWNTO 0 );
      memory_address_register_out : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR(7 DOWNTO 0 );
      memory_write_out : OUT STD_LOGIC);
END SCOMP;

ARCHITECTURE a OF scomp IS
TYPE STATE_TYPE IS ( reset_pc, fetch, decode, execute_add, execute_load, execute_store,
                     execute_store2, execute_jump );
SIGNAL state: STATE_TYPE;
SIGNAL instruction_register, memory_data_register : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR(15 DOWNTO 0 );
SIGNAL register_AC : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR(15 DOWNTO 0 );
SIGNAL program_counter : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
SIGNAL memory_address_register : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
SIGNAL memory_write : STD_LOGIC;
BEGIN
    -- Use Altsyncram function for computer's memory (256 16-bit words)
    memory: altsyncram
        GENERIC MAP (
            operation_mode => "SINGLE_PORT",
            width_a => 16,
            widthad_a => 8,
            lpm_type => "altsyncram",
            outdata_reg_a => "UNREGISTERED",
            -- Reads in mif file for initial program and data values
            init_file => "program.mif",
            intended_device_family => "Cyclone")
    PORT MAP (wren_a => memory_write, clock0 => clock,
              address_a => memory_address_register, data_a => Register_AC,
              q_a => memory_data_register );
              -- Output major signals for simulation
    program_counter_out <= program_counter;
    register_AC_out <= register_AC;
    memory_data_register_out <= memory_data_register;
    memory_address_register_out <= memory_address_register;
```

```

PROCESS ( CLOCK, RESET )
  BEGIN
    IF reset = '1' THEN
      state <= reset_pc;
    ELSIF clock'EVENT AND clock = '1' THEN

      CASE state IS
        -- reset the computer, need to clear some registers
        WHEN reset_pc =>
          program_counter      <= "00000000";
          register_AC         <= "0000000000000000";
          state                <= fetch;
          -- Fetch instruction from memory and add 1 to PC
        WHEN fetch =>
          instruction_register <= memory_data_register;
          program_counter       <= program_counter + 1;
          state                  <= decode;
          -- Decode instruction and send out address of any data operands
        WHEN decode =>
          CASE instruction_register( 15 DOWNTO 8 ) IS
            WHEN "00000000" =>
              state <= execute_add;
            WHEN "00000001" =>
              state <= execute_store;
            WHEN "00000010" =>
              state <= execute_load;
            WHEN "00000011" =>
              state <= execute_jump;
            WHEN OTHERS =>
              state <= fetch;
          END CASE;
          -- Execute the ADD instruction
        WHEN execute_add =>
          register_ac           <= register_ac + memory_data_register;
          state                  <= fetch;
          -- Execute the STORE instruction
          -- (needs two clock cycles for memory write and fetch mem setup)
        WHEN execute_store =>
          -- write register_A to memory, enable memory write
          -- load memory address and data registers for memory write
          state                  <= execute_store2;
          --finish memory write operation and load memory registers
          --for next fetch memory read operation
        WHEN execute_store2 =>
          state                  <= fetch;
          -- Execute the LOAD instruction
        WHEN execute_load =>
          register_ac           <= memory_data_register;
          state                  <= fetch;
          -- Execute the JUMP instruction
        WHEN execute_jump =>
          program_counter        <= instruction_register( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
          state                  <= fetch;
        WHEN OTHERS =>
          state <= fetch;

```

```

END CASE;
END IF;
END PROCESS;

-- memory address register is already inside synchronous memory unit
-- need to load its value based on current state
-- (no second register is used - not inside a process here)

WITH state SELECT
    memory_address_register <= "00000000" WHEN reset_pc,
    program_counter           WHEN fetch,
    instruction_register(7 DOWNTO 0) WHEN decode,
    program_counter           WHEN execute_add,
    instruction_register(7 DOWNTO 0) WHEN execute_store,
    program_counter           WHEN execute_store2,
    program_counter           WHEN execute_load,
    instruction_register(7 DOWNTO 0) WHEN execute_jump;
WITH state SELECT
    memory_write <=      '1'          WHEN execute_store,
                           '0'          WHEN Others;
END a;

```

Figure 9.11 VHDL Model of μP 3 Computer.

9.4 Verilog Model of the μP 3

To demonstrate the operation of the computer using Verilog, a Verilog model of the μP 3 computer is shown in Figure 9.12. The computer's RAM memory is implemented using the Altsyncram function which uses the FPGA's internal memory blocks. The remainder of the computer model is basically a Verilog-based state machine that implements the fetch, decode, and execute cycle. The first few lines declare internal registers for the processor along with the states needed for the fetch, decode and execute cycle. A long CASE statement is used to implement the control unit state machine. A reset state is needed to initialize the processor. In the reset state, several of the registers are reset to zero and a memory read of the first instruction is started. This forces the processor to start executing instructions at location 00 in a predictable state after a reset. A second case statement at the end of the code makes assignments to the memory address register based on the current state.

```

//μP3 Computer Design in Verilog
module scomp (clock,reset,program_counter,register_A,
              memory_data_register_out, instruction_register);

input clock,reset;
output [7:0] program_counter;
output [15:0] register_A, memory_data_register_out, instruction_register;

reg [15:0] register_A, instruction_register;
reg [7:0] program_counter;
reg [3:0] state;

```

```

// State Encodings for Control Unit
parameter    reset_pc      = 0,
                fetch        = 1,
                decode        = 2,
                execute_add   = 3,
                execute_store  = 4,
                execute_store2 = 5,
                execute_store3 = 6,
                execute_load   = 7,
                execute_jump   = 8;

reg [7:0] memory_address_register;
reg memory_write;

wire [15:0] memory_data_register;
wire [15:0] memory_data_register_out = memory_data_register;
wire [15:0] memory_address_register_out = memory_address_register;
wire memory_write_out = memory_write;

// Use Altsynram function for computer's memory (256 16-bit words)
altsyncram     altsyncram_component (
                    .wren_a (memory_write_out),
                    .clock0 (clock),
                    .address_a (memory_address_register_out),
                    .data_a (register_A),
                    .q_a (memory_data_register));

defparam
    altsyncram_component.operation_mode = "SINGLE_PORT",
    altsyncram_component.width_a = 16,
    altsyncram_component.widthad_a = 8,
    altsyncram_component.outdata_reg_a = "UNREGISTERED",
    altsyncram_component.lpm_type = "altsyncram",
// Reads in mif file for initial program and data values
    altsyncram_component.init_file = "program.mif",
    altsyncram_component.intended_device_family = "Cyclone";

always @(posedge clock or posedge reset)
begin
    if (reset)
        state = reset_pc;
    else
        case (state)
            default: state = fetch;
// reset the computer, need to clear some registers
            reset_pc :
                begin
                    program_counter = 8'b00000000;
                    register_A = 16'b0000000000000000;
                    state = fetch;
                end
// Fetch instruction from memory and add 1 to program counter

```

```
fetch :  
    begin  
        instruction_register = memory_data_register;  
        program_counter = program_counter + 1;  
        state = decode;  
    end  
    // Decode instruction and send out address of any required data operands  
    decode :  
        begin  
            case (instruction_register[15:8])  
                8'b00000000:  
                    state = execute_add;  
                8'b00000001:  
                    state = execute_store;  
                8'b00000010:  
                    state = execute_load;  
                8'b00000011:  
                    state = execute_jump;  
            default:  
                state = fetch;  
            endcase  
        end  
    // Execute the ADD instruction  
    execute_add :  
        begin  
            register_A = register_A + memory_data_register;  
            state = fetch;  
        end  
    // Execute the STORE instruction (needs three clock cycles for memory write)  
    execute_store :  
        begin  
            // write register_A to memory  
            state = execute_store2;  
        end  
    // This state ensures that the memory address is valid until after memory_write goes low  
    execute_store2 :  
        begin  
            state = execute_store3;  
        end  
    // Execute the LOAD instruction  
    execute_load :  
        begin  
            register_A = memory_data_register;  
            state = fetch;  
        end  
    // Execute the JUMP instruction  
    execute_jump :  
        begin  
            program_counter = instruction_register[7:0];  
            state = fetch;  
        end  
    default :
```

```

begin
    state = fetch;
end
endcase
end
// Make these assignments immediately during current state (i.e., unregistered)
always @(state or program_counter or instruction_register)
begin
    case (state)
        reset_pc:      memory_address_register = 8'h 00;
        fetch:         memory_address_register = program_counter;
        decode:        memory_address_register = instruction_register[7:0];
        execute_add:   memory_address_register = program_counter;
        execute_store: memory_address_register = instruction_register[7:0];
        execute_store2: memory_address_register = program_counter;
        execute_load:  memory_address_register = program_counter;
        execute_jump:  memory_address_register = instruction_register[7:0];
        default:       memory_address_register = program_counter;
    endcase
    case (state)
        execute_store: memory_write = 1'b 1;
        default:        memory_write = 1'b 0;
    endcase
end
endmodule

```

Figure 9.12 Verilog Model of µP 3 Computer.

```

DEPTH = 256;           % Memory depth and width are required %
WIDTH = 16;            % Enter a decimal number %

ADDRESS_RADIX = HEX;   % Address and value radices are optional %
DATA_RADIX = HEX;     % Enter BIN, DEC, HEX, or OCT; unless %
                      % otherwise specified, radices = HEX %

-- Specify values for addresses, which can be single address or range
CONTENT
BEGIN
[00..FF] : 0000;      % Range--Every address from 00 to FF = 0000 (Default) %
00 : 0210;            % LOAD AC with MEM(10) %
01 : 0011;            % ADD MEM(11) to AC %
02 : 0112;            % STORE AC in MEM(12) %
03 : 0212;            % LOAD AC with MEM(12) check for new value of FFFF %
04 : 0304;            % JUMP to 04 (loop forever) %
10 : AAAA;             % Data Value of B %
11 : 5555;             % Data Value of C%
12 : 0000;             % Data Value of A - should be FFFF after running program %
END ;

```

Figure 9.13 Progam.mif file containg µP 3 Computer Program and DATA.

9.5 Automatically Generating a State Diagram of the µP3

Using **Tools** ⇒ **Netlist Viewers** ⇒ **State Diagram Viewer** to automatically produce a state diagram of the µP3 model's state machine, the state diagram seen in Figure 9.14 is generated.

Note that the Fetch, Decode and Execute cycle is clearly displayed in the state diagram. The initial reset state is seen on the far left of the state diagram. The Fetch state (highlighted) jumps to Decode. Decode then jumps to one of several Execute states depending on the instruction opcode. After execution of the instruction is complete, all of the various execute states jump back to Fetch. The state table displayed below the state diagram. Click on the encoding tab at the very bottom to see how the different states are encoded in hardware.

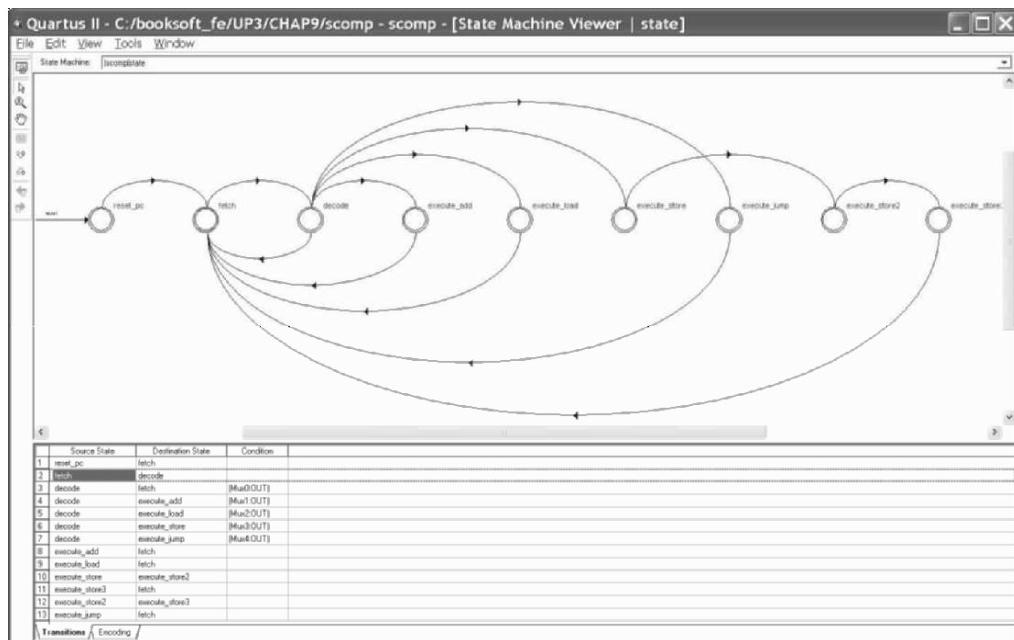


Figure 9.14 Automatically generated state diagram of the µP3 model.

9.6 Simulation of the μ P3 Computer

A simulation output from the VHDL model is seen in Figure 9.15. After a reset, the test program seen in Figure 9.13, loads, adds, and stores a data value to compute $A = B + C$. The final value is then loaded again to demonstrate that the memory contains the correct value for A. The program then ends with a jump instruction that jumps back to its own address producing an infinite loop. After running the program, FF is stored in location 12. Memory can be examined in the Simulator after running a program by clicking on the Logical Memories section in the left column of the Simulation Report. An example is shown in Figure 9.16. Note that the clock period is set to 20ns for simulation.

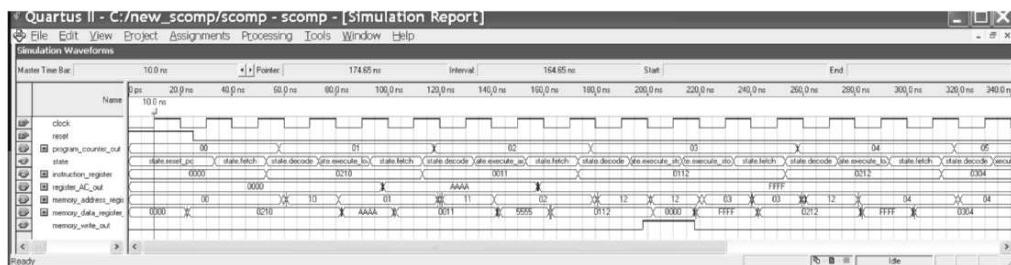


Figure 9.15 Simulation of the Simple µP 3 Computer Program.

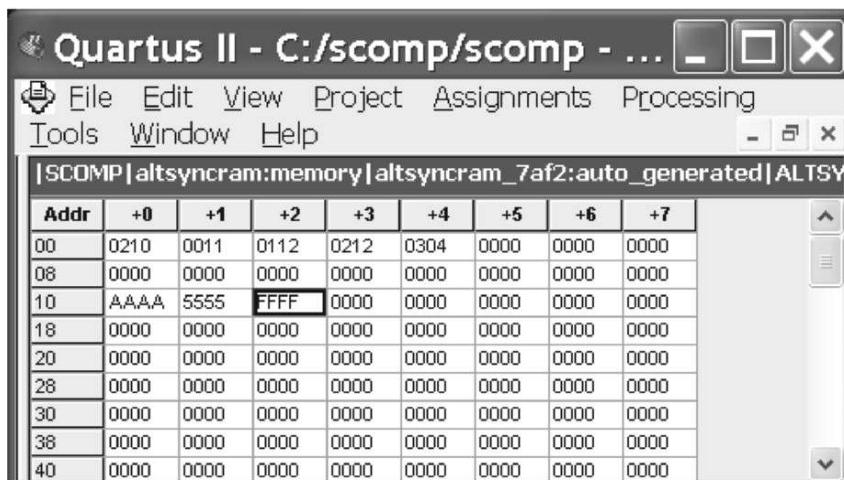


Figure 9.16 Simulation display of μP 3 Computer Memory showing result stored in memory

9.7 Laboratory Exercises

1. Compile and simulate the μ P 3 computer VHDL or Verilog model. Rewrite the machine language program in the program.mif file to compute $A = (B + C) + D$. Store D in location 13 in memory. End the program with a Jump instruction that jumps to itself. Be sure to select the UP3's Cyclone device as the target. Find the maximum clock rate of the μ P 3 computer. Examine the project's compiler report and find the logic cell (LC) percentage utilized.
2. Add the JNEG execute state to the CASE statement in the model. JNEG is Jump if $AC < 0$. If $A \geq 0$ the next sequential instruction is executed. In most cases, a new instruction will just require a new execute state in the decode CASE statement. Use the opcode value of 04 for JNEG. Test the new instruction with the following test program that implements the operation, IF $A \geq 0$ THEN $B = C$

Assembly Language	Machine Language	Memory Address
LOAD A	0210	00
JNEG End_of_If	0404	01
LOAD C	0212	02
STORE B	0111	03
End_of_If: JMP End_of_If	0304	04

End_of_If is an example of a label; it is a symbolic representation for a location in the program. Labels are used in assembly language to mark locations in a program. The last line that starts out with End_of_If: is the address used for the End_of_If symbol in the Jump instruction address field. Assuming the program starts at address 00, the value of the End_of_If label will be 04. Test the JNEG instruction for both cases $A < 0$ and $A \geq 0$. Place nonzero values in the *.mif file for B and C so that you can verify the program executes correctly.

3. Add the instructions in the table below to the VHDL model, construct a test program for each instruction, compile and simulate to verify correct operation. In JPOS and JZERO instructions, both cases must be tested.

Instruction	Function	Opcode
SUBT address	$AC = AC - MDR$	05
XOR address	$AC = AC \text{ XOR } MDR$	06
OR address	$AC = AC \text{ OR } MDR$	07
AND address	$AC = AC \text{ AND } MDR$	08
JPOS address	IF $AC > 0$ THEN $PC = \text{address}$	09
JZERO address	IF $AC = 0$ THEN $PC = \text{address}$	0A
ADDI address	$AC = AC + \text{address}$	0B

In the logical XOR instruction each bit is exclusive OR'ed with the corresponding bit in each operation for a total of sixteen independent exclusive OR operations. This is called a bitwise logical operation. OR and AND are also bitwise logical operations. The add-immediate instruction, ADDI, sign extends the 8-bit address field value to 16 bits. To sign extend, copy the sign bit to all eight high bits. This allows the use of both positive and negative two's complement numbers for the 8-bit immediate value stored in the instruction.

4. Add the following two shift instructions to the simple computer model and verify with a test program and simulation.

Instruction	Function	Opcode
SHL address	AC = AC shifted left <i>address</i> bits	0C
SHR address	AC = AC shifted right <i>address</i> bits	0D

The function LPM_CLSHIFT is useful to implement multiple bit shifts. SHL and SHR can also be used if 1993 VHDL features are enabled in the compiler. Only the low four bits of the address field contain the shift amount. The other four bits are always zero.

5. Run the µP 3 computer model using one of the FPGA boards. Use a debounced pushbutton for the clock and the other pushbutton for reset. Output the PC in hex to the LCD display or seven segment LEDs. Run a test program on the board and verify the correct value of the PC appears in the LCD display by stepping through the program using the pushbutton.
6. Add these two input/output (I/O) instructions to the µP 3 computer model running on the UP3 board.

Instruction	Function	Opcode
IN i/o address	AC = switch bits (low 4 bits)	0E
OUT i/o address	LCD or 7-Seg LED displays hex value of AC	0F

These instructions modify or use only the low eight bits of AC. Remove the PC display feature from the previous problem, if it was added or for more of a challenge place the AC value on the second line of the hex display by modifying the LCD display code. Test the new I/O instructions by writing a program that reads in the switches, adds one to the switch value, and outputs this value to the LED display. Repeat the input, add, and output operation in an infinite loop by jumping back to the start of the program. Add a new register, register_output, to the input of the seven-segment decoder that drives the LED display or use the LCD display. The register is loaded with the value of AC only when an OUT instruction is executed. Compile, download, and execute the program on the FPGA board. When several I/O devices are present, they should respond only to their own unique I/O address, just like memory.

7. Use the timing analyzer to determine the maximum clock rate for the μ P 3 computer. Using this value, compute the execution time for the example program in Figure 9.4.
8. Modify the video output display described in Chapter 9 for the MIPS computer example to display the μ P 3's internal registers. While running on the FPGA board, use the pushbuttons for clock and reset as suggested in problem 5.
9. Add video character output and keyboard input to the computer, after studying the material presented in Chapters 9 and 10.
10. Add the WAIT instruction to the simple computer model and verify with a test program and simulation. WAIT *value*, loads and starts an 8-bit ten-millisecond (10^2 second) timer and then waits *value**10 ms before returning to fetch for the next instruction. Use an opcode of 10 for the WAIT instruction.
11. Expand the memory address space of the μ P 3 computer from eight bits to nine bits. Some registers will also need an additional bit. Use 512 locations of 16-bit memory. Expand the address field by 1-bit by reducing the size of the opcode field by 1-bit. This will limit the number of different instructions to 128 but the maximum program size can now increase from 256 locations to 512 locations.
12. Modify the μ P 3 computer so that it uses two different memories. Use one memory for instructions and a new memory for data values. The new data memory should be 256 or 512 (see previous problem) locations of 16-bit data.
13. Add a subroutine CALL and RETURN instruction to the μ P 3 computer design. Use a dedicated register to store the return address or use a stack with a stack pointer register. The stack should start at high addresses and as it grows move to lower addresses.
14. Implement a stack as suggested in the previous problem and add instructions to PUSH or POP register AC from the stack. At reset, set the stack pointer to the highest address of data memory.
15. Add all of the instructions and features suggested in the exercises to the μ P 3 computer and use it as a microcontroller core for one of the robot projects suggested in Chapter 12. Additional instructions of your own design along with an interval timer that can be read using the IN instruction may also be useful.
16. Using the two low-bits from the opcode field, add a register address field that selects one of four different data registers A, B, C, or D for each instruction.
17. Use the implementation approach in the μ P 3 computer model as a starting point to implement the basic instruction set of a different computer from your digital logic textbook or other reference manual.

CHAPTER 10

VGA Video Display Generation using FPGAs

MIPS	COMPUTER
PC	00000008
INST	00430820
REG1	00000055
REG2	000000AA
ALU	000000FF
W.B.	000000FF
BRAH	0
ZERO	0
MEMR	0
MEMW	0
CLK	+
RST	+

The video image above was produced by an FPGA board design.

10 VGA Video Display Generation using FPGAs

To understand how it is possible to generate a video image using an FPGA board, it is first necessary to understand the various components of a video signal. A VGA video signal contains 5 active signals. Two signals compatible with TTL logic levels, horizontal sync and vertical sync, are used for synchronization of the video. Three analog signals with 0.7 to 1.0-Volt peak-to-peak levels are used to control the color. The color signals are Red, Green, and Blue. They are often collectively referred to as the RGB signals. By changing the analog levels of the three RGB signals all other colors are produced.

10.1 Video Display Technology

The first technology used to display video images dictated the nature of the video signals. Even though LCD monitors are now in common use, the major component inside early VGA computer monitors was the color CRT or Cathode Ray Tube shown in Figure 10.1. The electron beam must be scanned over the viewing screen in a sequence of horizontal lines to generate an image. The deflection yoke uses magnetic or electrostatic fields to deflect the electron beam to the appropriate position on the face of the CRT. The RGB color information in the video signal is used to control the strength of the electron beam. Light is generated when the beam is turned on by a video signal and it strikes a color phosphor dot or line on the face of the CRT. The face of a color CRT contains a series of rows with three different phosphors. One type of phosphor is used for each of the primary colors of red, green, and blue.

In standard VGA format, as seen in Figure 10.2, the screen contains 640 by 480 picture elements or pixels. The video signal must redraw the entire screen 60 times per second to provide for motion in the image and to reduce flicker. This period is called the refresh rate. The human eye can detect flicker at refresh rates less than 30 to 60Hz.

To reduce flicker from interference from fluorescent lighting sources, refresh rates higher than 60 Hz at around 70Hz are sometimes used in PC monitors. The color of each pixel is determined by the value of the RGB signals when the signal scans across each pixel. In 640 by 480-pixel mode, with a 60Hz refresh rate, this is approximately 40 ns per pixel. A 25MHz clock has a period of 40 ns. A slightly higher clock rate will produce a higher refresh rate.

10.2 Video Refresh

The screen refresh process seen in Figure 10.2 begins in the top left corner and paints 1 pixel at a time from left to right. At the end of the first row, the row increments and the column address is reset to the first column. Each row is painted until all pixels have been displayed. Once the entire screen has been painted, the refresh process begins again.

The video signal paints or refreshes the image using the following process. The vertical sync signal, as shown in Figure 10.3 tells the monitor to start displaying a new image or frame, and the monitor starts in the upper left corner

with pixel 0,0. The horizontal sync signal, as shown in Figure 10.4, tells the monitor to refresh another row of 640 pixels.

After 480 rows of pixels are refreshed with 480 horizontal sync signals, a vertical sync signal resets the monitor to the upper left corner and the process continues. During the time when pixel data is not being displayed and the beam is returning to the left column to start another horizontal scan, the RGB signals should all be set to the color black (all zeros).

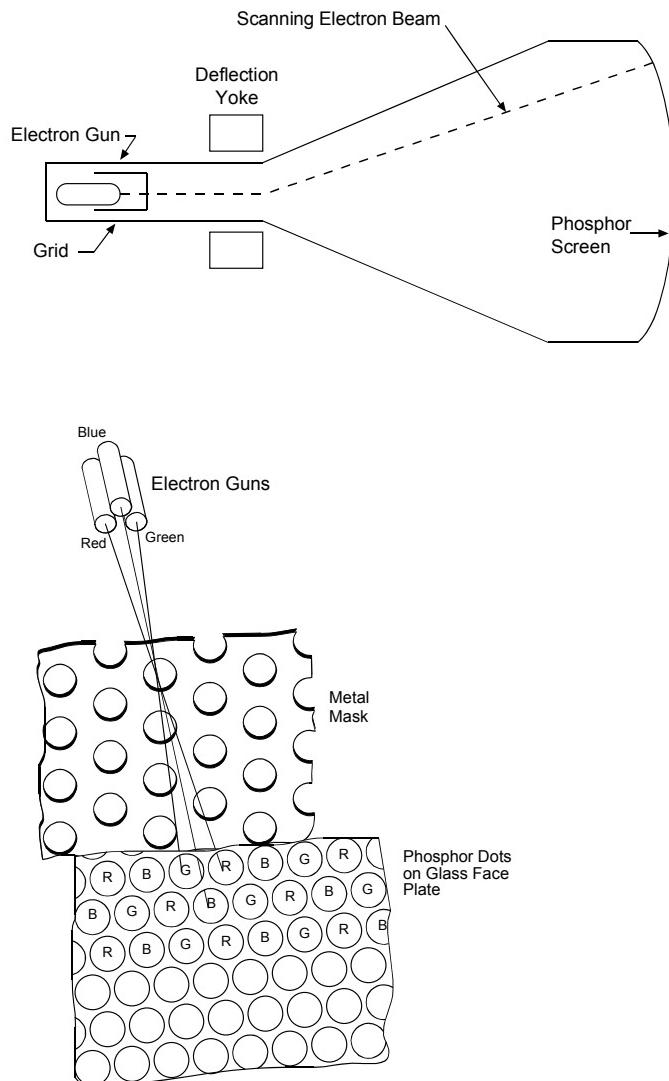


Figure 10.1 Color CRT and Phosphor Dots on Face of Display.

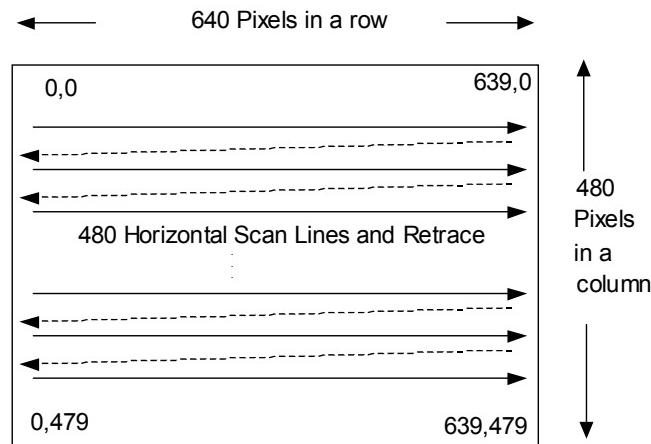


Figure 10.2 VGA Image - 640 by 480 Pixel Layout.

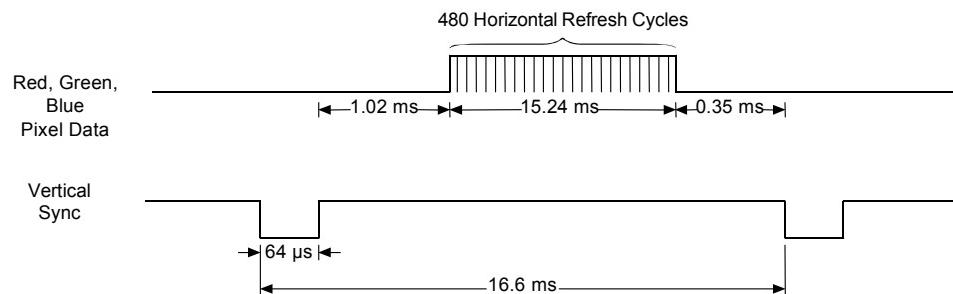


Figure 10.3 Vertical Sync Signal Timing for 640 by 480 at 60Hz.

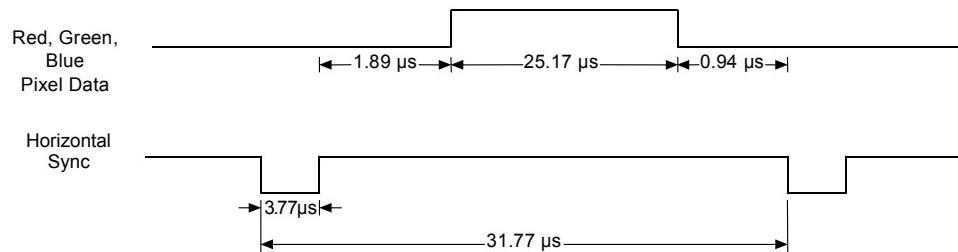


Figure 10.4 Horizontal Sync Signal Timing for 640 by 480 at 60Hz.

Many VGA monitors will shut down if the two sync signals are not the correct values. Most PC monitors have an LED that is green when it detects valid sync signals and yellow when it does not lock in with the sync signals. Modern monitors will sync up to an almost continuous range of refresh rates up to their design maximum. In a PC graphics card, a dedicated video memory location is used to store the color value of every pixel in the display. This memory is read out as the beam scans across the screen to produce the RGB signals. There is not enough memory inside current generation FPGA chips for this approach, so other techniques will be developed which require less memory.

10.3 Using an FPGA for VGA Video Signal Generation

To provide interesting output options in complex designs, video output can be developed using hardware inside the FPGA. Only five signals or pins are required, two sync signals and three RGB color signals. A simple resistor and diode circuit is used to convert TTL output pin signals from the FPGA to the low voltage analog RGB signals for the video signal. This supports two levels for each signal in the RGB data and thus produces a total of eight colors. This circuit and a VGA connector for a monitor are already installed on the Altera UP3 board. The FPGA's Phase Locked Loop (PLL) can be used to generate clocks for a wide variety of video resolutions and refresh rates.

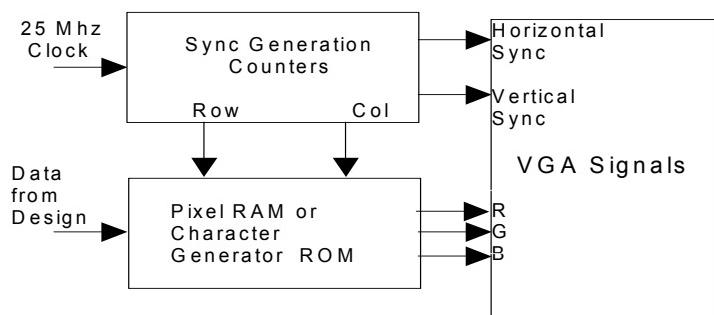
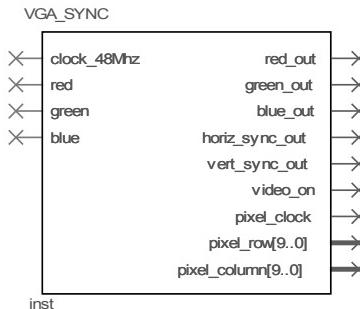


Figure 10.5 FPGA based generation of VGA Video Signals.

As seen in Figure 10.5, a 25.175 MHz clock, which is the 640 by 480 VGA pixel data rate of approximately 40ns is used to drive counters that generate the horizontal and vertical sync signals. Additional counters generate row and column addresses. In some designs, pixel resolution will be reduced from 640 by 480 to a lower resolution by using a clock divide operation on the row and column counters. The row and column addresses feed into a pixel RAM for graphics data or a character generator ROM when used to display text. The required RAM or ROM is also implemented inside the FPGA chip.

10.4 A VHDL Sync Generation Example: FPGACore VGA_SYNC



The FPGACore function, VGA_SYNC is used to generate the timing signals needed for a VGA video display. Although VGA_SYNC is written in VHDL, like the other FPGACore functions it can be used as a symbol in a design created with any entry method.

The following VHDL code generates the horizontal and vertical sync signals, by using 10-bit counters, H_count for the horizontal count and V_count for the vertical count. H_count and V_count generate a pixel row and column address that is output and available for use by other processes. User logic uses these signals to determine the x and y coordinates of the present video location. The pixel address is used in generating the image's RGB color data. On all boards except the UP2 and UP1, the internal logic uses a 25 MHz clock generated by a PLL in the design file *Video_PLL.vhd*. Counters are used to produce video sync timing signals like those seen in figures 10.3 and 10.4. This process is used in all of the video examples that follow.

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;

ENTITY VGA_SYNC IS
    PORT( clock_25MHz, red, green, blue : IN STD_LOGIC;
          red_out, green_out, blue_out : OUT STD_LOGIC;
          horiz_sync_out, vert_sync_out : OUT STD_LOGIC;
          pixel_row, pixel_column : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 ));
END VGA_SYNC;

ARCHITECTURE a OF VGA_SYNC IS
    SIGNAL horiz_sync, vert_sync : STD_LOGIC;
    SIGNAL video_on, video_on_v, video_on_h : STD_LOGIC;
    SIGNAL h_count, v_count : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 );

BEGIN
    -- video_on is High only when RGB data is displayed
    video_on <= video_on_H AND video_on_V;

```

```

PROCESS
BEGIN
WAIT UNTIL( clock_25MHz'EVENT ) AND ( clock_25MHz = '1' );

      --Generate Horizontal and Vertical Timing Signals for Video Signal
      -- H_count counts pixels (640 + extra time for sync signals)
      --
      -- Horiz_sync -----
      -- H_count    0           640           659   755   799
      --
IF ( h_count = 799 ) THEN
      h_count <= "0000000000";
ELSE
      h_count <= h_count + 1;
END IF;

      --Generate Horizontal Sync Signal using H_count
IF ( h_count <= 755 ) AND ( h_count => 659 ) THEN
      horiz_sync <= '0';
ELSE
      horiz_sync <= '1';
END IF;
      --V_count counts rows of pixels (480 + extra time for sync signals)
      --
      -- Vert_sync -----
      -- V_count    0           480           493-494   524
      --
IF ( v_count >= 524 ) AND ( h_count => 699 ) THEN
      v_count <= "0000000000";
ELSIF ( h_count = 699 ) THEN
      v_count <= v_count + 1;
END IF;
      -- Generate Vertical Sync Signal using V_count
IF ( v_count <= 494 ) AND ( v_count = >493 ) THEN
      vert_sync <= '0';
ELSE
      vert_sync <= '1';
END IF;
      -- Generate Video on Screen Signals for Pixel Data
IF ( h_count <= 639 ) THEN
      video_on_h <= '1';
      pixel_column <= h_count;
ELSE
      video_on_h <= '0';
END IF;

IF ( v_count <= 479 ) THEN
      video_on_v <= '1';
      pixel_row <= v_count;
ELSE
      video_on_v <= '0';

```

```

END IF;

        -- Put all video signals through DFFs to eliminate
        -- any delays that can cause a blurry image
        -- Turn off RGB outputs when outside video display area

red_out      <= red AND video_on;
green_out    <= green AND video_on;
blue_out     <= blue AND video_on;
horiz_sync_out <= horiz_sync;
vert_sync_out  <= vert_sync;

END PROCESS;
END a;

```

To turn off RGB data when the pixels are not being displayed the video_on signals are generated. Video_on is gated with the RGB inputs to produce the RGB outputs. Video_on is low during the time that the beam is resetting to the start of a new line or screen. They are used in the logic for the final RGB outputs to force them to the zero state. VGA_SYNC also puts the all of video outputs through a final register to eliminate any timing differences in the video outputs. VGA_SYNC outputs the pixel row and column address. See the comments at the end of VGA_SYNC.VHD for information on setting up other screen resolutions and refresh rates.

10.5 Final Output Register for Video Signals

The final video output for the RGB and sync signals in any design should be directly from a flip-flop output. Even a small time delay of a few nanoseconds from the logic that generates the RGB color signals will cause a blurry video image. Since the RGB signals must be delayed a pixel clock period to eliminate any possible timing delays, the sync signals must also be delayed by clocking them through a D flip-flop. If the outputs all come directly from a flip-flop output, the video signals will all change at the same time and a sharper video image is produced. The last few lines of VHDL code in the FPGACore VGA_SYNC design generate this final output register.

10.6 Required Pin Assignments for Video Output

The FPGA board requires the chip pins as seen in Table 10.1 to be defined in the project's *.qsf file, or elsewhere in your design in order to display the video signals. These pins are hard wired on the FPGA board to the VGA connector and cannot be changed.

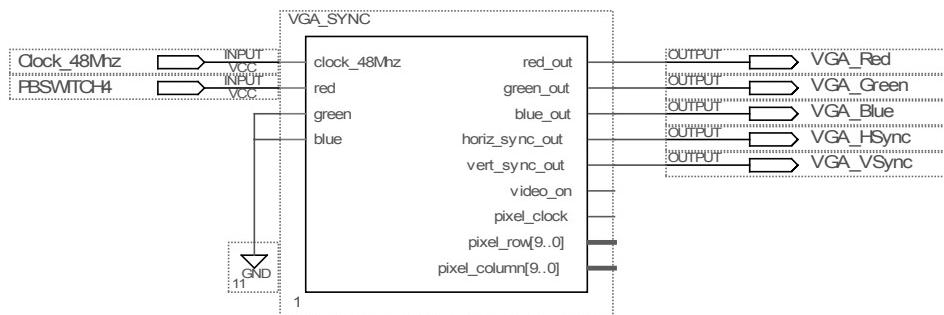
A pixel clock is also needed at the appropriate rate for the screen resolution and refresh rate. A PLL is used to generate this clock on the FPGA. The FPGA's external crystal controlled clock is used as input for the PLL on all boards except the UP2 and UP1 (no PLL on these boards). On the UP3, set jumper JP3 to short pins 3-4 for the 48Mhz clock. A table of the common screen resolutions and refresh rates with the required pixel clocks and sync counter values can be found at the end of the VGA_SYNC IP core code.

Table 10.1 The VGA Video Display Pin Assignments

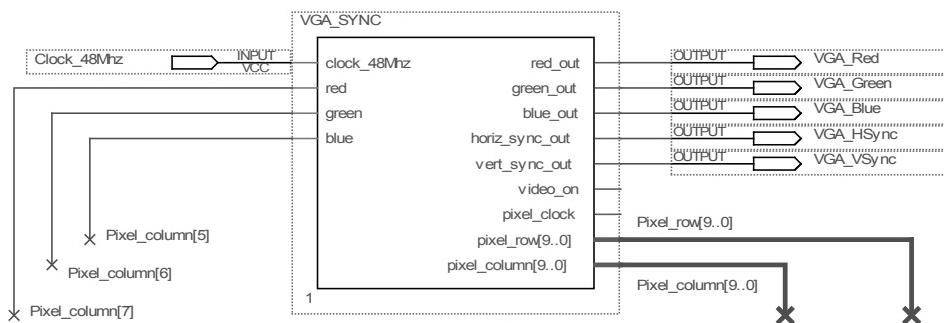
Pin Name	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2, UP1	Pin Type	Function of Pin
CLOCK	L1 50Mhz	N2 50Mhz	153 48Mhz	91 25Mhz	Input	25-50MHz Clock
VGA_RED	B7	E10	228	236	Output	VGA Red Video Signal (highest bit on DE1/2)
VGA_GREEN	A8	D12	122	237	Output	VGA Green Video Signal (highest bit on DE1/2)
VGA_BLUE	B10	B12	170	238	Output	VGA Blue Video Signal (highest bit on DE1/2)
VGA_VSYNC	B11	D8	226	239	Output	VGA Connector Vertical Sync Signal
VGA_HSYNC	A11	A7	227	240	Output	VGA Connector Horizontal Sync Signal

10.7 Video Examples

For a simple video example with the VGA_SYNC function, the following schematic produces a video simulation of a red LED. When the PB1 pushbutton is hit, the color of the entire video screen will change from black to red. The VGA_LED project setup is seen below:



VGA_SYNC outputs the pixel row and column address. Pixel_row and Pixel_column are normally inputs to user logic that in turn generates the RGB color data. Here is a simple example that uses the pixel_column output to generate the RGB inputs. Bits 7, 6, and 5 of the pixel_column count are connected to the RGB data. Since bits 4 through 0 of pixel column are not connected, RGB color data will only change once every 32 pixels across the screen. This in turn generates a sequence of color bars in the video output. The color bars display the eight different colors that can be generated by the three digital RGB outputs in the VGA_BAR project.



10.8 A Character Based Video Design

One option is a video display that contains mainly textual data. For this approach, a pixel pattern or font is needed to display each different character. The character font can be stored in a ROM implemented inside the FPGA. A memory initialization file, *.mif, can be used to initialize the ROM contents during download. Given the memory limitations inside many FPGAs, one option that fits is a display of 40 characters by 30 lines.

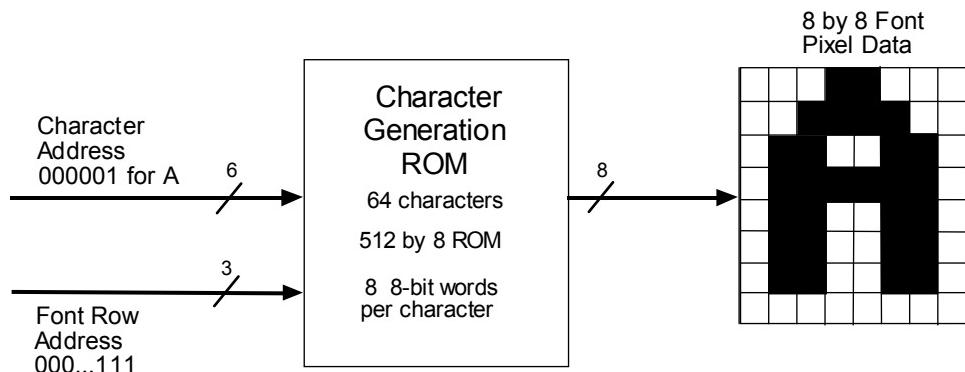
Each letter, number, or symbol is a pixel image from the 8 by 8 character font. To make the characters larger, each dot in the font maps to a 2 by 2 pixel block so that a single character requires 16 by 16 pixels. This was done by dividing the row and column counters by 2. Recall that in binary, division by powers of two can be accomplished by truncating the lower bits, so no hardware is needed for this step. The row and column counters provide inputs to circuits that address the character font ROM and determine the color of each pixel. The clock used is the onboard 25.175MHz clock and other timing signals needed are obtained by dividing this clock down in hardware.

10.9 Character Selection and Fonts

Because the screen is constantly being refreshed and the video image is being generated on-the-fly as the beam moves across the video display, it is necessary to use other registers, ROM, or RAM inside the FPGA to hold and select the characters to be displayed on the screen. Each location in this character ROM or RAM contains only the starting address of the character font in font ROM. Using two levels of memory results in a design that is more compact and uses far less memory bits. This technique was used on early generation computers before the PC.

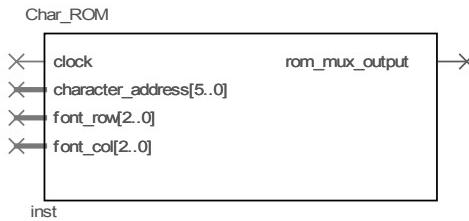
Here is an example implementation of a character font used in the FPGACore function, char_ROM. To display an "A" the character ROM would contain only the starting address 000001 for the font table for "A". The 8 by 8 font in the character generation ROM would generate the letter "A" using the following eight memory words:

<u>Address</u>	<u>Font Data</u>
000001000 :	00011000 ;
000001001 :	00111100 ;
000001010 :	01100110 ;
000001011 :	01111110 ;
000001100 :	01100110 ;
000001101 :	01100110 ;
000001110 :	01100110 ;
000001111 :	00000000 ;

Figure 10.6 Font Memory Data for the Character "A".**Figure 10.7** Accessing a Character Font Using a ROM.

The column counters are used to select each font bit from left to right in each word of font memory as the video signal moves across a row. This value is used to drive the logic for the RGB signals so that a "0" font bit has a different color from a "1". Using the low three character font row address bits, the row counter would select the next memory location from the character font ROM when the display moves to the next row.

A 3-bit font column address can be used with a multiplexer to select the appropriate bit from the ROM output word to drive the RGB pixel color data. Both the character font ROM and the multiplexer are contained in the FPGACore char_ROM as shown below. The VHDL code declares the memory size using the LPM_ROM function and the tcgrom.mif file contains the initial values or font data for the ROM.



```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;
LIBRARY lpm;
USE lpm.lpm_components.ALL;

ENTITY Char_ROM IS
  PORT(
    character_address : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 5 DOWNTO 0 );
    font_row, font_col : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 2 DOWNTO 0 );
    rom_mux_output : OUT STD_LOGIC);
END Char_ROM;

ARCHITECTURE a OF Char_ROM IS
  SIGNAL rom_data : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
  SIGNAL rom_address : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 8 DOWNTO 0 );
BEGIN
  -- Small 8 by 8 Character Generator ROM for Video Display
  -- Each character is 8 8-bit words of pixel data
  char_gen_rom: lpm_rom
  GENERIC MAP (
    lpm_widthad => 9,
    lpm_numwords => 512,
    lpm_outdata => "UNREGISTERED",
    lpm_address_control => "UNREGISTERED",
    -- Reads in mif file for character generator font data
    lpm_file => "tcgrom.mif",
    lpm_width => 8)
  PORT MAP ( address => rom_address, q = > rom_data);
  rom_address <= character_address & font_row;
  -- Mux to pick off correct rom data bit from 8-bit word
  -- for on screen character generation
  rom_mux_output <= rom_data (
    (CONV_INTEGER( NOT font_col( 2 DOWNTO 0 ))));
END a;
  
```

Table 10.2 Character Address Map for 8 by 8 Font ROM.

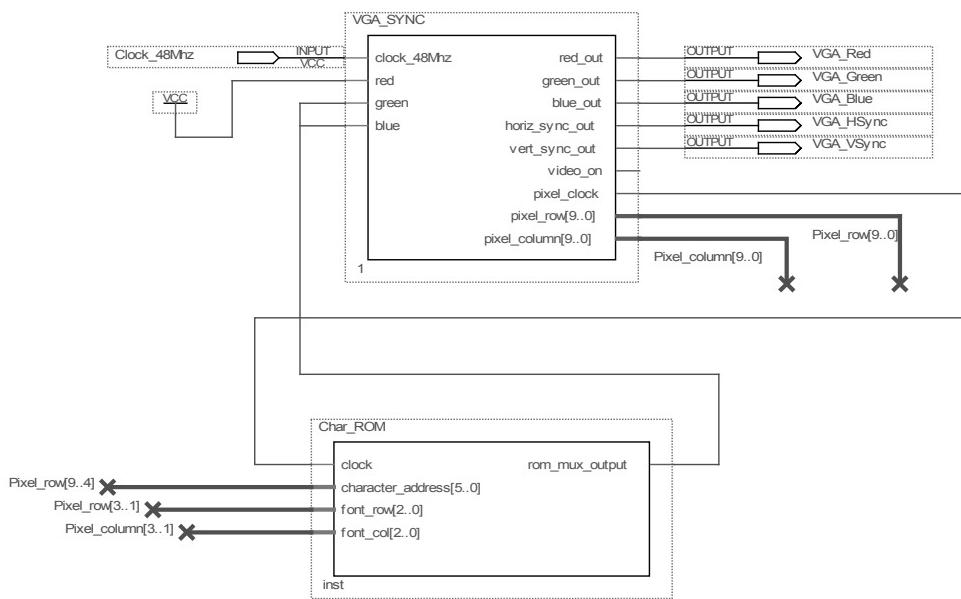
CHAR	ADDRESS	CHAR	ADDRESS	CHAR	ADDRESS	CHAR	ADDRESS
@	00	P	20	Space	40	0	60
A	01	Q	21	!	41	1	61
B	02	R	22	"	42	2	62
C	03	S	23	#	43	3	63
D	04	T	24	\$	44	4	64
E	05	U	25	%	45	5	65
F	06	V	26	&	46	6	66
G	07	W	27	'	47	7	67
H	10	X	30	(	50	8	70
I	11	Y	31	)	51	9	71
J	12	Z	32	*	52	A	72
K	13	[	33	+	53	B	73
L	14	Dn Arrow	34	,	54	C	74
M	15	]	35	-	55	D	75
N	16	Up Arrow	36	.	56	E	76
O	17	Lft Arrow	37	/	57	F	77

A 16 by 16 pixel area is used to display a single character with the character font. As the display moves to another character outside of the 16 by 16 pixel area, a different location is selected in the character RAM using the high bits of the row and column counters. This in turn selects another location in the character font ROM to display another character.

Due to limited ROM space, only the capital letters, numbers and some symbols are provided. Table 10.2 shows the alphanumeric characters followed by the high six bits of its octal character address in the font ROM. For example, a space is represented by octal code 40. The repeated letters A-F were used to simplify the conversion and display of hexadecimal values.

10.10 VHDL Character Display Design Examples

The FPGACores VGA_SYNC and CHAR_ROM are designed to be used together to generate a text display. CHAR_ROM contains an 8 by 8 pixel character font. In the following schematic, a test pattern with 40 characters across with 30 lines down is displayed in the VGA_CHARACTER project. Examining the RGB inputs on the VGA_SYNC core you can see that characters will be white (111 = RGB) with a red (100 = RGB) background. Each character uses a 16 by 16 pixel area in the 640 by 480 display area. Since the low bit in the pixel row and column address is skipped in the font row and font column ROM inputs, each data bit from the font is displayed in a 2 by 2 pixel area. Since pixel row bits 9 to 4 are used for the character address a new character will be displayed every 16th pixel row or character line. Division by 16 occurs without any logic since the low four bits are not connected.



Normally, more complex user designed logic is used to generate the character address. The video example shown in Figure 10.8 is an implementation of the MIPS RISC processor core. The values of major busses are displayed in hexadecimal and it is possible to single step through instructions and watch the values on the video display. This example includes both constant and variable character display areas. The video setup is the same as the schematic, but additional logic is used to generate the character address.

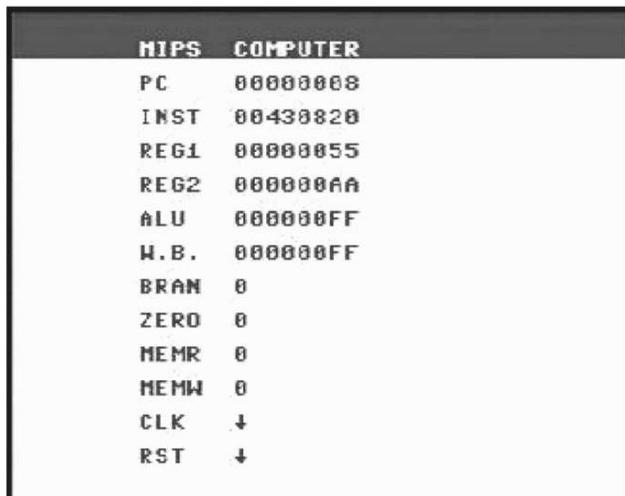


Figure 10.8 MIPS Computer Video Output.

Pixel row address and column address counters are used to determine the current character column and line position on the screen. They are generated as the image scans across the screen with the VGA_SYNC core by using the high six bits of the pixel row and pixel column outputs. Each character is a 16 by 16 block of pixels. The divide by 16 operation just requires truncation of the low four bits of the pixel row and column. The display area is 40 characters by 30 lines.

Constant character data for titles in the left column is stored in a small ROM called the character format ROM. This section of code sets up the format ROM that contains the character addresses for the constant character data in the left column of the video image for the display.

```
-- Character Format ROM for Video Display
-- Displays constant format character data
-- on left side of Display area

format_rom: lpm_rom
GENERIC MAP (
    lpm_widthad      => 6,
    lpm_numwords     =>60,
    lpm_outdata      => "UNREGISTERED",
    lpm_address_control => "UNREGISTERED",
                           -- Reads in mif file for data display titles
    lpm_file         =>"format.mif",
    lpm_width        => 6)
```

Each pixel clock cycle, a process containing a series of nested CASE statements is used to select the character to display as the image scans across the screen. The CASE statements check the row and column counter outputs from the sync unit to determine the exact character column and character line that is currently being displayed. The CASE statements then output the character address for the desired character to the char_ROM FPGACore.

Table 10.1 lists the address of each character in the font ROM. Alphabetic characters start at octal location 01 and numbers start at octal location 60. Octal location 40 contains a space that is used whenever no character is displayed. When the display is in the left column, data from the format_ROM is used. Any unused character display areas must select the space character that has blank or all zero font data.

Hexadecimal variables in the right column in Figure 10.8 are generated by using 4-bit data values from the design to index into the character font ROM. As an example, the value "11" & PC(7 DOWNTO 4), when used as the character address to the FPGACore, char_ROM, will map into the character font for 0..9 and A..F. The actual hex character selected is based on the current value of the 4 bits in the VHDL signal, PC. As seen in the last column of Table 10.1, the letters, A..F, appear again after decimal numbers in the font ROM to simplify this hexadecimal mapping conversion.

10.11 A Graphics Memory Design Example

For another example, assume the display will be used to display only graphics data. The Cyclone EP1C6 FPGA contains 92K bits of memory. If only two colors are used in the RGB signals, one bit will be required for each pixel in the video RAM. If a 300 by 300 pixel video RAM was implemented in the Cyclone chip it would use all of the chip's 92K-bit memory. For full color RGB data of three bits per pixel, a 175 by 175 pixel RAM would use all of the 92K on-chip memory and no memory would be left for the remainder of the design.

Pixel memory must always be in read mode whenever RGB data is displayed. To avoid flicker and memory access conflicts on single port memory, designs should update pixel RAM and other signals that produce the RGB output, during the time the RGB data is not being displayed.

When the scan of each horizontal line is complete there are typically over 100 clock cycles before the next RGB value is needed, as seen in Figure 10.9. Additional clocks are available when a vertical sync signal resets the monitor to the first display line. The exact number of clocks available depends on the video resolution and refresh rate.

In most cases, calculations that change the video image should be performed during this off-screen period of time to avoid memory conflicts with the readout of video RAM or other registers which are used to produce the RGB video pixel color signals. Since on-chip pixel memory is limited, complex graphic designs with higher resolutions will require another approach.

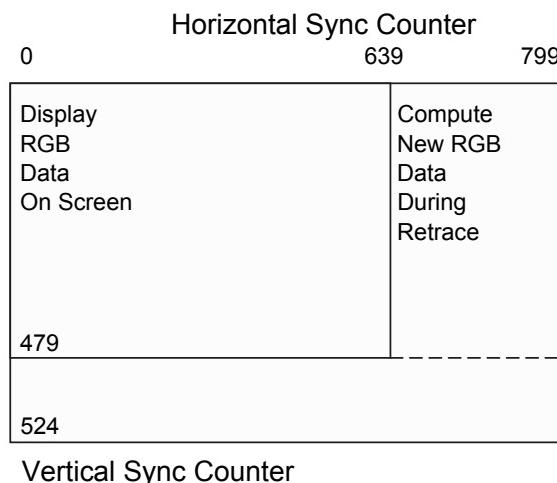


Figure 10.9 Display and Compute clock cycles available in a single 640 by 480 Video Frame.

10.12 Video Data Compression

Here are some ideas to save memory and produce more complex graphics. Compress the video pixel data in memory and uncompress it on-the-fly as the video signal is generated. One compression technique that works well is run length encoding (RLE). The RLE compression technique only requires a simple state machine and a counter for decoding.

In RLE, the pixels in the display are encoded into a sequence of length and color fields. The length field specifies the number of sequentially scanned pixels with the same color. In simple color images, substantial data compression can be achieved with RLE and it is used in PCs to encode color bitmaps. Matlab can be used to read bitmaps into a two-dimensional array and then write the output as an RLE encoded version directly to a *.mif file. An example program is available on the DVD. Bitmap file formats and some C utilities to help read bitmaps can be found on the web.

Many early video games, such as Pong, have a background color with a few moving images. In such cases, the background image can be the default color value and not stored in video RAM. Hardware comparators can check the row and column counts as the video signal is generated and detect when another image other than the background should be displayed. When the comparator signals that the row and column count matches the image location, the image's color data instead of the normal background data is switched into the RGB output using gates or a multiplexer.

The image can be made to move if its current row and column location is stored in registers and the output of these registers are used as the comparator input. Additional logic can be used to increment or decrement the image's location registers slowly over time and produce motion. Multiple hardware comparators can be used to support several fixed and moving images. These moving images are also called sprites. This approach was used in early-generation video games.

10.13 Video Color Mixing using Dithering

PC graphics cards use an analog to digital converter to drive the analog RGB color signals. Although the hardware directly supports only eight different pixel colors using digital color signals, there are some techniques that can be used to generate more colors. On analog CRTs, pixels can be overclocked at two to four times the normal rate to turn on and off the 1-bit color signal several times while scanning across a single pixel. The FPGA's PLL is handy to generate the higher frequency clocks need. Along the same lines, adding the final color signal output with the clock signal itself can further reduce the signal's on time to $\frac{1}{2}$ a clock or less. Unfortunately, this technique does not work quite as well on LCD monitors due to the differences in the internal electronics.

The screen is refreshed at 60Hz, but flicker is almost undetected by the human eye at 30Hz. So, in odd refresh scans one pixel color is used and in even refresh scans another pixel color is used. This 30Hz color mixing or dithering technique works best if large areas have both colors arranged in a checkerboard pattern. Alternating scans use the inverse checkerboard colors. At 30Hz, the eye

can detect color intensity flicker in large regions unless the alternating checkerboard pattern is used.

10.14 VHDL Graphics Display Design Example

This simple graphics example will generate a ball that bounces up and down on the screen. As seen in Figure 10.10, in the VGA_BALL project the ball is red and the background is white. This example requires the VGA_SYNC design from Section 10.4 to generate the video sync and the pixel address signals. The pixel_row signal is used to determine the current row and the pixel_column signal determines the current column. Using the current row and column addresses, the process Display_Ball generates the red ball on the white background and produces the ball_on signal which displays the red ball using the logic in the red, green, and blue equations.

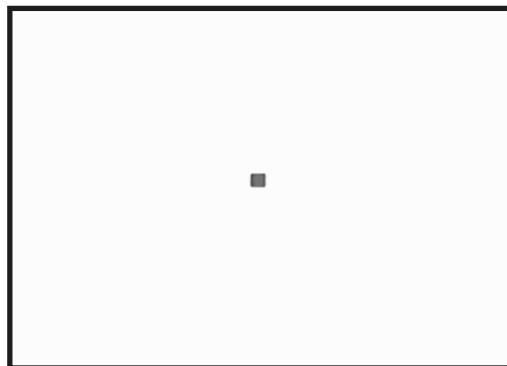


Figure 10.10 Bouncing Ball Video Output.

Ball_X_pos and Ball_y_pos are the current address of the center of the ball. Size is the size of the square ball.

The process Move_Ball moves the ball a few pixels every vertical sync and checks for bounces off of the walls. Ball_motion is the number of pixels to move the ball at each vertical sync clock. The VGA_SYNC core is also used to generate sync signals and pixel addresses, but is not shown in the code below.

```

ENTITY ball IS
  PORT(  

    SIGNAL Red, Green, Blue      : OUT STD_LOGIC;  

    SIGNAL vert_sync_out        : IN STD_LOGIC;  

    SIGNAL pixel_row, pixel_column : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 ));  

  END ball;  

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF ball IS  

  -- Video Display Signals  

  SIGNAL reset, Ball_on, Direction : STD_LOGIC;  

  SIGNAL Size                  : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 );  

  SIGNAL Ball_Y_motion         : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 );  

  SIGNAL Ball_Y_pos, Ball_X_pos : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 );
```

```

BEGIN
    Size      <= CONV_STD_LOGIC_VECTOR(8,10 );
                -- Size of Ball
    Ball_X_pos <= CONV_STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 320,10 );
                -- Ball center X address
    Red       <= '1';
                -- Colors for pixel data on video signal
    Green     <= NOT Ball_on;
                -- Turn off Green and Blue to make
    Blue      <= NOT Ball_on;
                -- color Red when displaying ball

Display_Ball:
PROCESS ( Ball_X_pos, Ball_Y_pos, pixel_column, pixel_row, Size )
BEGIN
                -- check row & column for ball area
                -- Set Ball_on = '1' to display ball
    IF ( '0' & Ball_X_pos <= pixel_column + Size ) AND
        ( Ball_X_pos + Size >= '0' & pixel_column ) AND
        ( '0' & Ball_Y_pos <= pixel_row + Size ) AND
        ( Ball_Y_pos + Size >= '0' & pixel_row ) THEN
        Ball_on <= '1';
    ELSE
        Ball_on <= '0';
    END IF;
END PROCESS Display_Ball;

Move_Ball:
PROCESS
BEGIN
                -- Move ball once every vertical sync
WAIT UNTIL Vert_sync'EVENT AND Vert_sync = '1';
                -- Bounce off top or bottom of screen
    IF ('0' & Ball_Y_pos) >= CONV_STD_LOGIC_VECTOR(480,10) - Size THEN
        Ball_Y_motion <= CONV_STD_LOGIC_VECTOR(-2,10);
    ELSIF Ball_Y_pos <= Size THEN
        Ball_Y_motion <= CONV_STD_LOGIC_VECTOR(2,10);
    END IF;
                -- Compute next ball Y position
    Ball_Y_pos <= Ball_Y_pos + Ball_Y_motion;
END PROCESS Move_Ball;
END behavior;

```

10.15 Higher Video Resolution and Faster Refresh Rates

The Video Sync FPGACore function is designed to support higher resolutions and refresh rates. The UP2 and UP1 boards can only support their Video Sync core's existing 640 by 480 60Hz video mode since it does not have an internal PLL to produce different pixel clocks. Table 10.3 shows several common screen resolutions and refresh rates. To change resolutions or refresh rates two changes are needed. First, change the PLL's video output pixel clock to the new frequency value by editing the Video_PLL.vhd file using the MegaWizard edit feature. Second, the six counter constant values used to generate the horizontal and vertical sync signals in the Video_Sync.vhd core need to be changed to the new six values for the desired resolution and refresh rate found in the large

table at the end of the Video_Sync.vhd file. Keep in mind that higher resolutions will require more pixel memory and smaller hardware delays that can support the faster clock rates needed.

Table 10.3 Pixel clock rates for some common video resolutions and refresh rates.

Mode	Refresh	Hor. Sync	Pixel clock
640x480	60Hz	31.5kHz	25.175MHz
640x480	63Hz	32.8kHz	28.322MHz
640x480	70Hz	36.5kHz	31.5MHz
640x480	72Hz	37.9kHz	31.5MHz
800x600	56Hz	35.1kHz	36.0MHz
800x600	60Hz	37.9kHz	40.0MHz
800x600	72Hz	48.0kHz	50.0MHz
1024x768	60Hz	48.4kHz	65.0MHz
1024x768	70Hz	56.5kHz	75.0MHz
1024x768	70Hz	56.25kHz	72.0MHz
1024x768	76Hz	62.5kHz	85.0MHz
1280x1024	61Hz	64.24kHz	110.0MHz
1280x1024	74Hz	78.85kHz	135.0MHz

10.16 Laboratory Exercises

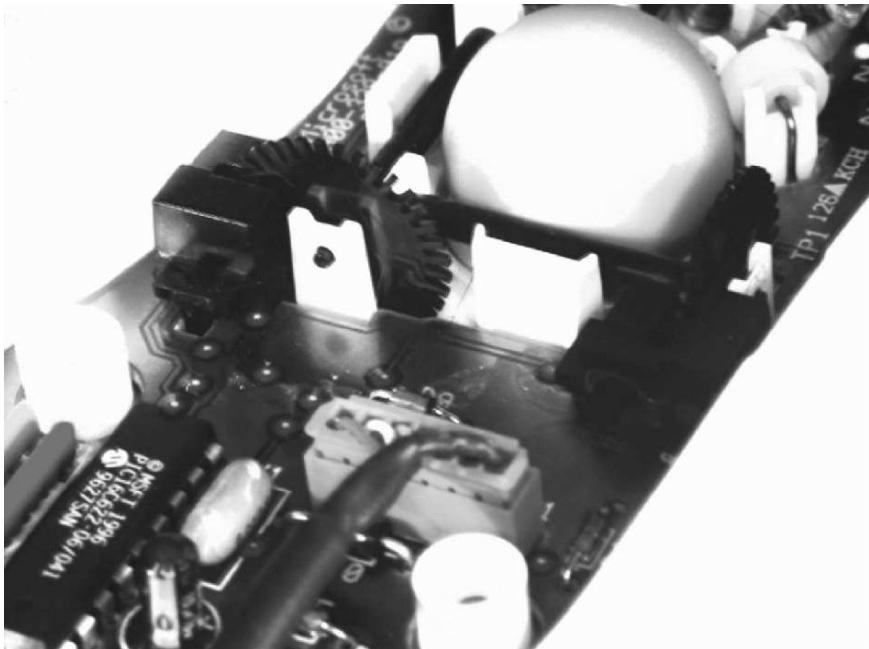
1. Design a video output display that displays a large version of your initials. Hint: use the character generation ROM, the Video Sync FPGACore, and some of the higher bits of the row and column pixel counters to generate larger characters.
2. Modify the bouncing ball example to bounce and move in both the X and Y directions. You will need to add code for motion in two directions and check additional walls for a bounce condition.
3. Modify the bouncing ball example to move up or down based on input from the two pushbuttons.
4. Modify the example to support different speeds. Read the speed of the ball from the FPGA switches.
5. Draw a more detailed ball in the bouncing ball example. Use a small ROM to hold a small detailed color image of a ball.
6. Make a Pong-type video game by using pushbutton input to move a paddle up and down that the ball will bounce off of.
7. Design your own video game with graphics. Some ideas include breakout, space invaders, Tetris, a slot machine, poker, craps, blackjack, pinball, and roulette. Keep the

graphics simple so that the design will fit on the FPGA chip. If the video game needs a random number generator, information on random number generation can be found in Appendix A.

8. Use the character font ROM and the ideas from the MIPS character output example to add video character output to another complex design.
9. Using Matlab or C, write a program to convert a color bitmap into a *.mif file with run-length encoding. Design a state machine to read out the memory and generate the RGB color signals to display the bitmap. Use a reduced resolution pixel size such as 160 by 120. Find a bitmap to display or create one with a paint program. It will work best if the bitmap is already 160 by 120 pixels or smaller. A school mascot or your favorite cartoon character might make an interesting choice. Limited internal memory is available in the FPGA, so a 12-bit RLE format with nine bits for length and three bits for color can be used with up to 7,600 locations on the UP3. Some boards have more slightly more memory as seen in Table 2.1. This means that the bitmap can only have several thousand color changes as the image is scanned across the display. Simple images such as cartoons have fewer color changes. A Matlab example is on the DVD.
10. Add color mixing or dithering with more than 8 colors to the previous problem. The 3-bit color code in the RLE encoded memory can be used to map into a color palette. The color palette contains the RGB patterns used for color mixing or interlacing. On boards that support more than 8 colors directly in hardware, the color palette value can be used directly to drive several of the higher RGB output bits. The color palette memory selects 8 different colors. The program translating the bitmap should select the 8 closest colors for the color palette.
11. Modify the VGA Sync core to support a higher screen resolution and demonstrate it using one of the earlier example video designs.

CHAPTER 11

Interfacing to the PS/2 Keyboard and Mouse



A PS/2 mouse is shown above with the cover removed. The ball (upper right) rolls two plastic X and Y axles with a slotted wheel at one end. The slotted wheel passes through a square slotted case containing an IR emitter and detector pair. When the wheel rotates it generates pulses by interrupting the IR light beam. A microcontroller (lower left) counts the pulses and sends data packets containing mouse movement and button data to the PC.

11 Interfacing to the PS/2 Keyboard and Mouse

The PS/2 interface was originally developed for the IBM PC/AT's mouse and keyboard in 1984. The Altera FPGA boards support the use of either a mouse or keyboard using a PS/2 connector on the board (not both at the same time). This provides only the basic electrical connections from the PS/2 cable and the FPGA chip. It is necessary to design a hardware interface using logic in the FPGA chip to communicate with a keyboard or a mouse. Serial-to-parallel conversion using a shift register is required in the interface hardware.

11.1 PS/2 Port Connections

The PS/2 port consists of 6 pins including ground, power (VDD), keyboard data, and a keyboard clock line. The FPGA board supplies the power to the mouse or keyboard. Two lines are not used. Pins must be specified in one of the design files.

Table 11.1 PS/2 Keyboard Commands and Messages.

Commands Sent to Keyboard	Hex Value
Reset Keyboard Keyboard returns AA, 00 after self-test	FF
Resend Message	FE
Set key typematic (autorepeat) XX is scan code for key	FB, XX
Set key make and break	FC, XX
Set key make	FD, XX
Set all key typematic, make and break	FA
Set all keys make	F9
Set all keys make and break	F8
Make all keys typematic (autorepeat)	F7
Set to Default Values	F6
Clear Buffers and start scanning keys	F4
Set typematic (autorepeat) rate and delay Set typematic (autorepeat) rate and delay Bits 6 and 5 are delay (250ms to 1 sec) Bits 4 to 0 are rate (all 0's-30x/sec to all 1's 2x/sec)	F3, XX
Read Keyboard ID Keyboard sends FA, 83, AB	F2
Set scan code set XX is 01, 02, or 03	F0, XX
Echo	EE
Set Keyboard LEDs XX is 00000 Scroll, Num, and Caps Lock bits 1 is LED on and 0 is LED off	ED, XX

Both the clock and data lines are open collector and bi-directional. The clock line is normally controlled by the keyboard, but it can also be driven by the computer system or in this case the FPGA chip, when it wants to stop data transmissions from the keyboard. Both the keyboard and the system can drive the data line. The data line is the sole source for the data transfer between the

computer and keyboard. The keyboard and the system can exchange several commands and messages as seen in Tables 11.1 and 11.2.

Table 11.2 PS/2 Commands and messages sent by keyboard.

Messages Sent by Keyboard	Hex Value
Resend Message	FE
Two bad messages in a row	FC
Keyboard Acknowledge Command Sent by Keyboard after each command byte	FA
Response to Echo command	EE
Keyboard passed self-test	AA
Keyboard buffer overflow	00

11.2 Keyboard Scan Codes

Keyboards are normally encoded by placing the key switches in a matrix of rows and columns. All rows and columns are periodically checked by the keyboard encoder or "scanned" at a high rate to find any key state changes. Key data is passed serially to the computer from the keyboard using what is known as a scan code. Each keyboard key has a unique scan code based on the key switch matrix row and column address to identify the key pressed.

There are different varieties of scan codes available to use depending on the type of keyboard used. The PS/2 keyboard has two sets of scan codes. The default scan code set is used upon power on unless the computer system sends a command to the keyboard to use an alternate set. The typical PC sends commands to the keyboard on power up and it uses an alternate scan code set. To interface the keyboard to the FPGA board, it is simpler to use the default scan code set since no initialization commands are required.

11.3 Make and Break Codes

The keyboard scan codes consist of 'Make' and 'Break' codes. One make code is sent every time a key is pressed. When a key is released, a break code is sent. For most keys, the break code is a data stream of F0 followed by the make code for the key. Be aware that when typing, it is common to hit the next key(s) before releasing the first key hit.

Using this configuration, the system can tell whether or not the key has been pressed, and if more than one key is being held down, it can also distinguish which key has been released. One example of this is when a shift key is held down. While it is held down, the '3' key should return the value for the '#' symbol instead of the value for the '3' symbol. Also note that if a key is held down, the make code is continuously sent via the typematic rate until it is released, at which time the break code is sent.

11.4 The PS/2 Serial Data Transmission Protocol

The scan codes are sent serially using 11 bits on the bi-directional data line. When neither the keyboard nor the computer needs to send data, the data line and the clock line are High (inactive).

As seen in Figure 11.1, the transmission of a single key or command consists of the following components:

1. A start bit ('0')
2. 8 data bits containing the key scan code in low to high order
3. Odd parity bit such that the eight data bits plus the parity bit are an odd number of ones
4. A stop bit ('1')

The following sequence of events occur during a transmission of a command by the keyboard:

1. The keyboard checks to ensure that both the clock and keyboard lines are inactive. Inactive is indicated by a High state. If both are inactive, the keyboard prepares the 'start' bit by dropping the data line Low.
2. The keyboard then drops the clock line Low for approximately 35us.
3. The keyboard will then clock out the remaining 10 bits at an approximate rate of 70us per clock period. The keyboard drives both the data and clock line.
4. The computer is responsible for recognizing the 'start' bit and for receiving the serial data. The serial data, which is 8 bits, is followed by an odd parity bit and finally a High stop bit. If the keyboard wishes to send more data, it follows the 12th bit immediately with the next 'start' bit.

This pattern repeats until the keyboard is finished sending data at which point the clock and data lines will return to their inactive High state.

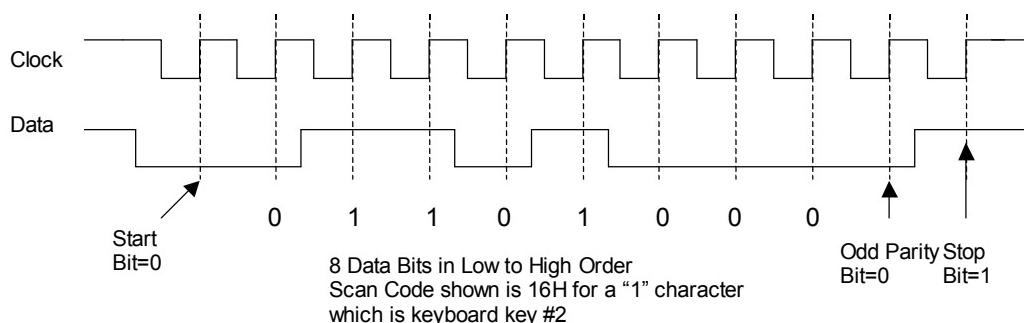


Figure 11.1 Keyboard Transmission of a Scan Code.

In Figure 11.1 the keyboard is sending a scan code of 16 for the "1" key and it has a zero parity bit. When implementing the interface code, it will be necessary to filter the slow keyboard clock to ensure reliable operation with the fast logic inside the FPGA chip. Whenever an electrical pulse is transmitted on a wire, electromagnetic properties of the wire cause the pulse to be distorted and some portions of the pulse may be reflected from the end of the wire. On some PS/2 keyboards and mice there is a reflected pulse on the cable that is strong enough to cause additional phantom clocks to appear on the clock line.

Here is one approach that solves the reflected pulse problem. Feed the PS/2 clock signal into an 8-bit shift register that uses a 24MHz clock. AND the bits of the shift register together and use the output of the AND gate as the new "filtered" clock. This prevents noise and ringing on the clock line from causing occasional extra clocks during the serial-to-parallel conversion in the FPGA chip.

A few keyboards and mice will work without the clock filter and many will not. They all will work with the clock filter, and it is relatively easy to implement. This circuit is included in the FPGACores for the keyboard and the mouse. Pin assignments for the various FPGA boards are seen in Table 11.3

Table 11.3 The PS/2 Keyboard or Mouse Pin Assignments

Pin Name	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2, UP1	Pin Type	Function of Pin
PS2_CLK	H15	D26	12	30	Bidir.	PS2 Connector
PS2_DATA	J14	C24	13	31	Bidir.	PS2 Connector

As seen in Figure 11.2, the computer system or FPGA chip in this case sends commands to the PS/2 keyboard as follows:

1. System drives the clock line Low for approximately 60us to inhibit any new keyboard data transmissions. The clock line is bi-directional.
2. System drives the data line Low and then releases the clock line to signal that it has data for the keyboard.
3. The keyboard will generate clock signals in order to clock out the remaining serial bits in the command.
4. The system will send its 8-bit command followed by a parity bit and a stop bit.
5. After the stop bit is driven High, the data line is released.

Upon completion of each command byte, the keyboard will send an acknowledge (ACK) signal, FA, if it received the data successfully. If the system does not release the data line, the keyboard will continue to generate the clock, and upon completion, it will send a 're-send command' signal, FE or FC, to the system. A parity error or missing stop bit will also generate a re-send command signal.

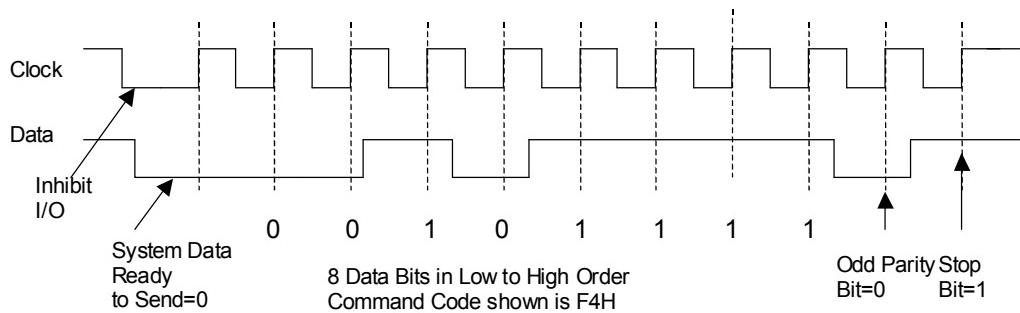


Figure 11.2 System Transmission of a Command to PS/2 Device.

11.5 Scan Code Set 2 for the PS/2 Keyboard

PS/2 keyboards are available in several languages with different characters printed on the keys. A two-step process is required to find the scan code. A key number is used to lookup the scan code. Key numbers needed for the scan code table are shown in Figure 11.3 for the English language keyboard layout.

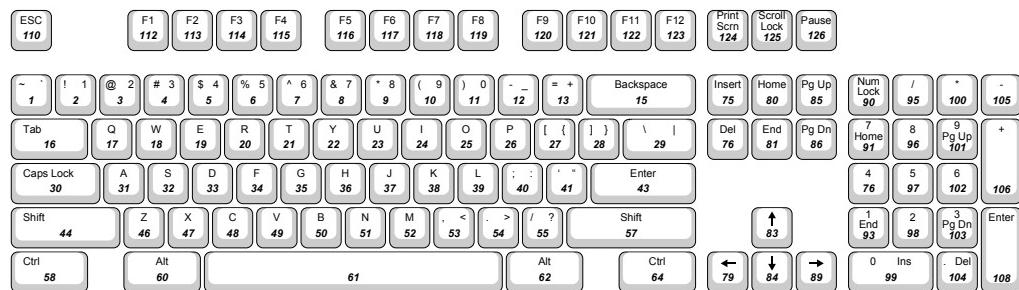


Figure 11.3 Key Numbers for Scan Code.

Each key sends out a make code when hit and a break code when released. When several keys are hit at the same time, several make codes will be sent before a break code.

The keyboard powers up using this scan code as the default. Commands must be sent to the keyboard to use other scan code sets. The PC sends out an initialization command that forces the keyboard to use the other scan code.

The interface is much simpler if the default scan code is used. If the default scan code is used, no commands will need to be sent to the keyboard. The keys in Table 11.4 for the default scan code are typematic (i.e. they automatically repeat the make code if held down).

Table 11.4 Scan Codes for PS/2 Keyboard.

Key#	Make Code	Break Code	Key#	Make Code	Break Code	Key#	Make Code	Break Code
1	0E	F0 0E	31	1C	F0 1C	90	77	F0 77
2	16	F0 16	32	1B	F0 1B	91	6C	F0 6C
3	1E	F0 1E	33	23	F0 23	92	6B	F0 6B
4	26	F0 26	34	2B	F0 2B	93	69	F0 69
5	25	F0 25	35	34	F0 34	96	75	F0 75
6	2E	F0 2E	36	33	F0 33	97	73	F0 73
7	36	F0 36	37	3B	F0 3B	98	72	F0 72
8	3D	F0 3D	38	42	F0 42	99	70	F0 70
9	3E	F0 3E	39	4B	F0 4B	100	7C	F0 7C
10	46	F0 46	40	4C	F0 4C	101	7D	F0 7D
11	45	F0 45	41	52	F0 52	102	74	F0 74
12	4E	F0 4E	43	5A	F0 5A	103	7A	F0 7A
13	55	F0 55	44	12	F0 12	104	71	F0 71
15	66	F0 66	46	1A	F0 1A	105	7B	F0 7B
16	0D	F0 0D	47	22	F0 22	106	79	F0 79
17	15	F0 15	48	21	F0 21	110	76	F0 76
18	1D	F0 1D	49	2A	F0 2A	112	05	F0 05
19	24	F0 24	50	32	F0 32	113	06	F0 06
20	2D	F0 2P	51	31	F0 31	114	04	F0 04
21	2C	F0 2C	52	3A	F0 3A	115	0c	F0 0C
22	35	F0 35	53	41	F0 41	116	03	F0 03
23	3C	F0 3C	54	49	F0 49	117	0B	F0 0B
24	43	F0 43	55	4A	F0 4A	118	83	F0 83
25	44	F0 44	57	59	F0 59	119	0A	F0 0A
26	4D	F0 4D	58	14	F0 14	120	01	F0 01
27	54	F0 54	60	11	F0 11	121	09	F0 09
28	5B	F0 5B	61	29	F0 29	122	78	F0 78
29	5D	F0 5D	62	E0 11	E0 F0 11	123	07	F0 07

The remaining key codes are a function of the shift, control, alt, or num-lock keys.

Table 11.4 (Continued) - Scan Codes for PS/2 Keyboard.

Key	No Shift or Num Lock		Shift*		Num Lock On	
	#	Make	Break	Make	Break	Make
76	E0 70	E0 F0 70	E0 F0 12 E0 70	E0 F0 70 E0 12	E0 12 E0 70	E0 F0 70 E0 F0 12
76	E0 71	E0 F0 71	E0 F0 12 E0 71	E0 F0 71 E0 12	E0 12 E0 71	E0 F0 71 E0 T0 12
79	E0 6B	E0 F0 6B	E0 F0 12 E0 6B	E0 F0 6B E0 12	E0 12 E0 6B	E0 F0 6B E0 F0 12
80	E0 6C	E0 F0 6C	E0 F0 12 E0 6C	E0 F0 6C E0 12	E0 12 E0 6C	E0 F0 6C E0 F0 12
81	E0 69	E0 F0 69	E0 F0 12 E0 69	E0 F0 69 E0 12	E0 12 E0 69	E0 F0 69 E0 F0 12
83	E0 75	E0 F0 75	E0 F0 12 E0 75	E0 F0 75 E0 12	E0 12 E0 75	E0 F0 75 E0 F0 12
84	E0 72	E0 F0 72	E0 F0 12 E0 72	E0 F0 72 E0 12	E0 12 E0 72	E0 F0 72 E0 F0 12
85	E0 7D	E0 F0 7D	E0 F0 12 E0 7D	E0 F0 7D E0 12	E0 12 E0 7D	E0 F0 7D E0 F0 12
86	E0 7A	E0 F0 7A	E0 F0 12 E0 7A	E0 F0 7A E0 12	E0 12 E0 7A	E0 F0 7A E0 F0 12
89	E0 74	E0 F0 74	E0 F0 12 E0 74	E0 F0 74 E0 12	E0 12 E0 74	E0 F0 74 E0 F0 12

* When the left Shift Key is held down, the 12 - FO 12 shift make and break is sent with the other scan codes. When the right Shift Key is held down, 59 - FO 59 is sent.

Key	Scan Code		Shift Case *		
	#	Make	Break	Make	
95		E0 4A	E0 F0 4A	E0 F0 12 E0 4A	E0 12 F0 4A

* When the left Shift Key is held down, the 12 - FO 12 shift make and break is sent with the other scan codes. When the right Shift Key is held down, 59 - FO 59 is sent. When both Shift Keys are down, both sets of codes are sent with the other scan codes.

Key	Scan Code		Control Case, Shift Case		Alt Case	
	Make	Break	Make	Break	Make	Break
124	E0 12 E0 7C	E0 F0 7C E0 F0 I2	E0 7C	E0 F0 7C	84	F0 84

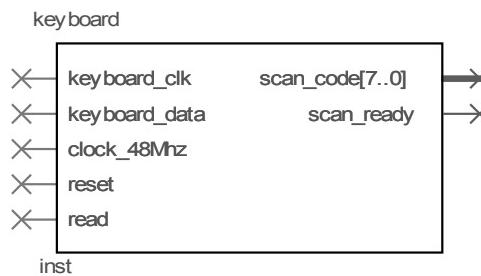
Key #	Make Code	Control Key Pressed
126 *	EI 14 77 EI F0 14 F0 77	E0 7E E0 F0 7E

* This key does not repeat

11.6 The Keyboard FPGACore

The following VHDL code for the keyboard FPGACore shown in Figure 11.4 reads the scan code bytes from the keyboard. In this example code, no command is ever sent to the keyboard, so clock and data are always used as inputs and the keyboard power-on defaults are used.

To send commands, a more complex bi-directional tri-state clock and data interface is required. The details of such an interface are explained in later sections on the PS/2 mouse. The keyboard powers up and sends the self-test code AA and 00 to the FPGA chip before it is downloaded.

**Figure 11.4** Keyboard FPGACore

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;

ENTITY keyboard IS
    PORT( keyboard_clk, keyboard_data, clock_48MHz ,
          reset, read      : IN STD_LOGIC;
          scan_code       : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
          scan_ready      : OUT STD_LOGIC);
END keyboard;

ARCHITECTURE a OF keyboard IS
    SIGNAL INCNT           : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 3 DOWNTO 0 );
    SIGNAL SHIFTIN          : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 8 DOWNTO 0 );
    SIGNAL READ_CHAR, clock_enable : STD_LOGIC;
    SIGNAL INFLAG, ready_set   : STD_LOGIC;
    SIGNAL keyboard_clk_filtered : STD_LOGIC;
    SIGNAL filter            : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );

BEGIN
    PROCESS ( read, ready_set )
    BEGIN
        IF read = '1' THEN
            scan_ready <= '0';
        ELSIF ready_set'EVENT AND ready_set = '1' THEN
            scan_ready <= '1';
        END IF;
    END PROCESS;
    --This process filters the raw clock signal coming from the
    --keyboard using a shift register and two AND gates
    Clock_filter:
    PROCESS
    BEGIN
        WAIT UNTIL clock_48MHz'EVENT AND clock_48MHz = '1';
        clock_enable <= NOT clock_enable;
        IF clock_enable = '1' THEN
            filter ( 6 DOWNTO 0 ) <= filter( 7 DOWNTO 1 );
        END IF;
    END PROCESS;

```

```

filter( 7 ) <= keyboard_clk;
IF filter = "11111111" THEN
    keyboard_clk_filtered <= '1';
ELSIF filter = "00000000" THEN
    keyboard_clk_filtered <= '0';
END IF;
END IF;
END PROCESS Clock_filter;
--This process reads in serial scan code data coming from the keyboard
PROCESS
BEGIN
    WAIT UNTIL (KEYBOARD_CLK_filtered'EVENT AND KEYBOARD_CLK_filtered = '1');
    IF RESET = '0' THEN
        INCNT <= "0000";
        READ_CHAR <= '0';
    ELSE
        IF KEYBOARD_DATA = '0' AND READ_CHAR = '0' THEN
            READ_CHAR <= '1';
            ready_set <= '0';
        ELSE
            -- Shift in next 8 data bits to assemble a scan code
            IF READ_CHAR = '1' THEN
                IF INCNT < "1001" THEN
                    INCNT <= INCNT + 1;
                    SHIFTIN( 7 DOWNTO 0 ) <= SHIFTIN( 8 DOWNTO 1 );
                    SHIFTIN( 8 ) <= KEYBOARD_DATA;
                    ready_set <= '0';
                    -- End of scan code character, so set flags and exit loop
                ELSE
                    scan_code <= SHIFTIN( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
                    READ_CHAR <='0';
                    ready_set <= '1';
                    INCNT <= "0000";
                END IF;
            END IF;
        END IF;
    END IF;
END PROCESS;
END a;

```

The keyboard clock is filtered in the Clock_filter process using an 8-bit shift register and an AND gate to eliminate any reflected pulses, noise, or timing hazards that can be found on some keyboards. The clock signal in this process is the 48 MHz system clock divided by two to produce a 24 MHz clock rate using the clock enable signal. On DE1 and DE2 boards, a 50Mhz clock input is used. The output signal, keyboard_clk_filtered, will only change if the input signal, keyboard_clk, has been High or Low for eight successive 24 MHz clocks or 320ns. This filters out noise and reflected pulses on the keyboard cable that could cause an extra or false clock signal on the fast FPGA chip. This problem has been observed to occur on some PS/2 keyboards and mice and is fixed by the filter routine.

The RECV_KBD process waits for a start bit, converts the next eight serial data bits to parallel, stores the input character in the signal, charin, and sets a flag, scan_ready, to indicate a new character was read. . The scan_ready or input ready flag is a handshake signal needed to ensure that a new scan code is read in and processed only once. Scan_ready is set whenever a new scan code is received. The input signal, read, resets the scan ready handshake signal.

The process using this code to read the key scan code would need to wait until the input ready flag, scan_ready, goes High. This process should then read in the new scan code value, scan_code. Last, read should be forced High and Low to clear the scan_ready handshake signal.

Since the set and reset conditions for scan_ready come from different processes each with different clocks, it is necessary to write a third process to generate the scan_ready handshake signal using the set and reset conditions from the other two processes. Hitting a common key will send a 1-byte make code and a 2-byte break code. This will produce at least three different scan_code values each time a key is hit and released.

A shift register is used with the filtered clock signals to perform the serial to parallel conversion. No command is ever sent the keyboard and it powers up using scan code set 2. Since commands are not sent to the keyboard, in this example clock and data lines are not bi-directional. The parity bit is not checked.

11.7 A Design Example Using the Keyboard FPGACore

Here is a simple design using the Keyboard and LCD_Display FPGACores. The last six bytes of scan codes will appear in the LCD display (or on some FPGA boards in the seven segment LEDs). The block code_FIFO saves the last six scan codes for the LCD display and is not used on the FPGA boards with a two digit hex LED display.

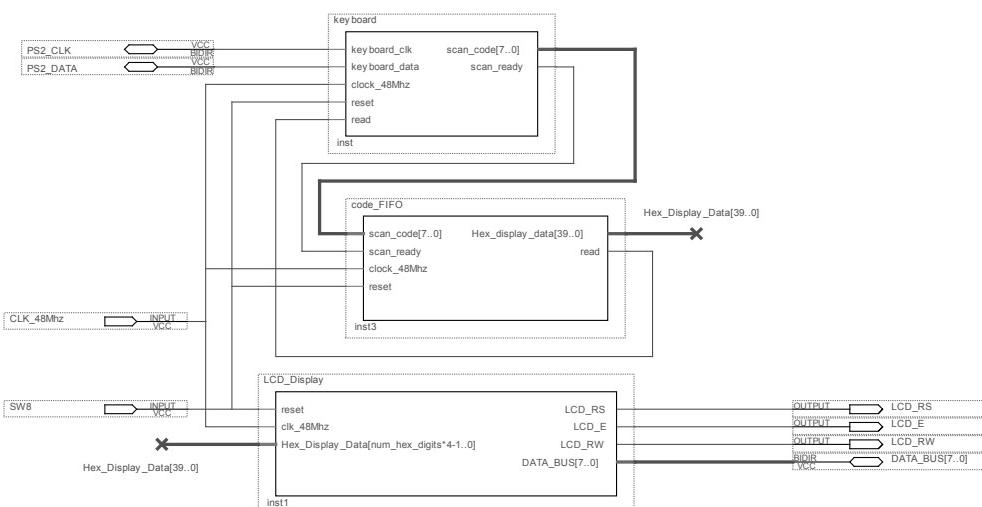


Figure 11.5 Example design using the Keyboard FPGACore.

11.8 Interfacing to the PS/2 Mouse

Just like the PS/2 keyboard, the PS/2 mouse uses the PS/2 synchronous bi-directional serial communication protocol described in section 11.4 and shown in Figures 11.1 and 11.2. Internally, the mouse contains a ball that rolls two slotted wheels. The wheels are connected to two optical encoders. The two encoders sense x and y motion by counting pulses when the wheels move. It also contains two or three pushbuttons that can be read by the system and a single-chip microcontroller. The microcontroller in the mouse sends data packets to the computer reporting movement and button status.

It is necessary for the computer or in this case the FPGA chip to send the mouse an initialization command to have it start sending mouse data packets. This makes interfacing to the mouse more difficult than interfacing to the keyboard. As seen in Table 11.5, the command value needed for initialization after power up is F4, enable streaming mode.

Table 11.5 PS/2 Mouse Commands.

Commands Sent to Mouse	Hex Value
Reset Mouse	FF
Mouse returns AA, 00 after self-test	
Resend Message	FE
Set to Default Values	F6
Enable Streaming Mode Mouse starts sending data packets at default rate	F4
Disable Streaming Mode	F5
Set sampling rate XX is number of packets per second	F3, XX
Read Device Type	F2
Set Remote Mode	EE
Set Wrap Mode Mouse returns data sent by system	EC
Read Remote Data Mouse sends 1 data packet	EB
Set Stream Mode	EA
Status Request Mouse returns 3-bytes with current settings	E9
Set Resolution XX is 0, 1, 2, 3	E8, XX
Set Scaling 2 to 1	E7
Reset Scaling	E6

Table 11.6 PS/2 Mouse Messages.

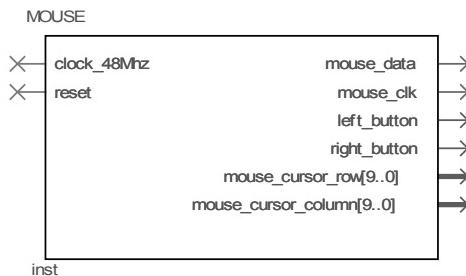
Messages Sent by Mouse	Hex Value
Resend Message	FE
Two bad messages in a row	FC
Mouse Acknowledge Command Sent by Mouse after each command byte	FA
Mouse passed self-test	AA

After streaming mode is enabled, the mouse sends data to the system in three byte data packets that contain motion and pushbutton status. The format of a three-byte mouse data packet is seen in Table 11.7.

Table 11.7 PS/2 Mouse Data Packet Format.

11.9 The Mouse FPGACore

The FPGACore function Mouse is designed to provide a simple interface to the mouse. This function initializes the mouse and then monitors the mouse data transmissions. It outputs a mouse cursor address and button status. The internal operation of the Mouse FPGACore is rather complex and the fundamentals are described in the section that follows. Like the other FPGACore functions, it is written in VHDL and complete source code is provided.



To interface to the mouse, a clock filter, serial-to-parallel conversion and parallel-to-serial conversion with two shift registers is required along with a state machine to control the various modes. See the earlier PS/2 keyboard section for an example of a clock filter design.

11.10 Mouse Initialization

Two lines are used to interface to the mouse, PS/2 clock and data. The lines must be tri-state bi-directional, since at times they are driven by the mouse and at other times by the FPGA chip. All clock, data, and handshake signals share two tri-state, bi-directional lines, clock and data. These two lines must be declared bi-directional when pin assignments are made and they must have tri-state outputs in the interface. The mouse actually has open collector outputs that can be simulated by using a tri-state output. The mouse always drives the clock signal for any serial data exchanges. The FPGA chip can inhibit mouse transmissions by pulling the clock line Low at any time.

The FPGA chip drives the data line when sending commands to the mouse. When the mouse sends data to the FPGA chip it drives the data line. The tri-state bi-directional handshaking is described in more detail in the IBM PS/2 Technical Reference manual. A simpler version with just the basics for operation with the FPGA boards is presented here. Just like the keyboard, the mouse interface is more reliable if a clock filter is used on the clock line.

At power-up, the mouse runs a self-test and sends out the codes AA and 00. The clock and data FPGA chip outputs are tri-stated before downloading the board, so they float High. High turns out to be ready to send for mouse data, so AA

and 00 are sent out prior to downloading and need not be considered in the interface. This assumes that the mouse is plugged in before applying power to the UP3 board and downloading the design.

The default power-up mode is streaming mode disabled. To get the mouse to start sending 3-byte data packets, the streaming mode must be turned on by sending the enable streaming mode command, F4, to the mouse from the FPGA chip. The clock tri-state line is driven Low by the FPGA for at least 60us to inhibit any data transmissions from the mouse. This is the only case when the FPGA chip should ever drive the clock line. The data line is then driven Low by the FPGA chip to signal that the system has a command to send the mouse.

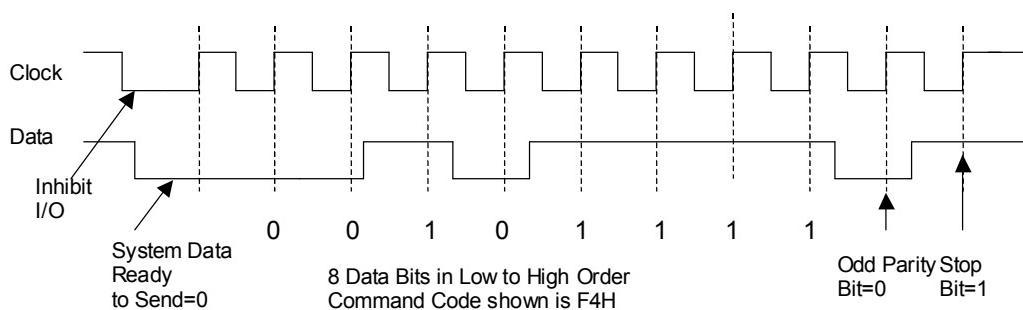


Figure 11.6 Transmission of Mouse Initialization Command.

The clock line is driven High for four clocks at 24 MHz and then tri-stated to simulate an open collector output. This reduces the rise time and reflections on the mouse cable that might be seen by the fast FPGA chip logic as the clock line returns to the High state. As an alternative, the mouse clock input to the FPGA could be briefly disabled while the clock line returns to the High state.

Next the mouse, seeing data Low and clock High, starts clocking in the serial data from the FPGA chip. The data is followed by an odd parity bit and a High stop bit. The handshake signal of the data line starting out Low takes the place of the start bit when sending commands to the mouse.

With the FPGA chip clock and data drivers both tri-stated, the mouse then responds to this message by sending an acknowledge message code, FA, back to the FPGA chip. Data from the mouse includes a Low start bit, eight data bits, an odd parity bit, and a High stop bit. The mouse, as always, drives the clock line for the serial data transmission. The mouse is now initialized.

11.11 Mouse Data Packet Processing

As long as the FPGA chip clock and data drivers remain tri-stated, the mouse then starts sending 3-byte data packets at the power-up default sampling rate of 100 per second. Bytes 2 and 3 of the data packet contain X and Y motion values as was seen in Table 11.6. These values can be positive or negative, and they are in two's complement format.

For a video mouse cursor such as is seen in the PC, the motion value will need to be added to the current value every time a new data packet is received. Assuming 640 by 480 pixel resolution, two 10-bit registers containing the current cursor row and column addresses are needed. These registers are updated every packet by adding the sign extended 8-bit X and Y motion values found in bytes 2 and 3 of the data packet. The cursor normally would be initialized to the center of the video screen at power-up.

11.12 An Example Design Using the Mouse FPGAcore

In this example design, the mouse drives the LCD display on the DE2 or UP3 boards. The mouse cursor powers up to the center position of the 640 by 480 video screen. Note that the PS/2 mouse clock and data pins must be bi-directional. The block Mouse_LCD_interface rearranges the mouse core output signals for use by the LCD_Display core function. On FPGA boards without an LCD module, the seven segment LED displays are used instead.

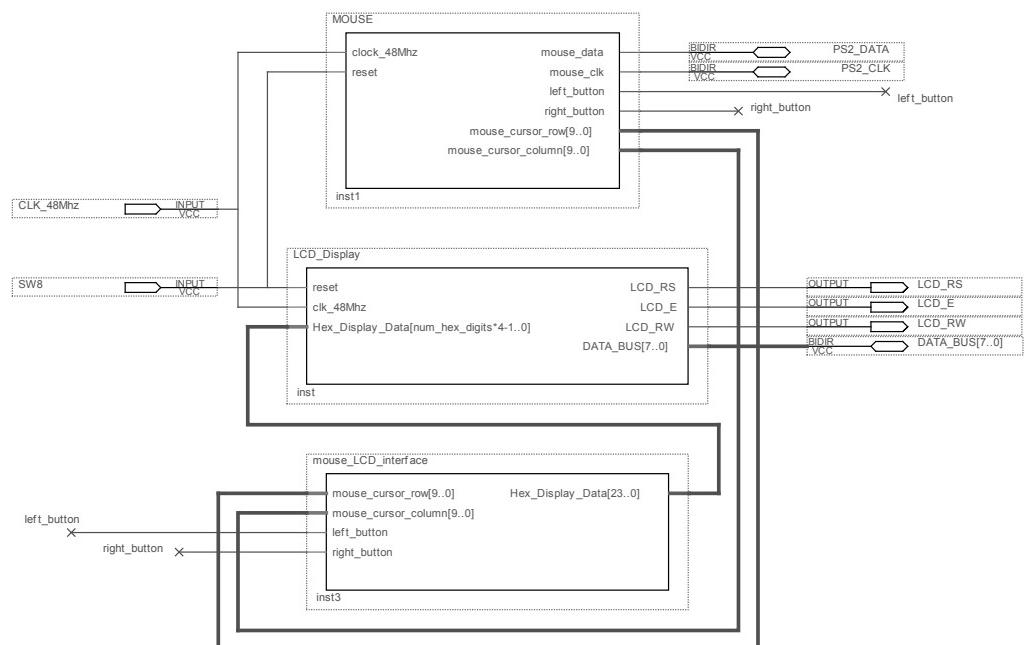


Figure 11.7 Example design using the Mouse FPGAcore.

11.13 For Additional Information

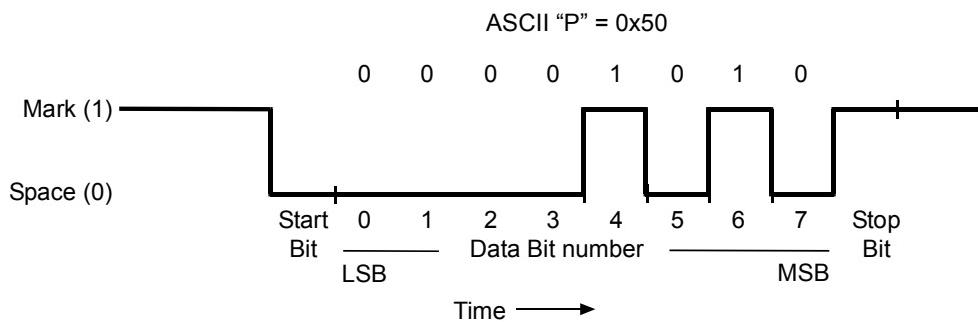
The IBM PS/2 Hardware Interface Technical Reference Manual, IBM Corporation, 1988 contains the original PS/2 information on the keyboard and mouse in the Keyboard and Auxiliary Device Controller Chapter. Scan codes for the alternate scan code set normally used by the PC can be found on the web and in many PC reference manuals.

11.14 Laboratory Exercises

1. Write a VHDL module to read a keyboard scan code and display the entire scan code string in hexadecimal on the VGA display using the VGA_SYNC and CHAR_ROM FPGACores. It will require the use of the read and scan ready handshake lines and a small RAM to hold the scan code bytes.
2. After reading the section on the PS/2 mouse, design an interface that can also send commands to the keyboard. Demonstrate that the design works correctly by changing the status of the keyboard LEDs after reading the new settings from switches.
3. Develop a keyboard module that uses the alternate scan code set used by the PC.
4. Write the keyboard module in another HDL such as Verilog.
5. Use the keyboard as a new input device for a video game, the μ P1 computer, or another application.
6. Generate a video display that has a moving cursor controlled by the mouse using the Mouse and VGA_Sync FPGACores. Use the mouse buttons to change the color of the cursor.
7. Use the mouse as input to a video etch-a-sketch. Use a monochrome 128 by 128 1-bit pixel RAM with the VGA_Sync core in your video design. Display a cursor. To draw a line, the left mouse button should be held down.
8. Use the mouse as an input device in another design with video output or a simple video game such as pong, breakout, or Tetris.
9. Write a mouse driver in Verilog. Use the mouse information provided in sections 11.2 and 11.3.

CHAPTER 12

Legacy Digital I/O Interfacing Standards



The EIA RS-232C standard is widely used in PCs on the COM ports for serial data transmission.

12 Legacy Digital I/O Interfacing Standards

Historically, several common digital interface standards have developed over the years to interface computers to their peripheral devices. This chapter will introduce several of the older standards and briefly describe how they function in a hardware design. Each standard has a unique set of hardware and performance tradeoffs. Many devices and ICs are available that use these standards. These interfaces are present in most PCs and are found in many embedded systems including FPGA boards.

12.1 Parallel I/O Interface

The parallel printer interface standard was developed by Centronics in the 1970s and is a widely used standard for transferring 8-bit parallel data. Most PCs have a parallel port. Data is transferred in parallel using eight data bits and standard digital logic voltage levels. Additional status and control bits are required for the sender and receiver to exchange handshake signals that synchronize each 8-bit data transfer. Typically, the parallel printer port is interfaced to two 8-bit I/O ports on a processor. One I/O port is used for 8-bit data transfers and one I/O port for the status and control bits that are used for handshake signals.

The transfer of an 8-bit data value is shown in Figure 12.1. First, the computer waits for the printer's busy signal to go Low. Next, the computer outputs the eight data bits and the computer then sets strobe Low for at least 0.5us. The computer then waits for the printer to pulse Ack Low. The computer must wait for Ack Low before changing the data or strobe lines. The printer may go Busy after it raises Ack. The printer handshake lines are also used to force the computer to wait for events like a slow carriage return or page feed on a mechanical printer or errors like a paper out condition. Sometimes a timeout loop is used to detect conditions like paper out. The UP3 board has a standard printer parallel port connector. With the appropriate hardware, it can be used to communicate with a standard printer.

In addition to printers, some special purpose devices also use the individual parallel port bits in a number of different ways to output digital logic bits to control external hardware. The ByteBlaster adapter you use to program the FPGA is one such example.

The original parallel interface supported only unidirectional data transfers from a computer to a printer. Recent parallel port standards such as IEEE 1284 ECP and EPP support bidirectional and faster data transfers between an external device and the computer. In these newer modes, another control bit from the computer specifies the data transfer direction and tri-state gate outputs are used in both the computer and printer to drive the data lines bidirectionally.

Parallel cables will only work for relatively short distances. The RS-232C standard in the next section supports longer cables with fewer wires, but it also has lower bandwidth and data transfer rates.

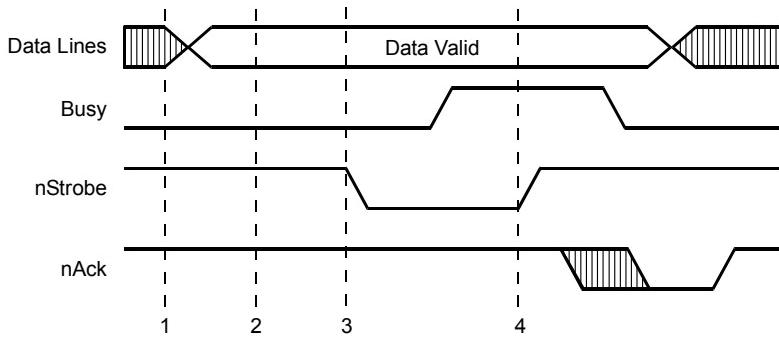


Figure 12.1 Parallel Port transfer of an 8-bit data value

12.2 RS-232C Serial I/O Interface

The Electronics Industry Association (EIA) RS-232C Serial interface is one of the oldest serial I/O standards. In Europe, it is also called V.24. 8-bit data is transmitted one bit at a time serially. Most PCs have an RS-232C serial COM port. Serial interfaces have an advantage in that they require fewer wires in the cable than a parallel interface and can support longer cables. In RS-232C's simplest implementation, only three wires are used in the cable. One wire for transmit data (TD), one for receive data (RD) and one for signal ground (GND). Individual bits are clocked in and out serially using a clock signal. The frequency of this bit clock is called the serial interface's baud rate. (Baudot was a French engineer that developed an early serial interface for the telegraph.) Since two different signal wires are used for receive and transmit, serial devices can be transferring data in both directions at the same time (full-duplex). The ASCII character code is typically used on serial devices, but they can also be used to transfer 8-bit binary values.

The baud rate clock is not synchronized by using a signal wire connected between the sending and receiving devices, rather it is asynchronous and is derived by a state machine watching the serial data bit transitions occurring at the receiver. For this to function correctly, the transmitter and receiver must be setup to operate at the same clock or baud rate. Even though they have the same clock rate, the clock phase must still be synchronized between a serial transmitter and receiver by examining the incoming serial data line. The hardware logic circuit needed for this common serial interface is called a Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (UART).

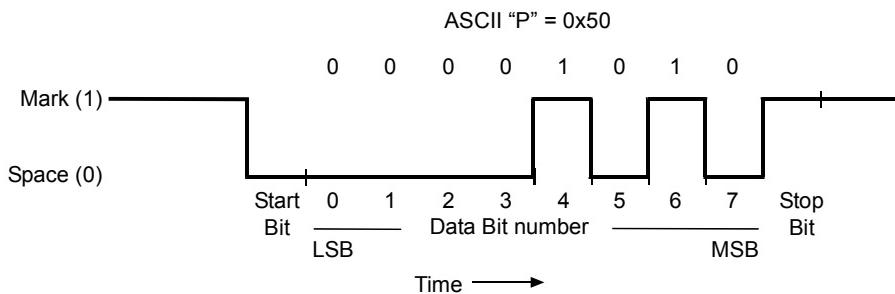


Figure 12.2 RS-232C Serial interface transmission of an 8-bit data value

Figure 12.2 shows the transmission of a single ASCII character over an RS-232C serial interface. The serial bit has two states. Mark is the high state ($>3V$) and Space is the low state ($<-3V$). Older generation serial devices will have around +12V and -12V levels for Mark and Space. Note that for the proper RS-232 voltage levels, a standard digital logic output bit will have to have its voltage levels converted for use in a serial interface. Special ICs are normally used for this RS-232C voltage conversion. To reduce the need for additional circuits, these ICs also generate the required DC supply voltages from the standard digital logic DC power supplies. This special IC chip is already present on the UP3's serial interface. FPGA logic elements can be used to build the UART hardware function.

The idle state is High (Mark). Whenever the interface starts sending a new 8-bit data value, the line is dropped Low (Space) for one clock cycle (baud rate clock). This is called the start bit. The eight data bits are then clocked out during the next eight baud clocks in low to high bit order. The highest data bit is sometimes used as a parity bit for error detection, when only seven data bits are used instead of eight. After the data bits are clocked out, the bit goes high for one clock. This is called the Stop bit. Sometimes at low baud rates, two Stop bits are present. Note that at least 10 clocks are required to transfer an 8-bit data value.

Typically, UARTs transfer 8-bit data values in and out to other internal logic using an 8-bit parallel I/O port interfaced to a processor. Extra UART status bits can be read by the processor that indicate another 8-bit data value can be sent to the UART or another 8-bit data value is available to read in from the UART. Since serial transmission is very slow compared to a processor's clock, these status bits must be checked in software or hardware for their proper state or the processor will send/receive data faster than the UART can produce or consume it. Other status bits can also be used to detect various error conditions.

A UART's transmitter uses a shift register clocked by the baud rate clock to convert the 8-bit parallel data to eight serial bits. Start and stop bits are automatically added by the UART's hardware.

At the other end of the serial cable, another UART's receiver uses the Stop and Start bits to reset its internal state machine that is attempting to synchronize its receive clock phase to the incoming serial bit data. This state machine synchronizes the receive clock phase whenever it sees an edge on the incoming serial line. Note that several consecutive bits could be the same value inside the eight data bits, so there is not an edge transition on every single clock.

A UART typically uses an internal clock that is eight or sixteen times the baud rate to watch for edges on the incoming serial data line. UARTs also use this faster clock and a counter to attempt to sample the data bits in the middle of each bit's time frame to minimize the possibility of reading in an incorrect value near an edge. Since long wires are allowed on an RS-232C serial interface, there will likely be noise and ringing present whenever the serial bit changes. Clocking in the bit in the middle of its time frame greatly increases the reliability of the interface. A second shift register is used for serial to parallel conversion in the UART's receiver circuit.

Some serial devices also require additional hardware handshake lines to stop and start the flow of a new 8-bit data value over the serial interface. These handshake lines require additional signal wires in the cable used to connect the serial device. Some of the more commonly used handshake lines are RTS (request to send), CTS (clear to send), DCD (data carrier detect), DSR (data set ready), and DTR (data terminal ready).

There are two types of serial devices defined in the RS-232C standard, data terminal equipment (DTE) and data carrier equipment (DCE). A standard RS-232C serial cable is designed to connect a DTE device to a DCE device. When connecting two serial devices of the same type, a special null modem cable or adapter is needed. A null modem exchanges the TD and RD signal lines at one end of the cable along with several connections on the handshake lines. If you experience problems when connecting a new serial device, the various handshake and null modem cable options can be quickly checked using a low-cost in-line RS-232C analyzer breakout box.

The UP3 board contains a RS-232 serial connector, and it has the required voltage conversion IC needed for serial data transmission.

12.3 SPI Bus Interface

The serial peripheral interface (SPI) bus created by Motorola in the 1980s is used primarily for synchronous serial communication between a host processor and peripheral ICs. Four signal lines are used: Chip Select (CS), Serial Data Input (SDI), Serial Data Output (SDO), Serial Clock (SCLK). CS and SCLK are outputs provided by the master device. The slave devices receive their clock and chip select inputs from the master. If an SPI device is not selected, its SDO output line goes into a high impedance state (tri-state). The number of serial bits transferred to the slave device varies from device to device. Each slave device contains an internal shift register used to transfer data.

Two types on connections between master and slave devices are supported as seen in Figure 12.3. In a cascaded connection, all slaves in the chain share a single chip select line driven by the master. The master device outputs SDO and it connects as an input to a slave device's SDI input. A slave's SDO output connects to another slave's SDI input. The serial data cascades through all of the slaves and the final slave in the chain connects its SDO line to the master's SDI input to complete the chain. In this configuration, the slave devices appear as one larger slave device, the data output of one device feeds into the input of another device, thus forming one large shift register.

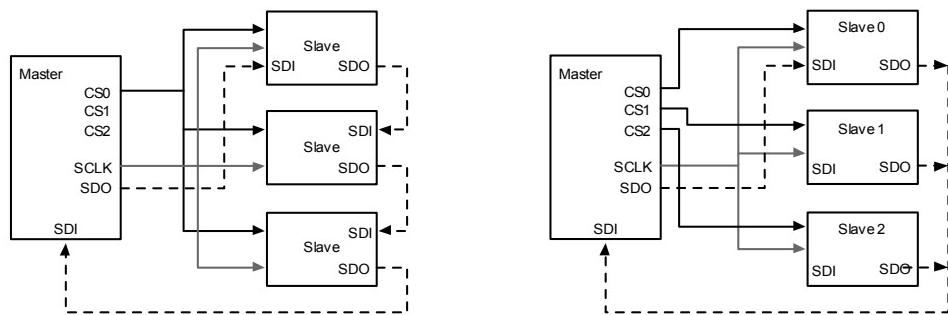


Figure 12.3 The two SPI slave device configuration options.

The second SPI configuration option supports independent slave devices, each device has its own unique chip select input line coming from the master. The master's SDO output connects to each slaves SDI input. The slave's SDO tri-state outputs are connected together and to the master's SDI input. Only the selected slave's SDO output is driven, the others are tri-stated.

Multiple masters are also supported in SPI. Several SPI modes are supported with serial data being valid on either the rising edge or the falling edge of the clock. Serial clock rates can range from 30 kHz to 3 MHz depending on the devices used. Most commonly, devices place new data on the bus during the falling clock edge and data is latched off the bus on the rising edge after it stabilizes, but you will need to check data sheets for specific master and slave devices to confirm this since some devices use the opposite clock edges.

Some Motorola literature may use different names for the SPI signals. CS may appear as SS, SDI as MOSI, and SDO as MISO. In National Semiconductor products, SPI is also known as Microwire. SPI devices are also available in several different voltage supply levels ranging from 2.3 to 5 volts. Since SPI uses a common clock, the hardware interface is simpler than RS-232C serial.

12.4 I²C Bus Interface

The Inter IC (I²C) bus is a widely used standard developed by Phillips in the 1980s for connecting ICs on the same circuit board. Many small ICs now include I²C pins to transfer data serially to other ICs. For lower bandwidth signals, a serial interface has an advantage in that it requires fewer interconnect lines. The I²C bus uses two signal wires called SCL and SDA. SCL is the clock line and SDA is the 1-bit serial data & address line. A common ground signal is also needed. The SCL and SDA lines are open drain. This means that the output is only driven Low, never High. An external pull-up resistor pulls the lines High whenever there is not a device driving the lines Low.

In an FPGA with tri-state output pins, you can simulate open drain outputs by tri-stating the output whenever the bit should go High and only driving the output signal Low. Even though there are multiple devices on the I²C bus, only one pull-up resistor is used for the entire I²C bus.

Devices on the I²C bus are masters or slaves. The slaves are the devices that respond to bus requests from the master. Each slave is assigned its own unique 7-bit I²C bus address. Since both address and data information is transferred over the bus, the protocol is a bit more involved than SPI. When the master needs to talk to a slave, it issues a start sequence on the I²C bus. In a start sequence, SDA goes from High to Low while SCL is High. To stop an I²C sequence, the master sends a stop sequence command. In a stop sequence, SDA goes from Low to High while SCL is High. Start and stop sequences are the only times a change may occur in SDA while SCL is High.

The master drives the SCL clock line to transfer each new I²C serial bit. To force a wait, a slave device can drive SCL Low. Therefore, before each new I²C SCL clock, the master checks to see if SCL is being forced Low by a slave. If it is, the master must wait. SCL clocks are typically up to 100 kHz with 400 kHz available on some new devices.

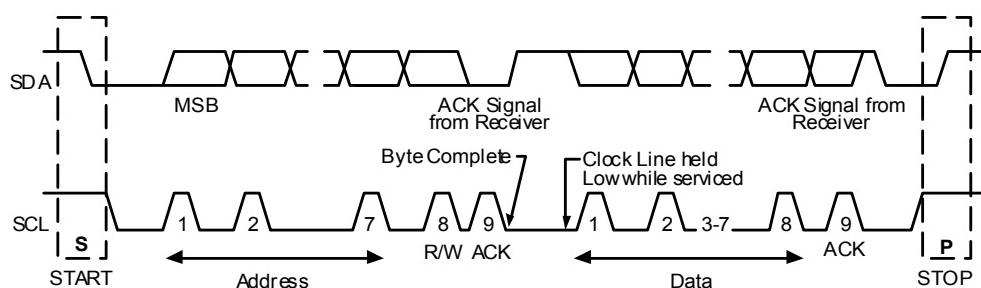


Figure 12.4 I²C interface serial transmission of an 8-bit data value

All address and data transfers contain eight bits with a final acknowledge (ACK) handshake bit for a total of nine bits. All address and data transfers send the High bits first, one per SCL clock bit High. In an address transfer, the

7-bit address is sent and the eighth bit is a R/W bit (0=read, 1=write). Some IC datasheets just append this final R/W bit to the address field and show an 8-bit address field (with even 8-bit addresses for read and odd for write).

The last bit in all data and address transfers, bit nine, is an ACK from the slave. The slave normally drives ACK Low on the last SCL cycle to indicate it is ready for another byte. If ACK is not Low, the master should send a stop sequence to terminate the transfer.

As seen in Figure 12.4, when a master wants to write data to a slave device, it issues the following bus transactions:

1. Master sends a start sequence.
2. Master sends the 7-bit I²C address (high bits first) of the slave with the R/W bit set Low.
3. Master sends the 8-bit internal register number to write.
4. Master sends 8-bit data value(s). Highest bits first.
5. Master sends a stop sequence.

When a master wants to read data from a slave device, it issues the following bus transactions:

1. Master sends a start sequence.
2. Master sends the 7-bit I²C address of the slave (high bits first) with the R/W bit set Low.
3. Master sends the 8-bit internal register number to read.
4. Master sends a start sequence.
5. Master sends the 7-bit I²C address of the slave (high bits first) with the R/W bit set High.
6. Master reads the 8-bit data value(s). Highest bits first.
7. Master sends a stop sequence.

In the full I²C standard, multiple bus masters are also supported with collision detection and bus arbitration. Collision occurs when two masters attempt to drive the bus at the same time. Arbitration schemes must decide which device can drive the bus when multiple masters are present. Some of the newest I²C devices can support a high-speed 3.4 MHz clock rate, 10-bit addresses, programmable slave addresses, and lower supply voltages. The System Management Bus (SMB) bus developed by Intel in 1995 that is used for temperature, fan speed, and voltage measurements on many PC motherboards is based on the I²C bus. On the UP3 board, the real-time clock chip and the serial EEPROM chip use an I²C bus interface. Many new TVs, automobiles, and other consumer electronics also contain I²C interfaces between chips for control features.

SPI and I²C both offer good support for communication with low-speed devices. SPI is better suited to applications that need to transfer higher bandwidth data streams without the need for explicit address information. Some of the most common SPI examples are analog-to-digital (A/D) and digital-to-analog (D/A) converters used to continuously sample or output analog signals. Since addressing is required for I²C, it requires more hardware, but with advances in VLSI technology these additional hardware costs are minimal. In 2005, one FPGA vendor calculated that a single I/O pin on an FPGA package costs as much as 50,000 transistors inside the chip.

12.5 For Additional Information

The books *Parallel Port Complete* and *Serial Port Complete* by Jan Axelson published by Lakeview Research (www.lvr.com) contain complete details on using parallel and serial ports. The full I²C specification is available from Philips Semiconductors (www.phillipssemiconductor.com) and SMB at (www.smbus.org). The Motorola MC68HC11 data manual (www.freescale.com) and various National Semiconductor manuals (www.national.com) have more information on SPI. Analog Devices (www.analogdevices.com) makes a wide variety of A/D and D/A converters with SPI and parallel interfaces.

12.6 Laboratory Exercises

1. Interface a printer with a parallel port to the UP3 board's parallel port. Connect the two devices using a printer cable. Design logic using a state machine or a processor core for the FPGA to transfer data and handle the handshake lines. You may want to use an older printer so that any problems with your design will not damage the printer. Be careful not to generate tri-state bus conflicts on the parallel data lines by making sure you drive the data direction bit to the proper state. Have the UP3 print a short ASCII message on the printer ending with an ASCII form or page feed to print the message on a page. A form feed may be needed to cause the printer to print since most printers store characters in an internal page buffer.
2. Interface the FPGA board's serial port (DE1, DE2 or UP3) to a PC serial port using a serial cable. Run a serial communications program on the PC. Send a short message to the PC from the FPGA and display the data from the PC on the FPGA board's LCD panel or seven-segment LEDs.
3. Design an I²C interface for the UP3 board's real-time clock chip. Display the time from the chip on the UP3 board's LCD display. Don't forget to check the UP3 board's jumper settings and battery for the real-time clock chip. The data sheet for the clock chip contains address and data formats.

4. Obtain an IC chip with an SPI or I²C interface and design an interface for it on the FPGA board. Chips with SPI interfaces include analog-to-digital converters, digital-to-analog converters and various sensor modules. Header I/O and power connections are available on the FPGA boards with 5V or 3V logic levels. Consult the board's user manual for pin assignments.

CHAPTER 13

FPGA Robotics Projects

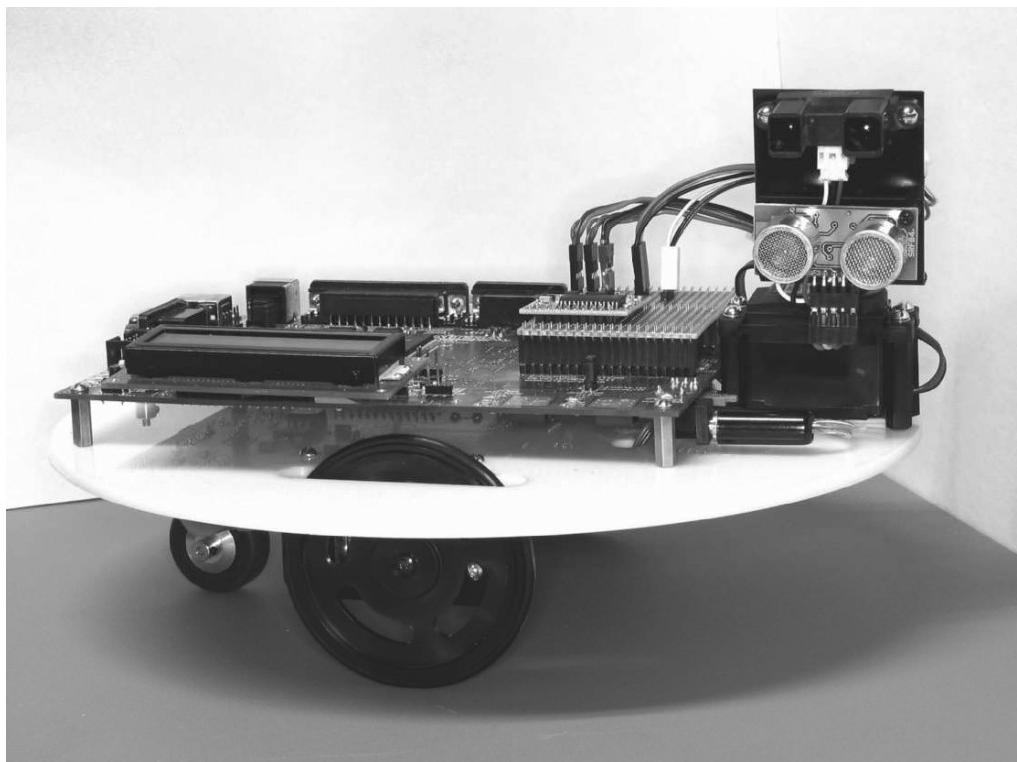


Photo: The FPGA-bot is a small robot controlled by an FPGA board

13 FPGA Robotics Projects

13.1 The FPGA-bot Design

The FPGA-bot shown in Figure 13.1 is a low-cost moving robotics platform designed for use the DE1, DE2, UP3, or UP2 board. The FPGA-bot is designed to be a small autonomous vehicle that is programmed to move in response to sensory input. A wide variety of sensors can be easily attached to the FPGA-bot.

The round platform is cut from plastic and a readily available 7.2V or 8.4V R/C rechargeable battery pack is used to supply power. Two diametrically opposed drive motors move the robot. A third inactive castor wheel or skid is used to provide stability. The robot can move forward, reverse, and rotate in place. Two relatively inexpensive radio control servos are used as drive motors. The FPGA is programmed to act as the controller. The R/C servos are modified to act as drive motors. The servos are controlled by timing pulses produced by the FPGA board.

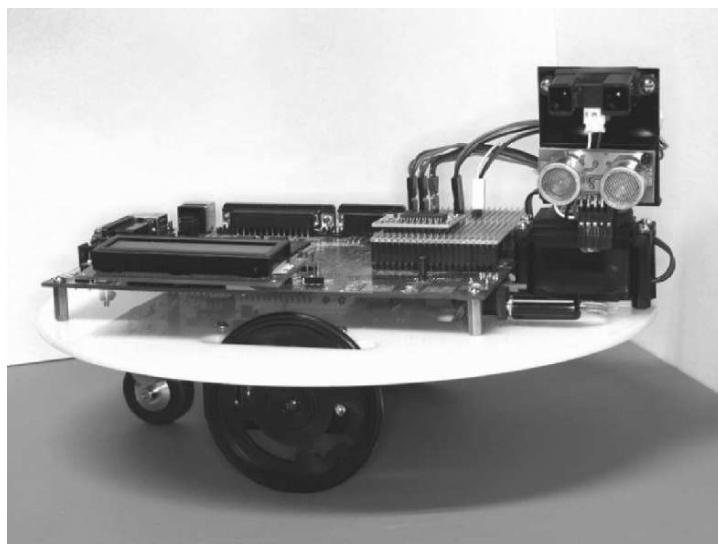


Figure 13.1 The FPGA-bot uses an R/C car battery and R/C servos for drive motors.

13.2 FPGA-bot Servo Drive Motors

A typical radio control servo is shown in Figure 13.2. Servos have a drive wheel that is controlled by a coded signal. The servo shown is a Futaba S3003 which is identical, internally, to the Tower TS53J servo. Radio control servomotors are mass-produced for the hobby market and are therefore relatively inexpensive and consistently available. They are ideally suited for robotics applications. Internally, the servo contains a DC drive motor (seen on

the left in Figure 13.2), built-in control circuitry, and a gear reduction system. They are small, produce a relatively large amount of torque for their size, and run at the appropriate speed for a robotics drive motor.

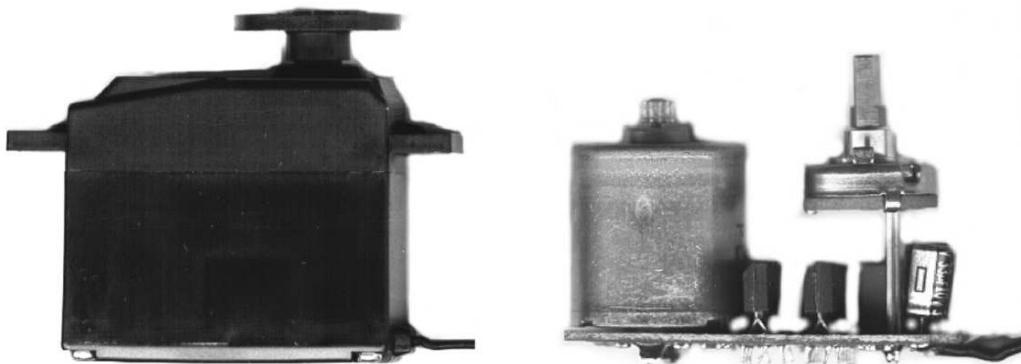


Figure 13.2 Left: Radio Control Servo Motor and Right: Servo with Case and Gears Removed.

The control circuitry of the servo uses a potentiometer (variable resistor) that is used to sense the angular position of the output shaft. The potentiometer is the tall component on the right in Figure 13.2. The output shaft of a servo normally travels 180-210 degrees. A single control bit is used to specify the angular position of the shaft. The timing of this bit specifies the angular position for the shaft. The potentiometer senses the angle, and if the shaft is not at the correct angle, the internal control circuit turns the motor in the correct direction until the desired angle is sensed.

The control signal bit specifies the desired angle. The desired angle is encoded using pulse width modulation (PWM). The width of the active high pulse varies from 1-2 ms. A 1ms pulse is 0 degrees, 1.5ms is 90 degrees and a 2 ms pulse is approximately 180 degrees. New timing pulses are sent to the servo every 20 ms.

13.3 Modifying the Servos to make Drive Motors

Normally, a servo has a mechanical stop that prevents it from traveling more than half a revolution. If this stop is removed along with other modifications to the potentiometer, a servo can be converted to a continuously rotating drive motor. Modifications to the servo are not reversible and they will void the warranty. Some robot kit vendors sell servos that are already modified.

To modify the servo, open the housing by removing the screws and carefully note the location of the gears, so that they can be reassembled later. The potentiometer can be replaced with two 2.2K ohm $\frac{1}{4}$ watt resistors or disconnected by cutting the potentiometer shaft shorter and setting it to the

center position so that it reports the 90-degree position. A more accurate setting can be achieved by sending the servo a 1.5ms pulse and adjusting the potentiometer until the motor stops moving. The potentiometer can then be glued in place with CA glue. In the center position the potentiometer will have the same resistance from each of the outside pins to the center pin. If the potentiometer is replaced with two resistors, a resistor is connected between each of the two outside pins and the center pin.

In some servos, there will be less mechanical play if the potentiometer is disabled by cutting the center pin and modified by drilling out the stop on the potentiometer so that it can rotate freely. The two resistors are then added to replace the potentiometer in the circuit.

The largest gear in the gear train that drives the output shaft normally has a tab molded on it that serves as the mechanical stop. After removing the screw on the output shaft and removing the large gear, the mechanical stop can be carefully trimmed off with a hobby saw, knife, or small rotary-grinding tool. The servo is then carefully re-assembled.

After modifications, if a pulse shorter than 1.5 ms is sent, the motor will continuously rotate in one direction. If a pulse longer than 1.5 ms is sent the motor will continuously rotate in the other direction. The 1.5 ms or 90-degree position is sometimes called the neutral position or dead zone. The drive signal to the motor is proportional, so the farther it is from the neutral position the faster it moves. This can be used to control the speed of the motor if the neutral position is carefully adjusted. A pulse width of 0 ms or no pulse will stop the servomotor.

A servo has three wires, +4 to +6 Volt DC power, ground, and the signal wire. The assignment of the three signals on the connector varies among different servo manufacturers. For Futaba servos, the red wire is +5, black is ground, and the white or yellow wire is the pulse width signal line. For JR and Hitec servos, the orange or yellow wire is the signal line and red is +5, and black or brown is ground.

On the FPGA-bot, the FPGA board must be programmed to provide the two timing signals to control the servo drive motors.

13.4 VHDL Servo Driver Code for the FPGA-bot

To drive the motors a servo signal must be sent every 20 ms with a 0, 1, or 2 ms pulse. The FPGA board is programmed to produce the timing signals that drive the motors. If no pulse is sent, the motor stops. If a 1 ms pulse is sent, the motor moves clockwise and if a 2 ms pulse is sent the motor moves in the reverse direction, counterclockwise. To move the FPGA-bot forward, one motor moves clockwise while the other motor moves counterclockwise. This is because of the way the motors are mounted to the FPGA-bot base.

In the code that follows, lmotor_dir and rmotor_dir specify the direction for the left and right motor. If both signals are ‘1’ the UP3 bot moves forward. The VHDL code actually moves one motor in the opposite direction to move forward. If both are ‘0’ the robot moves in reverse. If one is ‘1’ and the other is ‘0’, the UP3 bot turns by rotating in place. The two speed controls are

lmotor_speed and rmotor_speed. In the speed control signals, ‘0’ is stop and ‘1’ is run. A 1kHz clock is used for the counters in the module. The FPGACore function, clk_div, can be used to provide this signal. Two more complex techniques for implementing variable speed control are discussed in problems at the end of the chapter. Acroname sells a low-cost optical encoder kit made by Nubotics that can be attached to standard R/C servo wheels and used for position feedback and more accurate motor speed control.

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;
ENTITY motor_control IS
    PORT    (clock_1kHz           : IN      STD_LOGIC;
              lmotor_dir, rmotor_dir   : IN      STD_LOGIC;
              lmotor_speed, rmotor_speed : IN      STD_LOGIC;
              lmotor, rmotor          : OUT     STD_LOGIC);
END motor_control;

ARCHITECTURE a OF motor_control IS
    SIGNAL count_motor: STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 4 DOWNTO 0 );
BEGIN
    PROCESS
        BEGIN
            -- Count_motor is a 20ms timer
            WAIT UNTIL clock_1kHz'EVENT AND clock_1kHz = '1';
            IF count_motor /=19 THEN
                count_motor <= count_motor + 1;
            ELSE
                count_motor <= "00000";
            END IF;
            IF count_motor >= 17 AND count_motor < 18 THEN
                -- Don't generate any pulse for speed = 0
                IF lmotor_speed = '0' THEN
                    lmotor <= '0';
                ELSE
                    lmotor <= '1';
                END IF;
                IF rmotor_speed = '0' THEN
                    rmotor <= '0';
                ELSE
                    rmotor <= '1';
                END IF;
                -- Generate a 1 or 2ms pulse for each motor
                -- depending on direction
                -- reverse directions between the two motors because
                -- of servo mounting on the FPGA-bot base
            ELSIF count_motor >=18 AND count_motor <19 THEN
                IF lmotor_speed /= '0' THEN
                    CASE lmotor_dir IS
                        -- FORWARD

```

```

WHEN '0' =>
    lmotor <= '1';
    -- REVERSE
WHEN '1' =>
    lmotor <= '0';
WHEN OTHERS => NULL;
END CASE;
ELSE
    lmotor <= '0';
END IF;
IF rmotor_speed /= '0' THEN
    CASE rmotor_dir IS
        -- FORWARD
        WHEN '1' =>
            rmotor <= '1';
            -- REVERSE
        WHEN '0' =>
            rmotor <= '0';
        WHEN OTHERS => NULL;
        END CASE;
    ELSE
        rmotor <= '0';
    END IF;
    ELSE
        lmotor <= '0';
        rmotor <= '0';
    END IF;
END PROCESS;
END a;

```

13.5 Low-cost Sensors for an FPGA Robot Project

A wide variety of sensors can be attached to the FPGA board. A few of the more interesting sensors are described here. These include infrared modules to avoid objects, track lines, and support communication between FPGA-bots. Other modules include sonar and IR to measure the distance to the nearest object and a digital compass to determine the orientation of the FPGA-bot. Most robots will need to combine or “fuse” data from several types of sensors to provide more reliable operation.

Signal conditioning circuits are required in many cases to convert the signals to digital logic levels for interfacing to the digital inputs and outputs on the FPGA board. Analog sensors will require an analog-to-digital converter IC to interface to the FPGA board, so these devices pose a more challenging problem. Small low-cost A/D ICs are available with SPI interfaces that require a minimal number of FPGA pins.

Sensor module kits are available and are the easiest to use since they come with a small printed circuit board to connect the parts. Sensors can also be built using component parts and assembled on a small protoboard attached to the FPGA-bot. Sensor modules are interfaced by connecting jumper wires to digital inputs and outputs on the FPGA board’s J3 and J2 expansion header connector.

Sensors with a single output bit can utilize a simple control scheme, and for basic tasks the robot can be controlled using hardware as simple as a state machine. More advanced sensors that report actual distance, location, or heading measurements will likely require a processor core on the FPGA running a program that interprets sensor readings and implements the robot's control algorithm.

- **Line Tracker Sensor**

A line tracker module from Lynxmotion is shown in Figure 13.3. This device uses three pairs of red LEDs and infrared (IR) phototransistor sensors that indicate the presence or absence of a black line below each sensor. When the correct voltages are applied in a circuit, an IR phototransistor operates as a switch. When IR is present the switch turns on and when no IR is present the switch turns off. The LED transmits red light that contains enough IR to trigger the phototransistor.

Each LED and phototransistor in a pair are mounted so that the light from the LED bounces off the floor and back to the IR phototransistor. The LED and IR sensor must be mounted very close to the floor for reliable operation. Black tape or a black marker is used to draw a line on the floor. The black line does not reflect light so no IR signal is returned. Three pairs of LEDs and IR phototransistor sensors produce the three digital signals, left, center, and right. The FPGA-bot can be programmed to follow a line on the floor by using these three signals to steer the robot. The mail delivery robots used in large office buildings use a similar technique to follow lines or signal cables in the floor.

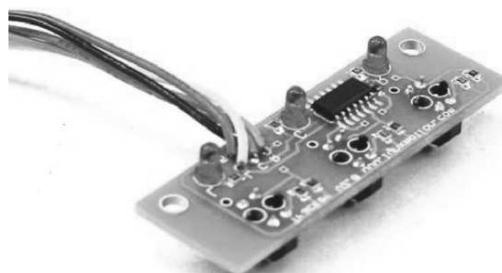


Figure 13.3 – Three LEDs and phototransistors are mounted on bottom of the Line Tracker board.

- **Infrared Proximity Detector**

An IR proximity sensor module from Lynxmotion is seen in Figure 13.4. The FPGA-bot can be outfitted with an infrared proximity detector that is activated by two off-angle infrared transmitting LEDs. The circuit utilizes a center-

placed infrared sensor (Sharp GP1U5) to detect the infrared LED return as seen in Figure 13.5. The Sharp GP1U5 was originally designed to be used as the IR receiver in TV and VCR remote control units. From the diagram, one can see that the sensitivity of the sensor is based on the angle of the LEDs. The LEDs can be outfitted with short heat-shrink tubes to better direct the infrared light forward. This prevents a significant number of false reflections coming from the floor. The IR sensor will still occasionally detect a few false returns and it will function more reliably with some hardware or software filtering.

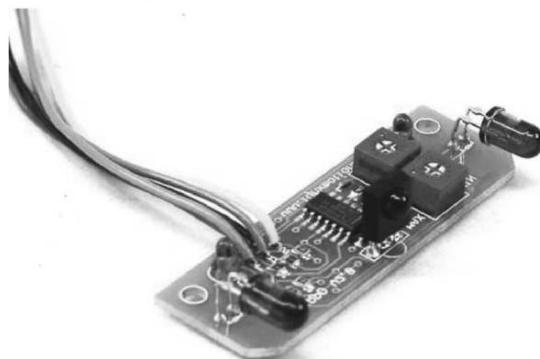


Figure 13.4 IR Proximity Sensor Module – Two IR LEDs on sides and one IR sensor in middle.

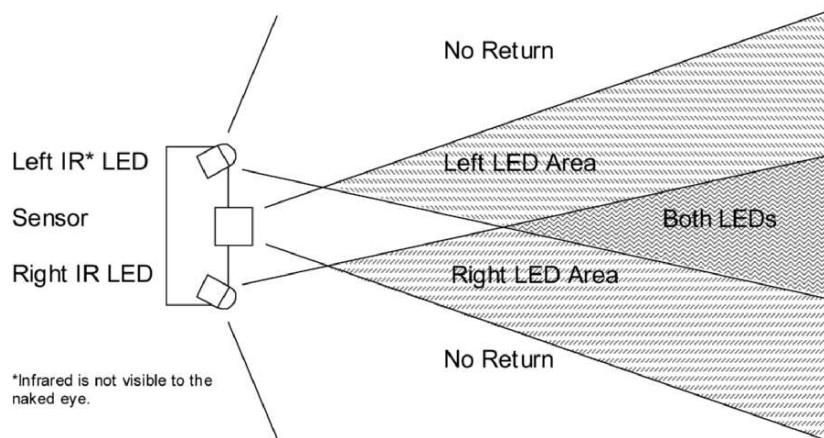


Figure 13.5 Proximity detector active sensor area.

As seen in Figure 13.6, the circuit on the IR proximity module utilizes a small feedback oscillator to set up a transmit frequency that can be easily detected by the detector module. This module utilizes a band-pass filter that essentially filters out ambient light. Some older first generation electronic ballasts used in commercial fluorescent lights can interfere with the IR sensors since they operate at the same frequency as the filter. Newer ballasts now operate at a higher frequency since they also caused problems with IR TV remote control signals.

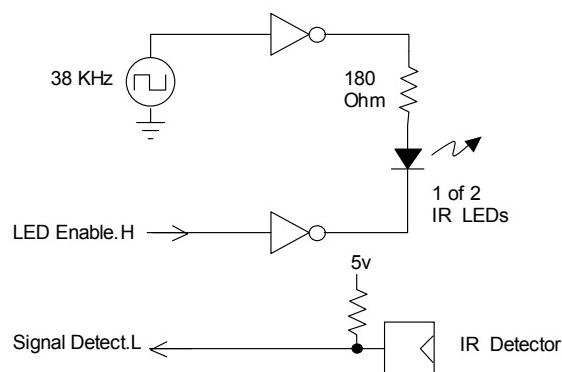


Figure 13.6 Circuit layout of one LED and the receiver module on the infrared detector.

In Figure 13.6, when the Left_LED Enable signal is High, the Low side of the IR LED is pulled to ground. This forces a voltage drop across the LED at the frequency of the 5v to ground oscillating signal. In other words, the LED produces IR light pulses at 38 kHz. Using a 38 kHz signal helps reduce noise from other ambient light sources.

Since the IR sensor has an internal band-pass filter centered at 38 kHz, the detector is most sensitive to the transmitted oscillating light. The 5v pull-up resistor allows the IR Detector's open collector output to pull up the SOUT signal to High when no IR output is sensed. To detect right and left differences, the right and left LEDs are alternately switched so that the detected signals are not ambiguous. If both the left and right LEDs detect an object at the same time, the object is in front of the sensor.

If the IR sensor was built from component parts, a hardware timer implemented on the UP3 board could be used to supply the 38-40 kHz signal. Similar IR LEDs and IR detector modules are available from Radio Shack, #276-137B, and Digikey, #160-1060. Assuming two FPGA-bots are equipped with IR sensor modules, it is also possible to use this module as a serial communication link between the robots. One FPGA-bot transmits using its IR LED and the other FPGA-bot receives it using its IR sensor. To prevent interference, the IR LEDs are turned off on the FPGA-bot acting as a receiver. Just like an IR TV

remote, the IR LED and sensor must be facing each other. Bandwidth is limited by the 38kHz modulation on the IR signal and the filters inside the IR detector. (An IR sensor strip that converts IR to visible light is available from Radio Shack. This sensor can be used to confirm the operation of IR LEDs.)

- **Wheel Encoder**

The Nubotics WW01 WheelWatcher incremental quadrature encoder system from Acroname is shown in Figure 13.7. This low-cost electronics board bolts onto the top of a standard-size R/C servo. The adhesive-backed codewheel attaches to a wheel mounted on the servo's output shaft. Two pairs of optical emitters and receivers bounce light beams off of the codewheel.

Note that there are 32 black stripes on the reflective codewheel. When the wheel is rotating, the encoder produces two series of digital pulses that are 90 degrees out of phase. When one of the pulses changes twice before the other pulse changes, the direction has been reversed. 128 clock pulses per revolution are produced and a separate direction signal indicates the current direction of rotation. By counting pulses with a counter or by accurately measuring the time between individual pulses using a fast hardware counter on the FPGA, it is possible to more accurately control the position and velocity of the servo motor. When used on robot drive motors, this optical encoder feedback provides more accurate position and speed control for the robot.

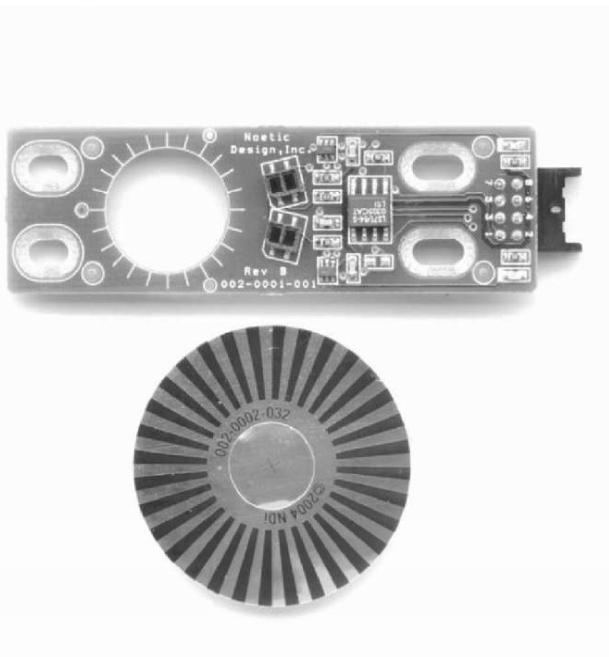


Figure 13.7 Nubotics WW-01 Wheel Watcher Incremental Encoder System.

- **Sonar Ranging Units**

The Devantech SRF10 Sonar Module is shown in Figure 13.8. This device uses ultrasonic sound waves to measure distances from a few inches to around 35 feet. They are widely used in robotics. The timing of the sound echo indicates distance to the nearest object. The transducer first functions as a transmitter by emitting several cycles of a ultrasonic signal, and then functions as a receiver to detect sound waves returned by bouncing off nearby objects. Even though ultrasound is inaudible, the transducer also generates a slight audible click each time the device transmits. The beamwidth is rather wide, and several sonar modules facing in different directions are commonly used.

The time it takes for the ultrasonic echo signal to return is measured using an IC mounted on the back side of the board. This time is converted to distance since sound travels out and back at 0.9 ms per foot. Only around 10-20 samples per second are possible with the device since it takes time to wait for echoes to return. Some sonar modules require external hardware to measure the pulse timing to produce the distance to target. The SRF10 device operates off +5V DC, and it sends distance measurements back to the host using an I²C bus. A number of other similar Sonar modules are available.

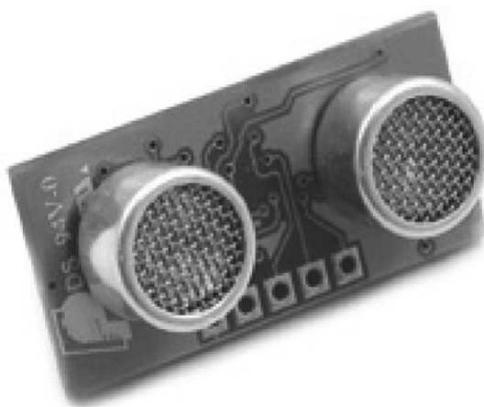


Figure 13.8 Devantech SRF10 Ultrasonic Range Finder.

- **IR Distance Sensors**

The Sharp GPD2D02 seen in Figure 13.9 is an IR device that can provide distance measurements similar to the slightly more expensive sonar sensor. This sensor has a shorter range of 10 to 80 cm (~ 4 to 32 inches). The distance is output by the sensor on a single pin as a digital 8-bit serial stream.



Figure 13.9 Sharp IR Ranging Module.

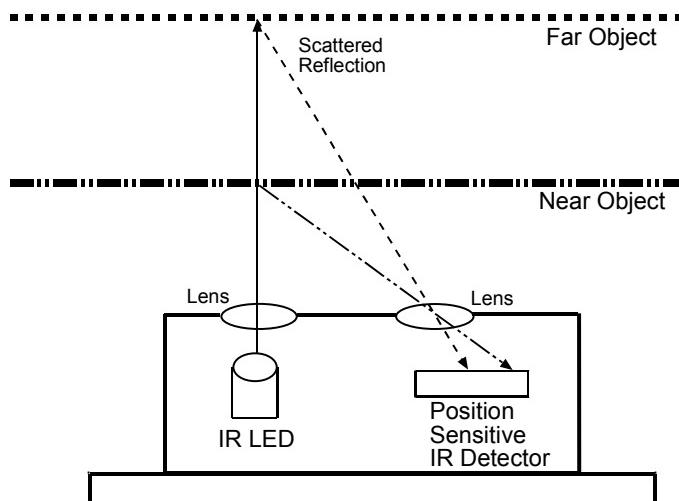


Figure 13.10 Operation of Sharp IR Ranging Module.

As shown in Figure 13.10, internally the GPD2D02 contains an IR LED and a position-sensitive IR detector. The IR LED transmits a modulated beam of infrared light. When the light strikes an object, most of the light will be reflected back to the LED. Since no surface is a perfect optical reflector, scattering of the IR beam occurs at the surface of the object and some of the light is reflected back to the position sensitive detector. By comparing the near and far object beams shown in Figure 13.10, it is apparent that the position at which the scattered reflected IR beam hits the detector is a function of the reflection angle.

The 8-bit integer value reported by the sensor in cm is approximately

$$1000 * \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{1.9}{DISTANCE} \right) + offset.$$

The constant 1.9 is the distance between the lenses in cm. The offset is the no-object present value returned by the sensor. This offset constant can vary by as much as 17 between different sensors and has a typical value of 25. Note that a close object reports a larger value and a distant object reports a smaller value. Objects closer than 10cm will report an incorrect value and should be avoided by placing the sensor away from the edge of the robot. Large objects beyond 80 cm can sometimes report an incorrect value that makes them appear closer.

A special connector (Japan Solderless Terminal #S4B-ZR) is required to connect to the GP2D02. If desoldering equipment is available, the small connector can also be desoldered from the sensor and wires attached directly to the sensor.

In addition to +5V and ground pins, the sensor has an input, Vin, and a serial output, Vout. Vin is an input to the sensor that clocks out the serial data on Vout. When Vin is Low for around 70 ms, the sensor takes a reading. When a reading is available, Vout goes High.

On each of the next eight falling clock edges of Vin, the sensor will output a new data bit. The eight data bits should be clocked into the FPGA on the rising edges of Vin (when they are stable). When clocking out the data, the clock period on Vin should be 0.4 ms or less. The eight data bits are clocked out in high to low order. If Vin is not dropped Low within 1.5 ms after clocking out the final data bit, the sensor shuts down to save power. A shift register can be used to assemble the data bits. The demo program ir_dist.bdf on the DVD contains a VHDL-based IP core for use with the GP2D02 sensor.

The sensor's Vin pin is an open-drain input. Open-drain or open-collector inputs should never be driven High. An FPGA's tri-state output pin can be connected directly to an open-drain input, if the tri-state output is never driven High. When Vin should be High, tri-state the FPGA's output pin and when the output should be Low, drive the output pin Low with the tri-state gate turned on with a low output.

Open-drain or open-collector inputs contain an internal pull-up resistor to +5V. Multiple open-drain (open-collector) outputs can be tied together to a single open drain (open-collector) input to perform a wired-AND operation. Any one of the outputs can pull the input Low. If no output pulls the signal Low, a single pull-up resistor forces the input High. This wired-AND operation occurs just by tying the open-drain (open-collector) outputs together and no physical AND gate is needed. In negative logic, a wired-OR operation occurs.

Normal gate outputs cannot be connected. This wired-AND logic only works because these gates have special output circuits that do not contain a transistor that forces the input High. This transistor is present in normal gate outputs. If a normal gate output is connected to other open-drain (open-collector) outputs,

its transistor could turn on to force the input High at the same time another gate's output transistor turns on to force it Low. This would short the power supply to ground drawing excessive current that might damage the devices. An analog and longer range version of this IR distance sensor are also available.

- **Magnetic Compass Sensors**

Various electronic components are available that detect the magnetic field of the earth to indicate direction. A low-cost digital compass sensor is shown in Figure 13.11. The Dinsmore model 1490, often used in electronic automobile compasses, is a combination of a miniature rotor jewel suspended with four Hall-effect (magnetic) switches. Four active-low outputs are provided for the four compass directions. When the module is facing North, the North output is Low and the other three outputs will be High. Eight directions are detected by the device, since two outputs can become active simultaneously. In this way, the device can indicate the four intermediate directions, NE, SE, SW, and NW. NE for example activates the active-low North and East outputs. The device can operate off +5V.

Mount any compass device as far away from motors as possible to avoid magnetic interference from the magnets inside the motor. Four 2.2K ohm pull-up resistors to +5V are required to interface to the UP3 board, since the four digital output pins, N, S, E, and W, all have open-collector outputs. Just like a real compass, a time delay is needed after a quick rotation to allow the outputs to stabilize. If the compass module leads are carefully bent, the compass module and the four required pull-up resistors can be mounted on a standard 20-pin DIP, machined-pin, wire-wrap socket and connected to the UP3 header socket.

An analog version of the device is available with 1-degree accuracy, but it requires an analog-to-digital conversion chip or signal phase timing for interfacing.

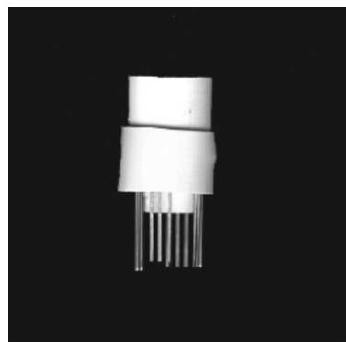


Figure 13.11 Dinsmore 1490 Digital Compass Sensor.

- **Electronic Compass Sensors**

Low-cost electronic compass modules are also available that detect the magnetic field of the earth to indicate direction. The cost is two to three times that of the mechanical compass described in the previous section. New generation electronic compass modules offer more accuracy and faster settling times than mechanical compass sensors. An electronic compass module from PNI is shown in Fig. 13.12. This module contains a 2-axis magneto-inductive sensor and an ASIC. Heading information and magnetic field measurement data is available using a digital SPI serial interface.

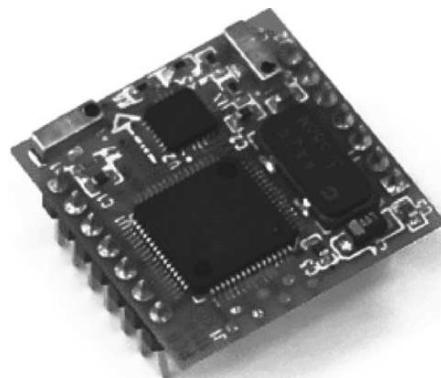


Figure 13.12 PNI Electronic Compass Module.

- **Low-cost Gyros and Accelerometers**

Gyros and accelerometers are useful sensors for robots that need a balance sense. This can include robots that balance on two wheels like the Segway Human Transporter, robots that walk on two legs, and even robots that fly. Gyros and accelerometers have traditionally been used in aircraft autopilots and inertial measurement units (IMUs). Helicopters use a gyro to stabilize and control the tail rotor. Recently, Microelectromechanical Systems (MEMS) technology has produced small low-cost piezo-gyroscope and accelerometer ICs. These devices were originally used in automobile airbags. The gyros output a voltage level that is proportional to the speed or rate of the tilt angle changes. An analog-to-digital converter will be needed to input the gyro signal. The MEMS accelerometers output a voltage level or a pulse that changes its

duty cycle proportionally (e.g., PWM) to the tilt angle by sensing the change in acceleration due to gravity. Gyros will drift slowly over time and an accelerometer is needed to correct the gyro's drift. Without an accelerometer to correct for gyro drift, the tilt error slowly grows to the point where the robot would lose its balance. Accelerometers will respond more slowly to tilt than the gyro, so both a gyro and accelerometer is typically needed for each axis that needs a balance sense.

A complementary filter is used to combine or fuse sensor data from both the gyro and accelerometer to generate a more accurate tilt angle. Kalman filtering techniques can be used to improve the accuracy of noisy measurements. Noise levels are still somewhat high at very low G forces on these low-cost gyros and accelerometer IC sensors, so currently they are not useful for navigation since they cannot accurately determine the exact location of a slow moving robot by integrating the sensor measurements over time.

Analog Devices makes a variety of these sensors and sells small evaluation boards for them. It is likely that small low-cost sensor modules containing both a MEMS gyro and an accelerometer with a microcontroller will be available commercially in the near term.

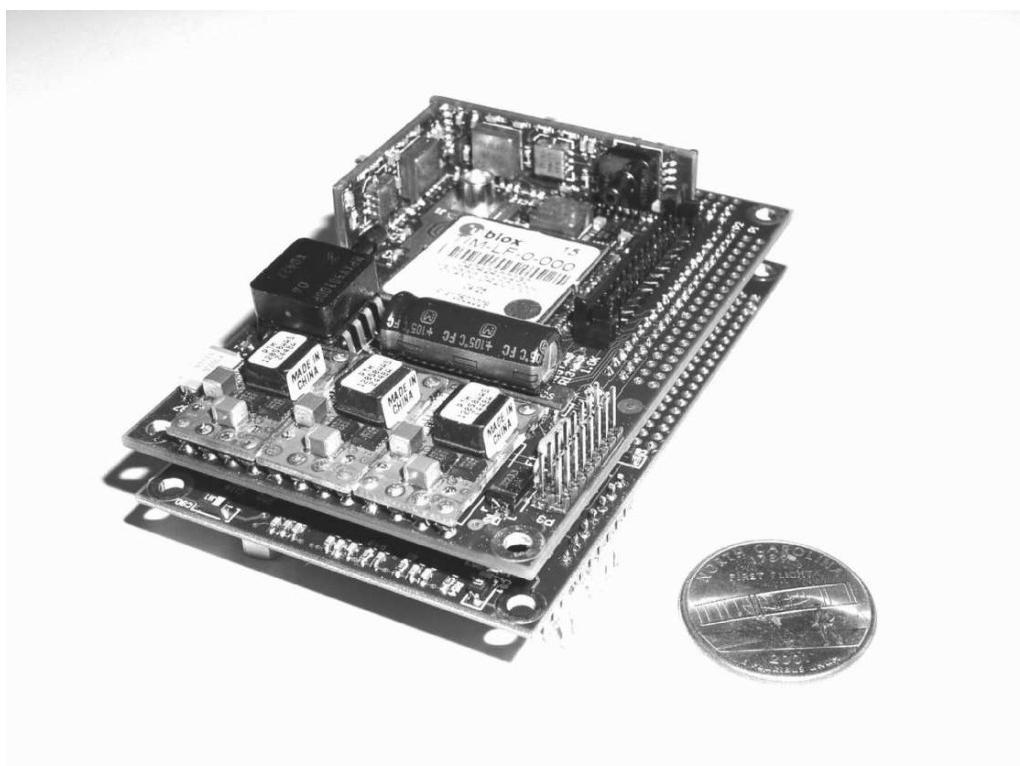


Figure 13.13 Small sensor board for an aircraft autopilot system. Photograph ©2004 courtesy of Henrik Christoffersen , Georgia Institute of Technology Unmanned Aerial Research Facility.

Figure 13.13 shows a sensor board for an autopilot system that is used for unmanned aircraft. In the top corner, three MEMS gyros and accelerometers are mounted at right angles to provide data on all three axes. The white square flat module between the two vertical assemblies is a GPS receiver. The black square ICs at each end of the vertical assemblies are airspeed and altitude sensors. An A/D chip with an SPI interface is used to read sensors that have analog voltage outputs. The three square modules near the bottom edge of the board are DC to DC voltage converters. The lower board contains an FPGA and a DSP processor.

- **GPS and DGPS receivers**

The Global Positioning System was built by the US Department of Defense to provide highly precise worldwide positioning. Triangulation using radio signals from several satellites provides a position accurate to 25 meters. With an additional land-based correction signal, Differential GPS (DGPS) improves the accuracy to 3 meters. DGPS receivers provide ideal position data for robot navigation. Unfortunately, with current systems you are not likely to receive the GPS radio signals indoors in most buildings, so their use is typically limited to larger more rugged outdoor robots. Low-cost single chip GPS modules such as the Motorola FS Oncore seen in Figure 13.14 or the Ublox in Figure 13.13 are currently available. An SPI serial interface is supported. A new generation of highly sensitive GPS systems is being developed that may function indoors in some buildings.

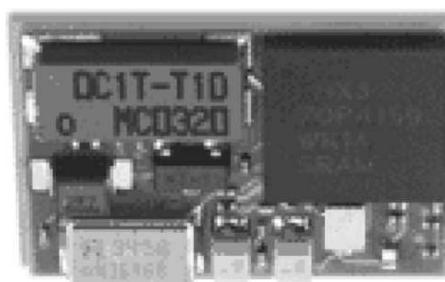


Figure 13.14 Motorola Single Chip GPS module.

- **Thermal Image Sensors**

Low-cost thermal image sensors can provide thermal imaging data for robots. Most thermal sensors such as those used in motion detectors and burglar alarms detect only movement. Thermopile sensors measure the temperature of a heat source. One such sensor, the Devantech TPA81 Thermopile Array is shown in Figure 13.15. It contains 8 Pyro-electric sensors arranged in a column that

detect infra-red in the radiant heat range of 2um to 22um range. It contains an on-board PIC microcontroller.

When the sensor is mounted on a servo, it can be used to horizontally scan an area and generate a thermal image. Candle flames and human body heat can be detected several feet away at room temperature. It uses an I²C bus for interfacing to the host controller.

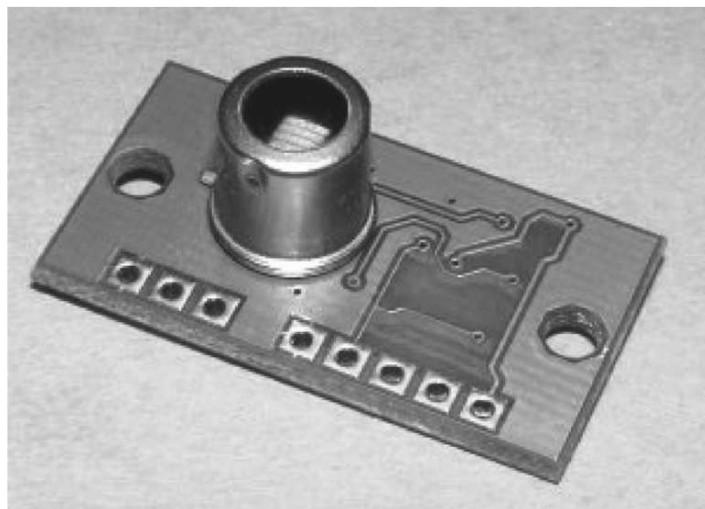


Figure 13.15 Devantech TPA81 Eight Pixel Thermal Array Sensor.

- **Solid State Cameras**

Low-cost solid state cameras can provide visual sensors for robots. Keep in mind that advanced image processing and visual pattern recognition requires complex algorithms that need a lot of processing power. The CMUCAM2 developed at Carnegie Mellon University seen in Figure 13.16 contains a PIC microcontroller and can transfer image data using a serial connection. It can track color blobs and report their location and size in an image at 26 to 50 frames per second.

Low-cost USB cameras are another option, but they will require a USB core interface and additional image processing. The low-cost CMOS color camera assembly OV6620 or OV7620 used in the CMUCAM2 module from Omnivision (www.ovt.com) can also be directly interfaced to an FPGA. It uses an I²C interface for camera control signals and a separate parallel bus is used to transfer image data.



Figure 13.16 The CMUCAM2 contains a color video camera on a chip and a microcontroller.

13.6 Assembly of the FPGA-bot Body

Assembly of the FPGA-bot can be accomplished in about an hour. A drill or drill press, screwdriver, scissors, a soldering iron, and a wire stripper are the only tools required. First, obtain the parts in the parts list. Next, drill out the holes in the round Plexiglas base (part #15) as shown in Figure 13.17. The mounting holes will move around depending on which FPGA board is used. The DE2 board is a bit larger than the other boards and you may want to increase the size of the plastic base to accommodate it or mount it on long standoffs well above the servo wheels.

To prevent scratches, leave the paper covering on the Plexiglas until all of the holes are marked and drilled out. The front of the base is on the right side in Figure 13.17. The wheel slots are symmetric with respect to the center of the circle.

Proper alignment of the four screw mounting holes for the FPGA board is critical. Unscrew the four standoffs from the bottom of the FPGA board. Carefully place it towards the rear of the plastic base as shown in Figure 13.17, and mark the location of the screw holes using a pen or pencil. Any FPGA board can also be used, but the mounting holes will be in different locations. Leave extra space in front of the FPGA board on the plastic base for use by forward facing sensor modules as seen in Figures 13.1 and 13.9. Double check that the board clears the top of the servo wheels once it is mounted. Longer standoffs can also be used to clear the wheels, if needed. Locate the cable and switch holes as shown in Figure 13.17. Exact positioning on these holes is not critical. If one is available, use an automatic center punch to help align the drill holes. The board's expansion header pins should face towards the front of the

base so that it is easy to attach the sensors. Re-attach the standoffs to the FPGA board and set it aside. After all holes are drilled, remove the paper covering the Plexiglas.

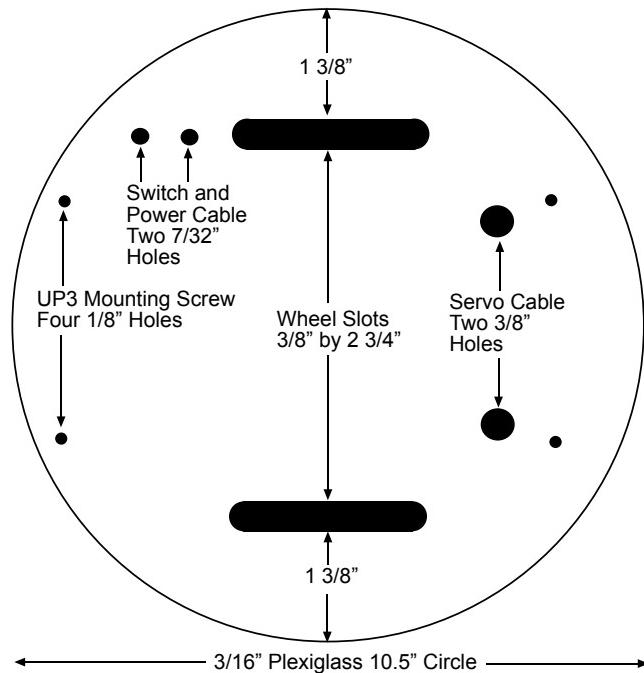


Figure 13.17 FPGA-bot Plexiglas Base with wheel slots and approximate drill hole locations for the UP3 board. Verify the exact dimensions and mounting hole locations for each individual FPGA board.

Mount the toggle switch (part #8) in the hole provided in the base. If available, Loctite or CA glue can be used on the switch mounting threads to prevent the switch nut from working lose. Solder the red wire (+7.2V) from the battery connector to one of the switch contacts. This is the connector with wires that plugs into the battery pack connector (part #4). Solder one of the twin lead wires (part #9) to the other switch terminal. Solder the other twin lead wire to the black (GND) battery connector wire and insulate the splice with heat shrink tubing or electrical tape (part #10).

Route the twin lead wire through the hole provided in the base. A small knot in the twin lead on the bottom side of the base can be used for strain relief. Solder the power connector (part #11) to the other end of the twin lead wire on the top of the base. The center conductor is +7.2V and the outer conductor is ground on the power connector.

Check the power connections with an ohmmeter for shorts and proper polarity before connecting the battery. For strain relief and extra insulation, consider sealing up the power connector with Silicone RTV or insulating one of the wire connections with heat shrink tubing. Be careful, NiCAD and NiMH batteries have been known to explode or catch on fire, if there is a short. A fuse on the battery power wire might be a good idea, if you are prone to shorting out circuits.

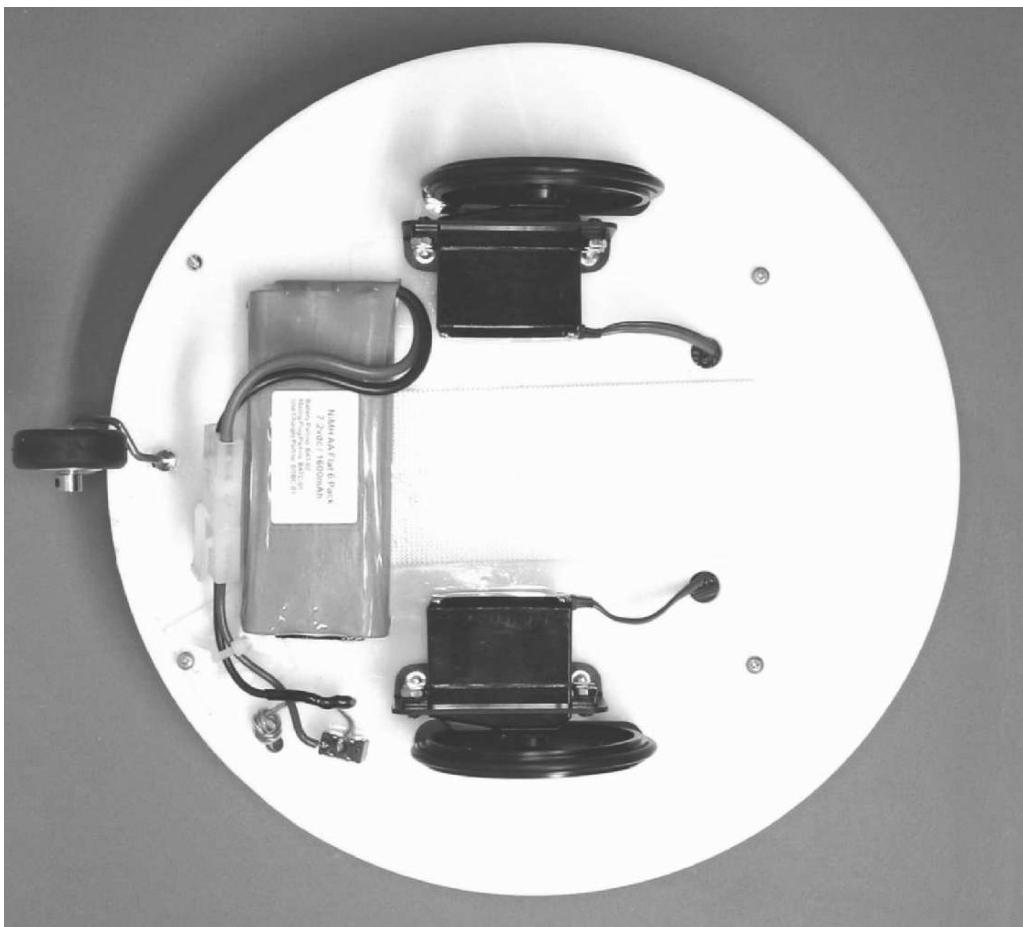


Figure 13.18 Bottom view of FPGA-bot base showing battery, servos, wheels, and cabling.

Attach the battery pack (part #2) to the bottom of the Plexiglas base with sticky-back Velcro (part #16). Figure 13.18 is a close-up photo of the bottom side of the FPGA-bot. A NiMH battery pack is shown in Figure 13.18. If you use a larger NiCAD battery pack, it can be mounted in the middle of the base about one inch off center towards the rear wheel, with the battery pack connector facing the rear.

The battery is moved towards the rear for balance to place the weight on the rear skid. The Velcro on the base should be around 2 inches longer than the battery pack towards the rear of the robot to allow for positioning of the battery later on to balance the robot. The wire and connector on the battery pack should also be attached to the base to prevent it from dragging on the floor. Attach a small piece of Velcro on the rear of the connector so that the battery wires can be attached to the base. Attach the battery pack to the base.

On UP3, UP2, and UP1 boards, solder a 60-pin female header socket (part #7) to the expansion header B location. Attach the FPGA board to the top of the base with 4-40 screws (part #18), using the hex spacers provided on the FPGA board (part #14). Figure 13.19 is a close-up photo of the top of the FPGA-bot. Double check power connections and polarity with an ohmmeter. The inner contact on the power connector should be +7.2V, the outer contact is ground, and the toggle switch should turn it off. Then plug the power connector into the FPGA board. Plug in the battery connector and flip the power switch. An LED should light up on the FPGA board indicating power on. The Cyclone expansion B header socket faces the front of the robot. DE2 and DE1 boards already have expansion sockets soldered to the board.

Mount the wheels (part #5) on two modified servos (part #3). If you are not using the special servo wheels, you may need to enlarge the hole in the center of each wheel by drilling it out partially with a drill bit that is the same size as the servo output shaft. The depth of the hole should be slightly shorter than the servo output shaft and not all the way through the wheel, so that the wheel does not contact the servo body. The servo output shaft screw is inserted on the side of the wheel with the smaller hole. A washer may be required on the servo screw. The wheel should not contact the servo case and must be mounted so that it is straight on the servo. CA glue or Blue Loctite can also be used to attach the wheels and screws more securely to the servo output shaft.

Attach the servos to the bottom of the base using double sided foam tape (part #17) or a more durable servo mounting bracket. The servo body faces toward the center of the base. Be sure to carefully center the wheels in the plastic-base wheel slot. If you are using foam tape, make sure all surfaces are clean and free of grease, so that the foam tape adhesive will work properly. Lightly sanding the servo case and adding a drop of CA glue helps with tape adhesion. Route the servo connector and wire through the holes provided in the base.

Attach a tail wheel to the base or a skid (part #19) at the rear of the battery pack using layers of foam tape as needed. Move the battery as needed so that the robot has proper balance and rests on the two wheels and the rear skid.

Attach another skid to the front of the battery pack using several layers of foam tape. The front skid should not contact the floor and at least $\frac{1}{4}$ inch of clearance is recommended. The front skid only serves to prevent the robot from tipping forward during abrupt stops.

On the UP3, attach a 3-pin .1 inch header (part #9) to the small wire wrap protoboard in an open area. One is required for each servo on the robot. Solder wires from the appropriate pins J2 and J3 connections on the protoboard to the new header pins. The three wires on the servo are Vcc (4.8 to 6 volts), ground,

and the PCM control signal wire. Some manufacturers' servos have different power connections, but they all have three pins. Wrap extra servo wire around the hex spacers underneath the UP3 board.

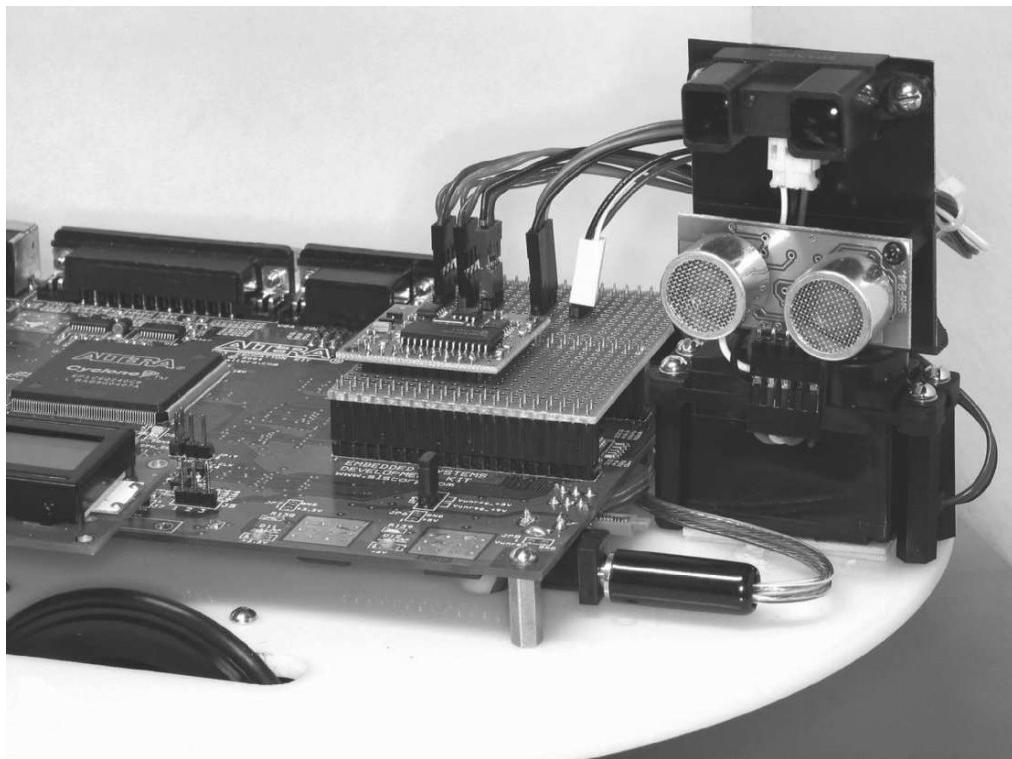


Figure 13.19 Top View of FPGA-bot Base with Compass, IR, and Sonar Sensor Modules. A UP3 FPGA board is shown, but any FPGA board can be used.

Optional sensor modules such as the IR proximity detector or line tracker can be attached to the base unit with foam tape. Run wires from the sensors to the expansion connectors. A small .1 inch wire wrap protoboard with 40-pin female header connectors soldered to the protoboard as shown in Figure 13.19 is handy for making servo and sensor connections to the FPGA board. In Figure 13.19, a third servo is used to make a sensor turret for IR and Sonar distance sensors.

- **Parts List for the FPGA-bot**

1. **An Altera FPGA Board.** The FPGA board serves as the controller for the FPGA-bot. It is attached to the FPGA-bot body with screws. No modifications are required to the board. Any of the Altera FPGA boards can be used, but mounting holes will be in different locations.

- **Parts Available from a Hobby Store**

2. **A 7.2V to 8.4V 1300-1700mAh Rechargeable NiCAD battery pack with the standard Kyosho battery connector.** This is a standard R/C car part, and it is used to power the FPGA-bot. For a small additional cost, new NiMH batteries are also available that store almost twice the energy per weight. The battery will need to be charged prior to first use.
3. **Two modified R/C Servomotors.** Two identical model servos are required so that the motors run at the same speed. Servo modifications are described in section 13.3. Any servo should work. The following servos have been tested: Tower Hobbies TS53J, Futaba S148 and S3003, and HS 300. Some manufacturers' servos appear to run in the reverse direction. This is easily fixed in the hardware design since the motor controller is implemented on the UP3 board. Several robot parts vendor sell modified servos for a slightly higher cost. Ball bearing servos are worth the extra cost, if you intend to run the robot constantly for several months. A third unmodified servo will be needed if you want a rotating sensor turret as shown on the example FPGA-bot photo.
4. **Kyosho Female Battery connector with wire leads, Duratrax or Tower Hobbies #DTXC2280.** This is used to connect to battery. A connector is needed so that the battery can be disconnected from the FPGA-bot and connected to a charger.
5. **Two Acroname or Lynxmotion servo wheels.** These wheels are 2 ¾ plastic wheels that are designed to attach to the servo's output shaft spline. Prather Products 2½-inch aluminum racing wheels with rubber O ring tires, Tower Hobbies #PRAQ1810 or Hayes Products #114, 2 ¼-inch hard plastic racing wheels (also available from Tower Hobbies) can be used as a substitute. These somewhat smaller two alternative wheels will work, but they do not have the spline to match the servo output shaft and are a bit more difficult to connect reliably than the Acroname or Lynxmotion servo wheels.
6. **A Castering Wheel or Two small Teflon or Nylon Furniture Slides.** There is a bit too much mechanical play in common furniture casters for a small robot and they tend to randomly deflect the robots direction after sharp turns. Lynxmotion's #TWA-01 is a mini castering robot tail wheel built using an R/C airplane tail wheel that works well. The mounting wire needs to be bent a little off center so that the wheel quickly rotates to the direction of travel. Other robot parts vendors such as Acroname also have robot tail wheels, but a spacer may be required to adjust the height. The battery will need to be moved a bit and perhaps rotated ninety degrees to accommodate them and still maintain proper balance on the robot base. Magic Sliders 7/8-inch diameter circular discs also work well on flat surfaces. The slides are used as a skid instead of a third wheel on the FPGA-bot. Metal or hard plastic will also work. Attached to the bottom of the battery with several layers of foam tape, an optional front skid can be used for stability during abrupt stops. On flat surfaces, a Teflon skid actually works better than a common small furniture caster from a hardware store.

7. **A charger for the 7.2V or 8.4V battery pack.** An adjustable DC power supply can be used to charge the battery if it is properly adjusted and timed so that the battery is not overcharged. Overcharged batteries will get hot and will have a shorter life. Automatic peak-detection quick chargers are the easiest and most foolproof to use. These chargers shut off automatically when the battery is charged. One quick charger can be used for several robots as a full charge is achieved in less than 30 minutes with around 5 Amps maximum charge current. Inexpensive trickle battery chargers deliver only around 75 mA of charge current, and they will require several hours charge the battery.

- **Parts Available from an Electronics Parts Store**

8. **Three 40-pin .1-inch double row PC board mount female header sockets, DigiKey #S4310 or equivalent.** These sockets are soldered into a small 0.1" center wire wrap protoboard that fits into the Santa Cruz Expansion connector on the UP3. This is used to connect servos and sensors to the UP3 board.
9. **A 2 to 3 inch strip of .1" single row breakaway headers. DigiKey #S1021-36 or equivalent** These headers are used to make custom servo and sensor connectors on the protoboard. They can be soldered to the protoboard.
10. **A small wire wrap protoboard with holes on .1" centers cut down to 2" by 2.8".** A This is used to make a protoboard for use with the UP3 board. The protoboard contains connectors for servos and sensor. A protoboard with solder pads makes it easier to mount the connectors.
11. **A miniature toggle switch with solder lug connections.** The switch should have a contact rating of more than two amps (Radio Shack #275-635B or equivalent). Only two contacts or single pole single throw (SPST) is needed on the switch to turn power on and off. If all of your servos and sensors connect to the UP3 and do not use the unregulated supply, you could eliminate the switch by using the UP3's power switch.
12. **Approximately 9 inches of small-gauge twin-lead speaker wire.** This part is used to connect power to the UP3 board. The wire must fit into the DC power plug (part# 11). Typically, 20-22 gauge wire is required. Two individual wires can also be used, but twin lead is preferred.
13. **A 1-inch piece of small heat shrink tubing or electrical tape.** This part is used to insulate a splice in the twin-lead power wire.
14. **A Coaxial DC Power Plug with 5mm O.D. and 2.1mm I.D., Radio Shack Number 274-1567 or equivalent.** This power plug fits the power socket on the UP3 board. A different size plug is needed for the UP2 board, use #274-1568 that has a 2.5mm I.D.
15. **An assortment of small wire jumpers and connectors to attach wires to the male headers on the UP3.** These are the jumper wires commonly used for protoboards. Two

short jumpers are used to connect the two servo signal wires, and other jumpers are used to any connect sensor boards.

16. **Four, 1-inch hex spacers with 4-40 threads or use the shorter spacers that come with the board.** These are used to mount the UP3 board to the Plexiglas base using the holes in the UP3 board.

- **Parts Available from a Hardware Store**

17. **3/16-inch thick Plexiglas cut into a 10.5-inch diameter circle.** This part is the base of the robot. Colored Plexiglas such as opaque white, will not show scratches as easy as clear. Holes to cutout and drill are shown in Figure 13.11. If a band saw, jig saw, or other machine tool is not available, a local plastics fabricator can cut this out. When using a number of very large sensors or a DE2 board, it may be necessary to increase the size slightly or add another circular deck for sensor mounting. A larger robot requires more space for maneuvering. To prevent scratches on the Plexiglas, keep the paper backing on the plastic until all of the holes have been marked and drilled out. The size of the wheel slots may need to change depending on the wheels you select.
18. **One 8-inch long strip of 2-inch wide sticky-back Velcro.** Two 8-inch long strips, 1 inch wide can also be used. The Velcro is used to attach the battery to the bottom of the Plexiglas base. Since the battery is attached with Velcro and a connector, it can be quickly replaced and removed for charging.
19. **Approximately 8 inches of 1-inch wide double-sided 3M foam tape.** This is used to attach servos, skids, and optional sensor boards to the base. Be sure to clean surfaces to remove any grease or oil prior to application of the tape for better adhesion. For a more durable servo mount, Lynxmotion has aluminum servo mounting brackets that can be used instead of the double sided tape.
20. **Four 4-40 Screws 5/16-inch or slightly longer.** The screws are used to attach the UP3 board to Plexiglas. The screws thread into the hex spacers attached to the UP3 board.
21. **Blue Loctite, Cyanoacrylate (CA) Glue, and Clear Silicone RTV.** These adhesives and glues are useful to secure screws, servos, and wheels. The mechanical vibration on moving robots tends to shake parts loose over time. These items can also be found at most hobby shops. Only a few drops are needed for a single robot. A single tube or container will build several robots.

13.7 I/O Connections to the board's Expansion Headers

Most servos and sensor I/O signals will need to be attached to an expansion header. Many FPGA pins are now 3.3V. R/C Servos and most sensors use 5V, but be sure to check the device's datasheet. Don't forget to connect a ground signal between the device and the FPGA board, even if the device has its own power supply or a direct connection to a battery. Several ground and power pins

are available on the FPGA board's expansion headers. A 5V 1A power supply pin is available on the UP3's J2 expansion connector. J4 has a 3.3V supply connection pin and JP6 can be used as another 5V supply connection.

A small protoboard can be built to connect servos and sensors to the FPGA board. All of the connectors and pins on the boards line up on tenth inch centers. A 0.1" perfboard or wire wrap protoboard can be cut down to 2" by 2 7/8" so that it fits over J1, J2, J3, and J4. 0.1" 40 pin connectors to attached the protoboard to connect to J1..4 can be mounted on the protoboard. A wire warp protoboard with holes every .1" has solder pads that can be used to attach connectors using solder. Point to point wiring and soldering can be used to make connections on the protoboard from the J1..J4 connectors to the .1" connectors used to attach servos and sensors. Small single row strips of .1" header pins can be snapped apart to make male connectors on the board for the servos and most sensors.

You may want to consider isolating your robot's servo or motor power supply from the supply used for the FPGA board's logic to control the noise generated on the supply lines by the DC motors. On larger robots, two batteries are sometimes used. A $V_{unregulated}$ connection that does not go through the 5V regulator and is connected directly to the UP3's power input jack is available on JP8 and J4. The 9V supply is connected after the input power switch on the UP3 and to JP5. This also can be used to power servos and motors, assuming the battery voltage level is not too high. If the battery voltage is too high, another regulator can be used for the motors.

At a minimum, decoupling capacitors connected across the servo's power supply connections are a good idea. If you plan on having several sensors on your robot, you may want to consider building a small PCB with header pins for the sensor power and data connections as seen in Figure 13.19. Most R/C servos can run on 4.8 to 6V.

13.8 Robot Projects Based on R/C Toys, Models, and Robot Kits

A second option for building an FPGA driven robot involves modifying a low-cost radio-controlled (R/C) car or truck. Fundamentally, almost any large R/C car or truck can be modified to work with the Altera board, although some are clearly better choices than others.

In our robot, we used a Radio Shack (www.radioshack.com) R/C 4WD SUV shown in Figure 13.20. The R/C platform affords a more robust drive train and control; however, turning radius and noise levels are sacrificed over the smaller FPGA-bot. The R/C SUV has a spring suspension and large soft tires that make it operable outdoors on rougher surfaces. Following are some R/C car selection considerations that will affect available modifications and control of the new platform.

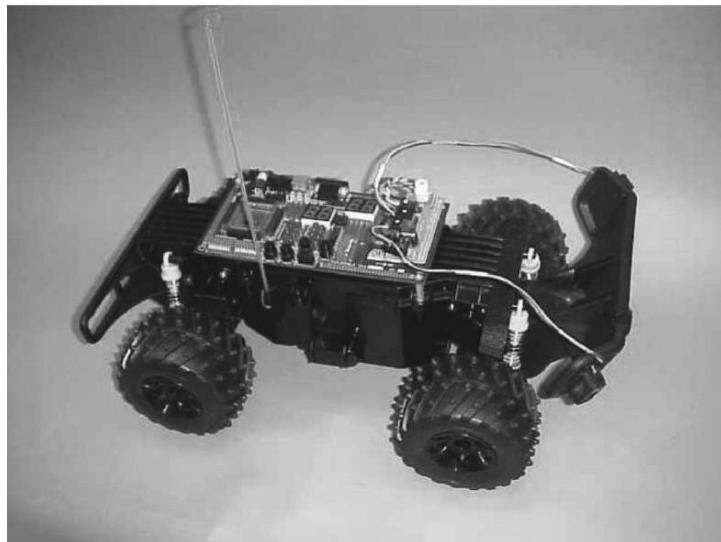
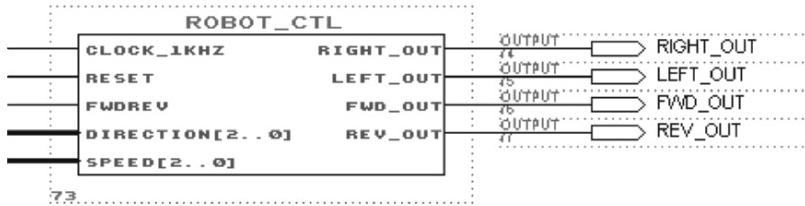


Figure 13.20 FPGA Controlled Toy R/C Truck with IR Distance Sensors.

- **Seven-Function Controls**

When choosing an R/C car, select one that has a remote control with at least seven remote functions (forward, backward, forward-right, forward-left, backward-right, backward-left, and stop). Note that these low-cost R/C cars do not have variable speed or variable turning controls; however, once they are interfaced to the FPGA board, variable speed and turning can be accomplished by changing the duty cycle of the command signals. (More on this later.)

A control module built using the FPGAs logic allows a relatively inexpensive R/C car to perform with the capabilities of the more expensive cars with “digital proportional steering” and “digital proportional speed controls.” Once interfaced to the FPGA board, an IP core (Robot_CTL) is used to handle control of all direction and speed control outputs. As illustrated in Figure 13.21, the IP core control module affords a higher degree of control than the original radio control. The outputs connect to the R/C cars internal control circuits that drive the DC Motors.



FwdRev	1 Bit	0 = Forward/1 = Reverse
Direction	3 Bits	First bit Left/Right, 2 nd and 3 rd bit is angle. 0-00 = Left – Straight* 0-01 = Left – Slight Turn 0-10 = Left – Medium Turn 0-11 = Left – Full Turn 1-00 = Right – Straight* 1-01 = Right – Slight Turn 1-10 = Right – Medium Turn 1-11 = Right – Full Turn
		* Note: 000 and 100 are both Straight
Speed	3 Bits	000 = Stop 001 = Slowest Speed ::: 111 = Fastest Speed

Figure 13.21 Robot Control IP Core with Pulsed Speed & Steering Control.

- **Speed**

When considering the speed of the vehicle, a modest speed is more desirable than the faster speeds. At 800 feet per minute, our prototype FPGA controlled robot car moves fast enough to be difficult to catch. In almost all cases, the robot is operated at half the maximum speed or less. The limiting factor is generally the delay inherent in the sensor's input sampling rate and range. A fast moving car typically will hit the wall before a collision sensor can take the data samples needed to initiate avoidance.

To control the speed (or the degree of turn) a repeated pulse train is sent to the forward or reverse signals (left or right signals for direction). Instead of a steady high signal causing the car to move forward at full speed, the pulse train varies the duty cycle to change speed (or degree of turn). By modulating the duty cycle of the pulse train, “digital proportional control” can be implemented on each control signal. In other words, changing the duty cycle can control the speed and the degree of turn. The more the duty cycle approaches 100%, the harder the turn and/or the faster the speed.

The frequency of the pulsed control signal used must be higher than the natural mechanical frequency response of the system. A very slow changing pulse will cause the motor and gears to vibrate and make additional noise. Pulse frequencies of a few kHz are typically used to avoid this problem.

When reversing direction on a moving DC motor, it is common practice to include a small time delay with the motor turned off to reduce the inductive voltage spikes produced by the motor windings. Recall that changing current flow through an inductor produces voltage. Without the delay in some circuits, these high voltage spikes can damage or reduce the life of the transistors controlling the motor. This delay can be incorporated in the IP control core, if needed.

Figure 13.22 illustrates the relationship between turn angle, speed, and duty cycle on the control signals. The figure implies that the duty cycle is linear, i.e., a 50% duty cycle produces half speed. Actually, the duty cycle is very non-linear and highly dependent on the type of car, size of the DC motors, and power. (An R/C car with a dying battery performs as if the duty cycle is considerably less.) By experimenting with patterns of the 16-bit speed and direction vectors used in the IP core controller, a more linear relationship can be established between the command bit patterns and the actual performance of the vehicle.

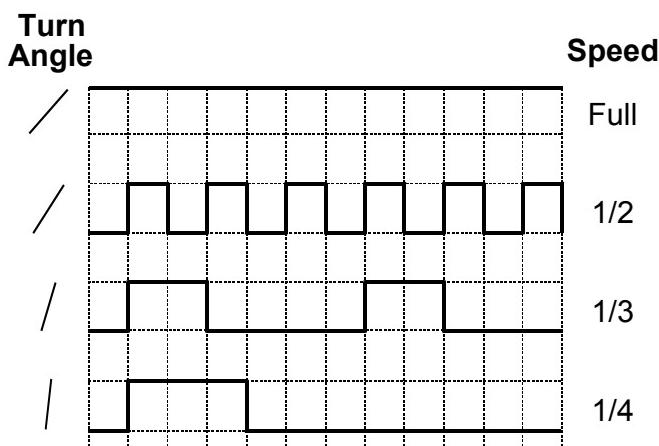


Figure 13.22 Affect of Duty Cycle on Turning Angle and Speed.

- **Battery Choice**

The choice of car will also dictate the type of batteries and charger that will be needed. Note that some cars come with 9.6V packs and others come with 7.2V packs. Both should work well with the UP3 board as a controller. The prototype used the 7.2V pack that discharged quickly and required a second pack placed in parallel with the first to support longer run times. The cars with a 9.6V pack should give the UP3 board's 5V onboard regulator a better regulator margin and a longer life between recharges.

- **Mounting the FPGA Board**

Before you select an R/C car, make sure that there is a good place to mount the FPGA board. If the car is large enough, there is usually a large flat area under the car body cover molding to secure the FPGA board.

- **Interfacing the FPGA Board to the R/C Car**

Remove appropriate body cover screws and expose the PC board receiver and control module. Most current low-cost R/C toy cars have a single electronic PC board that contains both control circuits. Generally, there is one 16 or 18-pin DIP radio command demodulator chip in the center of the board that converts the radio signals into simple digital control signals. These digital control signals then activate the H-bridge circuit that controls the DC motors that drive the wheels of the R/C car.

An H-bridge is a standard electronic circuit used to control DC motors. It allows for both forward and reverse operation of the same DC motor. H-bridge circuits contain four large power transistors that are needed to turn on and reverse a DC motor. Discrete transistors may be used to build the H-bridge or it may be in an IC or packaged module that connects directly to the motors.

NEVER ATTEMPT TO DRIVE A MOTOR OR RELAY WITH AN FPGA PIN DIRECTLY, IT CANNOT SUPPLY THE HIGH CURRENT LEVELS THAT THESE DEVICES NEED. THE FPGA'S OUTPUT PIN DRIVER CIRCUIT MAY BE DESTROYED.

If the car supports seven functions, it will have at least four pins coming off of the DIP chip package that break down into Left, Right, Forward, and Reverse. Using a voltmeter or an oscilloscope, test which pins change when the remote control is set to each of the four directions. From each of the designated command pins on the chip, the trace on the PC board will run to separate H-bridge circuits for each motor.

By clipping or desoldering and pulling out the four control pins on the chip going to the board and soldering wires from each chip pin hole pad trace to the FPGA (Figures 13.23 and 13.24), the FPGA board can control the four directions and speed of the R/C car using the car's existing H-bridge circuits. In our modification, we desoldered the entire chip and put a socket on the board. To have the original control signals coming from the radio control module also sent to the FPGA board, run four more wires from the clipped chip pins to the one of the FPGA's headers. If the four clipped chip pins (RC_x) are connected to the FPGA board, logic can be designed to include the original radio control functions supplied by the handheld remote control unit. You can also make this connection at the H-bridge circuit if necessary. On the UP3, you will want to use the UP3s 5V I/O pins for this interface.

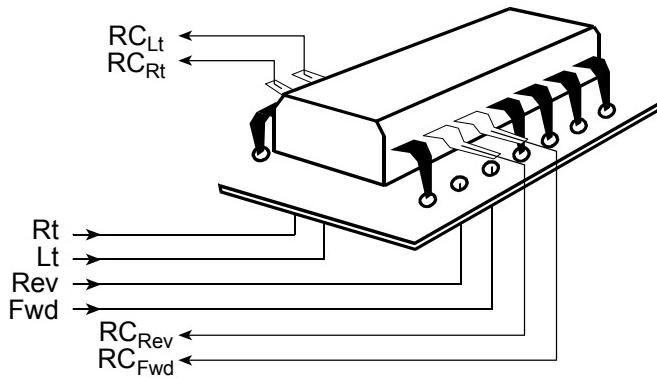


Figure 13.23 Interfacing to the R/C Car's Internal Control Signals at the Demodulator IC.

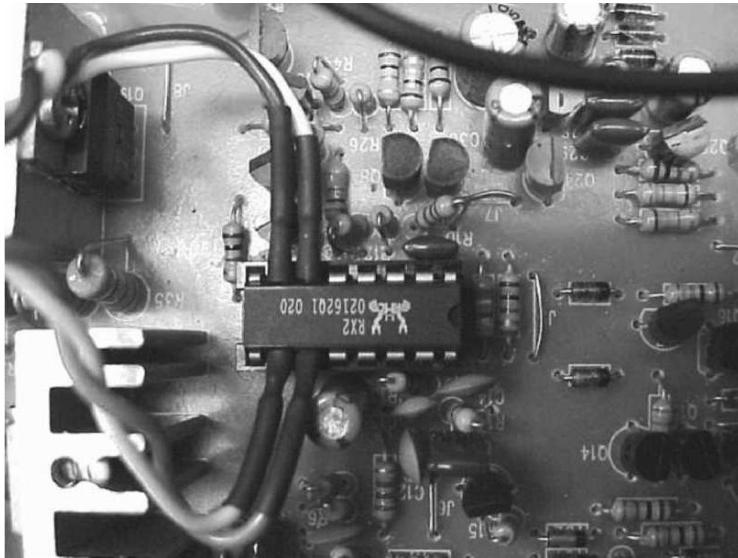


Figure 13.24 Photo Showing Control Modifications to R/C Car Control Board.

- **Hobbyist R/C Models, Robot Kits, and Commercial Robot Bases**

For those with a larger budget, higher quality R/C hobbyist cars are available with built-in proportional steering and pulsed electronic speed controls. The control interface to these cars uses standard R/C PWM signals that are identical to the PWM servo control bit described at the end of Section 13.2. An example R/C Hummer can be seen in Figure 13.25. This robot is controlled using a C program running on the FPGA's Nios processor core. Various robot kits without control electronics or a computer are also available. Almost any of these robot kits can be controlled by the UP2 or UP3 board provided they are large enough to carry it and can power it from their battery or carry a second battery for the

UP3. An interesting walking robot kit containing 12 R/C servos is seen in Figure 13.26.



Figure 13.25 Hobbyist R/C model with a CMU camera and R/C PWM servos controlled by an FPGA

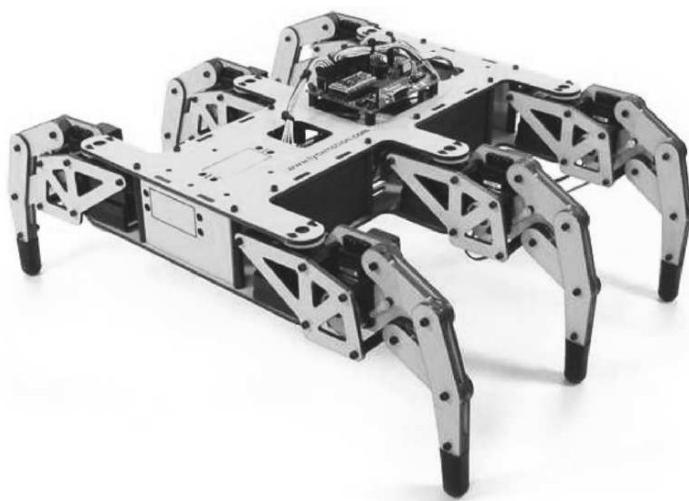


Figure 13.26 Lynxmotion Hexpod Walking Robot Kit with 12 R/C servos

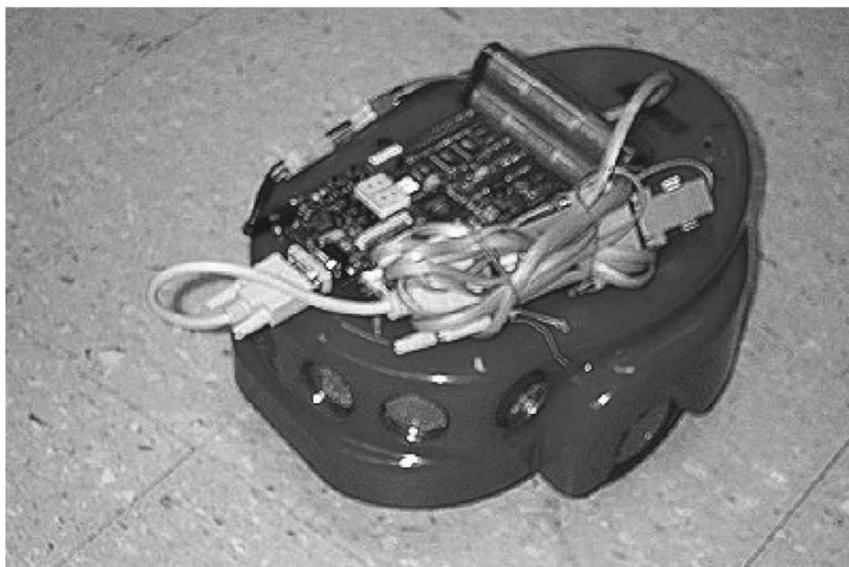


Figure 13.27 ActiveMedia's Amigobot robot base controlled by an FPGA with a Nios Processor

Some commercial robot bases are also available such as the Amigobot as seen in Figure 13.27, the ER1 from Evolution Robotics and the mobile robot platform from Drrobot. The Amigobot uses an RS-232C serial interface and the ER1 uses USB for motor control. A robot base contains a motor, drive electronics, sensors, and a battery, but it has no high-level controller.

One of the newest and most attractive low-cost options for a robot base is iRobot's iCreate robot base as seen in Figure 13.28 (www.irobot.com). It is basically a "Roomba" robotic vacuum cleaner without the vacuum parts. It contains an internal microcontroller, two drive motors with feedback, audio output, and several simple sensors (i.e., IR, bump or contact switches, and IR cliff or surface drop-off sensors). Using an RS-232 serial port, motor commands can be sent to the microcontroller and the sensor status can be read back. An FPGA board running a Nios processor can talk to the iCreate microcontroller using the RS-232 serial port. You can write the required robot application code for the Nios processor in C.

6-32 screw holes are provided on top of the base that can easily be used to mount an FPGA board using an additional flat rectangular piece of Plexiglas or Lexan. The rectangular sheet of plastic bolts to the base using the four screw holes above the open cargo area, and the FPGA board bolts to the sheet of plastic. Power can be provided at up to 1 amp using the iCreate's internal battery or there is also space in the cargo area for an additional battery pack for the FPGA board. The internal battery voltage is 18V, so a 7, 9, or 5 volt DC regulator (depends on which FPGA board) is needed to drop the voltage for the FPGA board (note: too high of a DC input voltage will overheat the FPGA board's internal DC regulator). A DB-25 connector seen at the center in Figure 13.28 provides all of the power and serial port connections needed.



Figure 13.28 iRobots iCreate robot base can be controlled by an FPGA with a Nios Processor using an RS-232 serial port to send commands to the iCreate robot's internal microcontroller. Photograph courtesy of iRobot.

Once you develop a working robot and want to run existing demos, you may want to program the FPGA board's flash memory configuration device so that your design automatically runs whenever the board is turned on.

13.9 For Additional Information

Radio-controlled cars and parts such as batteries, battery chargers, and servos can be obtained at a local hobby shop or via mail order at a lower cost from:

Tower Hobbies
P.O. Box 9078
Champaign, IL 61826-9078
800-637-6050

<http://www.towerhobbies.com>

IR Proximity, Line Tracker, Sonar sensors, Servos, Wheels, and Robot kits can be obtained via mail order from:

Lynxmotion, Inc.
104 Partridge Road
Pekin, IL 61554-1403
309-382-1254

<http://www.lynxmotion.com>

Mondotronics
4286 Redwood Highway #226
San Raphael, CA 94903
800-374-5764

Sensors & Robot kits, Servo wheels for robots, and Servo wheel encoder kits can also be obtained via mail order from:

Acroname
P.O. Box 1894
Nederland, CO 80466
303-258-3161

Low-cost digital and analog compass sensors are available via mail order from:

Dinsmore Instrument Co. <http://www.dinsmoresensors.com>
P.O. Box 345
Flint, Michigan 48501
810-744-1790

Electronic Compass Modules are available from:

PNI Corp
5464 Skylane Blvd. Suite A
Santa Rosa, CA 95403

GPS and DGPS ICs and modules are available from:

Motorola TCG
GPS Products
2900 South Diablo Way
Tempe, AZ 85282

u-blox AG
Zürcherstrasse 68
8800 Thalwil
Schweiz

A wide array of robot sensor modules is available from:

Devantech Ltd (Robot Electronics) <http://www.robot-electronics.co.uk>
Unit 2B Gilray Road
Diss
Norfolk
IP22 4EU
England

Robotics Connection
4355 Cobb Parkway
Suite J148
Atlanta, GA 30339

<http://www.roboticsconnection.com>

Spark Fun Electronics
2500 Central Ave.
Suite Q
Boulder, CO 80301

<http://www.sparkfun.com>

A wide array of various sensor and GPS boards is available from:

http://users.ece.gatech.edu/~hamblen/4006/robot_links.htm

13.10 Laboratory Exercises

1. Develop a counter design to find the dead zone of a converted R/C servo motor. The dead or null zone is the time near 1.5ms that actually makes the servo motor stop moving. As in the example motor driver code, send a width adjusted pulse every 20ms. You will need a resolution of at least .01ms to find the dead zone, so a clock faster than the example code is required. For example, the motor might actually stop at 1.54ms instead of 1.50ms. Use the clk_div FPGACore function to provide the clock. The design should increase the width of the timing pulse if one pushbutton is hit and decrease the width if the other pushbutton is hit. Display the width of the timing pulse in the seven-segment LEDs. Use a Cyclone DIP-switch input to select the motor to examine. By hitting the pushbuttons, you should be able to stop and reverse the motor. The dead zone will be between the settings where the drive wheel reverses direction. At the dead zone, the drive wheel should stop. Settings near the dead zone will make the motor run slower. Record the dead zone for both the left and right motor.
2. Using the dead zone settings from problem 1, design a motor speed controller. Settings within around .2ms of the dead zone will make the motor run slower. The closer to the dead zone the slower the motor will run. Include at least four speed settings for each motor. See if you can get the robot to move in a straight line at a slow speed.
3. Develop a speed controller for the robot drive motors by pulsing the drive motors on and off. The motors are sent a pulse of 1ms for reverse and 2ms for forward at full speed. If no pulse is sent for 20ms, the motor stops. If a motor is sent a 1 or 2ms pulse followed by no pulse in a repeating pattern, it will move slower. To move even slower use pulse, no pulse, no pulse in a repeating pattern. To move faster use pulse, no pulse, pulse in a repeating pattern. Using this approach, develop a speed controller for the robot with at least five speeds and direction. Send no pulse for the stop speed. Some additional mechanical noise will result from pulsing the motors at slow speeds. See if the robot will move in a straight line at a slow speed.
4. Use an IR LED and IR sensor to add position feedback to the motors. You can build it yourself or a similar servo wheel encoder kit built by Nubotics is available from Acroname. Some sensor modules are available that have both the IR LED and IR sensor mounted in a single plastic case. For reflective sensors, mark the wheels with radial black

paint stripes or black drafting tape and count the pulses from the IR sensor to determine movement of the wheel. Another option would be to draw the radial stripes using a PC drawing program and print it on clear adhesive labels made for laser printers. The labels could then be placed on the flat side of the wheel. If a transmissive sensor arrangement is used, holes can be drilled in the main wheel or a second smaller slotted wheel could be attached to the servo output shaft that periodically interrupts the IR light beam from the LED to the sensor. In this case, the LED and sensor are mounted on opposite sides of the wheel. This same optical sensing technique is used in many mice to detect movement of the mouse ball. Use the position feedback to implement more accurate variable speed and position control for the motors.

5. Design a state machine using a counter/timer that will move the robot in the following fixed pattern:

- Move forward for 6 seconds.
- Turn right and go forward for 4 seconds (do not count the time it takes to turn).
- Turn left and go forward for 2 seconds.
- Stop, pause for 2 seconds, turn 180 degrees, and start over.

Determine the amount of time required for 90- and 180-degree turns by trial and error. A 10Hz or 100Hz clock should be used for the timer. Use the clk_div FPGACore to divide the UP3 on-board clock. The state machine should check the timer to see if the correct amount of time has elapsed before moving to the next state in the path. The timer is reset when moving to a new portion of the path. Use an initial state that turns off the motors until a pushbutton is hit, so that it is easier to control the robot during download. Since there is no motor position feedback, all turns and the actual distance traveled by the FPGA-bot will vary slightly.

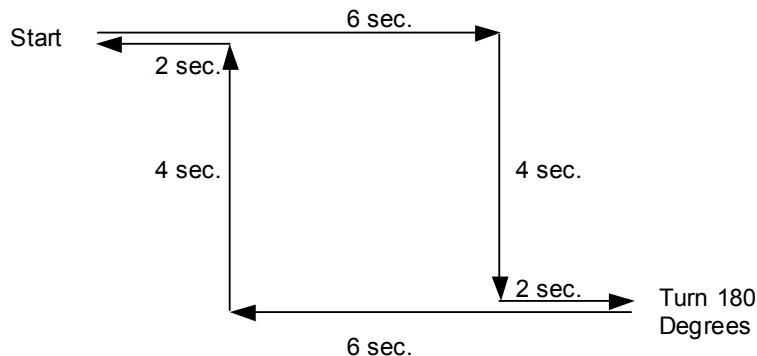


Figure 13.29 Simple path for state machine without sensor response.

6. Using a ROM, develop a ROM-based state machine that reads a motor direction and time from the ROM. Put a complex pattern such as a dance step in the ROM using a MIF file. For looping, another field in the ROM can be used to specify a jump to a different next address.

7. Using the keyboard FPGACore, design an interface to the keyboard that allows the keyboard to be used as a remote control device to move the robot. Pick at least five different keys to command to robot to move, turn left, turn right, or stop.
8. Interface an IR proximity sensor module to the FPGA-bot using jumpers connected to the Cyclone male header socket. Attach the module in front of the header socket using foam tape. Alternate driving the left and right IR LEDs at 100Hz. Check for an IR sensor return and develop two signals, LEFT and RIGHT to indicate if the IR sensor return is from the left or right IR LED. The IR LEDs may need to be adjusted or shielded with some heat shrink tubing so that the floor does not reflect IR to the sensor. Use the LEFT and RIGHT signals to drive the decimal points on two LEDs to help adjust the sensor. It may be necessary to filter the IR returns using a counter with a return/no return threshold for reliable operation. Using a clock faster than 100Hz, for example 10kHz, only set LEFT or RIGHT if the return was present for several clock cycles.
9. Using IR sensor input, develop a design for the FPGA-bot that follows a person. The person must be within a foot or so of the FPGA-bot. When a left signal is present turn left, when a right signal is present turn right, and when both signals are present, move forward a few inches and stop. When all signals are lost, the FPGA-bot should rotate until an IR return is acquired.
10. Use motor speed control and a state machine with a timer to perform a small figure eight with the FPGA-bot.
11. Once the IR proximity sensor module from problem 8 is interfaced, design a state machine for the robot that moves forward and avoids obstacles. If it sees an obstacle to the left, turn right, and if there is an obstacle to the right, turn left. If both left and right obstacles are present, the robot should go backwards by reversing both motors.
12. With two FPGA-bots facing each other, develop a serial communications protocol using the IR LEDs and sensors. Assume the serial data is fixed in length and always starts with a known pattern at a fixed clock rate. The IR LEDs are pulsed at around 40kHz and the sensor has a 40kHz filter, so this will limit the bandwidth to a few kHz. Transmit the 8-bit value from the Cyclone DIP switches and display the value in the receiving FPGA-bot seven-segment LED displays. Display the raw IR sensor input in the decimal point LED to aid in debugging and alignment.
13. Interface the line-following module to the FPGA-bot, and design a state machine that follows a line. The line-following module has three sensor signals, left, center, and right. If the line drifts to the left, turn right, and if the line drifts to the right, turn left. Adjust turn constants so that the FPGA-bot moves along the line as fast as possible. If speed control was developed for the FPGA-bot as suggested in earlier problems, try using speed control for smaller less abrupt turns.
14. Using a standard IR remote control unit from a television or VCR and an IR sensor interfaced to the FPGA-bot, implement a remote control for the FPGA-bot. Different buttons on the remote control unit generate a different sequence of timing pulses. A digital oscilloscope or logic analyzer can be used to examine the timing pulses.
15. Interface the a magnetic or electronic compass module to the FPGA-bot, and design a state machine that performs the following operation:
 - Turn North.
 - Move forward 4 seconds.

- Turn East.
- Move forward 4 seconds.
- Turn Southwest.
- Move forward 6.6 seconds.
- Stop and repeat when the pushbutton is hit.

The mechanical compass has a small time delay due to the inertia of the magnetized rotor. Just like a real compass, it will swing back and forth for awhile before stopping. With care, the leads on the compass module can be plugged into a DIP socket with wire wrapped power supply and pull-up resistor connections on a small protoboard or make a printed circuit board for the compass with jumper wires to plug into the Cyclone female header socket. Make sure the compass module is mounted so that it is level and as far away from the motors magnets as possible.

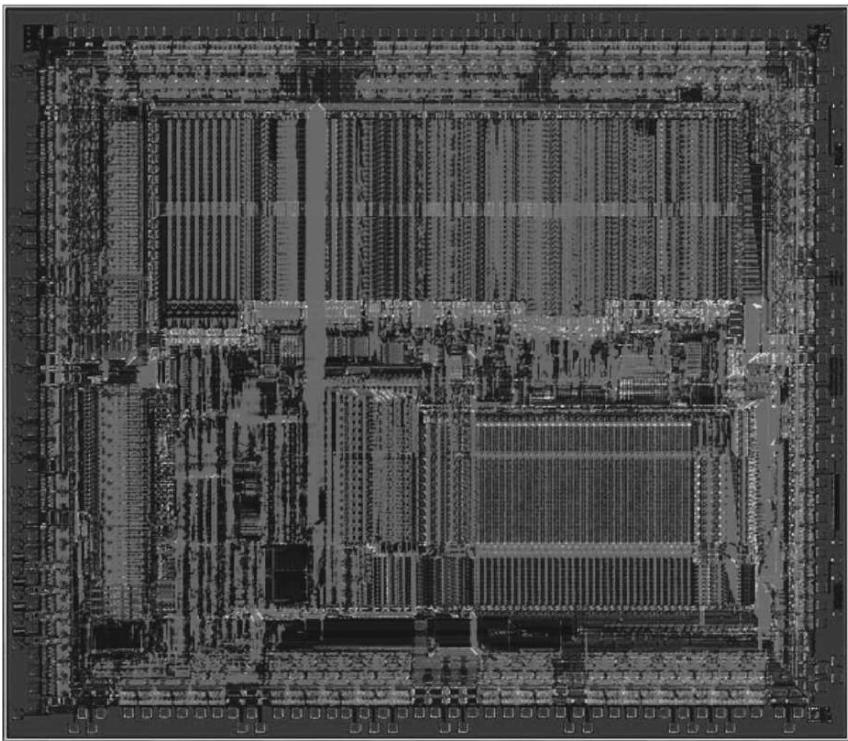
16. Interface a Sonar-ranging module to the FPGA-bot and perform the following operation:
 - Scan the immediate area 360 degrees by rotating the robot
 - Locate the nearest object.
 - Move close to the object and stop.
17. Attach the Sonar transducer to an unmodified servo's output shaft. Use the new servo to scan the area and locate the closest object. To sweep the unmodified servo back and forth, a timing pulse that slowly increases from 1ms to 2ms and back to 1ms is required. Move close to the nearest object and stop.
18. Attach several IR ranging sensors to the FPGA-bot and use the sensor data to develop a wall following robot.
19. Interface additional sensors, switches, etc., to the FPGA-bot so that it can navigate a maze. If several robots are being developed, consider a contest such as best time through the maze or best time after learning the maze.
20. Use the μ P 3 computer from Chapter 8 to implement a microcontroller to control the robot instead of a custom state machine. Write a μ P 3 assembly language program to solve one of the previous problems. Interface a time-delay timer, the sensors, and the motor speed control unit to the μ P 3 computer using I/O ports as suggested in problem 8.6. The additional machine instructions suggested in the exercises in Chapter 8 would also be useful.
21. Use a Nios processor to control the robot with C code using the UP3 Nios II reference design in Chapters 16 & 17.

22. Develop and hold a FPGA-bot design contest. Information on previous and current robotics contests can be found online at various web sites. Here are some ideas that have been used for other robot design contests:

- Robot Maze Solving
- Robot Dance Contest
- Sumo Wrestling
- Robot Soccer Teams
- Robot Laser Tag
- Fire Fighting Robots
- Robots that collect objects
- Robots that detect mines

CHAPTER 14

A RISC Design: Synthesis of the MIPS Processor Core



A full die photograph of the MIPS R2000 RISC Microprocessor is shown above. The 1986 MIPS R2000 with five pipeline stages and 450,000 transistors was the world's first commercial RISC microprocessor. Photograph ©1995-2004 courtesy of Michael Davidson, Florida State University, <http://micro.magnet.fsu.edu/chipshots>.

14 A RISC Design: Synthesis of the MIPS Processor Core

14.1 The MIPS Instruction Set and Processor

The MIPS is an example of a modern reduced instruction set computer (RISC) developed in the 1980s. The MIPS instruction set is used by NEC, Nintendo, Motorola, Sony, and licensed for use by numerous other semiconductor manufacturers. It has fixed-length 32-bit instructions and thirty-two 32-bit general-purpose registers. Register 0 always contains the value 0. A memory word is 32 bits wide.

As seen in Table 14.1, the MIPS has only three instruction formats. Only I-format LOAD and STORE instructions reference memory operands. R-format instructions such as ADD, AND, and OR perform operations only on data in the registers. They require two register operands, Rs and Rt. The result of the operation is stored in a third register, Rd. R-format shift and function fields are used as an extended opcode field. J-format instructions include the jump instructions.

Table 14.1 MIPS 32-bit Instruction Formats.

Field Size	6-bits	5-bits	5-bits	5-bits	5-bits	6-bits
R - Format	Opcode	Rs	Rt	Rd	Shift	Function
I - Format	Opcode	Rs	Rt	Address/immediate value		
J - Format	Opcode	Branch target address				

LW is the mnemonic for the Load Word instruction and SW is the mnemonic for Store Word. The following MIPS assembly language program computes $A = B + C$.

```

LW $2, B          ;Register 2 = value of memory at address B
LW $3, C          ;Register 3 = value of memory at address C
ADD $4, $2, $3    ;Register 4 = B + C
SW $4, A          ;Value of memory at address A = Register 4

```

The MIPS I-format instruction, BEQ, branches if two registers have the same value. As an example, the instruction BEQ \$1, \$2, LABEL jumps to LABEL if register 1 equals register 2. A branch instruction's address field contains the offset from the current address. The PC must be added to the address field to compute the branch address. This is called PC-relative addressing.

LW and SW instructions contain an offset and a base register that are used for array addressing. As an example, LW \$1, 100(\$2) adds an offset of 100 to the contents of register 2 and uses the sum as the memory address to read data from. The value from memory is then loaded into register 1. Using register 0, which always contains a 0, as the base register disables this addressing feature.

Table 14.2 MIPS Processor Core Instructions.

Mnemonic	Format	Opcode Field	Function Field	Instruction
Add	R	0	32	Add
Addi	I	8	-	Add Immediate
Addu	R	0	33	Add Unsigned
Sub	R	0	34	Subtract
Subu	R	0	35	Subtract Unsigned
And	R	0	36	Bitwise And
Or	R	0	37	Bitwise OR
Sll	R	0	0	Shift Left Logical
Srl	R	0	2	Shift Right Logical
Slt	R	0	42	Set if Less Than
Lui	I	15	-	Load Upper Immediate
Lw	I	35	-	Load Word
Sw	I	43	-	Store Word
Beq	I	4	-	Branch on Equal
Bne	I	5	-	Branch on Not Equal
J	J	2	-	Jump
Jal	J	3	-	Jump and Link (used for Call)
Jr	R	0	8	Jump Register (used for Return)

A summary of the basic MIPS instructions is shown in Table 14.2. In depth explanations of all MIPS instructions and assembly language programming examples can be found in the references listed in section 14.11.

A hardware implementation of the MIPS processor core based on the example in the widely used textbook, *Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface* by Patterson and Hennessy, is shown in Figure 14.1. This implementation of the MIPS performs fetch, decode, and execute in one clock cycle. Starting at the left in Figure 14.1, the program counter (PC) is used to fetch the next address in instruction memory. Since memory is byte addressable, four is added to address the next 32-bit (or 4-byte) word in memory. At the same time as the instruction fetch, the adder above instruction memory is used to add four to the PC to generate the next address. The output of instruction memory is the next 32-bit instruction.

The instruction's opcode is then sent to the control unit and the function code is sent to the ALU control unit. The instruction's register address fields are used to address the two-port register file. The two-port register file can perform two independent reads and one write in one clock cycle. This implements the decode operation.

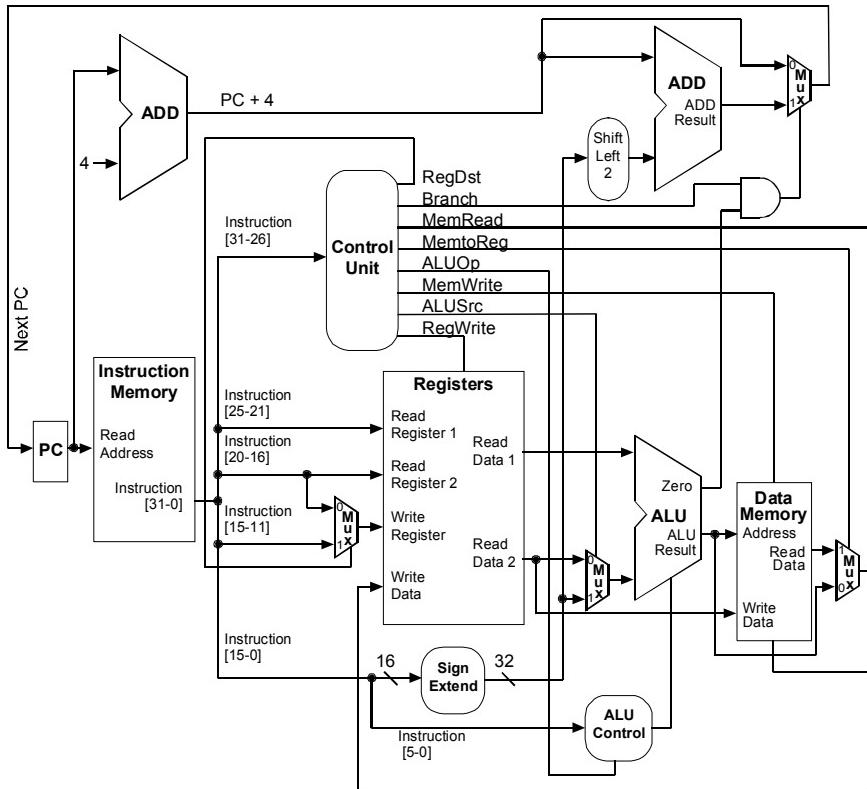


Figure 14.1 MIPS Single Clock Cycle Implementation.

The two outputs of the register file then feed into the data ALU inputs. The control units setup the ALU operation required to execute the instruction. Next, Load and Store instructions read or write to data memory. R-format instructions bypass data memory using a multiplexer. Last, R-format and Load instructions write back a new value into the register file.

PC-relative branch instructions use the adder and multiplexer shown above the data ALU in Figure 14.1 to compute the branch address. The multiplexer is required for conditional branch operations. After all outputs have stabilized, the next clock loads in the new value of the PC and the process repeats for the next instruction.

RISC instruction sets are easier to pipeline. With pipelining, the fetch, decode, execute, data memory, and register file write operations all work in parallel. In a single clock cycle, five different instructions are present in the pipeline. The basis for a pipelined hardware implementation of the MIPS is shown in Figure 14.2.

Additional complications arise because of data dependencies between instructions in the pipeline and branch operations. These problems can be resolved using hazard detection, data forwarding techniques, and branch

flushing. With pipelining, most RISC instructions execute in one clock cycle. Branch instructions will still require flushing of the pipeline. Exercises that add pipelining to the processor core are included at the end of the chapter.

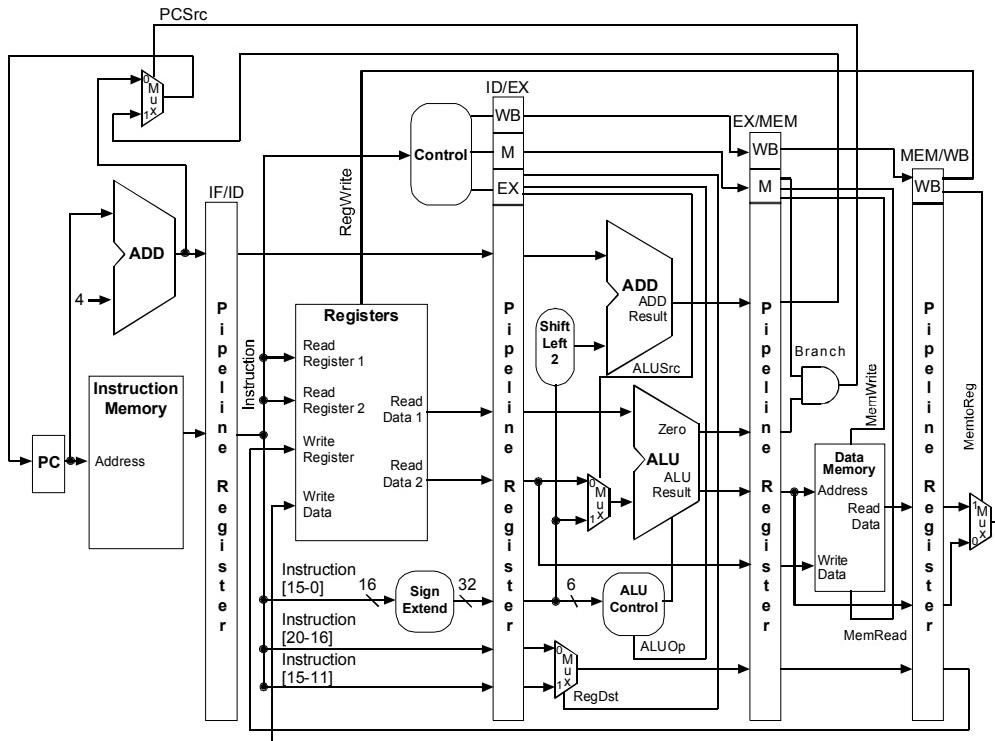


Figure 14.2 MIPS Pipelined Implementation.

14.2 Using VHDL to Synthesize the MIPS Processor Core

A VHDL-synthesis model of the MIPS single clock cycle model from Figure 14.1 will be developed in this section. This model can be used for simulation and implemented using the UP3 board.

The full 32-bit model requires a couple minutes to synthesize. When testing new changes you might want to use the faster functional (i.e. no timing delays) simulation approach before using a full timing delay model. This approach is commonly used on larger models with long synthesis and simulation times.

A two-level hierarchy is used in the model. MIPS.VHD is the top-level of the hierarchy. It consists of a structural VHDL model that connects the five behavioral modules. The five behavioral modules are already setup so that they correspond to the different stages for the MIPS. This makes it much easier to modify when the model is pipelined in later laboratory exercises. For many synthesis tools, hierarchy is also required to synthesize large logic designs. IFETCH.VHD is the VHDL submodule that contains instruction memory and the program counter. CONTROL.VHD contains the logic for the control unit.

IDECODE.VHD contains the multi-ported register file. EXECUTE.VHD contains the data and branch address ALUs. DMEMORY.VHD contains the data memory.

14.3 The Top-Level Module

The MIPS.VHD file contains the top-level design file. MIPS.VHD is a VHDL structural model that connects the five component parts of the MIPS. This module could also be created using the schematic editor and connecting the symbols for each VHDL submodule. The inputs are the clock and reset signals. The values of major busses and important control signals are copied and output from the top level so that they are available for easy display in simulations. Signals that are not outputs at the top level will occasionally not exist due to the compilers logic optimizations during synthesis.

```
-- Top Level Structural Model for MIPS Processor Core
LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;

ENTITY MIPS IS

  PORT( reset, clock           : IN STD_LOGIC;
        -- Output important signals to pins for easy display in Simulator
        PC                  : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        ALU_result_out, read_data_1_out, read_data_2_out,
        write_data_out, Instruction_out : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        Branch_out, Zero_out, Memwrite_out,
        Rewrite_out          : OUT STD_LOGIC );
END TOP_SPIM;
```

ARCHITECTURE structure OF TOP_SPIM IS

```
COMPONENT Ifetch
  PORT( Instruction      : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        PC_plus_4_out   : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 );
        Add_result      : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        Branch          : IN  STD_LOGIC;
        Zero            : IN  STD_LOGIC;
        PC_out          : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 );
        clock,reset     : IN  STD_LOGIC );
END COMPONENT;

COMPONENT Idecode
  PORT( read_data_1       : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        read_data_2       : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        Instruction      : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        read_data         : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        ALU_result        : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        RegWrite, MemtoReg : IN  STD_LOGIC );
```

```

        RegDst      : IN  STD_LOGIC;
        Sign_extend : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        clock, reset : IN  STD_LOGIC );
END COMPONENT;

COMPONENT control
  PORT( Opcode      : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 5 DOWNTO 0 );
           RegDst      : OUT STD_LOGIC;
           ALUSrc       : OUT STD_LOGIC;
           MemtoReg    : OUT STD_LOGIC;
           RegWrite     : OUT STD_LOGIC;
           MemRead      : OUT STD_LOGIC;
           MemWrite     : OUT STD_LOGIC;
           Branch       : OUT STD_LOGIC;
           ALUop        : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 1 DOWNTO 0 );
           clock, reset : IN  STD_LOGIC );
END COMPONENT;

COMPONENT Execute
  PORT( Read_data_1   : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
           Read_data_2   : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
           Sign_Extend    : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
           Function_opcode : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 5 DOWNTO 0 );
           ALUOp         : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 1 DOWNTO 0 );
           ALUSrc        : IN  STD_LOGIC;
           Zero          : OUT STD_LOGIC;
           ALU_Result    : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
           Add_Result    : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
           PC_plus_4     : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 );
           clock, reset  : IN  STD_LOGIC );
END COMPONENT;

COMPONENT dmemory
  PORT( read_data    : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
           address      : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
           write_data    : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
           MemRead, Memwrite : IN  STD_LOGIC;
           Clock,reset   : IN  STD_LOGIC );
END COMPONENT;

-- declare signals used to connect VHDL components
SIGNAL PC_plus_4    : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 );
SIGNAL read_data_1   : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
SIGNAL read_data_2   : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
SIGNAL Sign_Extend    : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
SIGNAL Add_result    : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
SIGNAL ALU_result    : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
SIGNAL read_data     : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
SIGNAL ALUSrc        : STD_LOGIC;
SIGNAL Branch         : STD_LOGIC;
SIGNAL RegDst        : STD_LOGIC;

```

```

SIGNAL Regwrite      : STD_LOGIC;
SIGNAL Zero          : STD_LOGIC;
SIGNAL MemWrite      : STD_LOGIC;
SIGNAL MemtoReg      : STD_LOGIC;
SIGNAL MemRead       : STD_LOGIC;
SIGNAL ALUop          : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 1 DOWNTO 0 );
SIGNAL Instruction   : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );

BEGIN
      -- copy important signals to output pins for easy
      -- display in Simulator
      Instruction_out    <= Instruction;
      ALU_result_out     <= ALU_result;
      read_data_1_out    <= read_data_1;
      read_data_2_out    <= read_data_2;
      write_data_out     <= read_data WHEN MemtoReg = '1' ELSE ALU_result;
      Branch_out         <= Branch;
      Zero_out           <= Zero;
      RegWrite_out       <= RegWrite;
      MemWrite_out       <= MemWrite;
      -- connect the 5 MIPS components
IFE : Ifetch
      PORT MAP ( Instruction      => Instruction,
                    PC_plus_4_out  => PC_plus_4,
                    Add_result     => Add_result,
                    Branch         => Branch,
                    Zero            => Zero,
                    PC_out          => PC,
                    clock           => clock,
                    reset           => reset );

ID : Idecode
      PORT MAP ( read_data_1      => read_data_1,
                    read_data_2      => read_data_2,
                    Instruction      => Instruction,
                    read_data        => read_data,
                    ALU_result       => ALU_result,
                    RegWrite         => RegWrite,
                    MemtoReg         => MemtoReg,
                    RegDst           => RegDst,
                    Sign_extend     => Sign_extend,
                    clock            => clock,
                    reset            => reset );

CTL: control
      PORT MAP ( Opcode        => Instruction( 31 DOWNTO 26 ),
                    RegDst        => RegDst,
                    ALUSrc        => ALUSrc,
                    MemtoReg      => MemtoReg,
                    RegWrite       => RegWrite,
                    MemRead        => MemRead,

```

```

MemWrite      => MemWrite,
Branch        => Branch,
ALUop         => ALUop,
clock          => clock,
reset          => reset );

EXE: Execute
PORT MAP ( Read_data_1    => read_data_1,
               Read_data_2    => read_data_2,
               Sign_extend    => Sign_extend,
               Function_opcode => Instruction( 5 DOWNT0 0 ),
               ALUOp          => ALUOp,
               ALUSrc         => ALUSrc,
               Zero           => Zero,
               ALU_Result     => ALU_Result,
               Add_Result     => Add_Result,
               PC_plus_4      => PC_plus_4,
               Clock          => clock,
               Reset          => reset );

MEM: dmemory
PORT MAP ( read_data      => read_data,
               address        => ALU_Result,
               write_data     => read_data_2,
               MemRead        => MemRead,
               Memwrite       => MemWrite,
               clock          => clock,
               reset          => reset );

END structure;

```

14.4 The Control Unit

The control unit of the MIPS shown in Figure 14.3 examines the instruction opcode bits and generates eight control signals used by the other stages of the processor. Recall that the high six bits of a MIPS instruction contain the opcode. The opcode value is used to determine the instruction type.

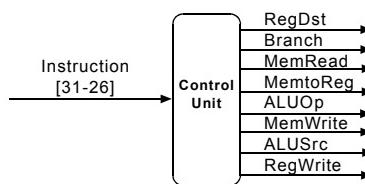


Figure 14.3 Block Diagram of MIPS Control Unit.

-- control module (implements MIPS control unit)

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;

ENTITY control IS
  PORT( Opcode      : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 5 DOWNTO 0 );
        RegDst       : OUT STD_LOGIC;
        ALUSrc       : OUT STD_LOGIC;
        MemtoReg     : OUT STD_LOGIC;
        RegWrite     : OUT STD_LOGIC;
        MemRead      : OUT STD_LOGIC;
        MemWrite     : OUT STD_LOGIC;
        Branch       : OUT STD_LOGIC;
        ALUOp        : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 1 DOWNTO 0 );
        clock, reset : IN   STD_LOGIC );
END control;
```

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF control IS

```

SIGNAL R_format, Lw, Sw, Beq    : STD_LOGIC;

BEGIN
  -- Code to generate control signals using opcode bits
  R_format  <= '1' WHEN Opcode = "000000" ELSE '0';
  Lw         <= '1' WHEN Opcode = "100011" ELSE '0';
  Sw         <= '1' WHEN Opcode = "101011" ELSE '0';
  Beq        <= '1' WHEN Opcode = "000100" ELSE '0';

  RegDst    <= R_format;
  ALUSrc    <= Lw OR Sw;
  MemtoReg  <= Lw;
  RegWrite   <= R_format OR Lw;
  MemRead    <= Lw;
  MemWrite   <= Sw;
  Branch     <= Beq;
  ALUOp( 1 ) <= R_format;
  ALUOp( 0 ) <= Beq;

END behavior;
```

14.5 The Instruction Fetch Stage

The instruction fetch stage of the MIPS shown in Figure 14.4 contains the instruction memory, the program counter, and the hardware to increment the program counter to compute the next instruction address.

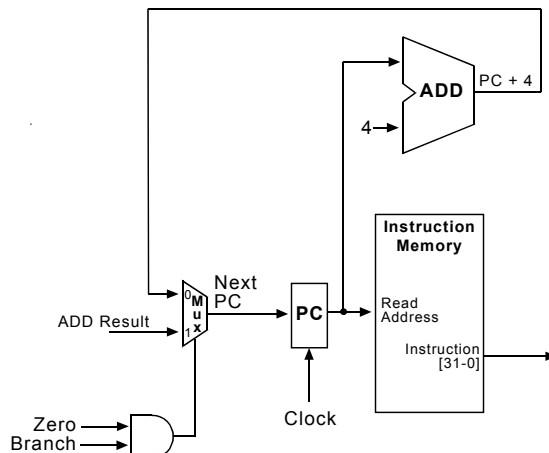


Figure 14.4 Block Diagram of MIPS Fetch Unit.

Instruction memory is implemented using the Altsyncram megafunction. 256 by 32 bits of instruction memory is available. This requires two of the Cyclone chip's M4K RAM memory blocks. Since the Altsyncram memory requires an address register, the PC register is actually implemented inside the memory block. A copy of the PC external to the memory block is also saved for use in simulation displays.

-- Ifetch module (provides the PC and instruction
--memory for the MIPS computer)

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;
LIBRARY altera_mf;
USE altera_mf.altera_mf_components.ALL;

ENTITY Ifetch IS
  PORT( SIGNAL Instruction      : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        SIGNAL PC_plus_4_out   : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        SIGNAL Add_result      : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        SIGNAL Branch          : IN  STD_LOGIC;
        SIGNAL Zero            : IN  STD_LOGIC;
        SIGNAL PC_out          : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 );
        SIGNAL clock, reset    : IN  STD_LOGIC);
END Ifetch;
```

```

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF Ifetch IS
    SIGNAL PC, PC_plus_4      : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 9 DOWNTO 0 );
    SIGNAL next_PC          : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
BEGIN
    --ROM for Instruction Memory
    data_memory: altsyncram

    GENERIC MAP (
        operation_mode => "ROM",
        width_a => 32,
        widthad_a => 8,
        lpm_type => "altsyncram",
        outdata_reg_a => "UNREGISTERED",
            -- Reads in mif file for initial data memory values
        init_file => "program.mif",
        intended_device_family => "Cyclone")

    -- Fetch next instruction from memory using PC
    PORT MAP (
        clock0    => clock,
        address_a => Mem_Addr,
        q_a => Instruction
    );
    -- Instructions always start on a word address - not byte
    PC(1 DOWNTO 0) <= "00";
    -- copy output signals - allows read inside module
    PC_out       <= PC;
    PC_plus_4_out <= PC_plus_4;
    -- send word address to inst. memory address register
    Mem_Addr <= Next_PC;
    -- Adder to increment PC by 4
    PC_plus_4( 9 DOWNTO 2 ) <= PC( 9 DOWNTO 2 ) + 1;
    PC_plus_4( 1 DOWNTO 0 ) <= "00";
    -- Mux to select Branch Address or PC + 4
    Next_PC <= X"00" WHEN Reset = '1' ELSE
        Add_result WHEN ( ( Branch = '1' ) AND ( Zero = '1' ) )
    ELSE PC_plus_4( 9 DOWNTO 2 );

    -- Store PC in register and load next PC on clock edge
PROCESS
BEGIN
    WAIT UNTIL ( clock'EVENT ) AND ( clock = '1' );
    IF reset = '1' THEN
        PC <= "0000000000";
    ELSE
        PC( 9 DOWNTO 2 ) <= Next_PC;
    END IF;
END PROCESS;
END behavior;

```

The MIPS program is contained in instruction memory. Instruction memory is automatically initialized using the program.mif file shown in Figure 14.5. This initialization only occurs once during download and not at a reset.

For different test programs, the appropriate machine code must be entered in this file in hex. Note that the memory addresses displayed in the program.mif file are word addresses while addresses in registers such as the PC are byte addresses. The byte address is four times the word address since a 32-bit word contains four bytes. Only word addresses can be used in the *.mif files.

```
-- MIPS Instruction Memory Initialization File

Depth = 256;
Width = 32;
Address_radix = HEX;
Data_radix = HEX;
Content
Begin

    -- Use NOPs for default instruction memory values
    [00..FF]: 00000000;          -- nop (sll r0,r0,0)
    -- Place MIPS Instructions here
    -- Note: memory addresses are in words and not bytes
    -- i.e. next location is +1 and not +4

    00: 8C020000;      -- lw $2,0 ;memory(00)=55
    01: 8C030001;      -- lw $3,1 ;memory(01)=AA
    02: 00430820;      -- add $1,$2,$3
    03: AC010003;      -- sw $1,3 ;memory(03)=FF
    04: 1022FFFF;      -- beq $1,$2,-4
    05: 1021FFFF;      -- beq $1,$1,-24

End;
```

Figure 14.5 MIPS Program Memory Initialization File, program.mif.

14.6 The Decode Stage

The decode stage of the MIPS contains the register file as shown in Figure 14.6. The MIPS contains thirty-two 32-bit registers. The register file requires a major portion of the hardware required to implement the MIPS. Registers are initialized to the register number during a reset. This is done to enable the use of shorter test programs that do not have to load all of the registers. A VHDL FOR...LOOP structure is used to generate the initial register values at reset.

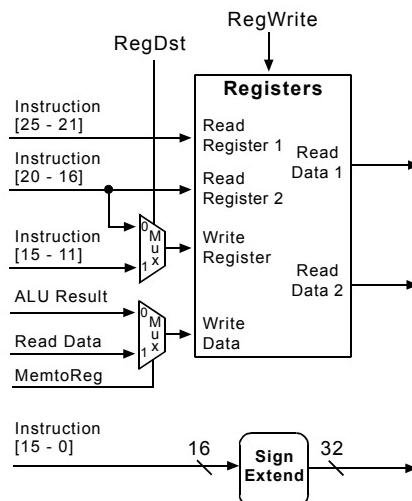


Figure 14.6 Block Diagram of MIPS Decode Unit.

```
-- Idecode module (implements the register file for
-- the MIPS computer)
LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;

ENTITY Idecode IS
  PORT(
    read_data_1      : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
    read_data_2      : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
    Instruction     : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
    read_data       : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
    ALU_result      : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
    RegWrite        : IN  STD_LOGIC;
    MemtoReg        : IN  STD_LOGIC;
    RegDst          : IN  STD_LOGIC;
    Sign_extend     : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
    clock,reset     : IN  STD_LOGIC );
END Idecode;
```

```

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF ldecode IS
TYPE register_file IS ARRAY ( 0 TO 31 ) OF STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNT0 0 );

SIGNAL register_array: register_file;
SIGNAL write_register_address : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 4 DOWNT0 0 );
SIGNAL write_data : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNT0 0 );
SIGNAL read_register_1_address : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 4 DOWNT0 0 );
SIGNAL read_register_2_address : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 4 DOWNT0 0 );
SIGNAL write_register_address_1 : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 4 DOWNT0 0 );
SIGNAL write_register_address_0 : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 4 DOWNT0 0 );
SIGNAL Instruction_immediate_value : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 15 DOWNT0 0 );

BEGIN
  read_register_1_address <= Instruction( 25 DOWNT0 21 );
  read_register_2_address <= Instruction( 20 DOWNT0 16 );
  write_register_address_1 <= Instruction( 15 DOWNT0 11 );
  write_register_address_0 <= Instruction( 20 DOWNT0 16 );
  Instruction_immediate_value <= Instruction( 15 DOWNT0 0 );
    -- Read Register 1 Operation
  read_data_1 <= register_array( CONV_INTEGER( read_register_1_address ) );
    -- Read Register 2 Operation
  read_data_2 <= register_array( CONV_INTEGER( read_register_2_address ) );
    -- Mux for Register Write Address
  write_register_address <= write_register_address_1
    WHEN RegDst = '1' ELSE write_register_address_0;
      -- Mux to bypass data memory for Rformat instructions
  write_data <= ALU_result( 31 DOWNT0 0 )
    WHEN ( MemtoReg = '0' ) ELSE read_data;
      -- Sign Extend 16-bits to 32-bits
  Sign_extend <= X"0000" & Instruction_immediate_value
    WHEN Instruction_immediate_value(15) = '0'
    ELSE X"FFFF" & Instruction_immediate_value;

PROCESS
BEGIN
  WAIT UNTIL clock'EVENT AND clock = '1';
  IF reset = '1' THEN
    -- Initial register values on reset are register = reg#
    -- use loop to automatically generate reset logic
    -- for all registers
    FOR i IN 0 TO 31 LOOP
      register_array(i) <= CONV_STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( i, 32 );
    END LOOP;
    -- Write back to register - don't write to register 0
  ELSIF RegWrite = '1' AND write_register_address /= 0 THEN
    register_array( CONV_INTEGER( write_register_address ) ) <= write_data;
  END IF;
END PROCESS;
END behavior;

```

14.7 The Execute Stage

The execute stage of the MIPS shown in Figure 14.7 contains the data ALU and a branch address adder used for PC-relative branch instructions. Multiplexers that select different data for the ALU input are also in this stage.

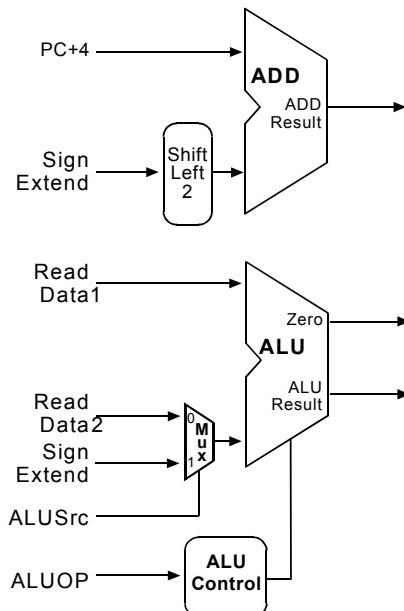


Figure 14.7 Block Diagram of MIPS Execute Unit.

```
-- Execute module (implements the data ALU and Branch Address Adder
-- for the MIPS computer)
LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;

ENTITY Execute IS
  PORT( Read_data_1      : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        Read_data_2      : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        Sign_extend       : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        Function_opcode  : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 5 DOWNTO 0 );
        ALUOp             : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 1 DOWNTO 0 );
        ALUSrc            : IN STD_LOGIC;
        Zero              : OUT STD_LOGIC;
        ALU_Result        : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        Add_Result        : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        PC_plus_4         : IN STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        clock, reset      : IN STD_LOGIC );
END Execute;
```

```

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF Execute IS
  SIGNAL Ainput, Binput : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
  SIGNAL ALU_output_mux : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
  SIGNAL Branch_Add : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 8 DOWNTO 0 );
  SIGNAL ALU_ctl : STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 2 DOWNTO 0 );
BEGIN
  Ainput <= Read_data_1;
  -- ALU input mux
  Binput <= Read_data_2
  WHEN ( ALUSrc = '0' )
  ELSE Sign_extend( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
  -- Generate ALU control bits
  ALU_ctl( 0 ) <= ( Function_opcode( 0 ) OR Function_opcode( 3 ) ) AND ALUOp(1 );
  ALU_ctl( 1 ) <= ( NOT Function_opcode( 2 ) ) OR ( NOT ALUOp( 1 ) );
  ALU_ctl( 2 ) <= ( Function_opcode( 1 ) AND ALUOp( 1 ) ) OR ALUOp( 0 );
  -- Generate Zero Flag
  Zero <= '1'
  WHEN ( ALU_output_mux( 31 DOWNTO 0 ) = X"00000000" )
  ELSE '0';
  -- Select ALU output for SLT
  ALU_result <= X"0000000" & B"000" & ALU_output_mux( 31 )
  WHEN ALU_ctl = "111"
  ELSE ALU_output_mux( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
  -- Adder to compute Branch Address
  Branch_Add <= PC_plus_4( 9 DOWNTO 2 ) + Sign_extend( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
  Add_result <= Branch_Add( 7 DOWNTO 0 );

PROCESS ( ALU_ctl, Ainput, Binput )
BEGIN
  -- Select ALU operation
  CASE ALU_ctl IS
    WHEN "000" => ALU_output_mux <= Ainput AND Binput;
    -- ALU performs ALUresult = A_input AND B_input
    WHEN "001" => ALU_output_mux <= Ainput OR Binput;
    -- ALU performs ALUresult = A_input OR B_input
    WHEN "010" => ALU_output_mux <= Ainput + Binput;
    -- ALU performs ALUresult = A_input + B_input
    WHEN "011" => ALU_output_mux <= X"00000000" ;
    -- ALU performs ?
    WHEN "100" => ALU_output_mux <= X"00000000" ;
    -- ALU performs ?
    WHEN "101" => ALU_output_mux <= X"00000000" ;
    -- ALU performs ALUresult = A_input - B_input
    WHEN "110" => ALU_output_mux <= Ainput - Binput;
    -- ALU performs SLT
    WHEN "111" => ALU_output_mux <= Ainput - Binput ;
    WHEN OTHERS => ALU_output_mux <= X"00000000" ;
  END CASE;
END PROCESS;
END behavior;

```

14.8 The Data Memory Stage

The data memory stage of the MIPS core shown in Figure 14.8 contains the data memory. To speed synthesis and simulation, data memory is limited to 256 locations of 32-bit memory. Data memory is implemented using the Altsyncram megafunction. Memory write cycle timing is critical in any design. The Altsyncram function requires an internal address register with a clock. In this design, the falling clock edge is used to load the data memories internal address register. The rising clock edge starts the next instruction. Two M4K RAM blocks are used for data memory. Two M4K RAM blocks are also used for the 32-bit instruction memory.

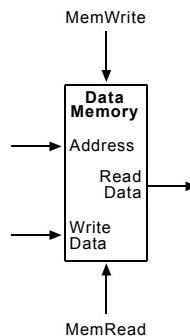


Figure 14.8 Block Diagram of MIPS Data Memory Unit.

```
-- Dmemory module (implements the data
-- memory for the MIPS computer)
```

```

LIBRARY IEEE;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_ARITH.ALL;
USE IEEE.STD_LOGIC_UNSIGNED.ALL;
LIBRARY altera_mf;
USE altera_mf.altera_mf_components.ALL;

ENTITY dmemory IS
  PORT( read_data      : OUT STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        address       : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 7 DOWNTO 0 );
        write_data     : IN  STD_LOGIC_VECTOR( 31 DOWNTO 0 );
        MemRead, Memwrite : IN  STD_LOGIC;
        clock, reset   : IN  STD_LOGIC );
END dmemory;

ARCHITECTURE behavior OF dmemory IS
SIGNAL write_clock : STD_LOGIC;
BEGIN

```

```

data_memory: altsyncram
GENERIC MAP (
    operation_mode => "SINGLE_PORT",
    width_a => 32,
    widthad_a => 8,
    lpm_type => "altsyncram",
    outdata_reg_a => "UNREGISTERED",
        -- Reads in mif file for initial data memory values
    init_file => "dmemory.mif",
    intended_device_family => "Cyclone" lpm_widthad => 8
)
PORT MAP (
    wren_a => memwrite,
    clock0 => write_clock,
    address_a => address,
    data_a => write_data,
    q_a => read_data );
    -- Load memory address & data register with write clock
    write_clock <= NOT clock;
END behavior;

```

MIPS data memory is initialized to the value specified in the file dmemory.mif shown in Figure 14.9. Note that the address displayed in the dmemory.mif file is a word address and not a byte address. Two values, 0x55555555 and 0xAAAAAAA, at byte address 0 and 4 are used for memory data in the short test program. The remaining locations are all initialized to zero.

```

-- MIPS Data Memory Initialization File
Depth = 256;
Width = 32;
Content
Begin
    -- default value for memory
    [00..FF] : 00000000;
        -- initial values for test program
    00 : 55555555;
    01 : AAAAAAAA;
End;

```

Figure 14.9 MIPS Data Memory Initialization File, dmemory.mif.

14.9 Simulation of the MIPS Design

The top-level file MIPS.VHD is compiled and used for simulation of the MIPS. It uses VHDL component instantiations to connect the five submodules. The values of major busses and important control signals are output at the top level for use in simulations. A reset is required to start the simulation with PC = 0. A clock with a period of approximately 200ns is required for the simulation.

Memory is initialized only at the start of the simulation. A reset does not re-initialize memory.

The execution of a short test program can be seen in the MIPS simulation output shown in Figure 14.10. The program loads two registers from memory with the LW instructions, adds the registers with an ADD, and stores the sum with SW. Next, the program does not take a BEQ conditional branch with a false branch condition. Last, the program loops back to the start of the program at PC = 000 with another BEQ conditional branch with a true branch condition.

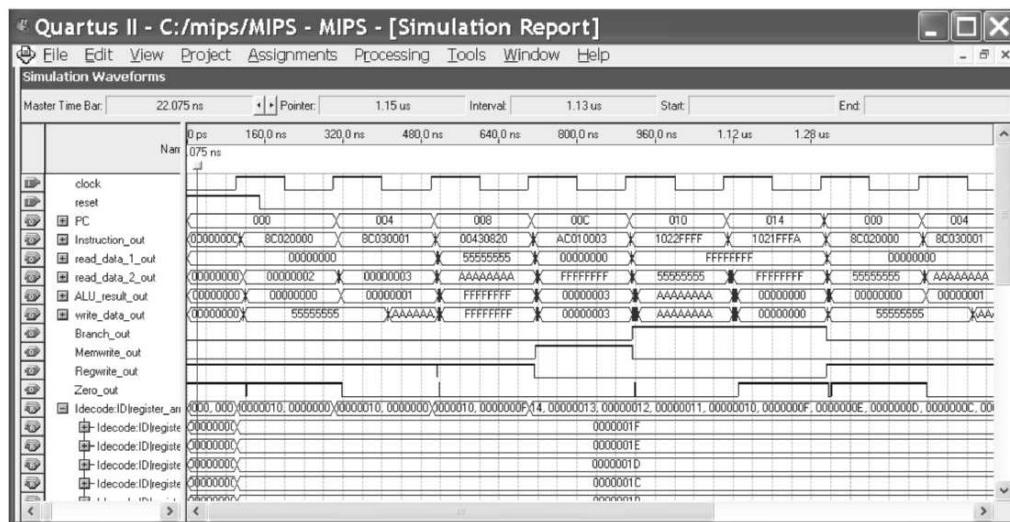


Figure 14.10 Simulation of MIPS test program.

14.10 MIPS Hardware Implementation on the FPGA Board

A special version of the top level of the MIPS, VIDEO_MIPS.VHD, is identical to MIPS.VHD except that it also contains a VGA video output display driver. As seen in Figure 14.11, this driver displays the hexadecimal value of major busses in the MIPS processor on a monitor. The video character generation technique used is discussed in Chapter 10. On the FPGA boards, it also displays the PC in the LCD or LED displays. All FPGA boards use pushbuttons for the clock and reset inputs. The clock pushbutton toggles the processor clock so you can see the data changes occurring on each clock edge as you step through MIPS machine instructions. This top-level module should be used instead of MIPS.VHD after the design has been debugged in simulations. The final design with video output is then downloaded to the FPGA chip on the board. The video driver uses two M4K RAM embedded memory blocks for format and character font data.

After simulation with MIPS.VHD, recompile using VIDEO_MIPS.VHD and download the design to the FPGA board for hardware verification. Attach a VGA monitor to the board's VGA connector. Any changes or additions made to top level signal names in MIPS.VHD and other modules as suggested in the exercises will need to also be cut and pasted into VIDEO_MIPS.VHD.

MIPS COMPUTER	
PC	00000008
INST	00430820
REG1	00000055
REG2	000000AA
ALU	000000FF
W.B.	000000FF
BRAN	0
ZERO	0
MEMR	0
MEMW	0
CLK	↓
RST	↓

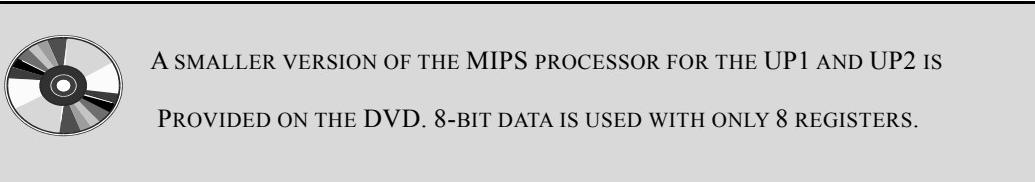
Figure 14.11 MIPS with Video Output generated by UP3 Board.

14.11 For Additional Information

The MIPS processor design and pipelining are described in the widely-used Patterson and Hennessy textbook, *Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface*, Third Edition, Morgan Kaufman Publishers, 2005. The MIPS instructions are described in Chapter 2 and Appendix A of this text. The hardware design of the MIPS, used as the basis for this model, is described in Chapters 5 and 6 of the Patterson and Hennessy text.

SPIM, a free MIPS R2000 assembly language assembler and PC-based simulator developed by James Larus, is available free from <http://www.cs.wisc.edu/~larus/spim.html>. The reference manual for the SPIM simulator contains additional explanations of all of the MIPS instructions.

The MIPS instruction set and assembly language programming is also described in J. Waldron, *Introduction to RISC Assembly Language Programming*, Addison Wesley, 1999, and Kane and Heinrich, *MIPS RISC Architecture*, Prentice Hall, 1992.



14.12 Laboratory Exercises

1. Use VHDL to synthesize the MIPS single clock cycle design in the file TOP_SPIM.VHD. After synthesis and simulation perform the following steps:

Display and print the timing diagram from the simulation. Verify that the information on the timing diagram shows that the hardware is functioning correctly. Examine the test program in IFETCH.VHD. Look at the program counter, the instruction bus, the register file and ALU outputs, and control signals on the timing diagram and carefully follow the execution of each instruction in the test program. Label the important values for each instruction on the timing diagram and attach a short write-up explaining in detail what the timing diagram shows relative to each instruction's execution and correct operation.

Return to the simulator and run the simulation again. Examine the ALU output in the timing diagram window. Zoom in on the ALU output during execution of the add instruction and see what happens when it changes values. Explain exactly what is happening at this point. Hint: Real hardware has timing delays.

2. Recompile the MIPS model using the VIDEO_MIPS.VHD file, which generates video output. Download the design to the FPGA board. Attach a VGA monitor to the FPGA board. Single step through the program using the pushbuttons.
3. Write a MIPS test program for the AND, OR, and SUB instructions and run it on the VHDL MIPS simulation. These are all R-format instructions just like the ADD instruction. Modifications to the memory initialization files, program.mif and dmemory.mif, (i.e. only if you use data from memory in the test program) will be required. Registers have been preloaded with the register number to make it easy to run short test programs.
4. Add and test the JMP instruction. The JMP or jump instruction is not PC-relative like the branch instructions. The J-format JMP instruction loads the PC with the low 26 bits of the instruction. Modifications to the existing VHDL MIPS model will be required. For a suggested change, see the hardware modifications on page 313 of *Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface*.
5. Add and test the BNE, branch if not equal, instruction. Modifications to the existing VHDL MIPS model will be required. Hint: Follow the implementation details of the existing BEQ, branch if equal, instruction and a change to add BNE should be obvious. Both BEQ and BNE must function correctly in a simulation. Be sure to test both the branch and no branch cases.
6. Add and test the I-format ADDIU, add immediate unsigned, instruction. Modifications to the existing VHDL MIPS model will be required.

7. Add and test the R-format SLT, set if less than, instruction. As an example SLT \$1, \$2, \$3 performs the operation, If $$2 < 3 Then $$1 = 1$ Else $$1 = 0$. SLT is used before BEQ or BNE to implement the other branch conditions such as less than or greater.
8. Pipeline the MIPS VHDL simulation. Test your VHDL model by running a simulation of the example program shown in Figure 6.21 using the pipeline hardware shown in Figure 6.27 in *Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface*. To minimize changes, pipeline registers must be placed in the VHDL module that generates the input to the pipeline. As an example, all of the pipeline registers that store control signals must be placed in the control module. Synthesize and check the control module first, since it is simple to see if it works correctly when you add the pipeline flip-flops. Use the following notation which minimizes changes to create the new pipeline register signals, add a "D_" in front of the signal name to indicate it is the input to a D flip-flop used in a pipeline register. Signals that go through two D flip-flops would be "DD_" and three would be "DDD_". As an example, *instruction* would be the registered version of the signal, *D_instruction*.

Add pipeline registers to the existing modules that generate the inputs to the pipeline registers shown in the text. This will prevent adding more modules and will not require extensive changes to the MIP.VHD module. Add signal and process statements to model the pipeline modules – see the PC in the ifetch.vhd module for an example of how this can work. A few muxes may have to be moved to different modules.

The control module should contain all of the control pipeline registers – 1, 2, or 3 stages of pipeline registers for control signals. Some control signals must be reset to zero, so use a D flip-flop with a synchronous reset for these pipeline registers. This generates a flip-flop with a Clear input that will be tied to Reset. Critical pipeline registers with control signals such as regwrite or memwrite should be cleared at reset so that the pipeline starts up correctly. The MIPS instruction ADD \$0, \$0, \$0 is all zeros and does not modify any values in registers or memory. It is used to initialize the IF/ID pipeline at reset. Pipeline registers for instruction and data memory outputs can also be added by modifying options in the Altsyncram megafunction.

The data memory clocking scheme might also change with pipelining. In Dmemory.vhd, the data memory address and data inputs are already pipelined inside the altsyncram function used for data memory (this is why it has a clock input). You will need to take this into account when you pipeline your design. High speed memory writes almost always require a clock and the design in the textbook skips over this point – since they do not have their design running on real hardware. As an example, in the Quartus software you can't even have altsyncram memory without a clock!

Currently in the original single cycle design, data memory uses NOT CLOCK as the clock input so that there is time to get both the correct ALU result loaded into the

memories internal address and data pipeline registers (first half of clock cycle) and write to memory (second half of clock cycle).

Once you pipeline the model, you will probably want to have your data memory clock input use CLOCK instead of NOT CLOCK for the fastest clock cycle time. With NOT CLOCK you would be loading the ALU Result into the pipeline register in the middle of the clock cycle (not the end) – so it would slow down the clock cycle time on real hardware.

Since there is already a pipeline register in the data memory inputs, don't add another one in the address or data input paths to data memory, if you switch NOT CLOCK to CLOCK. You will still need to delay the ALU result two clocks (with two pipeline registers) for the register file write back operation.

Sections 6.2 and 6.3 of *Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface* contain additional background information on pipelining.

9. Once the MIPS is pipelined as in problem 8, data hazards can occur between the five instructions present in the pipeline. As an example consider the following program:

```
Sub    $2,$1,$3  
Add    $4,$2,$5
```

The subtract instruction stores a result in register 2 and the following add instruction uses register 2 as a source operand. The new value of register 2 is written into the register file by SUB \$2,\$1,\$3 in the write-back stage after the old value of register 2 was read out by ADD \$4,\$2,\$5 in the decode stage. This problem is fixed by adding two forwarding muxes to each ALU input in the execute stage. In addition to the existing values feeding in the two ALU inputs, the forwarding multiplexers can also select the last ALU result or the last value in the data memory stage. These muxes are controlled by comparing the rd, rt, and rs register address fields of instructions in the decode, execute, or data memory stages. Instruction rd fields will need to be added to the pipelines in the execute, data memory, and write-back stages for the forwarding compare operations. Since register 0 is always zero, do not forward register 0 values.

Add forwarding control to the pipelined model developed in problem 8. Test your VHDL model by running a simulation of the example program shown in Figure 6.29 using the hardware shown in Figures 6.32 of *Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface* by Patterson and Hennessy.

Two forwarding multiplexers must also be added to the Idecode module so that a register file write and read to the same register work correctly in one clock cycle. If the register file write address equals one of the two read addresses, the register file write data value should be forwarded out the appropriate read data port instead of the normal register file

read data value. Section 6.4 of *Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface* contains additional background information on forwarding.

10. Add LW/SW forwarding to the pipelined model. This will allow an LW to be followed by an SW that uses the same register. It is possible since the MEM/WB register contains the load instruction register write data in time for use in the MEM stage of the store. Write a test program and verify correct operation in a simulation.
11. When a branch is taken, several of the instructions that follow a branch have already been loaded into the pipeline. A process called flushing is used to prevent the execution of these instructions. Several of the pipeline registers are cleared so that these instructions do not store any values to registers or memory or cause a forwarding operation. Add branch flushing to the pipelined MIPS VHDL model as shown in Figures 6.38 of the Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface by Patterson and Hennessy. Note that two new forwarding multiplexers at the register file outputs (not shown in the Figure, currently at ALU inputs) are needed to eliminate the new Branch data hazards that appear when the branch comparator is moved into to the decode stage. Section 6.6 of *Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface* contains additional background information on branch hazards.
12. Use the timing analyzer to determine the maximum clock rate for the pipelined MIPS implementation, verify correct operation at this clock rate in a simulation, and compare the clock rate to the original non-pipelined MIPS implementation.
13. Redesign the pipelined MIPS VHDL model so that branch instructions have 1 delay slot as seen in Figure 6.40 (i.e. one instruction after the branch is executed even when the branch is taken). Rewrite the VHDL model of the MIPS and test the program from the problem 10 assuming 1 delay slot. Move instructions around and add nops if needed.
14. Add the overflow exception hardware suggested at the end of Chapter 6 in Figure 6.42 of *Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface* by Patterson and Hennessy. Add an overflow circuit that produces the exception with a test program containing an ADD instruction that overflows. Display the PC and the trap address in your simulation. For test and simulation purposes make the exception address 40 instead of 40000040. Section 6.8 of *Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface* contains additional background information on exceptions.
15. Investigate using two Altsyncram memory blocks to implement the register file in IDECODE. A single Altsyncram block can be configured to do a read and write in one clock cycle (dual port). To perform two reads, use two Altsyncrams that contain the same data (i.e. always write to both blocks).
16. Add the required instructions to the model to run the MIPS bubble sort program from Chapter 3 of *Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface*.

After verifying correct operation with a simulation, download the design to the FPGA board and trace execution of the program using the video output. Sort this four element array 4, 3, 5, 1.

17. Add programmed keyboard input and video output to the sort program from the previous problem using the keyboard, vga_sync, and char_rom FPGACores. Use a dedicated memory location to interface to I/O devices. Appendix A.36-38 of *Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface* contains an explanation of MIPS memory-mapped terminal I/O.
18. The MIPS VHDL model was designed to be easy to understand. Investigate various techniques to increase the clock rate such as using two dual-port memory blocks for the register file, moving hardware to different pipeline stages to even out delays, or changing the way memory is clocked. Additional fitter effort settings may also help. Use the timing analysis tools to evaluate design changes.
19. Develop a VHDL synthesis model for another RISC processor's instruction set. Possible choices include the Nios, Microblaze, Picoblaze, PowerPC, ARM, SUN SPARC, the DEC ALPHA, and the HP PARISC. DVD Appendix D of Computer Organization and Design The Hardware/Software Interface contains information on several RISC processors. Earlier hardware implementations of the commercial RISC processors designed before they became superscalar are more likely to fit on a FPGA.

CHAPTER 15

Introducing System-on-a- Programmable-Chip



A small SOPC-based aircraft autopilot system that contains an FPGA with a Nios processor core, a DSP processor, and memory is seen above. The bottom sensor board contains a GPS receiver, an A/D converter, MEMS gyros and accelerometers for all three axes, an airspeed sensor, and an altitude sensor. Photograph ©2004 courtesy of Henrik Christoffersen, Georgia Institute of Technology Unmanned Aerial Research Facility.

15 Introducing System-on-a-Programmable-Chip⁵

A new technology has emerged that enables designers to utilize a large FPGA that contains both memory and logic elements along with an intellectual property (IP) processor core to implement a computer and custom hardware for system-on-a-chip (SOC) applications. This new approach has been termed system-on-a-programmable-chip (SOPC).

15.1 Processor Cores

Processor cores can be classified as either “hard” or “soft.” This designation refers to the flexibility/configurability of the core. Hard cores are less configurable; however, they tend to have higher performance characteristics than soft cores.

Hard processor cores use an embedded processor core (in dedicated silicon) in addition to the FPGA's normal logic elements. Hard processor cores added to an FPGA are a hybrid approach, offering performance trade-offs that fall somewhere between a traditional ASIC and an FPGA; they are available from several manufacturers with a number of different processor flavors. For example, Altera offers an ARM processor core embedded in its APEX 20KE family of FPGAs that is marketed as an Excalibur™ device. Xilinx's Virtex-II Pro family of FPGAs include up to four PowerPC processor cores on-chip. Cypress Semiconductor also offers a variation of the SOPC system. Cypress's Programmable-System-on-a-Chip (PSoC™) is formed on an M8C processor core with configurable logic blocks designed to implement the peripheral interfaces, which include analog-to-digital converters, digital-to-analog converters, timers, counters, and UARTs.⁶

Soft cores, such as Altera's Nios II and Xilinx's MicroBlaze processors, use existing programmable logic elements from the FPGA to implement the processor logic. As seen in Table 15.1, soft-core processors can be very feature-rich and flexible, often allowing the designer to specify the memory width, the ALU functionality, number and types of peripherals, and memory address space parameters at compile time. However, such flexibility comes at a cost. Soft cores have slower clock rates and use more power than an equivalent hard processor core.

With current pricing on large FPGAs, the addition of a soft processor core costs as little as thirty-five cents based on the logic elements it requires. The remainder of the FPGA's logic elements can be used to build application-specific system hardware. Traditional system-on-a-chip devices (ASICs and custom VLSI ICs) still offer higher performance, but they also have large

⁵ Portions reprinted, with permission, from T. S. Hall and J. O. Hamblen, "System-on-a-Programmable-Chip Development Platforms in the Classroom," *IEEE Transactions on Education*, vol. 47, no. 4, pp. 502-507, Nov. 2004. © 2004 IEEE.

⁶ D. Seguine, "Just add sensor - integrating analog and digital signal conditioning in a programmable system on chip," *Proceedings of IEEE Sensors*, vol. 1, pp. 665–668, 2002.

M. Mar, B. Sullam, and E. Blom, "An architecture for a configurable mixed-signal device," *IEEE J. Solid-State Circuits*, vol. 38, pp. 565–568, Mar. 2003.

development costs and longer turnaround times.⁷ For projects requiring a hardware implementation, the FPGA-based SOPC approach is easier, faster, and more economical in low to medium quantity production.

Table 15.1 Features of Commercial Soft Processor Cores for FPGAs

Feature	Nios II 5.0	MicroBlaze 4.0
Datapath	32 bits	32 bits
Pipeline Stages	1-6	3
Frequency	Up to 200 MHz ⁸	Up to 200 MHz ⁴
Gate Count	26,000 – 72,000	30,000 – 60,000
Register File	32 general purpose & 6 special purpose	32 general purpose & 32 special purpose
Instruction Word	32 bits	32 bits
Instruction Cache	Optional	Optional
Hardware Multiply & Divide	Optional	Optional
Hardware Floating Point	Third Party	Optional

Typically, additional software tools are provided along with each processor core to support SOPC development. A special CAD tool specific to each soft processor core is used to configure processor options, which can include register file size, hardware multiply and divide, floating point hardware, interrupts, and I/O hardware. This tool outputs an HDL synthesis model of the processor core in VHDL or Verilog. In addition to the processor, other system logic is added and the resulting design is synthesized using a standard FPGA synthesis CAD tool. The embedded application program (software) for the processor is typically written in C or C++ and compiled using a customized compiler provided with the processor core tools.

15.2 SOPC Design Flow

The traditional flow of commercial CAD tools typically follows a path from hardware description language (HDL) or schematic design entry through synthesis and place and route tools to the programming of the FPGA. FPGA manufacturers provide CAD tools such as Altera's Quartus II and Xilinx's ISE software, which step the designer through this process. As shown in Fig. 15.1, the addition of a processor core and the tools associated with it are a superset of the traditional tools. The standard synthesis, place and route, and programming

⁷ H. Chang et al., *Surviving the SOC Revolution a Guide to Platform-Based Design*. Norwell, MA: Kluwer, 1999.

⁸ This speed is not achievable on all devices for either processor core. Some FPGAs may limit the maximum frequency to as low as 50 MHz.

functionality is still needed, and in the case of both Altera and Xilinx, the same CAD tools (Quartus II or ISE) are used to implement these blocks.

Processor Core Configuration Tools

Today, a number of pre-defined processor cores are available from various sources. GPL-licensed public processor cores can be found on the web (i.e., www.opencores.org and www.leox.org), while companies such as Altera (Nios II processor), Xilinx (MicroBlaze processor), and Tensilica (Xtensa processor) provide their processors and/or development tools for a fee.

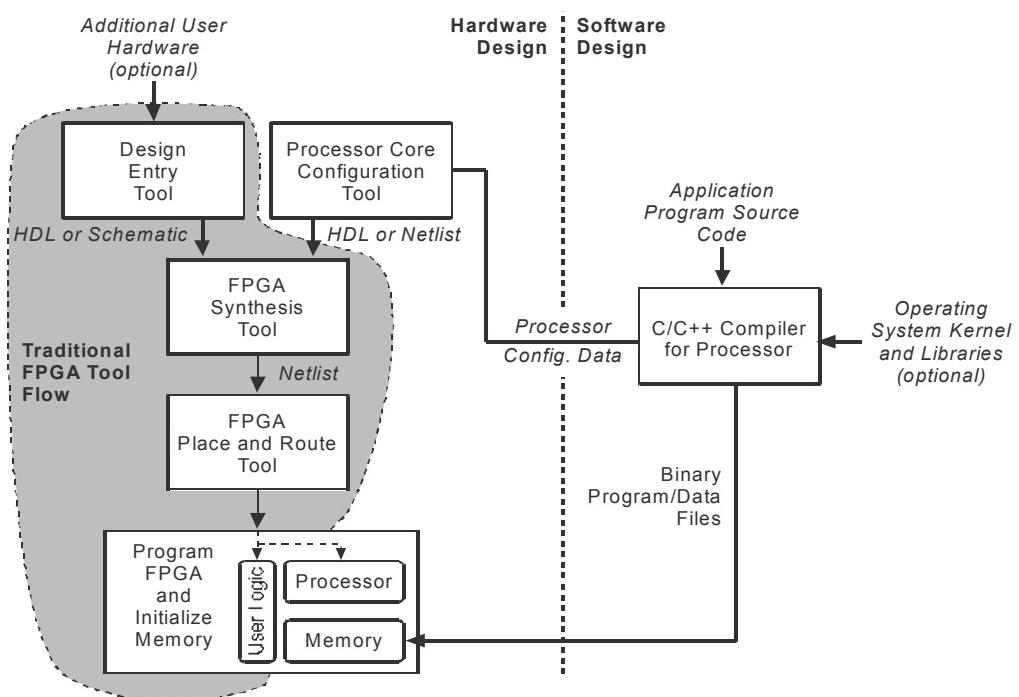


Figure 15.1 The CAD tool flow for SOPC design is comprised of the traditional design process for FPGA-based systems with the addition of the Processor Core Configuration Tool and software design tools. In this figure, the program and data memory is assumed to be on-chip for simplicity.

Processor cores provided by FPGA manufacturers are typically manually optimized for the specific FPGA family being used, and as such, are more efficiently implemented on the FPGA than a student-designed core (especially given the time and resource constraints of most class projects). The simple computer and MIPS processor cores developed earlier in this book were designed to be easy for students to understand and were not optimized for any particular FPGA. Additionally, FPGA companies provide extensive support

tools to ease the customization and use of their cores, including high-level compilers targeted at the custom cores.

In the case of Altera and Xilinx, the Processor Core Configuration Tool block shown in Fig. 15.1 is realized in a user-friendly GUI interface that allows the designer to customize the processor for a particular project. The configurable parameters can include the datapath width, memory, address space, and peripherals (including arbitrarily defined general-purpose I/O, UARTs, Ethernet controllers, memory controllers, etc.). Once the processor parameters are specified in the GUI interface, the processor core is generated in the form of an HDL file (in Altera) or a netlist file (in Xilinx). This file can then be included within a traditional HDL or schematic design using the standard CAD tools. Specific pin assignments and additional user logic can be included at this point like any other FPGA design. Next, the full hardware design (processor core and any additional user logic) is compiled (synthesis, place and route, etc.), and the FPGA can be programmed with the resulting file using the standard tools. The hardware design is complete, and the FPGA logic has been determined.

High-level Compiler for Processor Core

As shown on the right side of Fig. 15.1, the next step is to write and compile the software that will be executed on the soft processor core. When the Processor Core Configuration Tool generates the HDL or netlist files, it also creates a number of library files and their associated C header files that are customized for the specific processor core generated. A C/C++ compiler targeted at this processor is also provided. The designer can then program stand alone programs to run on the processor. Optionally, the designer can compile code for an operating system targeted for the processor core. Several operating systems for the Nios II are available from third-party vendors along with the community supported open source eCos (www.niosforum.com).

15.3 Initializing Memory

Once a program/data binary file has been generated, it must be loaded into the processor's program and data memories. This loading can be done several ways depending on the memory configuration of the processor at hand.

On-chip Memory

If the application program is small and can fit into the memory blocks available on the FPGA, then the program can be initialized in the memory when the hardware configuration is programmed. This initialization is done through the standard FPGA tools, such as Altera's Quartus II software or Xilinx's ISE software. However, on-chip memory is typically very limited, and this solution is not usually an option.

Bootloader

In a prototyping environment, the application program will most likely be modified a number of times before the final program is complete. In this case, the ability to download the application code from a PC to the memory on an

FPGA board must be provided. This functionality, typically called a “bootloader” or “boot monitor,” can be implemented in either software or hardware.

A software bootloader is comprised of code that is loaded into an on-chip memory and starts running on power up. This program is small enough (1-2 KB) to fit in most on-chip memories, and its primary function is to receive a program binary file over the serial port (or other interface), load it into external memory, and then start the new code executing. In this way, a new program can be stored into external memory (SRAM, SDRAM, Flash memory, etc.) by downloading it over the serial or JTAG port (or other interface) on the fly without having to reload the FPGA's hardware configuration. Xilinx provides a boot monitor for their MicroBlaze soft-core processor that includes the ability to download a program binary over the serial port (or other interface), store it in memory, and start the code executing. They also provide a more enhanced version called XMDstub that adds debugging capabilities. Altera's legacy Nios processors included a bootloader called GERMS. The Nios II processor still includes limited support for the GERMS monitor; however, a hardware bootloader is the preferred solution in Nios II.

A hardware bootloader provides functionality very similar to a software bootloader; however, it is implemented in dedicated logic within the processor core. Typically, the processor will be paused or stalled upon power up and the hardware bootloader will have direct access to memory or the memory registers in the processor's datapath. The bootloader hardware can start and stop the processor and can control the downloading of a program over the JTAG or serial interface to the desired memory locations. Altera's hardware bootloader is a part of the JTAG debug module, which resides within the Nios II processor. This logic uses the JTAG interface with the PC to receive the execution code, and it then writes the code to the appropriate memory. Finally, the bootloader hardware overwrites the processor's program counter with the start address of the code just downloaded and releases the pause bit to allow the processor to begin executing the downloaded code.

External Non-volatile Storage

The application program code can be stored on an external EEPROM, Flash memory, or other form of non-volatile memory. The application program can either be pre-programmed in the external memory module (for a production run) or a bootloader program can be used to store the application program in non-volatile storage. For low-speed applications, the code can be executed directly from the external memory. However, if high-speed functionality is required, then a designer could use three memories as shown in Fig. 15.2. In this scheme, the on-chip memory is initialized with a bootloader, which handles the movement of the application program between the memories. (On-chip memory is replaced with a hardware bootloader on some systems including the Nios II processor.)

The fast, volatile memory (i.e., SDRAM) is used to store the application program during execution. Finally, the slower, non-volatile memory (i.e., Flash

or EEPROM) is used for the permanent storage of the application program. The bootloader program can be modified to initialize the system, retrieve a program from non-volatile memory, store it in the faster, volatile memory, and then start it executing from the faster memory. This scheme provides the advantages of permanent storage, fast execution, and the ability to modify the application program when needed. Of course, it comes at the expense of having additional memory.

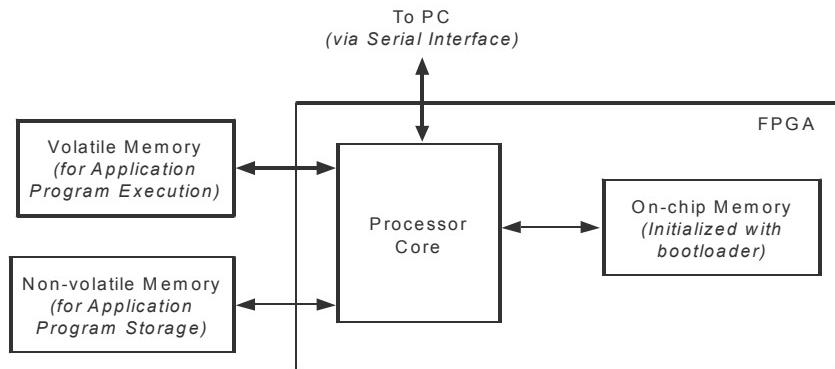


Figure 15.2 This arrangement of on-chip and external memories provides flexibility and performance to an SOPC system.

15.4 SOPC Design versus Traditional Design Modalities

The traditional design modalities are ASIC and fixed-processor design. SOPC design has advantages and disadvantages to both of these alternatives as highlighted in Table 15.2. The strengths of SOPC design are a reconfigurable, flexible nature and the short development cycle. However, the trade offs include lower maximum performance, higher unit costs in production, and relatively high power consumption.

The benefit of having a flexible hardware infrastructure can not be overestimated. In many new designs, features and specifications are modified throughout the design cycle. For example, marketing may detect a shift in demand requiring additional features (e.g., demand drops for cell phones without cameras), a protocol or specification is updated (e.g., USB 2.0 is introduced), or the customer requests an additional feature. In traditional design modalities (including ASIC and fixed-processor designs), these changes can dramatically effect the ASIC design, processor selection, and/or printed circuit board design. Since the hardware architecture is often settled upon early in the design cycle, making changes to the hardware design later in the cycle will typically result in delaying a product's release and increasing its cost.

Flexible infrastructure can also be beneficial in extending the life (and thus reducing the cost) of a product's hardware. With flexible, reconfigurable logic, often a single printed circuit board can be designed that can be used in multiple product lines and in multiple generations/versions of a single product. Using

reconfigurable logic as the heart of a design, allows it to be reprogrammed to implement a wide range of systems and designs. Extending the life of a board design even one generation can result in significant savings and can largely offset the increased per-unit expense of reconfigurable devices.

Table 15.2 Comparing SOPC, ASIC, and Fixed-Processor Design Modalities

Feature	SOPC	ASIC	Fixed-Processor
S/W Flexibility	●	●	●
H/W Flexibility	●	○	○
Reconfigurability	●	○	○
Development Time/Cost	●	○	●
Peripheral Equipment Costs	●	●	○
Performance	○	●	●
Production Cost	○	● ⁹	●
Power Efficiency	○	●	●

Legend: ● – Good; ○ – Moderate; ○ – Poor

The SOPC approach is ideal for student projects. SOPC boards can be used and reused to support an extremely wide range of student projects at a very low cost. ASIC development times are too long and mask setup fees are too high to be considered for general student projects. A fixed-processor option will often require additional hardware and perhaps even a new printed circuit board (PCB) design for each application. Given the complexity of today's multilayer surface mount PCB designs, it is highly unlikely that students would have sufficient time and funds to develop a new printed circuit board for a design project.

15.5 An Example SOPC Design

The SOPC-based autopilot system seen in the photograph on the first page of this chapter and the sensor board that mounts below it (described earlier in Section 13.5) makes an interesting case study in SOPC design¹⁰. The autopilot system continuously reads in sensor data that indicates attitude, altitude, speed, and location. It then uses this data to solve the control system motion equations for the aircraft and then outputs updated signals to control the aircraft.

⁹ In very large quantities.

¹⁰ Henrik B. Christophersen; R. W. Pickell; James C. Neidhoefer; Adrian A. Koller; Suresh K. Kannan; Eric N. Johnson, "A Compact Guidance, Navigation, and Control System for Unmanned Aerial Vehicles", *Journal of Aerospace Computing, Information, and Communication*, pp.,1542-9423, vol.3 no.5.

The flexibility of SOPC design allows the use of FPGA's logic elements to interface to a wide range of sensors without the need for additional I/O support chips that would be needed if a more traditional fixed-processor option was used. This results in an extremely small and low weight PCB design. An ASIC could be used instead of the FPGA, but the small production quantities needed for this system do not justify the greatly increased development time and cost needed for an ASIC.

Different types of aircraft also require markedly different I/O standards for the control outputs. Some aircraft controls use serial interfaces, while others use PWM or even parallel I/O. Here again, the flexibility of using the FPGA's logic elements to implement the I/O interface is of great benefit. By varying the logic in the interface peripherals, the same programmable processor core and PCB board can be used to support a wide range of aircraft without any hardware changes to the PCB.

The autopilot system requires intensive floating-point calculations to solve the complex control system equations for the aircraft. While it would be possible to perform floating-point calculations using a larger FPGA, the decision was made to use a fixed-processor DSP chip for the intensive floating-point calculations. By offloading the algorithmic computations to a fixed processor, the Nios II processor is primarily acting as an intelligent I/O processor for the system. This partitioning of the system between a fixed-processor DSP and soft-core processor results in higher computational performance than using just an FPGA (with floating-point hardware logic) and higher interface flexibility than using just a fixed processor in the system. However, new generations of FPGAs with DSP features such as hardware multipliers and floating-point IP cores are currently changing this set of design tradeoffs.

15.6 Hardware/Software Design Alternatives

The SOPC-based approach offers new design space alternatives. It is possible to explore design options that use software, dedicated hardware, or a mixture of both. Hardware solutions offer faster computations, but offer less flexibility and may require a larger FPGA. Implementation of solutions using software is easier to design for more complicated algorithms.

It is also possible to consider a combination of both approaches. Some processor cores allow the user to add custom instructions. If an application program requires the same calculation repeatedly in loops, adding a custom instruction using extra hardware to accelerate the inner loop code can greatly speed up the application.

15.7 For additional information

This chapter has provided a brief overview of SOPC systems and designs. More information about SOPC systems can be found from manufacturers such as Altera, Xilinx, Cypress Semiconductor, Stretch Incorporated, and Tensilica. SOPC systems are an active area of research. Publications of interest include the following:

- T. S. Hall and J. O. Hamblen, "System-on-a-Programmable-Chip Development Platforms in the Classroom," *IEEE Transactions on Education*, vol. 47, no. 4, pp. 502-507, Nov. 2004.
- C. Snyder, "FPGA processor cores get serious," in *Cahners Microprocessor Report*, <http://www.MPRonline.com/>, Sept. 2000.
- D. Seguine, "Just add sensor - integrating analog and digital signal conditioning in a programmable system on chip," *Proceedings of IEEE Sensors*, vol. 1, pp. 665–668, 2002.
- M. Mar, B. Sullam, and E. Blom, "An architecture for a configurable mixed-signal device," *IEEE J. Solid-State Circuits*, vol. 38, pp. 565–568, Mar. 2003.
- H. Chang and et. al., *Surviving the SOC Revolution A Guide to Platform-Based Design*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1999.
- J. Fisher, P. Faraboschi, and C. Young, *Embedded Computing : A VLIW Approach to Architecture, Compilers and Tools*, Morgan Kaufmann, 2004.
- A. Jerraya, H. Tenhunen, and W. Wolf, "Multiprocessor Systems-on-Chips," *IEEE Computer*, vol. 38, no. 7, pp. 36-41, July 2005.
- S. Liebson and J. Kim, "Configurable Processors: A New Era in Chip Design," *IEEE Computer*, vol. 38, no. 7, pp.51-59, July 2005.

15.8 Laboratory Exercises

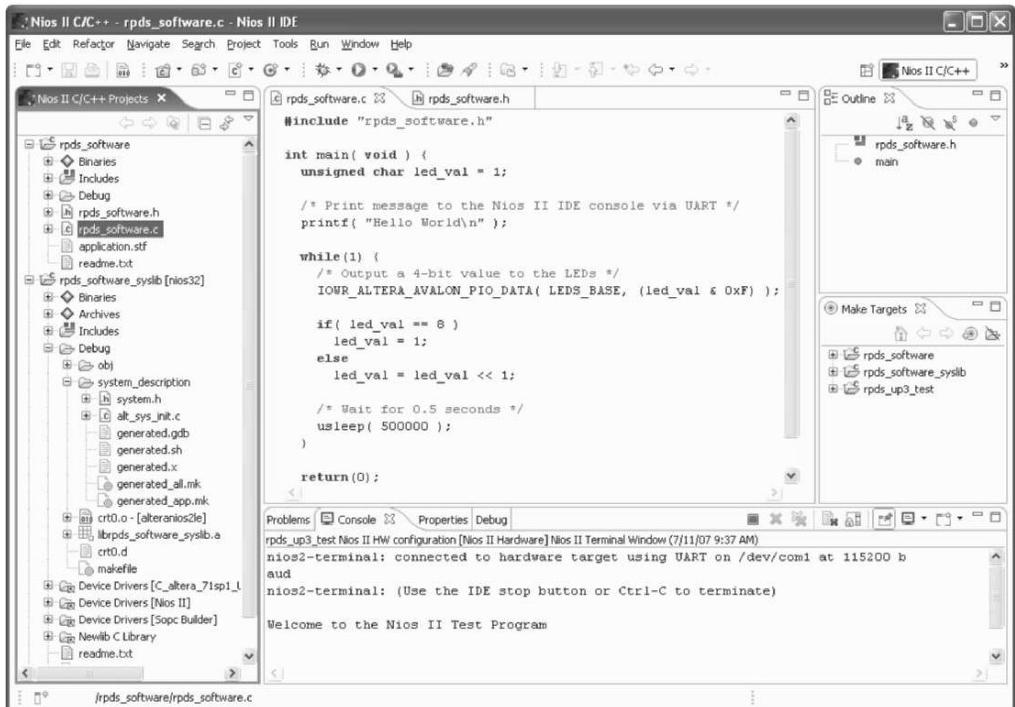
1. Compare the instruction formats and the instruction set of the Nios II processor to the MIPS processor from Chapter 14. Information on the Nios II instruction set architecture is available at Altera's website (www.altera.com) in the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook.
2. A system needs a processor to run a control program, but the application also needs to compute FFTs at a somewhat high data rate. FFTs require a large number of multiply and add operations on an array in nested loops. What SOPC hardware/software design tradeoffs would you need to consider? Justify your answer.
3. List several types of products that could likely take advantage of the SOPC design approach. Explain your reasoning.
4. Compare the memory read access time of the FPGA's Flash and SRAM memory chips. Information can be found in each chip's datasheet. If the processor did not have an instruction cache, how much faster could a program read instructions from SRAM?
5. You are asked to specify the memory types and sizes for an SOPC design that will execute a program with a 60 KB length or footprint. During execution, the program requires 16 KB of data memory for the stack and heap. If the SOPC hardware mandates a single memory (for program and data memory), select the type and size of memory. Perform an online search to find a manufacturer and model number for the memory you

selected. You may have to modify your initial selection based on availability and cost of various memories. Justify your selection considering cost, specification, performance, and availability. Don't forget that you need non-volatile memory to boot the system.

6. Given the SOPC system outlined in Problem 5, select the type and size of memory needed for this system when program and data memory are separate. Justify your selection considering cost, specification, performance, and availability. Compare the single memory option from Problem 5 with the dual-memory option from this problem. Which memory configuration is preferable? Justify your answer.
7. There are a number of different non-volatile memory technologies available to SOPC designers. For a system with a 256 KB code footprint, compare the cost, reprogrammability, configuration time, access time (reading only), and longevity for PROM, EEPROM, and Flash memories.

CHAPTER 16

Tutorial III: Nios II Processor Software Development



The Nios II IDE tool compiles C/C++ code for the Nios II processor and provides an integrated software development environment for Nios II systems.

16 Tutorial III: Nios II Processor Software Development

Designing systems with embedded processors requires both hardware and software design elements. A collection of CAD tools developed by Altera enable you to design both the hardware and software for a fully functional, customizable, soft-core processor called Nios II. This tutorial steps you through the software development for a Nios II processor executing on the DE board. A Nios II processor reference design targeted for the DE board is used here. To design a custom Nios II processor refer to Tutorial IV (in the following chapter), which introduces the hardware design tools for the Nios II processor.

Upon completion of this tutorial, you will be able to:

- Navigate Altera's Nios II Integrated Development Environment (IDE),
- Write a C-language software program that executes on the Nios II reference design,
- Download and execute a software program on the Nios II processor, and
- Test the peripherals and memory components of the Nios II reference design on a DE1 or DE2 board.

This tutorial will step you through writing and running two programs for the Nios II processor. First, a simple "Hello World" type of program will be written, compiled, downloaded to the DE board, and run. Next, a test program that uses interrupts, pushbuttons, switches, LEDs, SRAM, Flash memory, SDRAM, and the LCD display (*on the DE2 board only*) will be written that can be used to test the major peripherals on the DE board.



THE DVD CONTAINS A VERSION OF CHAPTERS 16 AND 17 FOR THE UP 3 BOARDS.

16.1 Install the DE board files

Run the installation program for Altera's University Program IP Library. This program can be found on the DVD at `\Altera_Software\UP_IP_Library.exe`.

16.2 Starting a Nios II Software Project

The Nios II Integrated Development Environment (IDE) is a standalone program that works in conjunction with Quartus II. To design software in the IDE, Quartus II does not have to be installed on your system; however, you will need a valid Quartus II project with a Nios II processor in it to use the IDE. A Nios II reference design for the DE board is included on the DVD that came with this book. This hardware design will be used for the remainder of this tutorial. Copy the design files from `booksoft_fe\de2\chap16` on the DVD to a working directory on your hard drive. (If you are using a DE1 board, then copy the files from the `booksoft_fe\de1\chap16` folder on the DVD.) The software design files will be stored in a subdirectory of this project directory.

Open the Nios II IDE software. For the default installation, the software icon can be found under **Start** \Rightarrow **All Programs** \Rightarrow **Altera** \Rightarrow **Nios II EDS 7.1** \Rightarrow **Nios II 7.1 IDE**.

You should be prompted to **Select a Workspace**. If the dialog box in Figure 16.1 does not appear, then select **File** \Rightarrow **Switch Workspace....** The workspace is a cache for information about all projects associated with a given Nios II processor design. Enter the full pathname of the Quartus II project directory you created above (the directory to which *DVD\booksoft_fe\de2\chap16* was copied) followed by the subdirectory **\software** as shown in Figure 16.1. Click **OK** to select the default location and continue.

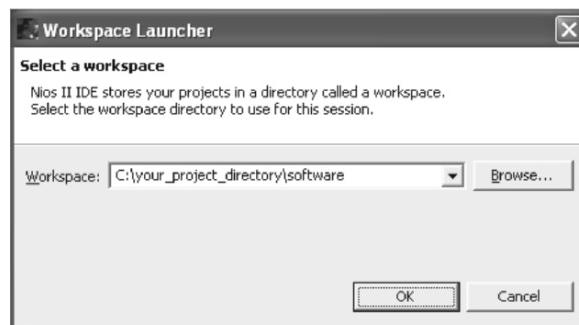


Figure 16.1 Setting the Nios II IDE workspace to the Nios II reference design software directory.

To create a new project, select **File** \Rightarrow **New** \Rightarrow **Project....** The **New Project** wizard will begin. On the first dialog box, select **Nios II C/C++ Application** and click **Next** to continue.

In the next dialog box, fill in the requested information as shown in Figure 16.2. The name of the project is **rpds_software**, the **SOPC Builder System** should point to the **nios32.ptf** file in the project directory you copied from the DVD, and the **Project Template** should be set to **Blank Project**. If the workspace was correctly set to your project directory as detailed above, then the default location will be correct and **Specify Location** should be unchecked. However, if the workspace is set to some other directory, then select **Specify Location** and enter **c:\your_project_directory\software** in the **Location** field. Click **Next** to continue.

In the final dialog box, select the option **Create a new system library named: rpds_software_syslib**. Click **Finish** to create and open the project. When the **New Project** dialog box disappears, click on the **Workbench** icon on the **Welcome** page in the main IDE window if the main project view does not appear automatically.

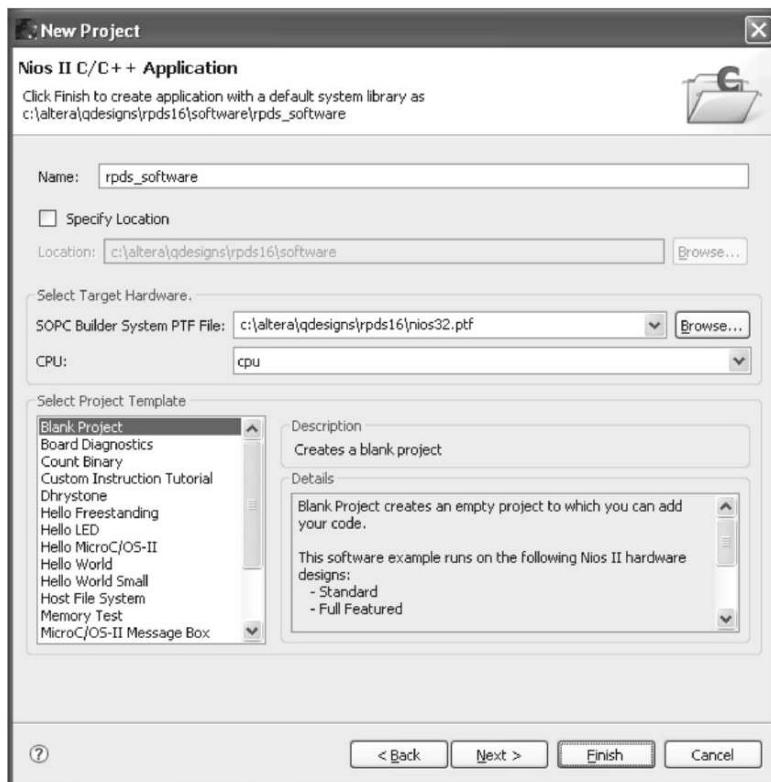


Figure 16.2 Create a blank project for the Nios II reference design.

16.3 The Nios II IDE Software

Take a few minutes to orient yourself to the Nios II IDE software. The middle of the window will display the contents of the source files when you open them. The Outline pane on the right-hand side will provide links to each of the functions that are declared in the open C source file. Clicking on a link will jump the cursor to the start of that function. On the left-hand side, a list of projects for the current workspace is shown in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane.

Two projects should appear in the **C/C++ Projects** pane by default (after having created your new blank project): **rpds_software** and **rpds_software_syslib**.

- The **rpds_software** library is the location for your software. Since a blank project has been created, no source or header files exist in this library yet.
- The **rpds_software_syslib** library is the container for the top-level system header file (system.h) that contains the names and base addresses of peripherals in the Nios II reference design system for which you are writing software. It also contains links to libraries of device drivers for

the Nios II processor, peripherals from SOPC Builder, and any additional component libraries that have been installed. Except for the links to the device driver libraries, the `rpds_software_syslib` library will be empty until the system library is generated in the next section.

16.4 Generating the Nios II System Library

Each Nios II system is unique. It has different peripherals, different memory-mapped addresses, different interrupt settings, etc. To accommodate this flexibility, the Nios II IDE creates a system library from your Nios II hardware settings file (e.g., `nios32.ptf`). The system library defines the names of the peripherals in a given system and maps them to their memory addresses, and it defines several system-critical definitions that are used to make several standard C libraries compatible with your specific Nios II system.

Before the system library can be generated, several settings must be modified. Right click on `rpds_software_syslib` in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane and select **Properties** from the drop-down menu. In the dialog box, select **System Library** from the list on the left to view the configuration options for the system library.

Under **System Library Contents**, select the `jtag_uart` device for `stdout`, `stderr`, and `stdin`. The Nios II system allows the `stdout`, `stderr`, and `stdin` data streams to be redirected to a UART interface using a serial cable connected to your PC. This means that the output of `printf` and other standard output functions will be displayed in a console window on your PC since there is no monitor attached to the FPGA directly at the moment. Likewise, the use of `scanf` and other standard input functions will wait for data to be transmitted from the PC to the UART. Any text that you type in the Nios II IDE's console window will be sent via the UART to the Nios II processor. One or more of these output streams can be set to the `uart` device. This will result in data for that stream being sent over a serial cable connected to the RS-232 serial port on the DE board. For this tutorial, leave all data streams set to `jtag_uart` so only the USB cable is needed.

Notice that the various segments of memory can be individually assigned to different memory devices (SRAM, SDRAM, Flash, etc.). For this tutorial, set all of the memory segments to `sram`. It is also useful to note that this dialog box contains an option to use a **Small C library** for your project. Selecting this option, removes many of the less common functions of the ANSI C standard library such as `printf`'s floating-point number support, `scanf`, `file seek (fseek)`, and more. Using a small standard library can result in a much smaller amount of memory needed for storing your software. A complete list of standard library functions affected by selecting the **Small C Library** option can be found in the *Nios II Software Developer's Handbook* available on Altera's website. For this tutorial, leave the **Small C Library** option **unchecked** as shown in Figure 16.3 and click **OK** to continue.

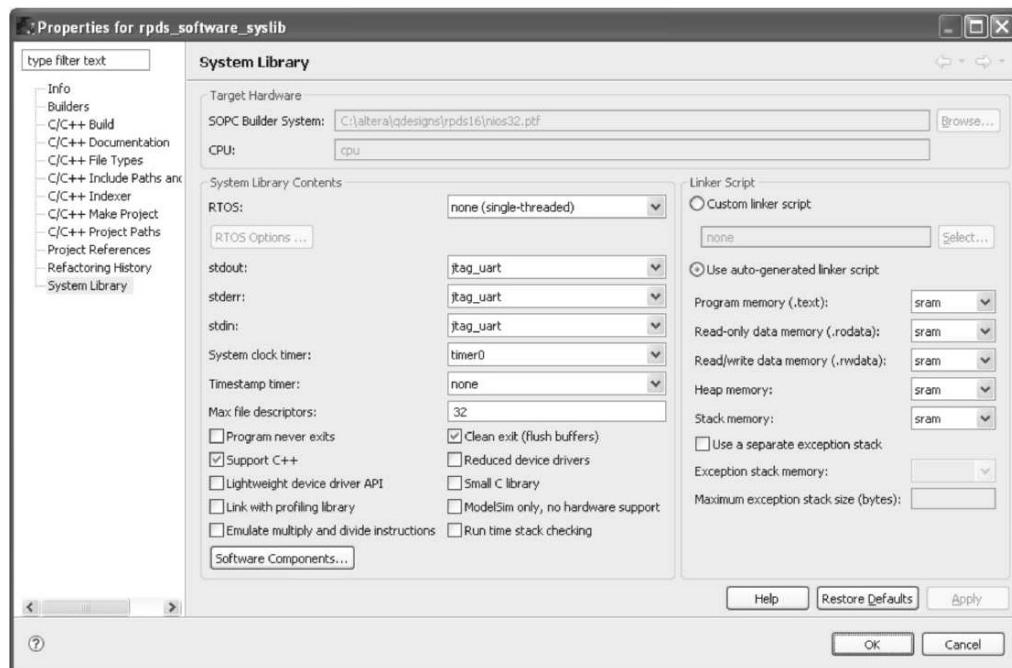


Figure 16.3 These are the system library settings that should be used for this tutorial.

To generate the system library for this Nios II system, right click on **rpds_software_syslib** in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane and select **Build Project** from the drop-down menu. Once building has completed, view the files created by the build by expanding the **rpds_software_syslib** item in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane. Under the **rpds_software_syslib** folder, several folders appear. The **Includes** folder contains links to the device drivers for peripherals in the Nios II reference design processor that you are using. The **Debug** \Rightarrow **System Description** folder contains the **system.h** header file that includes definitions for all of the peripherals in this Nios II processor.

16.5 Software Design with Nios II Peripherals

Accessing and communicating with Nios II peripherals can be accomplished in three general methods: direct register access, hardware abstraction layer (HAL) interface, and standard ANSI C library functions. Depending on the complexity of the operation and the specific device being used, a programmer will often use each of the three methods at one point or another. In this tutorial, direct register access will be used to communicate with the LEDs, dipswitches, and LCD display. The HAL interface will be used to communicate with Flash and install an interrupt handler for the pushbuttons, and standard C library conventions will be used to access the memory and timer devices. The SRAM and SDRAM device drivers support standard memory-style access; however, they do not currently support standard file I/O (*fread*, *fwrite*, etc.). A memory-based filesystem and the accompanying file I/O operations can be added by the user.

Below, each type of peripheral access is discussed. As an example, the C code necessary to provide a one second delay using each method is shown in Figures 16.4-6.

```
#include "system.h"

#include "altera_avalon_timer_regs.h"

int main( void ) {

    IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_TIMER_PERIODL( TIMER0_BASE,
        (48000000 & 0xFFFF) );

    IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_TIMER_PERIODH( TIMER0_BASE,
        ((48000000>>16) & 0xFFFF) );

    IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_TIMER_STATUS( TIMER0_BASE, 0 );

    IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_TIMER_CONTROL( TIMER0_BASE, 0x4 );

    while( (IORD_ALTERA_AVALON_TIMER_STATUS( TIMER0_BASE ) &
        ALTERA_AVALON_TIMER_STATUS_TO_MSK) == 0 ) {}

}
```

Figure 16.4 This is the C code necessary for providing a one second delay by directly accessing the system timer's registers. The timer peripheral in this system is called *timer0*.

Direct Register Access

Each peripheral's registers can be directly accessed through read and write macros that are defined in each component's device driver header file. This type of communication is the lowest level and while it provides the most flexibility in interfacing with peripherals, it can also be the most tedious. As illustrated in Figure 16.4, interfacing with the timer device can be quite cumbersome, even to provide a relatively straight-forward function such as a one second delay. If you read the actual count to determine elapsed time, you also need to keep in mind how your code will function when the timer count wraps around and starts over.

```
#include <sys/alt_alarm.h>

int main( void ) {
    int first_val, second_val;

    second_val = 0;
    first_val = alt_nticks();

    while( (second_val - first_val) < 1000000 ) {
        second_val = alt_nticks();
    }
}
```

Figure 16.5 This is the C code necessary for providing a one second delay by using the HAL interface functions.

HAL Interface

A layer of software called a hardware abstraction layer (HAL) has been created that resides between the user code and the peripheral hardware registers. The HAL interface contains a number of very useful functions that allow the user to communicate with peripherals at a higher functional level. For example, the HAL interface provides functions *alt_flash_open_dev*, *alt_read_flash*, *alt_write_flash*, and *alt_flash_close_dev* for communication with Flash memory. By providing these functions, Flash memory can be accessed by opening the device and reading from it and writing to it without having to create user functions that provide the read and write functionality from low-level peripheral register accesses.

For the timer device, a function called *alt_nticks* provides convenient access to the timer. As illustrated in Figure 16.5, the HAL functions provide a more straight-forward method of creating a one second delay.

```
#include <unistd.h>

int main( void ) {
    usleep( 1000000 );
}
```

Figure 16.6 This is the C code necessary for providing a one second delay by using the standard ANSI C library functions.

Standard Library Functions

Access to most of Nios II's peripherals has been incorporated into the standard ANSI C library functions. Using standard ANSI C libraries such as *stdlib*, *stdio*,

string, time, malloc, etc. you can manipulate strings, access memory and memory-like devices through standard file I/O functions, use the timer to add a delay using *usleep* or *wait* functions, and much more. This is the highest level of abstraction provided by the Nios II IDE. Many of these functions use the peripheral-specific HAL functions to provide a single common interface to various types of peripherals. For example, *fopen*, *fread*, *fwrite*, and *fclose* functions from the *stdio* library can be used for memory accesses on some SDRAM, Flash, or SRAM memory devices. The system library functions will use the appropriate HAL function calls for each access depending on the particular memory device being used. To create a one second delay using the timer, a single call to the standard library function *usleep* can be made as shown in Figure 16.6

```
#ifndef _RPDS_SOFTWARE_H_
#define _RPDS_SOFTWARE_H_

#include <stdio.h>
#include <unistd.h>
#include "system.h"
#include "altera_avalon_pio_regs.h"

#endif // _RPDS_SOFTWARE_H_
```

Figure 16.7 This is your first C program's main header file.

16.6 Starting Software Design – main()

Create a C header file by selecting the **rpds_software** item in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane. Choose **File** ⇒ **New** ⇒ **Header File**. When the dialog box appears, enter **rpds_software.h** for the **Header File** and click **Finish** to continue.

Start your program's main header file by adding the *#include* and definition statements shown in Figure 16.7.

The C program that you will now write will print “Hello World” in the Nios II IDE's console window (via the UART and serial cable), and it will blink eight of the red LEDs on the DE board.

Create your program's main C source file by selecting the **rpds_software** item in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane. Choose **File** ⇒ **New** ⇒ **File**. When the dialog box appears, enter **rpds_software.c** for the **File name** and click **Finish** to continue.

Start your program by including the **rpds_software.h** header file and typing the code shown in Figure 16.8.

```
#include "rpds_software.h"

int main( void ) {
    unsigned char led_val = 1;

    /* Print message to the Nios II IDE console via UART */
    printf( "Hello World\n" );

    while(1) {
        /* Output a 8-bit value to the LEDs */
        IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_DATA( LEDS_BASE, (led_val & 0xFF) );

        if( led_val == 0x80 )
            led_val = 1;
        else
            led_val = led_val << 1;

        /* Wait for 0.5 seconds */
        usleep( 500000 );
    }

    return(0);
}
```

Figure 16.8 This is your first C program's main source file.

16.7 Downloading the Nios II Hardware and Software Projects

To execute your software on a Nios II processor, you must configure the FPGA with the Nios II hardware reference design and then you can download the compiled program code to the processor's program memory.

Connect the USB cable. Verify that the **Run/Prog** switch on the DE board is set to **Run**, and then turn on the DE board. Select **Tools** \Rightarrow **Quartus II Programmer...** to configure the FPGA. When the **Quartus II Programmer** appears, click on **Add File...** and select the **rpds16.sof** file from your project directory. Click **Open** to add the selected file to the download chain. Check the **Program/Configure** box on the row with your configuration file on it, and click **Start** to begin hardware configuration.

Return to the **Nios II IDE** window. From the **Nios II IDE** window, right click the **rpds_software** item in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane and select **Build Project** from the drop-down menu. This will begin a full compilation of all libraries in your project.

IMPORTANT: In the reference hardware design, SW9 is used as the Nios II processor's reset signal. Before code can be downloaded to the processor, it must be brought out of reset by setting SW9 in the up (or on) position.

To download the compiled code to the Nios II processor executing on the FPGA, right click the **rpds_software** item in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane

and select **Run As ⇨Nios II Hardware**. If the run settings dialog box appears, click the **Run** button to close this box. If the run settings dialog box appears, click the **Run** button to close this box.

16.8 Executing the Software

Once the program code has been downloaded to the Nios II processor's program memory (SRAM in this configuration), your code automatically begins executing. As a part of the normal download process, the Nios II IDE downloads your program to memory and then reads the program memory back to verify that the code in program memory is correct. If there are any problems with downloading your program, then the processor is stalled and a message that alerts you to this fact appears in the **Console** pane in the bottom right-hand side of the **Nios II IDE** window. If this happens, verify that SW9 is in the up (on) position and then right click the **rpds_software** item in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane and select **Run As ⇨Nios II Hardware** again.

Once your program begins executing, the Nios II IDE's **Console** pane becomes a standard input/output terminal connected to your processor via the RS-232 UART device and cable. The text message "Hello World" should appear in the **Console** pane as soon as your program begins. Also, eight of the red LEDs on the DE board should blink one at a time.

16.9 Starting Software Design for a Peripheral Test Program

Now that you have written your first program and have it successfully running on the DE board, it is time to write a longer program that will test each of the major peripheral components on the DE board.

A second project can be added to the current workspace, and since the same Nios II processor is being used for all projects in this workspace, the same system library can be used for them all. This option will be selected in the dialog box shown in Figure 16.9.

To create a new project, select **File ⇨New ⇨Project....** The **New Project** wizard will begin. On the first dialog box, select **Nios II C/C++ Application** and click **Next** to continue.

In the next dialog box, fill in the requested information. The name of the project is **rpds_de_test**, the **SOPC Builder System** should point to the **nios32.ptf** file in your hardware project directory, and the **Project Template** should be set to **Blank Project**. If the workspace was correctly set to your project directory as detailed above, then the default location will be correct and **Specify Location** should be unchecked. However, if the workspace is set to some other directory, then select **Specify Location** and enter **c:\your_project_directory\software** in the **Location** field. Click **Next** to continue.

In the final dialog box, select the option **Select or create a system library** and choose the **rpds_software_syslib** project from the list of **Available System Library Projects for: nios32** as shown in Figure 16.9. Click **Finish** to create and open the project.



Figure 16.9 Since this project uses the same Nios II processor as your first program, the same system library can be used. Select the **rpds_software_syslib** from the list of available libraries.

Create a C header file by selecting the **rpds_up3_test** item in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane. Choose **File** ⇒ **New** ⇒ **Header File**. When the dialog box appears, enter **rpds_up3_test.h** for the **Header File** and click **Finish** to continue.

Start your program's main header file by adding the **#include** and definition statements shown in Figure 16.10.

```
#ifndef _RPDS_DE_TEST_H_
#define _RPDS_DE_TEST_H_

#include <stdio.h>
#include <unistd.h>
#include "system.h"
#include "alt_types.h"
#include "sys/alt_irq.h"
#include "sys/alt_flash.h"
#include "altera_avalon_pio_regs.h"

#endif // _RPDS_DE_TEST_H_
```

Figure 16.10 This is the beginning of your C program's main header file.

The C program that you will now write uses the four pushbuttons on the DE board to select which device to test. When a pushbutton is pressed, it will be decoded (in an interrupt handler) and a variable will be set. The program's main thread will continuously read the function variable (at 50 ms intervals) and initiate the appropriate peripheral test. The function variable will be cleared at the end of each test routine so that buttons pressed while a peripheral is being tested will be ignored. The mapping of pushbutton to device shown in Table 16.1 will be used.

Table 16.1 Pushbutton to Device Mapping for Sample C Program

Pushbuttons (4-3-2-1)	Peripheral to Test
0001	LCD Display
0010	SRAM Memory
0100	Flash Memory
1000	SDRAM Memory

```
#include "rpds_de_test.h"

int main( void ) {
    volatile int function = 0;
    int ret_val;

    while(1) {
        switch( function ) {
            case 0x1:           /* Test the LCD display */
                ret_val = test_lcd();
                break;
            case 0x2:           /* Test the SRAM */
                ret_val = test_sram();
                break;
            case 0x4:           /* Test the Flash memory */
                ret_val = test_flash();
                break;
            case 0x8:           /* Test the SDRAM */
                ret_val = test_sdram();
                break;
            default:            /* Do nothing */
                break;
        }
        function = 0;
        usleep( 50000 );     /* Wait 50 ms */
    }
    return(0);
}
```

Figure 16.11 This is the beginning of your C program's main source file.

Create your program's main C source file by selecting the **rpds_de_test** item in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane. Choose **File** \Rightarrow **New** \Rightarrow **File**. When the dialog box appears, enter **rpds_de_test.c** for the **File name** and click **Finish** to continue.

Start your program by including the **rpds_de_test.h** header file and typing the code shown in Figure 16.11.

16.10 Handling Interrupts

Inputs can be evaluated using two methods—polling and interrupts. To poll an input, your code can periodically check the value of the input device and determine if the value has changed. If a change has occurred, then the appropriate action should be taken to evaluate the input. An interrupt-driven input, however, works differently. When the value of the input changes, an interrupt signal is activated and the processor is alerted. The processor immediately performs a jump into a section of code known as the interrupt handler. This code determines which interrupt has occurred (most processors support multiple interrupt signals) and calls the appropriate interrupt service

routine (a function that has been written to handle the specific interrupt signal). When the interrupt service routine has finished processing the input, the processor returns to the code it was executing before the interrupt occurred.

The program you are writing will use a combination of polling and interrupt driven inputs. The switches and function variable will be polled every 50 ms. The value of the switches will be displayed on the LEDs, and the value of the function variable will determine which, if any, peripheral should be tested.

The pushbuttons on the DE board are represented by a 4-bit parallel I/O (PIO) peripheral called **buttons** in the Nios II reference design that you are using for this tutorial. The **buttons** PIO has been configured to generate an interrupt whenever any pushbutton is pressed and released.

To support interrupts you first must create a function that will execute when an interrupt occurs. This function is called an interrupt service routine (ISR). ISRs should generally be very short and execute quickly. Add the function **buttons_isr** as shown in Figure 16.12. The ISR function here reads the value of the PIO's edge capture register and stores it in the *function* variable. Next, it resets the edge capture register and IRQ mask register to allow the next interrupt to be captured and read properly.

```
static void buttons_isr( void* context, alt_u32 id ) {
    volatile int *function = (volatile int*) context;

    *function = IORD_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_EDGE_CAP( BUTTONS_BASE );
    IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_EDGE_CAP( BUTTONS_BASE, 0 );
    IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_IRQ_MASK( BUTTONS_BASE, 0xF );
}
```

Figure 16.12 This is the interrupt service routine for the pushbuttons.

In your **main** function, you need to register your interrupt service routine and set the pushbuttons' IRQ mask register to allow interrupts to be captured. Add the two following lines before the *while* loop in your **main** function:

```
alt_irq_register(BUTTONS_IRQ, (void *) &function, buttons_isr);
IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_IRQ_MASK( BUTTONS_BASE, 0xF );
```

16.11 Accessing Parallel I/O Peripherals

Macros are included in the **altera_avalon_pio_regs.h** file that read and write from the control and data registers in PIO components. You have already used these macros in the pushbutton's interrupt service routine to read and write the edge capture register and IRQ mask register. Now, you need to use these macros to read the values from the dipswitches and write them to the LEDs. Add the following two lines immediately above the *usleep(50000)* line in your **main** function:

```
switches = IORD_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_DATA( SWITCHES_BASE );
```

```
IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_DATA( LEDS_BASE, switches );
```

You will also need to add a declaration for the integer variable *switches* to your **main** function.

```
void lcd_init( void ) {

    /* Set Function Code Four Times -- 8-bit, 2 line, 5x7 mode */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x38 );
    usleep(4100);    /* Wait 4.1 ms */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x38 );
    usleep(100);    /* Wait 100 us */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x38 );
    usleep(5000);    /* Wait 5.0 ms */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x38 );
    usleep(100);

    /* Set Display to OFF */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x08 );
    usleep(100);

    /* Set Display to ON */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x0C );
    usleep(100);

    /* Set Entry Mode -- Cursor increment, display doesn't shift */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x06 );
    usleep(100);

    /* Set the cursor to the home position */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x02 );
    usleep(2000);

    /* Clear the display */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x01 );
    usleep(2000);
}
```

Figure 16.13 This is the LCD initialization function.

16.12 Communicating with the LCD Display (**DE2 only**)

The LCD display on the DE2 board can be treated similarly to a memory device. However, there are some additional initialization commands that must be sent to the LCD display that are not typical memory transactions. LCD initialization commands vary depending on the LCD controller chip that is on a particular LCD display. The manufacturer's datasheet will detail the proper initialization procedure their LCD displays. The initialization routine for the LCD display that ships with the DE2 board is shown in Figure 16.13. Add this

routine to your C source file. Also, add a call to this function in your **main** function preceding the line of code that calls the **test_lcd** function.

The code for **test_lcd** is shown in Figure 16.14. You will notice that this code expects several constants to be defined. Add definitions for the following constants in your **rpd5_de_test.h** header file:

- LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG = 0
- LCD_WR_DATA_REG = 2

The **main** function in your C source file should now be complete and look similar to the code in Figure 16.15. Note that a few *printf* statements have been added to provide the user with the program's status while executing.

```
alt_u32 test_lcd( void ) {
    int i;
    char message[17] = "Counting...      ";
    char done[12] = "Done!      ";

    /* Write a simple message on the first line. */
    for( i = 0; i < 16; i++ ) {
        IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_DATA_REG, message[i] );
        usleep(100);
    }
    /* Count along the bottom row */
    /* Set Address */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0xC0 );
    usleep(1000);
    /* Display Count */
    for( i = 0; i < 10; i++ ) {
        IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_DATA_REG, (char)(i+0x30) );
        usleep(500000); /* Wait 0.5 sec. */
    }

    /* Write "Done!" message on first line. */
    /* Set Address */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x80 );
    usleep(1000);
    /* Write data */
    for( i = 0; i < 11; i++ ) {
        IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_DATA_REG, done[i] );
        usleep(100);
    }
    return(0);
}
```

Figure 16.14 This is the code to test the LCD display.

```
int main( void ) {
    volatile int function = 0;
    alt_u32 switches, ret_val;

    printf("Welcome to the Nios II Test Program\n" );

    alt_irq_register(BUTTONS_IRQ, (void *) &function, buttons_isr);
    IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_IRQ_MASK( BUTTONS_BASE, 0xF );

    while(1) {
        switch( function ) {
            case 0x1:           /* Test the LCD display */
                printf("Testing LCD Display\n" );
                lcd_init();
                ret_val = test_lcd();
                printf("...Completed.\n" );
                break;
            case 0x2:           /* Test the SRAM */
                printf("Testing SRAM\n" );
                ret_val = test_sram();
                printf("...Completed with %d Errors.\n", ret_val );
                break;
            case 0x4:           /* Test the Flash memory */
                printf("Testing Flash memory\n" );
                ret_val = test_flash();
                printf("...Completed with %d Errors.\n", ret_val );
                break;
            case 0x8:           /* Test the SDRAM */
                printf("Testing SDRAM\n" );
                ret_val = test_sdram();
                printf("...Completed with %d Errors.\n", ret_val );
                break;
            default:            /* Do nothing */
                break;
        }

        function = 0;

        switches = IORD_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_DATA( SWITCHES_BASE );
        IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_DATA( LEDS_BASE, switches );

        usleep( 50000 );
    }

    return(0);
}
```

Figure 16.15 This is the completed *main* function.

16.13 Testing SRAM

To test the SRAM, you will write a large number of values to memory and then read back from the same memory locations to verify that the contents of memory are what you expect. Since SRAM is currently being used for program and data memory, accessing SRAM is straight-forward. Any array that is created in a function will be stored in data memory (e.g., in SRAM). The code for **test_sram** is shown in Figure 16.16. You will notice that this code expects the constant value **SRAM_MAX_WORDS** to be defined. Add a definition for this constant to your **rpd5_de.h** header file and set it equal to **8000**.

This test routine assumes that there is not a data cache memory present in the Nios II system. If data cache is present, then declaring an array in a function like **test_sram** would not ensure SRAM writes, because the data cache memory could be used as a temporary buffer. Since this function is very short and the array's scope is internal to the function, it is highly likely that the array data would never be written to SRAM. To avoid these potential issues, the reference hardware design used in this tutorial does *not* include data cache.

THERE ARE SEVERAL WAYS TO BYPASS DATA CACHE IN THE NIOS II PROCESSOR. (1) CREATE A BUFFER THAT IS LARGER THAN THE DATA CACHE TO FORCE AT LEAST SOME SRAM ACCESSES. (2) USE SPECIAL MEMORY ACCESS INSTRUCTIONS (SUCH AS LWIO AND SWIO) IN THE NIOS II INSTRUCTION SET THAT BYPASS DATA CACHE AND FORCE A MEMORY ACCESS.

```
alt_u32 test_sram( void ) {
    alt_u32 i, val;
    alt_u32 errors = 0;
    alt_u32 buffer[SRAM_MAX_WORDS];

    /* Write data to SRAM */
    for( i = 0; i < SRAM_MAX_WORDS; i++ ) {
        buffer[i] = i + 1000;
    }
    /* Check output from SRAM */
    for( i = 0; i < SRAM_MAX_WORDS; i++ ) {
        if( buffer[i] != (i+1000) )
            errors++;
    }
    return( errors );
}
```

Figure 16.16 This is the code to test the SRAM memory device.

16.14 Testing Flash Memory

Flash memory is organized into blocks of data and is accessed in a different manner than SRAM and SDRAM. The Nios II HAL interface includes memory access functions for Flash devices that conform to the Common Flash Memory Interface (CFI) standard. The functions `alt_flash_open_dev`, `alt_read_flash`, `alt_write_flash`, and `alt_flash_close_dev` provide an interface that is very similar to file I/O. These subroutines and more lower-level functions are all declared in the `sys/alt_flash.h` header file.

Flash memory write operations happen at the block level meaning that to write a block or any portion of a block (down to a single byte of data) requires the entire block of data to be erased and overwritten. When writing to a partial block of data, the user is responsible for reading the portion of the block that is not to be overwritten, storing it, and passing it with the new data as a complete block to be written. Also, keep in mind that Flash memory typically has a life expectancy of 100,000 write cycles. Because of the overhead involved in writing partial blocks of data and the finite number of write cycles for a given Flash memory device, it is best to buffer data until a full block can be written to Flash memory.

The code for `test_flash` is shown in Figure 16.17. The data to be written to flash is buffered in the `in_buff` array located in data memory. Once it is full, the entire buffer is sent to the `alt_flash_write` command which partitions it into blocks of data and writes the full blocks to Flash memory. Depending on the total length of the `in_buff` array the final block written may be a partial block, but at least it will only get written once. You will also notice that this code expects the constant value `FLASH_MAX_WORDS` to be defined. Add a definition for this constant to your `rpds_de_test.h` header file and set it equal to `1000`.

```
alt_u32 test_flash( void ) {
    alt_u32 i, errors = 0;
    alt_u32 in_buff[FLASH_MAX_WORDS], out_buff[FLASH_MAX_WORDS];
    alt_flash_fd* flash_handle;

    flash_handle = alt_flash_open_dev( FLASH_NAME );

    /* Create data buffer to write to Flash memory */
    for( i = 0; i < FLASH_MAX_WORDS; i++ ) {
        in_buff[i] = i + 1000000;
    }

    /* Write data to Flash memory */
    alt_write_flash( flash_handle, 0, in_buff, FLASH_MAX_WORDS*4 );

    /* Read data from Flash memory */
    alt_read_flash( flash_handle, 0, out_buff, FLASH_MAX_WORDS*4 );

    /* Check output from Flash memory */
    for( i = 0; i < FLASH_MAX_WORDS; i++ ) {
        if( out_buff[i] != (i+1000000) )
            errors++;
    }

    alt_flash_close_dev( flash_handle );
    return( errors );
}
```

Figure 16.17 This is the code to test the Flash memory device.

16.15 Testing SDRAM

To test the SDRAM, write a large number of values to memory and then read the same memory locations and verify that the contents of memory are the expected values. To access the SDRAM on the DE board, a pointer to the SDRAM memory space can be used. Once a pointer has been initialized to an address in the SDRAM memory space, that pointer can be dereferenced like an array to store values in successive SDRAM memory locations. This method of accessing memory would use the data cache if it were present (which it is *not* in the reference example). If you are using a Nios II processor with data cache and you want to access SDRAM directly (bypassing the data cache), then use you need to use the IORD and IOWR macros as shown in the previous sections.

The code for **test_sdram** is shown in Figure 16.18. You will notice that this code expects the constant value **SDRAM_MAX_WORDS** to be defined. Add a definition for this constant to your **rpd5_de_test.h** header file and set it equal to **1000000**.

```

alt_u32 test_sdram( void ) {
    alt_u32 i;
    alt_u32 errors = 0;
    alt_u32 *buffer = (alt_u32 *) SDRAM_BASE;

    /* Write data to SDRAM */
    for( i = 0; i < SDRAM_MAX_WORDS; i++ ) {
        buffer[i] = (i + 1000000);
    }

    /* Check output from SDRAM */
    for( i = 0; i < SDRAM_MAX_WORDS; i++ ) {
        if( buffer[i] != (i+1000000) )
            errors++;
    }
    return( errors );
}

```

Figure 16.18 This is the code to test the SDRAM memory device.

Your C source and header files should now be complete. Figure 16.19 shows the final `rpds_de_test.h` header file, and Figure 16.20 shows the final `rpds_de_test.c` file. Notice that compiler directives have been put around code that refers to the LCD and is specific to the DE2 board. These directives allow this code to compile for either the DE1 or DE2 boards.

```

#ifndef _RPDS_DE_TEST_H_
#define _RPDS_DE_TEST_H_

#include <stdio.h>
#include <unistd.h>
#include "system.h"
#include "alt_types.h"
#include "sys/alt_irq.h"
#include "sys/alt_flash.h"
#include "altera_avalon_pio_regs.h"

/* LCD constants */
#ifdef LCD_NAME
    #define LCD_WR_COMMAND 0
    #define LCD_WR_DATA 2
#endif

/* Memory constants */
#define SRAM_MAX_WORDS 8000
#define FLASH_MAX_WORDS 1000
#define SDRAM_MAX_WORDS 1000000

#endif // _RPDS_DE_TEST_H_

```

Figure 16.19 This is the final copy of the `rpds_de_test.h` header file.

```
#include "rpds_de_test.h"

static void buttons_isr( void* context, alt_u32 id ) {
    volatile int *function = (volatile int*) context;

    *function = IORD_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_EDGE_CAP( BUTTONS_BASE );
    IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_EDGE_CAP( BUTTONS_BASE, 0 );
    IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_IRQ_MASK( BUTTONS_BASE, 0xF );
}

#ifndef LCD_NAME
void lcd_init( void ) {
    /* Set Function Code Four Times -- 8-bit, 2 line, 5x7 mode */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x38 );
    usleep(4100); /* Wait 4.1 ms */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x38 );
    usleep(100); /* Wait 100 us */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x38 );
    usleep(5000); /* Wait 5.0 ms */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x38 );
    usleep(100);
    /* Set Display to OFF */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x08 );
    usleep(100);
    /* Set Display to ON */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x0C );
    usleep(100);
    /* Set Entry Mode -- Cursor increment, display doesn't shift */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x06 );
    usleep(100);
    /* Set the cursor to the home position */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x02 );
    usleep(2000);
    /* Clear the display */
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x01 );
    usleep(2000);
}

alt_u32 test_lcd( void ) {
    int i;
    char message[17] = "Counting...      ";
    char done[12] = "Done!       ";

    /* Write a simple message on the first line. */
    for( i = 0; i < 16; i++ ) {
        IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_DATA_REG, message[i] );
        usleep(100);
    }
}
```

Figure 16.20 This is the final copy of the **rpds_de_test.c** source file.

```
/* Count along the bottom row */
/* Set Address */
IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0xC0 );
usleep(1000);
/* Display Count */
for( i = 0; i < 10; i++ ) {
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_DATA_REG, (char)(i+0x30) );
    usleep(500000); /* Wait 0.5 sec. */
}

/* Write "Done!" message on first line. */
/* Set Address */
IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_COMMAND_REG, 0x80 );
usleep(1000);
/* Write data */
for( i = 0; i < 11; i++ ) {
    IOWR( LCD_BASE, LCD_WR_DATA_REG, done[i] );
    usleep(100);
}
return(0);
}
#endif

alt_u32 test_sram( void ) {
    alt_u32 i, val;
    alt_u32 errors = 0;
    alt_u32 buffer[SRAM_MAX_WORDS];

    /* Write data to SRAM */
    for( i = 0; i < SRAM_MAX_WORDS; i++ ) {
        buffer[i] = i + 1000;
    }
    /* Check output from SRAM */
    for( i = 0; i < SRAM_MAX_WORDS; i++ ) {
        if( buffer[i] != (i+1000) )
            errors++;
    }
    return( errors );
}

alt_u32 test_flash( void ) {
    alt_u32 i, errors = 0;
    alt_u32 in_buff[FLASH_MAX_WORDS], out_buff[FLASH_MAX_WORDS];
    alt_flash_fd* flash_handle;

    flash_handle = alt_flash_open_dev( FLASH_NAME );
```

Figure 16.20 continued

```
/* Create data buffer to write to Flash memory */
for( i = 0; i < FLASH_MAX_WORDS; i++ ) {
    in_buff[i] = i + 1000000;
}

/* Write data to Flash memory */
alt_write_flash( flash_handle, 0, in_buff, FLASH_MAX_WORDS*4 );

/* Read data from Flash memory */
alt_read_flash( flash_handle, 0, out_buff, FLASH_MAX_WORDS*4 );

/* Check output from Flash memory */
for( i = 0; i < FLASH_MAX_WORDS; i++ ) {
    if( out_buff[i] != (i+1000000) )
        errors++;
}

alt_flash_close_dev( flash_handle );
return( errors );
}

alt_u32 test_sdram( void ) {
    alt_u32 i;
    alt_u32 errors = 0;
    alt_u32 *buffer = (alt_u32 *)SDRAM_BASE;

    /* Write data to SDRAM */
    for( i = 0; i < SDRAM_MAX_WORDS; i++ ) {
        buffer[i] = i + 1000000;
    }
    /* Check output from SDRAM */
    for( i = 0; i < SDRAM_MAX_WORDS; i++ ) {
        if( buffer[i] != (i+1000000) )
            errors++;
    }
    return( errors );
}

int main( void ) {
    volatile int function = 0;
    alt_u32 switches, ret_val;

    printf( "Welcome to the Nios II Test Program\n" );
    alt_irq_register(BUTTONS_IRQ, (void *) &function, buttons_isr);
    IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_IRQ_MASK( BUTTONS_BASE, 0xF );
```

Figure 16.20 continued

```

while(1) {
    switch( function ) {
        case 0x1:           /* Test the LCD display */
            #ifdef LCD_NAME
                printf("Testing LCD Display\n" );
                lcd_init();
                ret_val = test_lcd();
                printf("...Completed.\n" );
            #else
                printf("No LCD Component is Present\n" );
            #endif
            break;
        case 0x2:           /* Test the SRAM */
            printf("Testing SRAM\n" );
            ret_val = test_sram();
            printf("...Completed with %d Errors.\n", ret_val );
            break;
        case 0x4:           /* Test the Flash memory */
            printf("Testing Flash Memory\n" );
            ret_val = test_flash();
            printf("...Completed with %d Errors.\n", ret_val );
            break;
        case 0x8:           /* Test the SDRAM */
            printf("Testing SDRAM\n" );
            ret_val = test_sdram();
            printf("...Completed with %d Errors.\n", ret_val );
            break;
        default:             /* Do nothing */
            break;
    }
    function = 0;
    switches = IORD_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_DATA( SWITCHES_BASE );
    IOWR_ALTERA_AVALON_PIO_DATA( LEDS_BASE, switches );
    usleep( 50000 );
}
return(0);
}

```

Figure 16.20 continued

16.16 Downloading the Nios II Hardware and Software Projects

To execute your software on a Nios II processor, you must configure the FPGA with the Nios II hardware reference design and then you can download the compiled program code to the processor's program memory.

Connect the USB cable. Verify that the **Run/Prog** switch on the DE board is set to **Run**, and then turn on the DE board. Select **Tools** ⇒ **Quartus II Programmer...** to configure the FPGA. When the **Quartus II Programmer** appears, click on **Add File...** and select the **rpds16.sof** file from your project directory. Click **Open** to add the selected file to the download chain. Check the

Program/Configure box on the row with your configuration file on it, and click **Start** to begin hardware configuration.

Return to the **Nios II IDE** window. From the **Nios II IDE** window, right click the **rpds_de_test** item in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane and select **Build Project** from the drop-down menu. This will begin a full compilation of all libraries in your project.

IMPORTANT: In the reference hardware design, SW9 is used as the Nios II processor's reset signal. Before code can be downloaded to the processor, it must be brought out of reset by setting SW9 in the up (or on) position.

To download the compiled code to the Nios II processor executing on the FPGA, right click the **rpds_de_test** item in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane and select **Run As** \Rightarrow **Nios II Hardware**. If the run settings dialog box appears, click the **Run** button to close this box.

16.17 Executing the Software

Once the program code has been downloaded to the Nios II processor's program memory (SRAM in this configuration), your code should automatically start executing. As a part of the normal program download, the Nios II IDE verifies that the code in program memory is the same as downloaded program before program execution begins. If there are any problems with downloading your program then the processor is stalled and a message that alerts you to this fact appears in the **Console** pane in the bottom right-hand side of the **Nios II IDE** window. If this happens, verify that SW9 is in the up (on) position and then right click the **rpds_de_test** item in the **Nios II C/C++ Projects** pane and select **Run As** \Rightarrow **Nios II Hardware** again.

Once your program begins executing, the Nios II IDE's Console pane becomes a standard input/output terminal connected to your processor via the JTAG UART device and cable. Press each of the four pushbuttons in turn. A different device will be tested when each button is pressed and released. Look at the text in the Console pane to verify that the proper test is being executed.

Change the switches' value and verify that the appropriate LEDs light.



ALL SOURCE FILES FOR THIS NIOS II SOFTWARE REFERENCE DESIGN

CAN BE FOUND ON THE DVD IN THE \DEX\CHAP16 DIRECTORY.

16.18 For additional information

This chapter has provided a brief overview of Nios II Software development. Additional information can be found at Altera's website (www.altera.com) in the *Nios II Software Developer's Handbook* and at the Nios Community forum (www.niosforum.com).

16.19 Laboratory Exercises

1. Write a C program to blink the eight green LEDs in a reversing shift pattern on the DE board. After the last LED in each direction turns on, reverse the direction of the shift. Run and demonstrate the program on the DE board. Recall that C supports shift operations (“<<” and “>>”) and you will need a time delay in your code to see the LEDs blink.
2. Write a C program that displays a count of the seconds that the program has been running in the LCD display on the DE2 board or on the seven-segment displays on the DE1 board. Demonstrate the program on the DE board.
3. Expand the C program in the previous problem to display the elapsed time in hours, minutes, and seconds on the LCD (or seven-segment displays). Have one pushbutton reset the time to zero and another pushbutton start and stop the timer just like a stopwatch.
4. Memory test programs cannot test all possible patterns. Research the various algorithms widely used in more thorough memory test programs and write your own more advanced memory test program for SRAM. Most memory test programs use several algorithms to check for different types of faults. Execute the test code from SDRAM.
5. Write a retro version of the 1970’s classic kill the bit computer game for the DE board. The goal in the kill the bit game is to turn off all of the four LEDs using the four pushbuttons. The game starts with an initial non-zero pattern displayed in the LEDs. The pattern constantly does a circular shift moving through the LEDs in a loop with a time delay to slow down the shifts. If you hit one of the four pushbuttons exactly when the same number LED is turned on, it will turn off one LED in the pattern. If you hit a pushbutton and its LED is off another LED turns on.

Here is how the program works. Each time just before the pattern shifts, the pattern is bit-wise exclusive or’ed with one input sample from the pushbuttons to generate a new pattern. When both the pushbutton is pushed and its corresponding bit in the pattern are High, one less bit will be High in the new pattern after the exclusive or (i.e., 1 xor 1 is 0). After the shift, one less LED will be turned on since there is one less “1” in the new pattern. If your timing is off and the LED is not turned on when you hit the pushbutton, a new high bit will be generated in the pattern (i.e., 1 xor 0 is 1). When this happens, the new “1” bit in the pattern lights another LED. Note that you need a “1” when a pushbutton is pressed and a “1” to turn on an LED for the xor function to work.

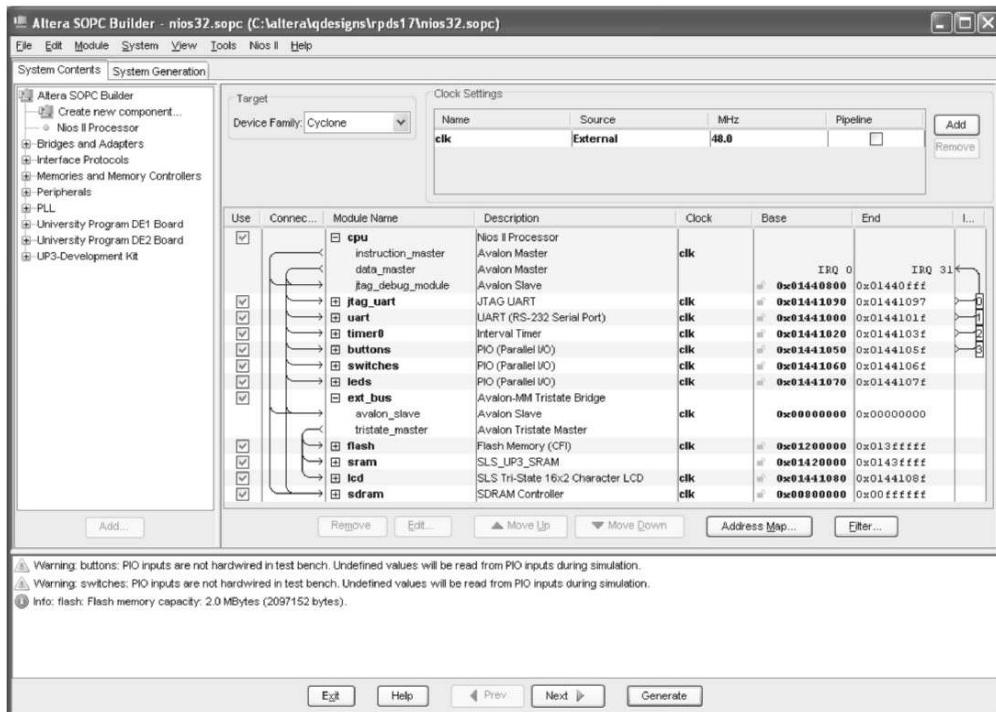
Display the elapsed time in the LCD display (or seven-segment displays) and stop the time display when a player wins the game (turns out all LEDs). Adjust the shift time delay for reasonable game play. Blink all of the LEDs when a player wins. If you want a

more challenging game, use a pattern and shift register larger than four bits and just display four bits at a time in the LEDs.

6. Port an interesting C application program to the Nios II processor. Execute the application from SDRAM.

CHAPTER 17

Tutorial IV: Nios II Processor Hardware Design



SOPC Builder is a GUI-based hardware design tool used to configure the Nios II processor core options and to design bus and I/O interfaces for the processor.

17 Tutorial IV: Nios II Processor Hardware Design

Designing systems with embedded processors requires both hardware and software design elements. A collection of CAD tools developed by Altera enable you to design both the hardware and software for a fully functional, customizable, soft-core processor called Nios II. This tutorial steps you through the hardware implementation of a Nios II processor for the DE1 and DE2 boards, and Tutorial III (in the preceding chapter) introduces the software design tools for the Nios II processor.

Upon completion of this tutorial, you will be able to:

- Navigate Altera's SOPC Builder (Nios II processor design wizard),
- Generate a custom Nios II processor core,
- Create a PLL that supplies a clock signal for the on-board SDRAM, and
- Specify the top-level pin assignments and project settings necessary for implementing the Nios processor on the DE boards.



THE DVD CONTAINS A VERSION OF CHAPTERS 16 AND 17 FOR THE UP 3 BOARDS.

17.1 Install the DE board files

Run the installation program for Altera's University Program IP Library. This program can be found on the DVD at `\Altera_Software\UP_IP_Library.exe`.

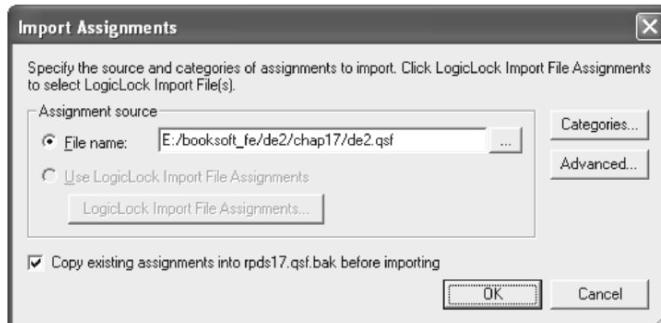


Figure 17.1 Import the default pin and project assignments for the DE board.

17.2 Creating a New Project

Create a new Quartus II project as illustrated in Tutorial I (see Section 1 of Chapter 1). Use the project name `rpds17` and create a top-level Block Diagram/Schematic file named `rpds17.bdf`.

Import the pin assignments and project settings file from the DVD by choosing **Assignments** \Rightarrow **Import Assignments....**. Enter the full path for the **booksoft_fe\de2\chap17\de2.qsf** file located on the DVD that came with this book as shown in Figure 17.1. (If you are using a DE1 board, then you must use the **booksoft_fe\de1\chap17\de1.qsf** file located on the DVD.) Click on the **Advanced** button and verify that the settings match the dialog box in Figure 17.2. If different settings are used, then all of the pin and project assignments may not be made correctly, and downloading your project to the DE board could damage it. When the settings are correct, click **OK** to exit the dialog box. Click **OK** in the **Import Assignments** dialog box to import the settings.



Figure 17.2 It is important that the Advanced Import Options be set as shown here.

17.3 Starting SOPC Builder

A Nios II processor is created using the SOPC Builder wizard. Within this wizard, you can specify the settings for the Nios II processor, add peripherals, and select the bus connections, I/O memory mapping, and IRQ assignments for the processor. To start the SOPC Builder, choose **Tools** \Rightarrow **SOPC Builder....**



Figure 17.3 Specifying the name of the Nios II processor for your system.

In the **Create New System** dialog box, enter the name **nios32**, and set the **Target HDL** to **VHDL** as shown in Figure 17.3. Click **OK** to open SOPC Builder with a blank project titled nios32.

The system settings in the top part of SOPC Builder window must be set for the board and device that you are using. For the DE boards, the on-board clock circuit generates several clock frequencies, including 24 MHz, 27 MHz, and 50 MHz. For this tutorial, the 50 MHz clock signal will be used; therefore, enter **50.0** in the **clk** field. Select **Cyclone II** as **Device Family**. When these settings have been entered, your SOPC Builder window should look similar to the screen shot in Figure 17.4.

IT IS CRITICAL THAT THE FREQUENCY SELECTED IN THE SOPC BUILDER IS THE ACTUAL CLOCK RATE USED IN YOUR HARDWARE DESIGN. IF A PLL IS USED TO GENERATE A DIFFERENT NIOS II CLOCK SIGNAL, THEN THAT CLOCK FREQUENCY MUST BE ENTERED INTO THE SOPC BUILDER BEFORE THE SYSTEM IS GENERATED. IF YOU MODIFY THE CLOCK FREQUENCY FOR THE NIOS II PROCESSOR LATER, THEN YOU MUST RE-GENERATE THE NIOS II PROCESSOR WITH THE UPDATED FREQUENCY SPECIFIED HERE.

Take a minute to familiarize yourself with the layout of the SOPC Builder window. Along the left-hand side, there is an expandable list of components organized by category that can be added to a Nios II system. Click on the “+” symbol next to the items in this list to expand the list of components for each category. If board support packages have been installed, then those development boards will be listed as an item. Expanding these items will reveal components that are specific to these boards. If you installed the design files as discussed in Section 17.1, then the **University Program DE1 Board** and **University Program DE2 Board** categories will appear.

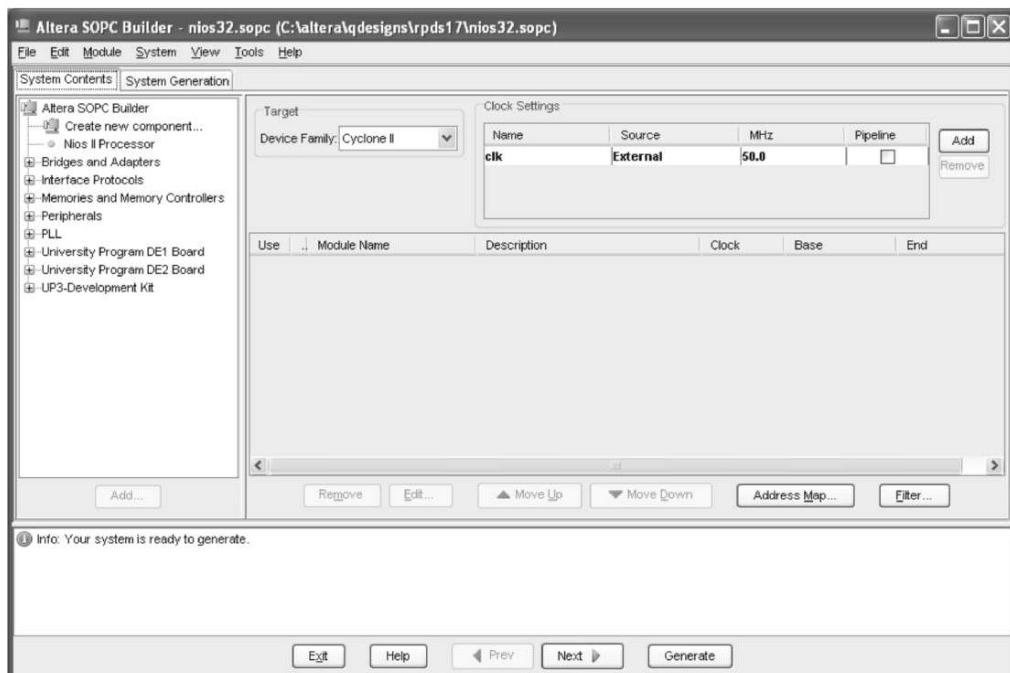


Figure 17.4 Beginning a Nios II design in the SOPC Builder.

17.4 Adding a Nios II Processor

The first component that you will add to your Nios II processor design is the processor core itself. In the list of components on the left-hand side of the SOPC Builder, the **Nios II Processor** component. Click the **Add...** button at the bottom of the component list.

When a component is added to your system, a dialog box will appear that allows you to select options and set specific parameters for this particular implementation. For the Nios II processor, the dialog box shown in Figure 17.5 will appear. This first selection will determine the general parameters of the Nios II processor. Notice that there are three general configurations allowed that vary in size, performance, and functionality. Select the middle configuration, **Nios II/s** as shown in Figure 17.5. In the **Hardware Multiply** field, select **Embedded Multipliers**, and click **Next** to continue.

The next dialog box allows you set the size of the instruction cache in the Nios II processor. Keep the default value (4 KB), and click **Next** twice to advance to the **JTAG Debug Module** dialog box.

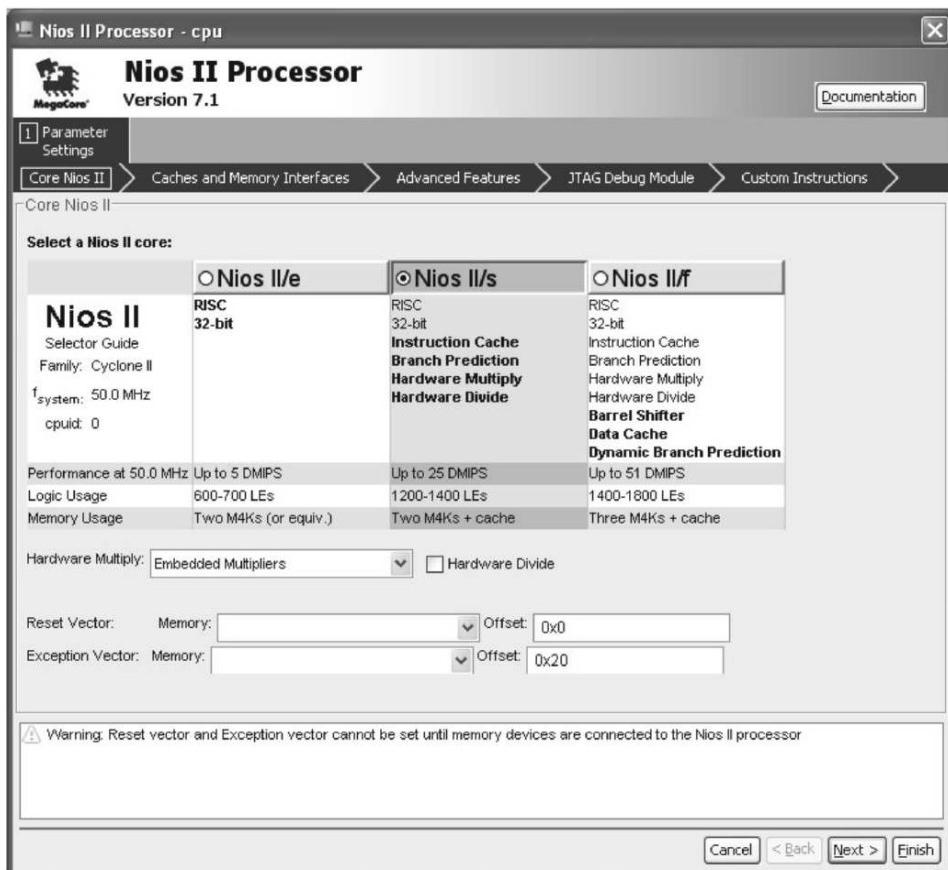


Figure 17.5 Nios II supports three different general configurations. Select Nios II/s for this tutorial.

Nios II processors can be compiled with support for one of four different debugging systems. The differences between them are shown in Figure 17.6, along with the FPGA resources required to implement each type of debugging. There is an order of magnitude difference in the number of logic elements required to implement Level 4 debugging versus Level 1 debugging. This difference is significant when compared to the overall size of the Nios II processor. The Level 4 debugging system is two to three times larger than the Nios II/s processor itself. Since the cost of FPGAs are largely based on their size, the debugging logic will typically be removed before a design enters production to minimize the number of logic elements, and thus the size of the FPGA, required for the production quantities.

The full features of Level 3 and Level 4 debugging are only available when a license from First Silicon Solutions, a third-party company, is purchased. The availability of this license within your company or school along with the complexity of your end system and the size of the FPGA available will be the primary factors in determining which debugging system should be selected for

a given system. For this tutorial, select **Level 1** (the default), and click **Next** to continue.

The final option in the Nios II processor configuration is the adding of custom instructions. Nios II processors allow the addition of up to 256 custom instructions into the processor's data path. These can be used to further customize your processor for a specific task. For this tutorial, no custom instructions will be added. Click **Finish** to complete the Nios II configuration for this system.

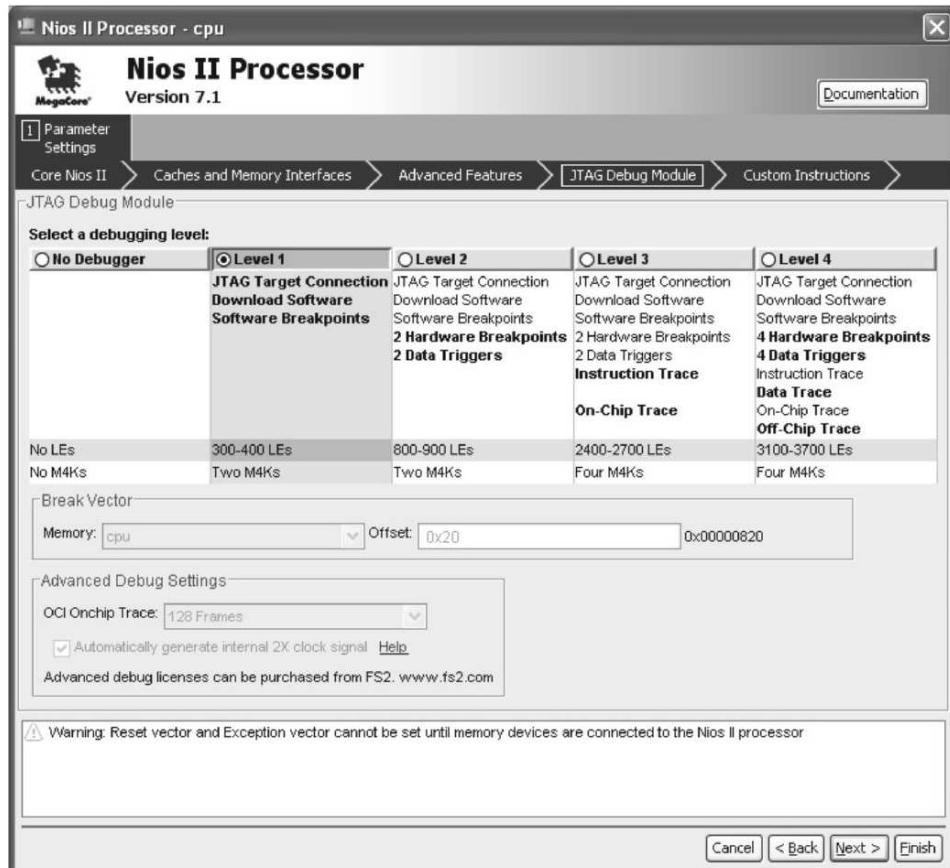


Figure 17.6 Nios II supports four levels of debugging capabilities. Select Level 1 for this tutorial.

When the SOPC Builder window reappears, the Nios II processor will appear as an added component in the main part of the window with the default module name `cpu`. Also, a number of error and warning messages will appear in the console at the bottom of the SOPC Builder window. These messages result from there not being any defined memory in the system yet. When memory is added in the next few sections, the messages will disappear.

17.5 Adding UART Peripherals

Two UART peripherals will be defined for this system: a JTAG UART and an RS-232 serial UART. The USB Blaster JTAG cable that is used to configure the FPGA can also be used as a UART device after the FPGA is configured. (The JTAG cable is also used as the communication channel between the PC and the debugging logic selected for the Nios II processor.) The Nios II software integrated development environment (IDE) uses the JTAG UART as the default device for downloading your software instructions to the Nios II processor and was used for that purpose in the previous tutorial on software design.

Add the JTAG UART device by expanding **Interface Protocols** \Rightarrow **Serial**. Select **JTAG UART** and click **Add...**. When the JTAG UART Configuration dialog box appears, click **Finish** to accept the default values for all fields and add the component.

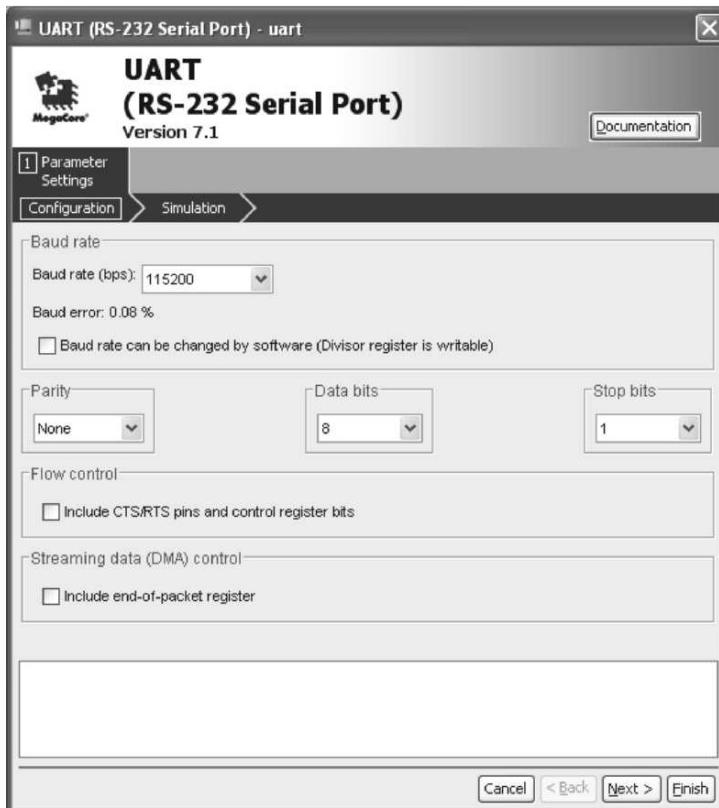


Figure 17.7 These are the settings for the RS-232 UART device to be added to the Nios II system.

Older ByteBlaster II, ByteBlaster MV, and ByteBlaster JTAG cables did not transmit the run-time serial data robustly; therefore, a second RS-232 UART module was needed for run-time serial communication. The newer USB Blaster JTAG interface used on the DE boards works quite well as a run-time UART device. Thus, adding a second UART module is not required; however, adding

an RS-232 UART module can be useful when debugging systems by providing an additional communication channel.

Add the RS-232 UART peripheral by expanding **Interface Protocols** \Rightarrow **Serial**. Select **UART (RS-232 serial port)** and click **Add....** When the UART configuration dialog box appears, set the options as shown in Figure 17.7. Click **Finish** to add the component.

17.6 Adding an Interval Timer Peripheral

Most processor designs require at least one timer. This timer is used to delay the processor, coordinate transactions, timestamp events, generate time slice interrupts for an operating system scheduler, a watchdog timer, and more. The Nios II timer peripheral is flexible; it has several options and three predefined configurations. Add a full-featured interval timer to your Nios II processor by expanding **Peripherals** \Rightarrow **Microcontroller Peripherals**. Select **Interval Timer** and click **Add....** When the timer configuration dialog box appears, set the options as shown in Figure 17.8. Click **Finish** to add the component. In the SOPC Builder, rename the timer module to **timer0**. The “0” is appended to the timer name here to provide a consistent naming convention for your timers if additional timers are added at a later time. It is not unusual for a processor to have two or three timers – often of different configurations for specific uses.

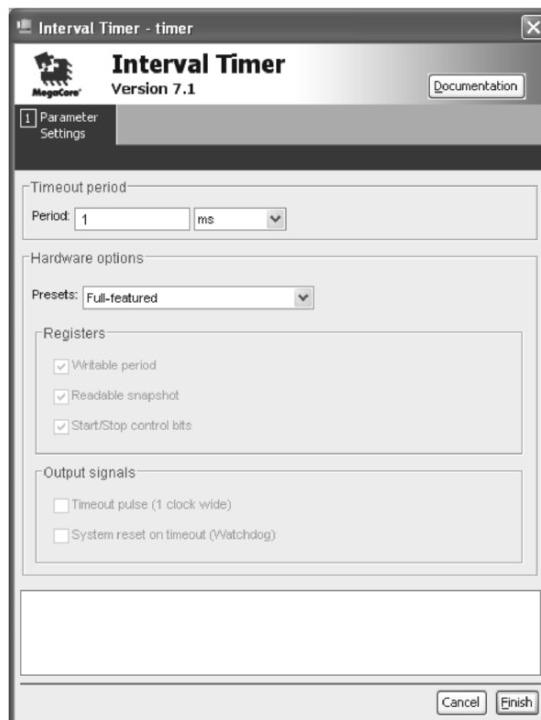


Figure 17.8 These are the settings for the interval timer device to be added to the Nios II system.

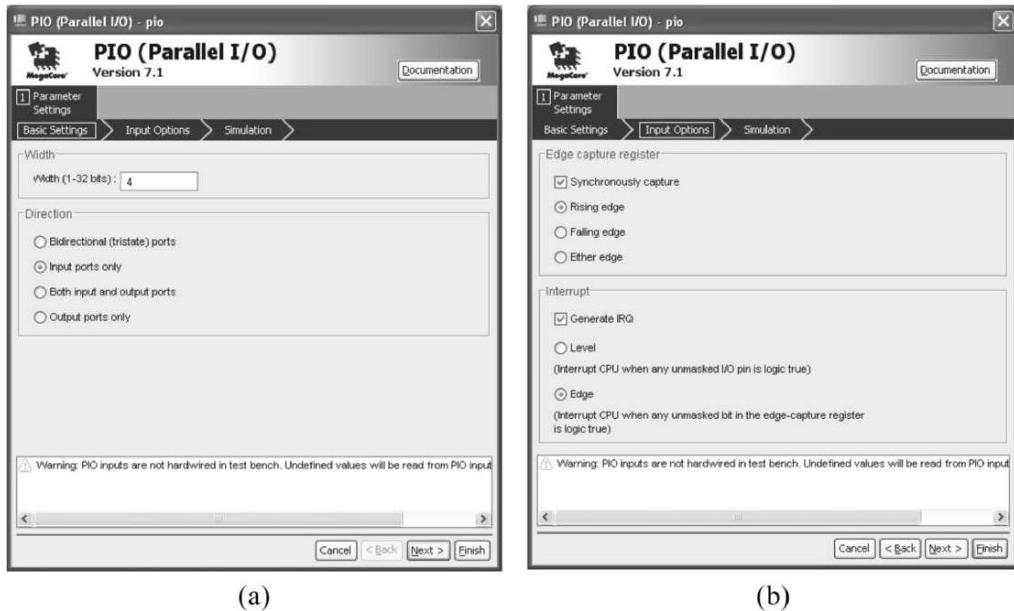


Figure 17.9 These are the settings for the pushbutton PIO device to be added to the Nios II system.

17.7 Adding Parallel I/O Components

Many processors require a certain amount of general-purpose I/O pins. These pins can be attached directly to pushbuttons, switches, LEDs, and similar I/O devices. They can also be attached to relatively simple or low bandwidth interfaces that don't have a large amount of overhead associated with data transmission. Examples of these types of interfaces include PS/2, I²C, SPI, and parallel data interfaces.

In addition, general-purpose I/O pins can be used to pass low-bandwidth data between a custom VHDL or Verilog block and the Nios II processor. A faster method of transferring data to a VHDL block is to create a custom peripheral that can attach to the Avalon bus. Implementing a VHDL module that is compliant with the Avalon bus specification is more involved and requires more logic elements than using general-purpose I/O pins, but it does provide a faster more efficient interface.

General-purpose I/O pins are added to the Nios II processor with the PIO (Parallel I/O) component. The PIO component has a number of options for customizing general-purpose I/O interfaces. PIO interfaces can be specified as input only, output only, or bidirectional. If bidirectional is selected here, then the direction of each pin must be set in the direction register at run-time via software. Input PIO interfaces can also have various interrupt and edge capture capabilities including the capturing of either or both edges and edge or level-sensitive interrupt triggers.

For this tutorial, you will add three PIO components: one for the pushbuttons, one for the switches, and one for the LEDs. First, add a PIO component for the pushbuttons to your processor design by expanding **Peripherals** ⇒ **Microcontroller Peripherals**. Select **PIO (Parallel I/O)** and click **Add....** When the PIO configuration dialog box appears, set the **Width** of the interface to **4** bits (there are four pushbuttons) and set the **Direction** to **Input ports only** as shown in Figure 17.9(a). Click **Next** to continue. On the next configuration page, set the options as shown in Figure 17.9(b). Click **Finish** to add the component. In the SOPC Builder, rename the PIO module to **buttons**.

Using the same procedure as above, add a second PIO component for the dipswitches. The settings for the PIO devices are shown in Figure 17.10. Rename this PIO module to **switches**.

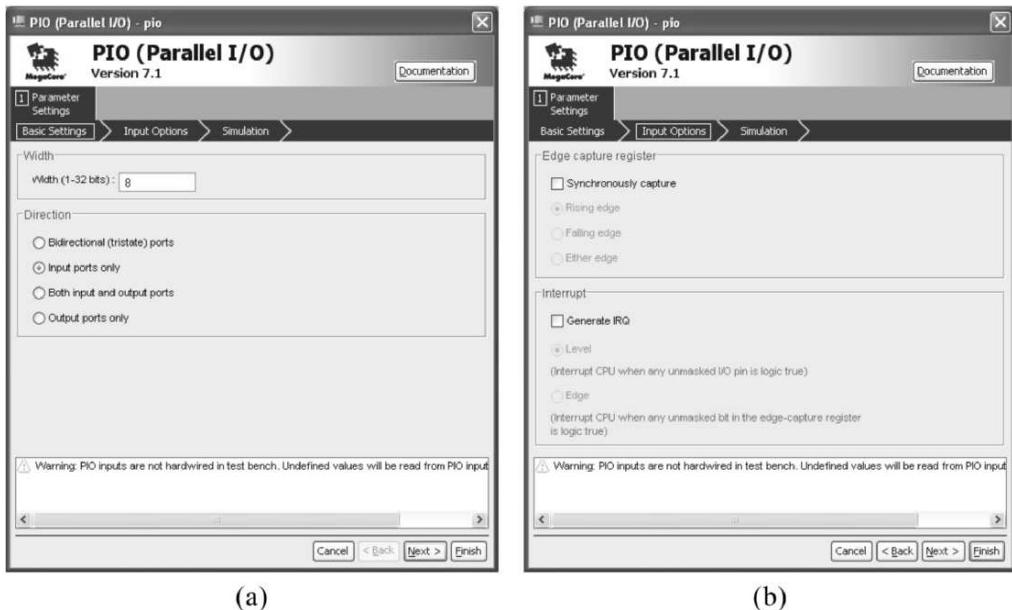


Figure 17.10 These are the settings for the switch PIO device to be added to the Nios II system.

Finally, add a third PIO component for the LEDs. On the first configuration page, set **8** bits for the **Width**, and set the **Direction** to **Output ports only**. When the PIO is an output-only device, the interrupt and edge-capture options are not applicable. Rename this PIO module to **leds**.

17.8 Adding an SRAM Memory Controller

Add the SRAM memory controller to your Nios II processor by expanding **University Program DE2 Board**. (The SRAM components are identical for the DE1 and DE2 boards, so the SRAM component may be added from either library.) Select **SRAM** and click **Add....** When the SRAM configuration dialog box appears, click **Finish** to add the component. This component does not have

any configuration options; therefore, the SRAM component dialog box contains information only. In the SOPC Builder, rename the SRAM module to **sram**.

17.9 Adding an SDRAM Memory Controller

There are three types of memory on the DE board: SDRAM, SRAM, and Flash. Each type of memory requires its own unique memory controller and must be added individually. Add the SDRAM memory controller by expanding **Memories and Memory Controllers** \Rightarrow **SDRAM**. Select **SDRAM Controller** and click **Add....** The SDRAM controller must be configured for the timing requirements of the specific SDRAM brand and model being used. The configuration and timing values requested here are typically available in the datasheet for SDRAM ICs. For the SDRAM modules on the DE board, set the options in the configuration dialog boxes to the values shown in Figure 17.11. Click **Finish** to add the component. In the SOPC Builder, rename the SDRAM controller module to **sdrdram**.

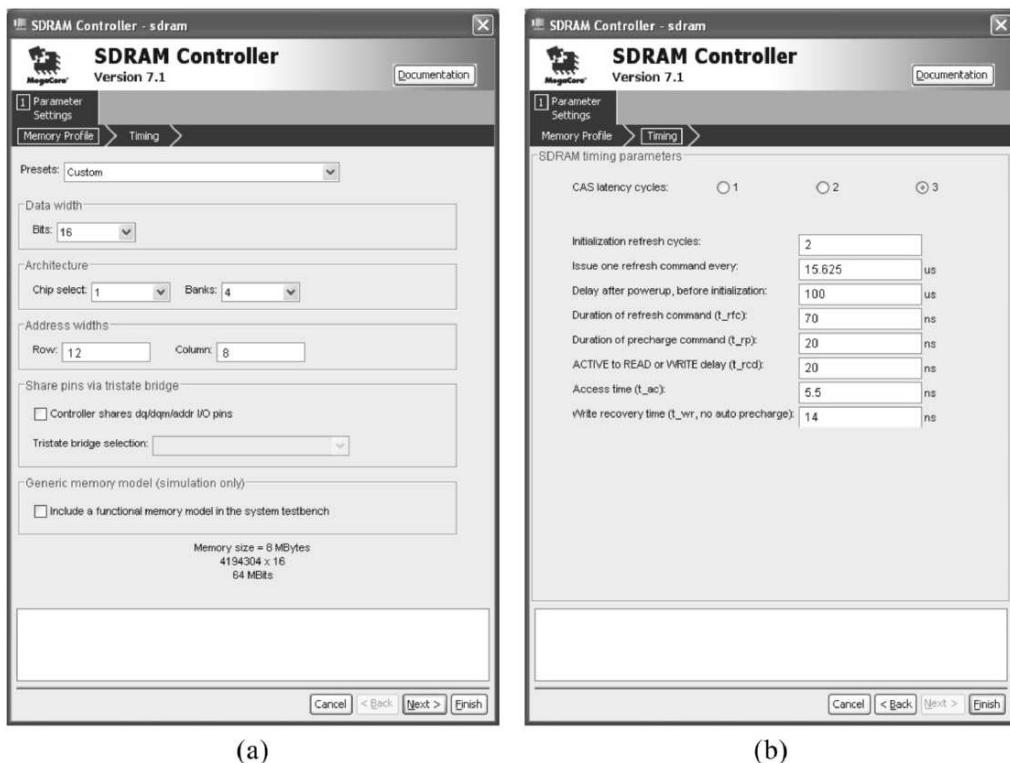


Figure 17.11 These are the SDRAM controller settings for use with the SDRAM on the DE boards.

17.10 Adding the LCD Module (*DE2 Board Only*)

The DE2 board contains a Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) component. To interface this display to the Nios II processor, add the LCD component to your

Nios II processor by expanding **Peripherals** \Rightarrow **Display**. Select **Character LCD** and click **Add...**. When the LCD component dialog box appears, click **Finish** to add the component. This component does not have any configuration options; therefore, the LCD component dialog box contains information only. The LCD component will be added to the list of peripherals in your Nios II processor.

17.11 Adding an External Bus

Multiple external devices can share the same address and data bus pins and dramatically reduce the number of pins required on the FPGA. The Nios II processor supports this type of bus sharing with its tristate bus components. On many boards the SRAM, SDRAM, Flash, and even an LCD device can share a signal external tristate bus. To accommodate the bidirectional data bus and multiple devices on a single bus, an Avalon Tristate Bridge component must be added. The Avalon tristate bridge creates a peripheral (tristate) bus to which multiple memory controllers and other external components can be attached. It also provides a seamless interface between the peripheral bus and the main system bus. A conceptual drawing of this arrangement is shown in Figure 17.12. For the DE boards, the Flash device is the only peripheral attached to the tristate bus. The SDRAM, SRAM, and LCD devices all attach directly to the main system bus.

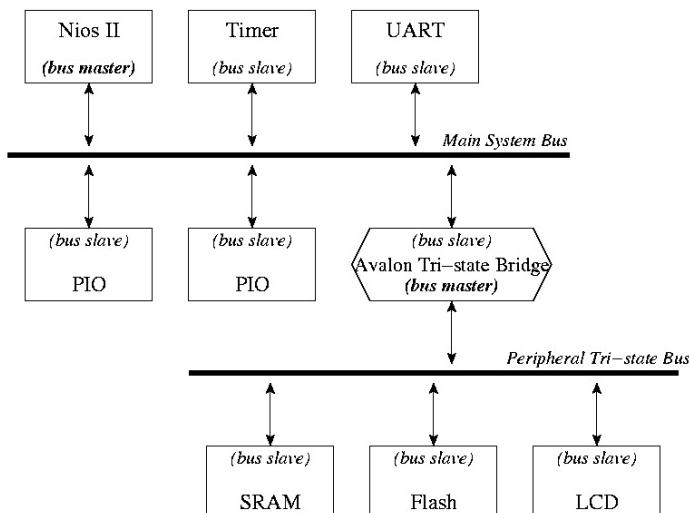


Figure 17.12 This is a conceptual drawing of the bus configuration with the Tristate Bridge connecting the main system bus and the shared peripheral bus.

Add the Avalon Tristate Bridge component by expanding **Bridges and Adapters** \Rightarrow **Memory Mapped**. Select **Avalon-MM Tristate Bridge** and click **Add...**. There is only one option for this component: registered or not registered. Select **Registered** and click **Finish** to add the component. In the SOPC Builder, rename the bridge module to **ext_bus**.

17.12 Adding Components to the External Bus

Once the Avalon tri-state bridge has been added, the peripherals that are going to connect to the external peripheral bus can be added. First, add the Flash memory controller by expanding **Memories and Memory Controllers** \Rightarrow **Flash**. Select **Flash Memory (CFI)** and click **Add....** When the Flash memory configuration dialog box appears, set the options as shown in Figure 17.13. In the SOPC Builder, rename the flash module to **flash**.

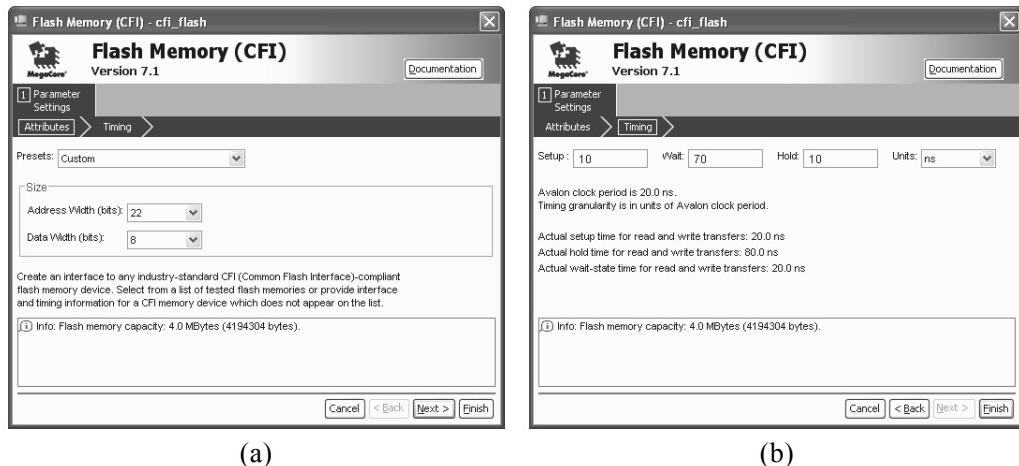


Figure 17.13 These are the Flash memory settings for use with the Flash on the DE boards.

17.13 Global Processor Settings

All of the necessary peripherals have been added now. The next step is to configure some global settings for your processor.

To view and modify the bus connections in your processor, select **View** \Rightarrow **Show Connections Column**. (If **Show Connections Column** is already selected, then un-select it and select it again.) This will expand the **cpu** and **ext_bus** modules in the table of peripherals and show the bus connections. The three buses are displayed vertically. From left-to-right, the buses are the main system instruction, main system data, and tri-state data bus. Notice that the UARTs, timer, LCD, and PIO components are only attached to the system data bus since they don't normally interact with instruction memory. SRAM, SDRAM, and the Avalon Tristate Bridge are connected to both the system instruction and system data buses, because the memory devices can store both data and instruction memory. Finally, the Flash memory device is unconnected. It must be manually connected to the appropriate tristate bus. Hover your mouse over the connections column just to the left of the **flash** module. An open circle will appear on the tri-state data bus. Click on the open circle to connect the **flash** module to the external tristate bus (a connection is denoted by a solid, filled-in circle). The final SOPC Builder window should look like the screen shot in Figure 17.14.

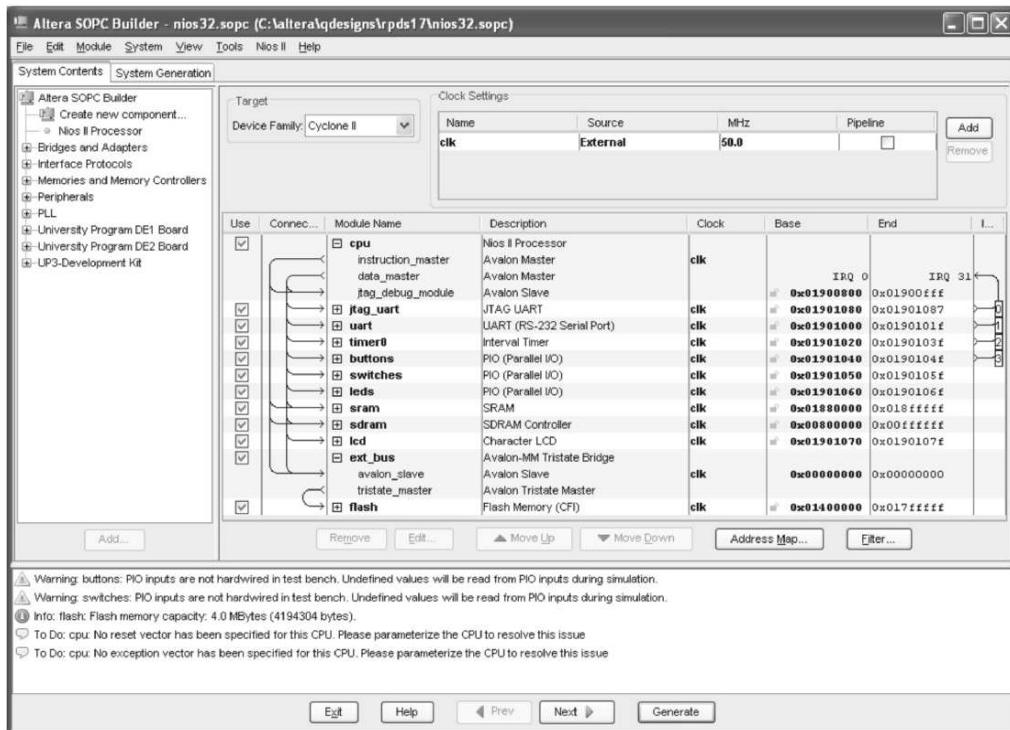


Figure 17.14 This is the completed Nios II design in SOPC Builder.

The Nios II processor uses a memory-mapped I/O scheme for accessing peripherals. Each component added to the system is assigned a unique set of memory addresses. Any device or data registers needed for a particular peripheral can be accessed by reading from or writing to its respective memory address. In general, the specific memory address assignments do not matter as long as the assigned memory address spaces do not overlap. If the Nios II system is going to be a part of a legacy system, there may be some constraints placed on the memory address assignments; however, there is nothing intrinsic within the Nios II system that restricts the settings. For this tutorial, let SOPC Builder make the memory assignments automatically by selecting **System \Rightarrow Auto-Assign Base Addresses**. Next, select **System \Rightarrow Auto-Assign IRQs** to have SOPC Builder automatically assign the IRQ values to the devices that support interrupts.

17.14 Finalizing the Nios II Processor

Now that the memory modules have been added, the Nios II processor configuration can be completed. Select the **cpu** module by clicking on it and then click the **Edit...** button. The **Nios II Processor** dialog box will appear allowing you to modify the program memory device and beginning address. For this tutorial, set the **Reset Vector** and **Exception Vector** to **sram** and keep the

default offsets as shown in Figure 17.15. Click **Finish** to save the new processor settings.

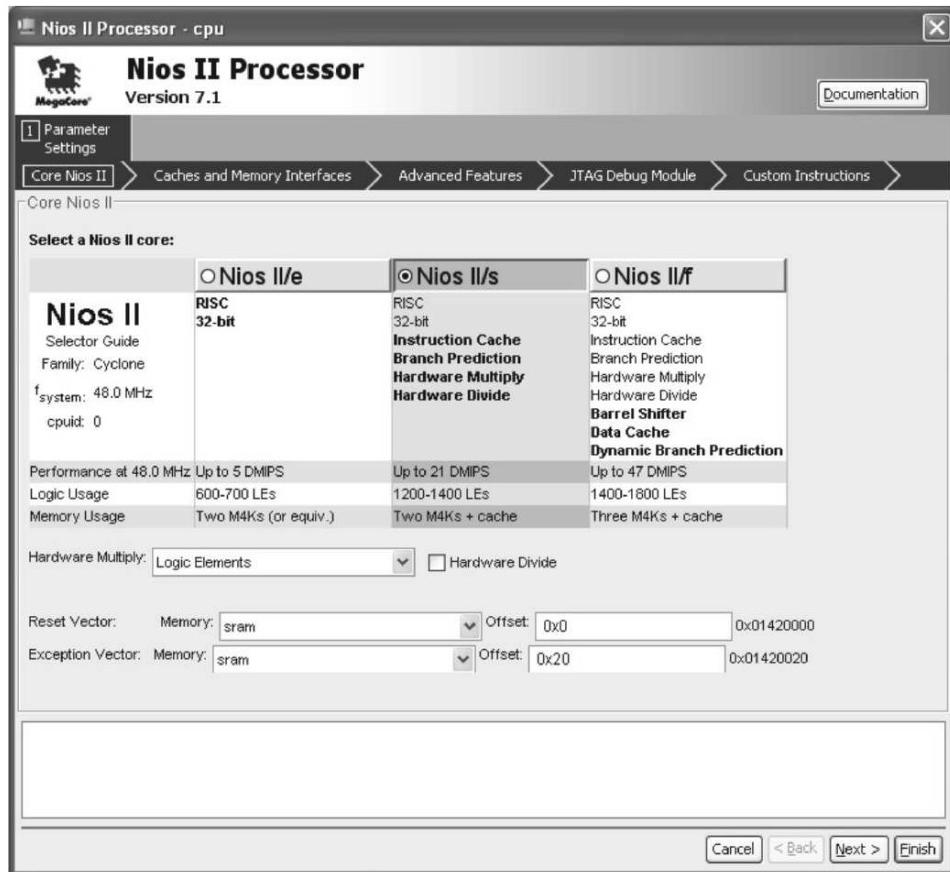


Figure 17.15 These are the processor configuration settings for the Nios II processor.

In the SOPC Builder window, click the **Next** button. The **System Generation** dialog box is the final group of settings. For this tutorial, you will not be simulating the processor in ModelSim or other third-party simulation tool; therefore, unselect the **Simulation. Create simulator project files** option. Click the **Generate** button to generate the design files for your Nios II processor. It will take 2-3 minutes to generate your Nios II processor. When it completes, the console should contain a message that states that your processor was generated successfully. If your system does not generate successfully, study the error log display in the console, correct the problem, and re-generate the Nios II processor. When you have successfully generated your Nios II system, click the **Exit** button to close SOPC Builder.

17.15 Add the Processor Symbol to the Top-Level Schematic

When SOPC Builder closes, return to your blank top-level schematic window, **rpds17.bdf**. Double click on a blank area of your empty top-level schematic

file to add a component. In the **Libraries** pane of the **Symbol** dialog box, expand the **Project** item and select the **nios32** component. Click **OK** to add the selected component. Click in the middle of schematic file to place your Nios system.

17.16 Create a Phase-Locked Loop Component

SDRAM and the Nios II processor core operate on different clock edges. The Nios processor uses the rising edge and SDRAM the falling edge. The SDRAM would need a clock signal that is phase shifted by 180 degrees. An inverter would do this, but the phase shift also needs to be adjusted a bit to correct for the internal FPGA delays and the distance between the SDRAM and the FPGA on the DE board. To create this SDRAM clock signal, a phase-locked loop (PLL) component can be implemented on the FPGA. To create a PLL, use Quartus II's MegaWizard Plug-in Manager by selecting **Tools** \Rightarrow **MegaWizard Plug-In Manager**.... Click **Next** on page 1 of the wizard to create a new component. On page 2, select the **Installed Plug-Ins** \Rightarrow **I/O** \Rightarrow **ALTPLL** module from the list. Enter the full path of your project directory followed by the filename **up3_pll** into the output filename field. Complete the remaining fields with the information shown in Figure 17.16. Click **Next** to continue.

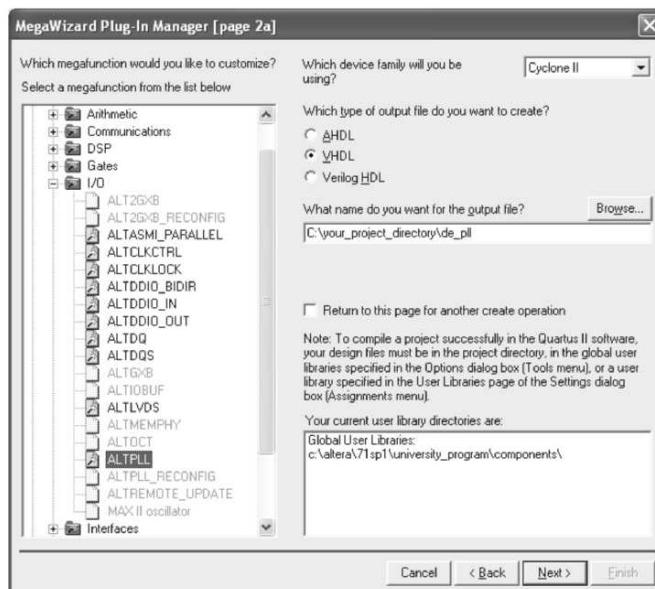


Figure 17.16 These are the initial settings for the ALTPLL module.

On page 3 of the MegaWizard manager, enter **50.00 MHz** as the **frequency of the inclock0 input**. Leave the other options set to their default values. Click **Next** to continue. On page 4 of the MegaWizard manager, *un-select all checkmarks*. Click **Next** twice to advance to page 6.

On page 6 of the MegaWizard manager, enter a **Clock phase shift of -54 deg (-3 ns)**. Leave the other options set to their default values. Click **Finish** to skip

pages 6 and 7 and jump to page 8 of the MegaWizard manager. Click **Finish** again to complete the MegaWizard manager and create the files for the PLL component.

Double click on a blank area of the top-level schematic file. Select the **Project** \Rightarrow **up3_pll** module and add it to your top-level schematic as shown in the completed schematic in Figure 17.17.

IMPORTANT NOTE: Different or future versions of the Altera software may generate slightly different hardware time delays for the SDRAM clock. If you experience SDRAM errors after running memory tests on your final design or the program downloads to SDRAM do not verify, and after double checking that everything else is correct in your design, the PLL phase shift may need to be adjusted a small amount. Most designs seem to fall within about 30 degrees of -54 degrees. This corresponds to a time delay adjustment of only 1 or 2 ns.

17.17 Complete the Top-Level Schematic

To complete the top-level schematic, add the input, output, and bi-directional pins (and pin names) shown in Figure 17.17. Also, complete the connections between the two top-level components as shown in the figure. Finally, if you added the LCD component for the DE2 board, add a VCC symbol and connect it to the **LCD_ON** and **LCD_BLON** output pins to tie them High. If you have trouble reading the signal names in the figure, the file is available on the DVD.

17.18 Design Compilation

Verify that the pin assignments discussed in Section 17.2 were made correctly by going to **Assignments** \Rightarrow **Pins**. A long list of pin numbers and names corresponding to the pin names you entered into the top-level schematic should appear. If it does not, then repeat the steps in Section 17.2 to import the pin assignments.

Verify that the global assignments discussed in Section 17.2 were made correctly by going to **Assignments** \Rightarrow **Device...** \Rightarrow **Device & Pin Options** \Rightarrow **Unused Pins**.

The **Reserve all unused pins** option should be set to **As input tri-stated**. If it is not, then select this option. Click **OK** until all dialog boxes are closed.

Select **Processing** \Rightarrow **Start Compilation** to begin compiling your project.

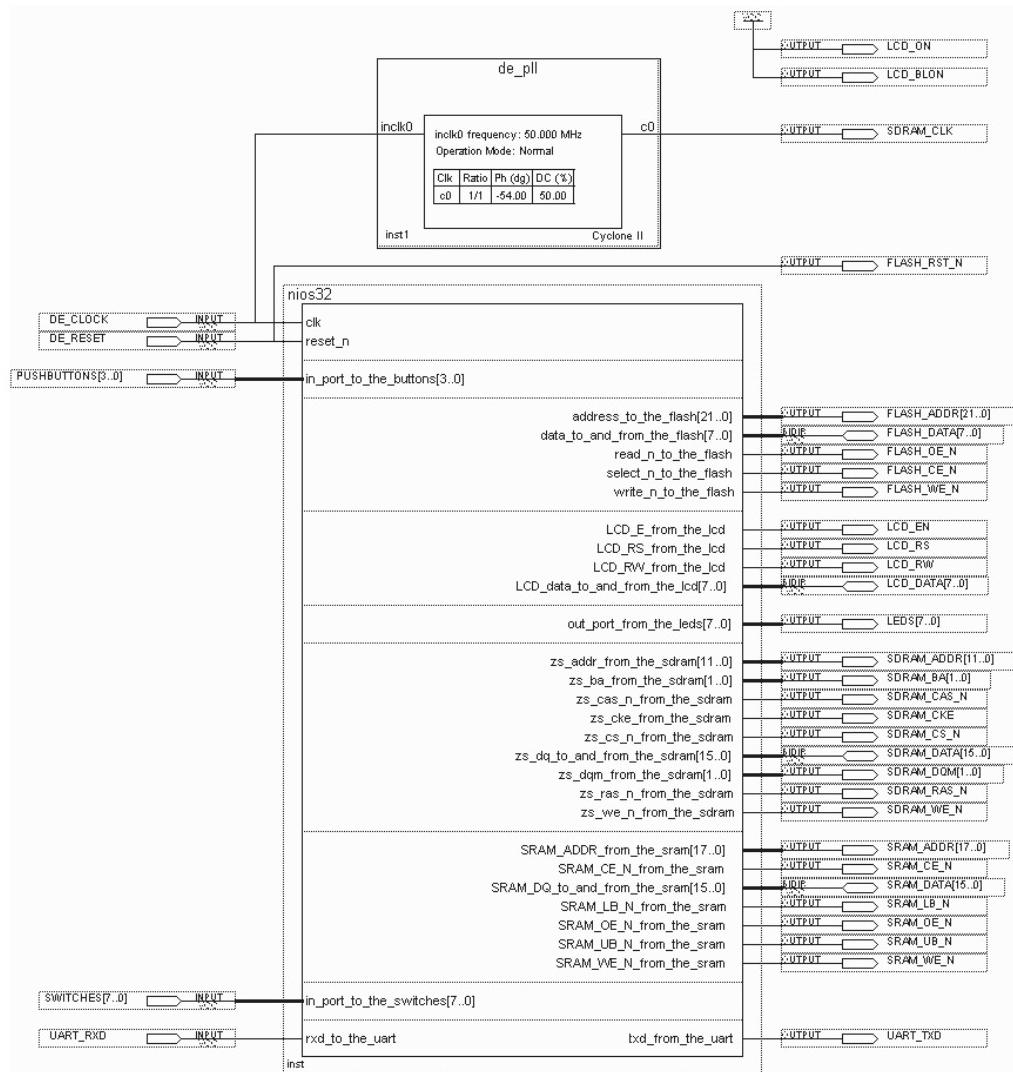


Figure 17.17 The final top-level schematic for the Nios II system on a DE2 board is shown here. The DE1 board schematic is similar except the LCD bus signals will not be present.

17.19 Testing the Nios II Project

To fully test your Nios II project, you will need to write a software program to run on the Nios II processor that tests each component. To complete this task, refer to the previous chapter, which contains *Tutorial III: Nios II Processor Software Design*.

You might want to try your test program from the previous chapter first to verify that memory still works in your new design. After switching to a new workspace for the new project in Nios II IDE, create a blank project with a new system library that is based on your Nios II processor design. You can then

import an existing software project into a new design project's software directory using **File** \Rightarrow **Import**. You will need to clean and rebuild the software project since the system library changes for each new hardware design.

IMPORTANT: In the reference hardware design, SW9 is used as the Nios II processor's reset signal. Before code can be downloaded to the processor, it must be brought out of reset by setting SW9 in the up (or on) position.



ALL SOURCE FILES FOR THIS NIOS II HARDWARE REFERENCE DESIGN
CAN BE FOUND ON THE DVD IN THE \DEX\CHAP17 DIRECTORY.

17.20 For additional information

This chapter has provided a brief overview of Nios II hardware development. Additional information can be found at Altera's website (www.altera.com) in the *Nios II Processor Reference Handbook*, *Embedded Peripherals Handbook* and *Hardware Development Tutorial*. Nios II components for the DE boards and other reference designs can be found at Altera's University Program website. The Nios Community Forum (www.niosforum.com) also contains useful information and downloads for Nios II projects.

17.21 Laboratory Exercises

1. Add two 8-bit PIOs to the Nios II hardware design that connect to the 5 volt I/O pins on the board's header connector. Setup one port for input and one port for output. Connect the PIO port's I/O pins to eight input pins and eight output pins on the header. This is a handy way to interface external devices and sensors like those used in the FPGA robot projects in Chapter 13 to the FPGA board's Nios II processor.
2. Add a PIO port to the Nios II hardware design and use the PIO port's I/O bits to design an I²C hardware interface to the FPGA board's real-time clock chip. Software will be needed to send I²C commands, the PIO port just provides a hardware interface to the I²C SDA and SLC bits (see Section 12.4).
3. Add a parallel port to the Nios II hardware design. Use two 8-bit ports, one for data and one for status and control bits. Connect the PIO port's I/O bits to the parallel port connector on the FPGA board. Software will be needed to monitor and control the handshake lines (see Section 12.1) when connecting to a device like a parallel printer.
4. Add an SPI interface to the Nios II hardware design and use it to interface to an external SPI device connected to one of the FPGA board's expansion connectors.

5. Implement one of the FPGA robotics projects from Chapter 13 using a Nios II processor running C code. See problem 1 for robot interface suggestions.
6. Design an automatic setback HVAC thermostat using the FPGA. Interface a temperature sensor to the FPGA. Some temperature sensors are available with digital outputs that would not require a separate analog-to-digital IC. Display the current time, temperature, heat, fan, and A/C status, and the temperature settings in the LCD. Use the pushbuttons to change the temperature settings and setback times. Use the LEDs to indicate the heat, A/C, and fan control outputs from the thermostat. You can heat the temperature sensor with your finger to cycle the thermostat and cool it with ice or an aerosol spray can of dust off cleaner.
7. Interface a PS/2 keyboard or mouse to the Nios II processor using PIO ports. Write software to demonstrate the new keyboard or mouse interface. Display the output on the LCD or the UART. There are two major options to consider, use the keyboard and mouse cores from Chapter 11 or do everything in software.
8. Use the video sync core and character generation ROM from Chapter 10 to add a video text display to the Nios processor. Add a dual port memory to store a screen full of characters. Write characters to the dual port memory from the Nios II processor using PIO ports added to the Nios II design. The video system constantly reads the characters out of the dual port memory and then uses the character generation ROM to generate the video display. Write a software driver for the video display and attach a monitor to the FPGA's VGA connector to demonstrate your design.
9. After solving the previous two problems, develop software for a video game that uses the mouse or keyboard for input and displays output on the monitor. If you need graphics for your game, consider replacing the character memory and text display with a larger memory containing only pixels used in a graphics display. Keep in mind that the internal FPGA memory is limited.
10. Add a custom instruction to the Nios II processor designed to speed up a particular application area. See the *Nios II Custom Instruction User Guide*. Demonstrate the speedup obtained with the new instruction by running the application with and without the new instruction.
11. Interface the dual port video display memory used in one of the earlier problems directly to the Avalon system bus instead of using PIO ports. See the *Avalon Interface Specification Manual*.
12. Program the FPGA's serial flash device so that your Nios II hardware design loads automatically at power up. See Appendix E for instructions on programming the FPGA's serial flash configuration chip.

13. Program a complete Nios II design into both Flash memories so that the FPGA board loads both the FPGA hardware configuration data and the software from the two Flash memories automatically at power up. See the *Nios II Flash Programmer User Guide* and study the section on how to port the Flash programmer to a new board type. A full version Altera software license is required for Flash programming of Nios II program code.

CHAPTER 18

Operating System Support for SOPC Design



Embedded operating systems can provide a wide variety of services to support application developers. The DE boards and Nios II soft-core processor support several embedded operating systems including μ Clinux, which is shown here driving a VGA monitor.

18 Operating System Support for SOPC Design

Many electronic devices that contain a processor now require complex software that needs support for multitasking, synchronization of tasks, a wide range of I/O devices, scheduling and buffering of I/O operations, memory management, graphics displays, file systems, and/or networking. Developing custom code (like was done in Chapter 16) that can provide all of these services is an expensive and time consuming task. For example, one recent cell phone design contained over five million lines of code. Few projects will have the time and funding needed to develop all of this code entirely on their own. In cases such as this, it makes economic sense to use an existing operating system. An operating system (OS) can provide a wide array of features and services including those listed above. Software developers are more productive when an operating system is present since they can work at a higher level of abstraction by using the operating system's Application Programming Interface (API) calls to access the services provided by the OS.

The development time and costs saved more than offsets the licensing fees for the operating system. The typical commercial embedded OS license fees run only a few dollars per device and several open source operating systems are free. Some very simple low-end devices might not need an OS, but complexity constantly increases with each new generation of devices.

The traditional desktop operating systems require a memory management unit (MMU) that provides hardware support for virtual memory addressing. This allows the OS to provide a kernel memory address space and a user memory address space. An MMU requires extensive processor hardware and the current FPGA soft-core processors do not contain an MMU. Specially designed embedded operating systems that have been targeted for small MMU-less devices are available¹¹. They use only a single linear memory address space. An embedded OS typically requires less processing power and has a smaller memory footprint than a desktop OS. It also is likely to support booting from flash memory, produce ROMable code (i.e., generates code that can run from ROM memory), and to have I/O device drivers for the I/O devices that are more commonly found in small devices. A C/C++ compiler is typically provided with the OS.

For these reasons, most complex embedded devices use an existing embedded operating system. Embedded operating systems typically are developed largely in C/C++ and normally come bundled with a C/C++ compiler, assembler, and debugging tools to assist designers in developing application programs and testing the device. Embedded system development tools must also support program execution using code stored in non-volatile memory such as ROM or Flash memory.

Figure 18.1 shows the response embedded designers gave in a 2006 survey to the question “what languages do you use to develop embedded systems?” The

¹¹ Embedded Linux System Design and Development by P. Raghavan, Amol Lad, and Sriram Neelakandan, 2005.

C family of languages is clearly used for the majority of embedded systems development. For assembly language, the response indicated that around one third of embedded systems designers still have to use assembly language for at least some small portion of their designs. Other studies have indicated that assembly language is typically less than five to ten percent of the total code in current devices.

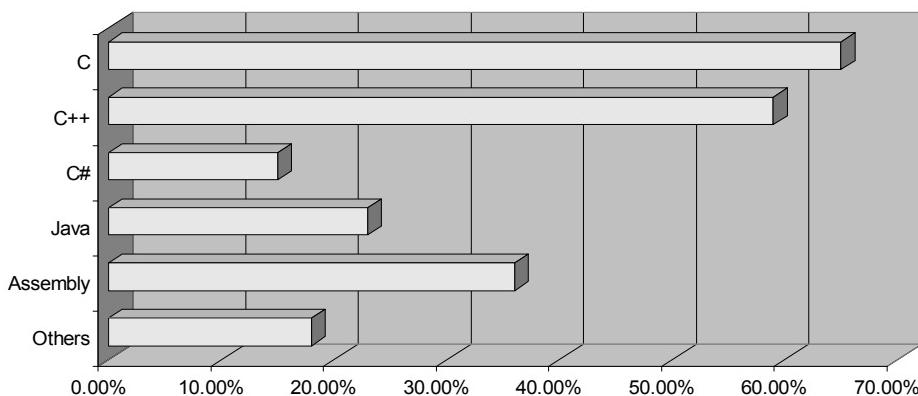


Figure 18.1 Programming languages used to develop embedded devices.¹²

Figure 18.2 indicates that 70% of new embedded devices contain an operating system. In those devices with an operating system, the most popular choice is an off-the-shelf commercial operating system. Commercial operating systems and commercial distributions of open source operating systems may have better OS development tools, a wider selection of device drivers, and an experienced consulting staff available to help with development. The real economic value of these services should not be overlooked when choosing an embedded OS for your project. One recent study claims that the total product development cost can actually turn out to be higher in some cases for an open source OS when software development time, salaries, and other required license fees are all included.¹³

The embedded open source community is continuing to grow. When using an open source operating system, the costs and development time can be minimized by carefully selecting a platform (i.e., the processor and peripheral devices) that has a mature supporting code base within the open source community.

¹² Language Survey data is from the 2006 annual embedded market survey conducted by EETimes and Embedded Systems Design Magazine (www.embedded.com). Articles published throughout the year discuss the results of the annual survey and examine the implications and trends found in the data.

¹³ The Total Cost of Development study is available at www.embedded-forecast.com. This study surveyed several embedded product development projects to compare costs when using Open Source versus a Commercial OS.

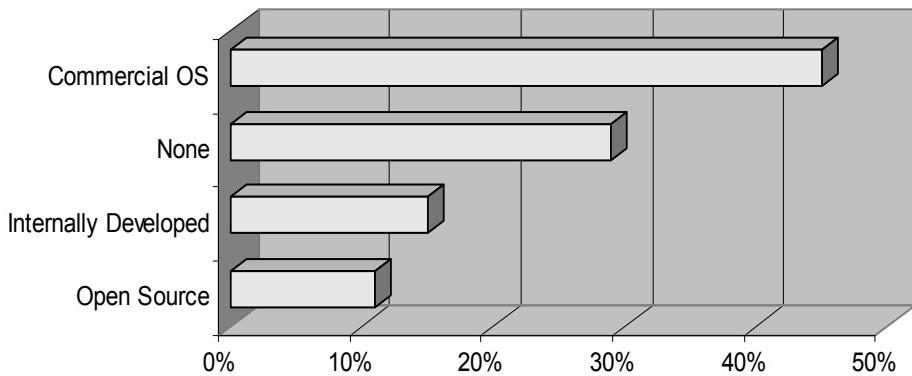


Figure 18.2 Real-time OS kernels used in new embedded designs.¹⁴

18.1 Nios II OS Support

To support SOPC-based designs, a number of commercial third-party and open source operating systems have been ported to the processor cores running on current FPGAs. Several embedded operating systems are supported on the Nios II soft-core processor as seen in Table 18.1. An assortment of both open source and commercial operating systems are available. Many can be developed using the Nios II IDE. OS development often lags a bit behind new hardware developments, so the OS may require an older version of the IDE tools. Since the Nios II processor does not include MMU hardware, virtual memory addressing is not supported. An MMU-less embedded operating system is required that uses flat memory addressing.

Most of the operating systems in Table 18.1 claim to be Real-Time Operating Systems (RTOS). An RTOS is an OS that has a fixed upper bound on the interrupt latency and service time. A real-time system must respond to external events (i.e., interrupts) in a limited amount of time or the system will fail. There are two classes of real-time systems soft real-time and hard real-time. In soft real-time systems, critical tasks get priority and their response rate typically meets the timing constraint but is not guaranteed to always respond within the defined limit. A typical soft real-time example is a multimedia player. The player could occasionally skip a video frame or audio sample and a user might not even notice as long as it ran correctly the vast majority of the time. A hard real-time system, however, must guarantee a specified response rate or the system will fail. The average response time in a hard real-time OS is typically in the range of 0.5ms to 10ms. Some hard real-time systems must also

¹⁴ OS Survey data is from the 2006 annual embedded market survey conducted by EETimes and Embedded Systems Design Magazine (www.embedded.com).

guarantee a narrow margin of response time variation. For example, a response rate that varies more than 10% can also cause some systems to fail.¹⁵

Traditional desktop operating systems such as Windows and most Linux distributions are not hard real-time OSs, since they can occasionally have very long interrupt response times that are well outside the range currently expected in an RTOS. In an RTOS, the OS kernel code and user application code cannot disable interrupts for long periods of time. To convert a traditional OS to an RTOS normally requires rewriting all of the kernel code with this feature in mind.

Table 18.1 OS support for the Nios II Processor

OS	RTOS	OS Type	Company Name	Nios II IDE Plug-in
eCos	Yes	Open Source	eCosCentric	-
Euros RTOS	Yes	Commercial	Euros	-
Erika Enterprise	Yes	Commercial	Evidence	Yes
ThreadX	Yes	Commercial	Express Logic	Yes
Nucleus Plus	Yes	Commercial	Mentor Graphics	-
MicroC/OS-II ¹⁶	Yes	Commercial	Micrium	Yes
embOS	Yes	Commercial	Segger	-
osCAN ¹⁷	Yes	Commercial	Vector Informatik	-
μClinix	-	Open Source	Microtronix	Yes
μClinix	-	Open Source	Community Supported (based on Microtronix port)	-

eCos, MicroC/OS-II, and μClinix are three of the more popular OS choices available for the Nios II processor. These will be briefly examined in the next three sections followed by a more detailed look at running the μClinix kernel on the DE board.

18.2 eCos

eCos (embedded Configurable operating system) is an open source, royalty-free RTOS designed for embedded systems and applications which need only one process with multiple threads. The OS can be customized for application requirements to deliver the best possible run-time performance and minimize hardware needs. It is programmed in the C programming language and has compatibility layers and APIs for POSIX and μITRON¹⁸. eCos was designed

¹⁵ Based on the definition and timing that was adopted by the Open, Modular, Architecture Control (OMAC) user group: A hard real-time system is a system that would fail if its timing requirements were not met; a soft real-time system can tolerate significant variations in the delivery of operating system services like interrupts, timers, and scheduling.

¹⁶ Included with the Nios II Embedded Design Suite, but licensed separately by Micrium.

¹⁷ OSEK/VDX compliant. OSEK/VDX is an open standard of the automotive industry.

¹⁸ More eCos information and examples can be found in Programming Embedded Systems, Second Edition With C and GNU Development Tools by Michael Barr and Anthony Massa.

for devices with memory size in the tens to hundreds of kilobytes and with real-time requirements.

eCos was developed by Cygnus Solutions and was later bought by Red Hat. In 2002, Red Hat ended development of eCos and the developers then formed, eCosCentric, in order to continue development and provide support for eCos. Red Hat agreed to transfer its eCos copyrights to the Free Software Foundation in October 2005. eCosCentric has a version of their eCosPro distribution that has been ported to the Nios II processor.

18.3 μC/OS-II

μC/OS-II is a highly portable, scalable, preemptive, real-time, multitasking kernel for microprocessors and microcontrollers. μC/OS-II is written in C¹⁹. Since its introduction in 1992, μC/OS-II has been used in a wide array of products including cell phones, climate controls, audio/video processors, credit card processing units, and electrical instrumentation.

μC/OS-II can manage up to 255 tasks and provides services such as semaphores, mutual exclusion semaphores, event flags, message mailboxes, message queues, task management, fixed-size memory block management, and time/timer management.

μC/OS-II has been ported to the Nios II processor (Altera usually refers to it as MicroC/OS-II). Altera distributes MicroC/OS-II in the full commercial version of the Nios II EDS software and supports the Nios II port of the MicroC/OS-II kernel. Examples of MicroC/OS-II programs are included with the Nios II EDS software.

The license for the Nios II MicroC/OS-II port is available from Micrium. Micrium offers free OS licensing for universities and students. A MicroC/OS-II reference manual and tutorial are available on the DVD and from Altera.

As seen in Figure 18.3, the MicroC/OS-II kernel operates on top of the hardware abstraction layer (HAL) system library for the Nios II processor. By using the HAL, programs based on MicroC/OS-II are more portable to other Nios II hardware systems and are somewhat flexible with respect to hardware changes. MicroC/OS-II programs can use all HAL services and use the HAL APIs described earlier in this text.

¹⁹ The internal architecture of μC/OS-II is described in "μC/OS-II, The Real-Time Kernel" by Jean J. Labrosse.

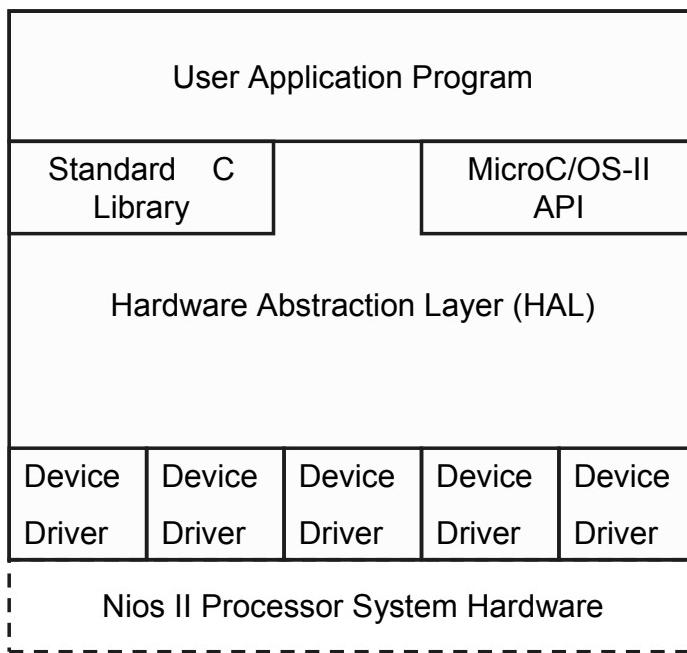


Figure 18.3 MicroC/OS II System Architecture.

18.4 µClinux

The original “micro controller” Linux, µClinux, was derived from the Linux 2.0 kernel and intended for microcontrollers like the Nios II processor that do not have a Memory Management Unit (MMU). µClinux was first ported to the Motorola MC68328 DragonBall Integrated Microprocessor. The first target system to successfully boot was a PalmPilot device in 1998. Currently, µClinux includes Linux kernel releases for 2.0, 2.4, and 2.6 as well as a collection of user applications, libraries and tool chains.

After releasing the initial version, a developer community soon sprung up to extend work to newer kernels and other microprocessor architectures. In 1999, support was added for the Motorola (Freescale) ColdFire family of embedded microprocessors and the ARM processor. Recently, it has been ported to the Nios II processor.

The µClinux project community continues to develop patches and supporting tools for using Linux on microcontrollers. µClinux has support for several architectures and forms the basis of many embedded products. Examples include network routers, gateways, security cameras, DVD and MP3 players, VoIP phones, scanners, and card readers. The NiosForum (www.niosfourm.org) supports an open source version of µClinux that has been ported to the Nios II Processor.

18.5 Implementing the µClinux on the DE Board

To illustrate the benefits of operating systems in embedded systems, the next few sections will step the reader through the design and implementation of a Nios II system running µClinux on a DE board.

There are two main distributions of µClinux that work on the Nios II processor. The first distribution is controlled and released by Microtronix (www.microtronix.com). They provided the original kernel code modifications to support the Nios II processor. Their distribution also integrates into the Nios II IDE design environment. However, as of the publication date of this book, Microtronix's latest version, release 1.4, does not work with Nios II 7.1. Release 1.4 was originally designed for Nios II 5.0 and there are reports of users on the Nios Community Forum (www.niosforum.com) successfully using it in Nios II 6.0. Microtronix distributions are freely available for download on the Nios Community Forum under Downloads. (To view the Downloads section, you must be a registered user of the forum's website.) The primary advantage of this distribution is its tight integration into the Nios II IDE and build environment; however, Microtronix releases tend to lag behind Altera's software releases.

A second distribution of µClinux has been developed and released on the <http://nioswiki.jot.com/WikiHome/> website by a group of developers who frequent the Nios Community Forum. These developers took Microtronix's distribution and updated it with support for the latest Linux kernel release, additional device drivers, and a larger collection of libraries and user applications. Instead of integrating µClinux developing and compilation into the Nios II IDE, this distribution includes uClinux-dist, a Linux-based build environment. You must have access to a computer running the Linux operating system to install, customize, and build this distribution of the µClinux kernel.

The remainder of this chapter will focus on this second distribution of µClinux, which will be referred to as µClinux for Nios II. While full details of the development of a custom µClinux kernel for the DE boards is beyond the scope of this book, a pre-built kernel is provided for the reader's use and exploration. Readers who want to modify the kernel image should consult the <http://nioswiki.jot.com/WikiHome/> website, which includes the uClinux-dist distribution as well as the necessary patches for Nios II freely available for download. In addition, this website has a number of tutorials and application notes available that step through the customization of various devices and services in µClinux (including information specific to the DE2 board). Additional help is available in the Nios Community Forum (www.niosforum.com).

18.6 Hardware Design for µClinux Support

When compiling µClinux for Nios II, the Nios II peripheral template file (.ptf) for the specific Nios II processor configuration being used must be provided. The .ptf file contains the processor and peripheral details for a given Nios II configuration including the IRQ mappings, memory address ranges for the

memory and I/O peripherals, and a list of the names and types of the peripherals selected in the SOPC Builder. During the μ Clinix build process this file is used to generate a nios2_system.h file that contains C definitions for all of the peripheral names, addresses, IRQs, etc. The kernel and device driver source code includes this file and relies on it to access and configure the peripherals. Many of the device drivers use a hardcoded name for the peripheral being accessed. Thus, designing a Nios II system to be compatible with μ Clinix for Nios II requires that specific names be used for the peripherals in SOPC Builder. Failure to properly name devices (or edit the device driver files to match your Nios II system) will result in a loss of functionality within μ Clinix. A Nios II reference design for use with μ Clinix for Nios II is available on the DVD in the /DEx/chap18 directory (for the DE1 and DE2 boards only). This system was developed in a method similar to that in Chapter 17. However, specific peripheral names and configuration settings along with a number of additional peripherals were used to make this Nios II system compatible with μ Clinix for Nios II. The final SOPC Builder configuration is shown in Figure 18.4.

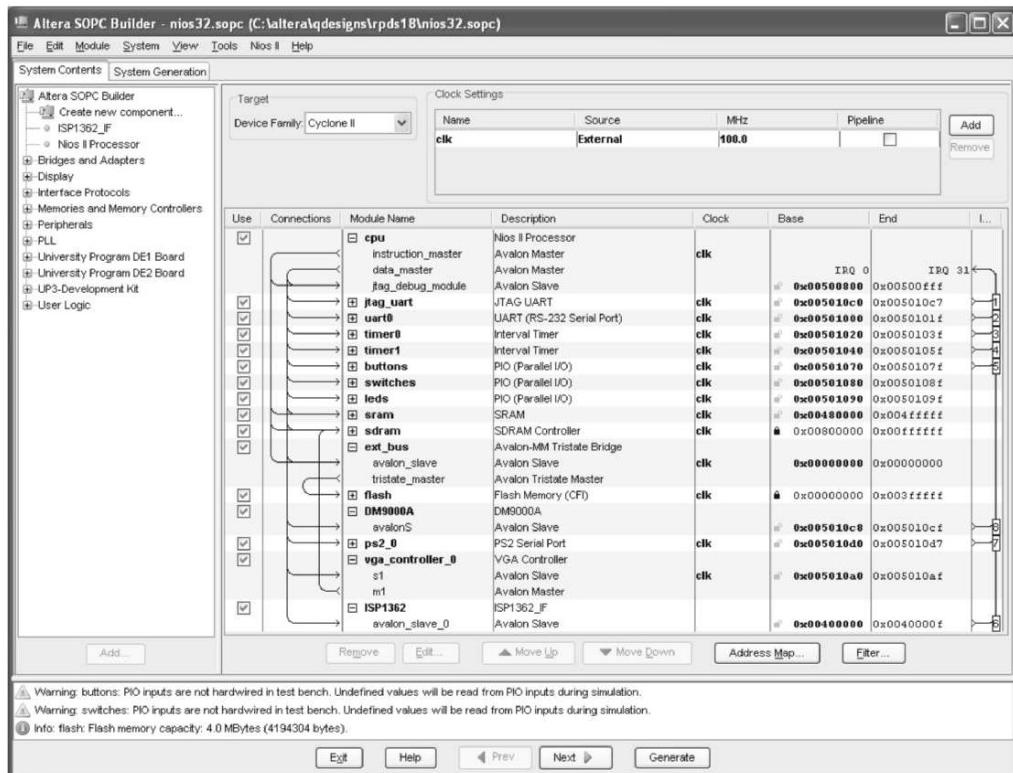


Figure 18.4 This is the completed µClinux compatible Nios II design in SOPC Builder.

18.7 Configuring the DE Board

Configuring the DE board to run µClinix requires two steps. The FPGA must be configured to implement the Nios II processor system, and then the µClinix kernel image must be downloaded into SDRAM. Both configuration steps can be accomplished via the **Nios II 7.1 Command Shell**, which is available on the Windows Start menu **Altera ⇒ Nios II EDS 7.1 ⇒ Nios II 7.1 Command Shell**. The Command Shell window is a Cygwin environment so it will behave similarly to a Linux shell. Change directories to get to the folder where the reference design for Chapter 18 resides. For example, if you copied the chap18 folder from the DVD to the C:\altera\qdesigns\ directory, then you would need to type the following commands:

```
cd c:  
cd altera/qdesigns/chap18/complete
```

Before configuring the FPGA, verify that the DE board is powered on and a USB cable is connected between your PC and the USB Blaster port on the DE board. Configure the FPGA with the .sof file provided with the reference design by running the following command:

```
nios2-configure-sof rpds18.sof
```

If you have multiple JTAG cables or are programming a board with multiple FPGAs on it, then you will need to specify some of the optional parameters for the nios2-configure-sof command. Run **nios2-configure-sof --help** to view additional information about the command-line options for this program.

The reference µClinix kernel provided here supports a VGA monitor, a PS/2 keyboard or mouse, USB HID devices (i.e., keyboards, mice), USB memory sticks, Ethernet communication, and serial UART console terminal. (Not all of these devices are available on the DE1 board.) Attach a 9-pin serial cable between the DE board and your PC. Use HyperTerminal or another terminal program (BPS: 115200, Data Bits: 8, Parity: None, Stop Bits: 1, Flow Control: None) to attach to the µClinix console. The console will allow you to view the boot-up sequence and interact with the µClinix kernel via a command prompt. Attach a VGA monitor and PS/2 keyboard to the respective ports on the DE board. If you are using a DE2 board, you may also attach a USB mouse and Ethernet cable to the respective ports on the DE2 board. Because there is only one PS/2 port, it is recommended that you attach a keyboard to the PS/2 port and a mouse to the USB port or vice versa. A USB hub can be used to if you need to attach multiple USB devices to the DE2 board.

Once you have connected the appropriate cables, the µClinix kernel image must be downloaded into the SDRAM chip and processor started executing at the proper memory address. Type the following command to do both of these actions at once:

```
nios2-download -g zImage
```

An illustration of the Nios II Command Shell after the complete sequence of commands have executed is shown in Figure 18.5. When the kernel image download is complete, the processor will immediately begin executing at memory address 0x00D00000. µClinux will start booting immediately and the series of messages shown in Figure 18.6 should appear in your terminal window. (Some messages will vary for the DE1 board because device drivers for peripherals not available on the DE1 board will not load.)

```
/cygdrive/c/altera/71/nios2eds/examples
[SOPC Builder]$ cd c:
/cygdrive/c
[SOPC Builder]$ cd altera/qdesigns/rpds18/complete/
/cygdrive/c/altera/qdesigns/rpds18/complete
[SOPC Builder]$ nios2-configure-sof rpds18.sof
Searching for SOF file:
in .
rpds18.sof

Info:
*****
Info: Running Quartus II Programmer
Info: Command: quartus_pgm --no_banner --mode=jtag -o p;rpds18.sof
Info: Using programming cable "USB-Blaster [USB-0]"
Info: Started Programmer operation at Wed Aug 01 14:11:26 2007
Info: Configuring device index 1
Info: Device 1 contains JTAG ID code 0x020B40DD
Info: Configuration succeeded -- 1 device(s) configured
Info: Successfully performed operation(s)
Info: Ended Programmer operation at Wed Aug 01 14:11:28 2007
Info: Quartus II Programmer was successful. 0 errors, 0 warnings
    Info: Allocated 51 megabytes of memory during processing
    Info: Processing ended: Wed Aug 01 14:11:28 2007
    Info: Elapsed time: 00:00:09
/cygdrive/c/altera/qdesigns/rpds18/complete
[SOPC Builder]$ nios2-download -g zImage
Using cable "USB-Blaster [USB-0]", device 1, instance 0x00
Pausing target processor: OK
Initializing CPU cache (if present)
OK
Downloaded 1775KB in 22.6s (78.5KB/s)
Verified OK
Starting processor at address 0x00D00000
/cygdrive/c/altera/qdesigns/rpds18/complete
[SOPC Builder]$
```

Figure 18.5 The sequence of commands and output that appear when programming the FPGA via the Nios II Command Shell is shown here.

Figure 18.6 This is an abbreviated version of the messages that print out in the console terminal when μClinux is booting.

18.8 Exploring µClinux on the DE Board

Once µClinux has booted properly, you can use console window on your PC (connected to the FPGA via a serial cable) or the terminal window display on the VGA monitor and a PS/2 keyboard attached to the DE2 board to explore µClinux. Standard Linux commands such as ls, cd, more, ps, kill, free, and stty all work. In particular, type **ls -al** to get a listing of the files and directories on the root filesystem (being implemented in SDRAM). Because the root filesystem, program memory, and data memory are all utilizing the single 8MB SDRAM chip on the DE board, this implementation is very tight on memory. Before running a new command, be sure to run the **free** command to check how much memory is available. If too many processes are running simultaneously, the kernel will run out of memory and crash. Table 18.2 contains a summary of useful commands and programs supported in this µClinux kernel image. Additional commands are available in the /bin directory and via the busybox application (type **busybox** for more information).

Table 18.2 Selected Supported Commands in µClinux

Command/Program	Description
ls	List the files and folders in the current directory.
ps	List information about the currently running processes including the PID number for each process.
kill	Stops a running process. The PID for the process that will be halted must be specified.
free	Lists the amount of used and available memory.
ping	Starts a network utility that can be used to test network communication.
ifconfig	Displays and sets network configuration settings.
dhcpcd	Starts a DHCP client daemon that will automatically acquire an IP address and other the network settings from a DHCP server.
ftpd	Starts an FTP server daemon that can be used to access files on the µClinux system from over the network.
telnetd	Starts a telnet server daemon that can be used to access a µClinux console terminal over the network.
boa	Starts a lightweight web server on the µClinux system. The root web page is stored in /home/httpd/.
mount	Used to mount/access different filesystems including USB memory sticks.
nano-X	Starts a windowing environment in µClinux.
nanowm	Starts a window manager that runs in the nano-X environment.
nxterm	Starts a terminal program in nano-X.
ntetris	Starts a graphical version of the Tetris game in nano-X.
nxview	Displays a JPEG image in a window in nano-X.

In addition to the standard Linux shell commands and typical user applications, a custom application targeting the DE boards has been added to

this kernel image. The source code for this user µClinix application is shown in Figure 18.7. When run, it will display an 8-bit counter on eight of the red LEDs on the DE board. Start the program by typing **flash_leds &** in the terminal window.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <unistd.h>
#include "nios2_system.h"

int main( void )
{
    int i;
    volatile unsigned *leds = ((volatile unsigned *) (na_leds));

    for(i=0; i<256; i++)
    {
        *leds = i;
        sleep(1);
    }
    return 0;
}
```

Figure 18.7 This is the source code for a user program that has been included in the µClinix kernel image included on the DVD.

18.9 PS/2 Device Support in µClinix

The µClinix kernel image provided on the DVD includes support for a PS/2 keyboard or mouse. The DE boards only have one PS/2 port on them, so only one PS/2 device can be used at a time. Attaching a PS/2 keyboard or mouse to the port will be detected by the µClinix PS/2 device driver, and several debug messages will print out in the console terminal window when a new device is recognized. The PS/2 devices are plug-and-play meaning that one can be removed and another device can be connected on the fly without having to reboot the kernel or processor.

18.10 Video Display in µClinix

The µClinix kernel image provided on the DVD supports the Video output on the DE board. This version of the kernel image starts the nano-X windowing environment along with the nanowm window manager and nxterm window terminal application during the boot process. The turquoise background color of the window manager and the terminal window should be visible on the VGA monitor when µClinix completes booting. There are several nano-X applications included in the kernel image for exploring the graphical capabilities of µClinix. From a terminal window, try running **nxclock** (a

graphical clock application), **ntetris** (a nano-X version of the Tetris game), or **nxview** (a JPEG image preview application). Be sure to monitor the available memory as additional processes are started.

18.11 USB Devices in µClinix (*DE2 Board Only*)

The µClinix kernel image provided on the DVD includes support for USB host functionality using the ISP1362 USB controller IC on the DE2 board. USB devices such as keyboards and mice can be supported through the Human Interface Devices (HID) drivers in µClinix. Plug a USB mouse or keyboard into the USB port on the DE2 board and notice the debug messages that display in the console terminal window. A USB mouse will control the cursor in the nano-X window manager, and a USB keyboard will allow you to enter text into the nano-X terminal window program or control the ntetris game.

Support for USB storage devices (i.e., USB memory sticks or flash drives) is also included in this µClinix kernel image. Insert a USB flash drive into the USB slot. Several debug messages will print out on the console terminal window indicating that the USB storage device is recognized and accessible as device **/dev/sda1**. To access files on the USB storage device, the filesystem must first be mounted and mapped to a directory in the root filesystem. If the USB storage device is using a FAT filesystem (most USB flash drives that are used with Windows PCs use a FAT filesystem), type the following commands:

```
mkdir /mydrive  
mount -t vfat /dev/sda1 /mydrive
```

Once these commands have been executed, the contents of the USB flash drive will be available in the **/mydrive** directory. When you are finished with the USB flash drive, be sure to unmount the drive before removing it from the USB port. To unmount the drive, run the following command:

```
umount /mydrive
```

18.12 Network Communication in µClinix (*DE2 Board Only*)

The µClinix kernel image provided on the DVD includes a number of network utilities and applications. The **ifconfig** command is the primary utility used to configure the network settings such as MAC address and IP address. All network devices must have a unique hardware address known as a MAC address. The DE2 board has a software configurable MAC address, thus it is up to you to ensure that a unique address is used. To assign a MAC address, use the following command, where XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX is the unique number you are assigning:

```
ifconfig eth0 hw ether XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
```

To use a DHCP server to automatically configure the remaining network settings, run the following commands:

```
ifconfig eth0 up  
dhcpcd &
```

The command **ifconfig -a** will display the network settings. If a valid IP address is displayed after the label **inet addr**, then the DE2 board is successfully communicating on the network. To start any network server services on the DE2 board, you must first run **inetd &**. Inetd is a server daemon that monitors and manages all ports and internet services. Once the inetd process is running, you can start one or more of the server services such as **boa** (web server), **telnetd** (telnet server daemon), or **ftpd** (file transfer protocol server daemon). Be sure to monitor the available memory as additional processes are started.



ALL SOURCE FILES FOR THIS NIOS II µCLINUX REFERENCE DESIGN
CAN BE FOUND ON THE DVD IN THE \DE2\CHAP18 DIRECTORY.

18.13 For additional information

This chapter has provided a brief overview of embedded operating and the port of µClinix for the Nios II processor. Additional information about µClinix can be found at the can be found at the official µClinix website (www.uclinix.org). Additional information about the µClinix port for Nios II can be found at the µClinix Wiki (<http://nioswiki.jot.com/WikiHome/>) and the Nios Community forum (<http://www.niosforum.com>). More information about the other embedded operating systems discussed in this chapter are available at <http://www.micrium.com/>, <http://ecos.sourceforge.org/>, <http://www.rtos.com/>, <http://www.microtronix.com>, <http://www.mentor.com>, <http://www.segger.com>, [http://www.vector-informatik.de/](http://www.vector-informatik.de), and [http://www.euros-embedded.com/](http://www.euros-embedded.com).

18.14 Laboratory Exercises

1. In Figure 18.4, notice that the clock frequency is set to 100 MHz. To handle the computational needs of an operating systems, the clock rate was increased from the 50 MHz clock used in Chapter 17. Changing the clock frequency required several changes in the PLL settings that generate the processor and memory clocks. Open the Quartus II project for Chapter 18 that is provided on the DVD. What are the frequencies of the three clock signals being generated by the PLL block? Why is the phase shift of the SDRAM clock set to 108 degrees instead of the 54 degrees specified in Chapter 17?

2. Load a small (~20KB) JPEG image onto a USB flash drive. Insert the drive into the USB slot on the DE2 board. Mount the drive as discussed in the chapter and use the nxview program to display the image. Make sure that there is sufficient memory available before you run the nxview program.
3. Follow the instructions in the chapter for establishing a network connection on the DE2 board and starting the boa web server. To demonstrate the working system, open a web browser on your PC and view the web page being served by the web server by entering the DE2 board's IP address as the URL in the web browser.
4. Using the ps, kill, and free commands, try stopping and starting the nano-X, nanowm, and other graphical programs one at a time. Record the approximate memory required for each program to run. Create a table that lists the processes and memory requirements for at least five μ Clinix programs.
5. Using the ps, kill, and free commands, try stopping and starting the dhcpcd, inetd, telnetd, ftpd, and boa programs one at a time. Record the approximate memory required for each program to run. Create a table that lists the processes and memory requirements for these five μ Clinix programs.
6. Create a new HTML page on your PC and save it to a USB flash drive. Insert the drive into the USB slot on the DE2 board. Mount the drive as discussed in the chapter. Delete the /home/httpd/index.html file using the rm command. Then replace the index.html file with a symbolic link to the HTML page on your flash drive using the ln command. Verify that your system displays the new web page by opening a web browser on your PC and viewing the web page being served by the web server (enter the DE2 board's IP address as the URL in the web browser).
7. Obtain the licenses needed for the MicroC/OS-II Nios II OS port. The license for the Nios II MicroC/OS-II port is available from Micrium (www.micrium.com) and a full commercial license for the Altera tools for schools is available from Altera's University Program (www.altera.com). Micrium also offers free OS licensing for universities and students. Follow the steps in Altera's MicroC/OS-II tutorial (available on the DVD or at Altera's web site) to develop MicroC/OS-II for a Nios II reference design and run an application program on a DE board. Use the Cyclone II reference design and complete all steps up to the point where the board is downloaded. Currently, the older 6.1 version of the Quartus II and Nios II tools are required, but an updated version of the tutorial may be available soon.
8. For a challenging problem, a Reference design is provided with the MicroC/OS-II tutorial for commercial Cypress II FPGA boards. Consult this reference design to aid in modifying your DE Nios II reference design so that it is setup correctly to support MicroC/OS-II. Check Altera's website for newer versions as they become available.

Modify your Nios II DE board design so that the MicroC/OS-II is supported and run a test program on the DE board.

9. For a more challenging problem, port the eCos operating system to a DE Board. It is available free at www.niosforum.com. First, run a simple hello world application using the UART. For the second test, write a multithreaded application with one thread talking to the UART and a second thread blinking the LEDs.

Appendix A: Generation of Pseudo Random Binary Sequences

In many applications, random sequences of binary numbers are needed. These applications include random number generation for games, automatic test pattern generation, data encryption and decryption, data compression, and data error coding. Since a properly operating digital circuit never produces a random result, these sequences are called pseudo random. A long pseudo-random binary sequence appears to be random at first glance.

Table A.1 shows how to make an "n" bit pseudo-random binary sequence generator. Here is how it works for n = 8. Build an 8-bit shift register that shifts left one bit per clock cycle. Find the entry in Table A.1 for n = 8. This entry shows that bits 8,6,5,4 should all XORed or XNORed together to generate the next shift input used as the low bit in the shift register. Recall that the order of XOR operations does not matter. Note that the low-bit number is "1" and not "0" in this table.

A state machine that is actually a non-binary counter is produced. The counter visits all $2^n - 1$ non-zero states once in a pseudo-random order and then repeats. Since the counter visits every state once, a uniform distribution of numbers from 1 to $2^n - 1$ is generated. In addition to a shift register, only a minimal number of XOR or XNOR gates are needed for the circuit. The circuit is easy to synthesize in a HDL such as VHDL since only a few lines are required to shift and XOR the appropriate bits. Note that the next value in the random sequence is actually $2x$ or $2x + 1$ the previous value, x. For applications that may require a more truly random appearing sequence order, use a larger random sequence generator and select a disjoint subset of the bits and shuffle the output bits.

The initial value loaded in the counter is called the seed. The seed or the random number is never zero in this circuit. If a seed of zero is ever loaded in the shift register it will stay stuck at zero. If needed, the circuit can be modified so that it generates 2^n states. For the same initial seed value, the circuit will always generate the same sequence of numbers. In applications that wait for input, a random seed can be obtained by building a counter with a fast clock and saving the value of the counter for the seed when an input device such as a pushbutton is activated.

Additional information on pseudo-random binary sequence generators can be found in *HDL Chip Design* by D.J. Smith, Doone Publications, 1996, and Xilinx Application Note 52, 1996.

Table A.1 Primitive Polynomials Modulo 2.

n	XOR from bits	n	XOR from bits	n	XOR from bits	n	XOR from bits
3	3,2	45	45,44,42,41	87	87,74	129	129,124
4	4,3	46	46,45,26,25	88	88,87,17,16	130	130,127
5	5,3	47	47,42	89	89,51	131	131,130,84,83
6	6,5	48	48,47,21,20	90	90,89,72,71	132	132,103
7	7,6	49	49,40	91	91,90,8,7	133	133,132,82,81
8	8,6,5,4	50	50,49,24,23	92	92,91,80,79	134	134,77
9	9,5	51	51,50,36,35	93	93,91	135	135,124
10	10,7	52	52,49	94	94,73	136	136,135,11,10
11	11,9	53	53,52,38,37	95	95,84	137	137,116
12	12,6,4,1	54	54,53,18,17	96	96,94,49,47	138	138,137,131,130
13	13,4,3,1	55	55,31	97	97,91	139	139,136,134,131
14	14,5,3,1	56	56,55,35,34	98	98,87	140	140,111
15	15,14	57	57,50	99	99,97,54,52	141	141,140,110,109
16	16,15,13,4	58	58,39	100	100,63	142	142,121
17	17,14	59	59,58,38,37	101	101,100,95,94	143	143,142,123,122
18	18,11	60	60,59	102	102,101,36,35	144	144,143,75,74
19	19,6,2,1	61	61,60,46,45	103	103,94	145	145,93
20	20,17	62	62,61,6,5	104	104,103,94,93	146	146,145,87,86
21	21,19	63	63,62	105	105,89	147	147,146,110,109
22	22,21	64	64,63,61,60	106	106,91	148	148,121
23	23,18	65	65,47	107	107,105,44,42	149	149,148,40,39
24	24,23,22,17	66	66,65,57,56	108	108,77	150	150,97
25	25,22	67	67,66,58,57	109	109,108,103,102	151	151,148
26	26,6,2,1	68	68,59	110	110,109,98,97	152	152,151,87,86
27	27,5,2,1	69	69,67,42,40	111	111,101	153	153,152
28	28,25	70	70,69,55,54	112	112,110,69,67	154	154,152,27,25
29	29,27	71	71,65	113	113,104	155	155,154,124,123
30	30,6,4,1	72	72,66,25,19	114	114,113,33,32	156	156,155,41,40
31	31,28	73	73,48	115	115,114,101,100	157	157,156,131,130
32	32,22,2,1	74	74,73,59,58	116	116,115,46,45	158	158,157,132,131
33	33,20	75	75,74,65,64	117	117,115,99,97	159	159,128
34	34,27,2,1	76	76,75,41,40	118	118,85	160	160,159,142,141
35	35,33	77	77,76,47,46	119	119,111	161	161,143
36	36,25	78	78,77,59,58	120	120,113,9,2	162	162,161,75,74
37	37,5,4,3,2,1	79	79,70	121	121,103	163	163,162,104,103
38	38,6,5,1	80	80,79,43,42	122	122,121,63,62	164	164,163,151,150
39	39,35	81	81,77	123	123,121	165	165,164,135,134
40	40,38,21,19	82	82,79,47,44	124	124,87	166	166,165,128,127
41	41,38	83	83,82,38,37	125	125,124,18,17	167	167,161
42	42,41,20,19	84	84,71	126	126,125,90,89	168	168,166,153,151
43	43,42,38,37	85	85,84,58,57	127	127,126		
44	44,43,18,17	86	86,85,74,73	128	128,126,101,99		

Appendix B: Quartus II Design and Data File Extensions

Project Files

Quartus II Project File (*.qpf)
Quartus II Settings File (*.qsf)
Quartus II Workspace File (*.qws)
Quartus II Default Settings File (*.qdf)

Design Files

Altera Design File (*.adf)
Block Design File (*.bdf)
EDIF Input File (*.edf)
Graphic Design File (*.gdf)
OrCAD Schematic File (*.sch)
State Machine File (*.smf)
Text Design File (*.tdf)
Verilog Design File (*.v)
VHDL Design File (*.vhd)
Waveform Design File (*.wdf)
Xilinx Netlist File (*.xnf)

Ancillary Data Files

Assignment and Configuration File (*.acf)
Assignment and Configuration Output (*.aco)
Block Symbol File (*.bsf)
Command File (*.cmd)
EDIF Command File (*.edc)
Fit File (*.fit)
Intel Hexadecimal Format File (*.hex)
History File (*.hst)
Include File (*.inc)
JTAG chain file (*.jcf)
Library Mapping File (*.lmf)
Log File (*.log)
Memory Initialization File (*.mif)
Memory Initialization Output File (*.mio)
Message Text File (*.mtf)

Programmer Log File (*.plf)
Report File (*.rpt)
Simulator Channel File (*.scf)
Standard Delay Format (*.sdf)
Standard Delay Format Output File (*.sdo)
Symbol File (*.sym)
Table File (*.tbl)
Tabular Text File (*.ttf)
Text Design Export File (*.tdx)
Text Design Output File (*.tdo)
Timing Analyzer Output File (*.tao)
Vector File (*.vec)
Verilog Quartus Mapping File (*.vqm)
VHDL Memory Model Output File (*.vmo)

Non-Editable Ancillary File Types

Compiler Netlist File (*.cnf)
Hierarchy Interconnect File (*.hif)
JEDEC file (*.jed)
Node Database File (*.ndb)
Programmer Object File (*.pof)
Raw Binary File (*.rbf)
Serial Bitstream File (*.sbf)
Simulator Initialization File (*.sif)
Simulator Netlist File (*.snf)
SRAM Object File (*.sof)

Appendix C: Common FPGA Pin Assignments

Table C.1 FPGA board's common I/O pin assignments.

Pin Name	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2, UP1	Pin Type	Function of Pin
KEY0	R22	G26	48	28 PB1	Input	Pushbutton KEY0 (debounced, 0 = button hit)
KEY1	R21	N23	49	29 PB2	Input	Pushbutton KEY1 (debounced, 0 = button hit)
KEY2	T22	P23	57	-	Input	Pushbutton KEY2 (debounced, 0 = button hit)
KEY3	T21	W26	62	-	Input	Pushbutton KEY3 (debounced, 0 = button hit)
LEDR0	R20	AE23	56	25 0=on	Output	RED LED R0 (1 = LED ON, 0= LED OFF)
LEDR1	R19	AF23	55	14 0=on	Output	RED LED R1 (1 = LED ON, 0= LED OFF)
LEDR2	U19	AB21	54	-	Output	RED LED R2 (1 = LED ON, 0= LED OFF)
LEDR3	Y19	AC22	53	-	Output	RED LED R3 (1 = LED ON, 0= LED OFF)
SW0	L22	N25	58	41	Input	Slide or DIP Switch (0=Down, non-debounced)
SW1	L21	N26	59	40	Input	Slide or DIP Switch (0=Down, non-debounced)
SW2	M22	P25	60	39	Input	Slide or DIP Switch (0=Down, non-debounced)
SW3	V12	AE14	61	38	Input	Slide or DIP Switch (0=Down, non-debounced)
HEX0[0]	J2	AF10	-	6	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment A (0=on)
HEX0[1]	J1	AB12	-	7	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment B (0=on)
HEX0[2]	H2	AC12	-	8	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment C (0=on)
HEX0[3]	H1	AD11	-	9	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment D (0=on)
HEX0[4]	F2	AE11	-	11	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment E (0=on)
HEX0[5]	F1	V14	-	12	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment F (0=on)
HEX0[6]	E2	V13	-	13	Output	Seven Segment Display 0 LED Segment G (0=on)
HEX1[0]	E1	V20	-	17	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment A (0=on)
HEX1[1]	H6	V21	-	18	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment B (0=on)

Pin Name	DE1	DE2	UP3	UP2, UP1	Pin Type	Function of Pin
HEX1[2]	H5	W21	-	19	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment C (0=on)
HEX1[3]	H4	Y22	-	20	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment D (0=on)
HEX1[4]	G3	AA24	-	21	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment E (0=on)
HEX1[5]	D2	AA23	-	23	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment F (0=on)
HEX1[6]	D1	AB24	-	24	Output	Seven Segment Display 1 LED Segment G (0=on)
LCD_E	-	K3	50	-	Output	LCD Enable line
LCD_RW	-	K4	73	-	Output	LCD R/W control line
LCD_RS	-	K1	108	-	Output	LCD Register Select Line
LCD_DATA[0]	-	J1	94	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[1]	-	J2	96(133)	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[2]	-	H1	98	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[3]	-	H2	100	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[4]	-	J4	102 (108)	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[5]	-	J3	104	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[6]	-	H4	106	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
LCD_DATA[7]	-	H3	113	-	Bidir.	LCD Data Bus
PS2_CLK	H15	D26	12	30	Bidir.	PS2 Connector
PS2_DATA	J14	C24	13	31	Bidir.	PS2 Connector
CLOCK	L1	N2	153 48Mhz	91 25Mhz	Input	50MHz Crystal Controlled Clock
VGA_RED	B7	E10	228	236	Output	VGA Red Video Signal (highest bit)
VGA_GREEN	A8	D12	122	237	Output	VGA Green Video Signal (highest bit)
VGA_BLUE	B10	B12	170	238	Output	VGA Blue Video Signal (highest bit)
VGA_VSYNC	B11	D8	226	239	Output	VGA Connector Vertical Sync Signal
VGA_HSYNC	A11	A7	227	240	Output	VGA Connector Horizontal Sync Signal

The pushbuttons are not debounced on the UP3 and it's clock frequency depends on the board's JP3 jumper settings. Set JP3 to short pins 3-4 for the 48Mhz clock. UP3 pins enclosed in parenthesis in table 2.4 are for the larger FPGA used in the 1C12 version of the UP3 board. It requires more power and ground pins so there are some minor pin differences. On the UP2 board, the two pushbuttons are not debounced, the LEDs are the seven segment decimal points, and its clock is 25Mhz. The original UP1 boards look very similar to a UP2 and they use the same pin assignments as the UP2, but they contain a smaller EPF10K20RC240 FPGA. Consult each board's user manual for additional pin assignments not shown.

Appendix D: ASCII Character Code

Table D.1 ASCII Character to Hexadecimal Conversion Table.

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	NUL	SOH	STX	ETX	EOT	ENQ	ACK	BEL	BS	HT	LF	VT	FF	CR	SO	SI
1	DLE	DC1	DC2	DC3	DC4	NAK	SYN	ETB	CAN	EM	SUB	ESC	FS	GS	RS	US
2	SP	!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	()	*	+	,	-	.	/
3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
4	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
5	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[\]	^	
6	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
7	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	DEL

The American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) is a standard seven-bit code for computer equipment adopted in 1968. In Table D.1, locate “A”. It is in row 4 in column 1 and the hexadecimal value for “A” is therefore 41. The UP3’s LCD and most RS-232C serial devices and printers use the ASCII character code. The eighth bit may be used for parity. Codes below 0x20 are called control codes. Control codes perform operations other than printing a character. Several of the most common control codes are described below:

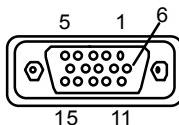
- NUL (null) – all zeros, sometimes used for end of strings.
- BEL (bell) - Causes a beep in terminals and terminal emulation programs.
- BS (backspace) - Moves the cursor move backwards (left) one space.
- HT (horizontal tab) - Moves the cursor right to the next tab stop. The spacing of tab stops is dependent on the output device, but is often 8 or 10.
- LF (line feed) - Moves the cursor down to a new line, but not to the left.
- VT (vertical tab)
- FF (form feed) - Advances paper to the top of the next page on printers.
- CR (carriage return) - Moves the cursor all the way to the left, but does not advance to the next line. For a new line, both CR and LF are used.
- ESC (escape) – Sometimes used to terminate program commands
- SP (space) prints a blank space and cursor moves to the next character position.

Note that the decimal digit characters “0” to “9” range in value from 0x30 to 0x39. The code is setup so that “A”<“B”<“C”... so that numeric values can be used for alphabetical ordering. A single bit in the code changes the case of a character (i.e. see “A” and “a”). Extended ASCII codes use an eight bit code to display another 128 special graphics characters. There are several different standards for these new graphics characters, so check the device manual for details. The first 128 characters are the same as the 7-bit original ASCII code standard.

Appendix E: Common I/O Connector Pin Assignments

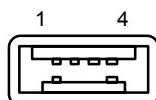
Several of the more commonly used I/O connector pin assignments are shown in this appendix. These are handy if you need to make a custom cable, attach a custom device, or attach a test instrument to probe signals. The view is from the I/O connector pin side of the connector and not board side where the individual wires attach. The DE1 & 2 boards do not have a parallel printer connector, it is included here since it is found on the UP3 and is very commonly found on other devices. Most signals use the standard 5V digital logic levels. Recall that the COM serial port signals use special RS-232 voltage levels that can be as high as +12V and as low as -12V. The VGA red, green, and blue video color signals are low voltage analog signals. Signal pairs that end in “+” or “-” operate in differential mode (i.e., the signal is the voltage difference between the two signal pairs). On many connectors, small pin numbers can be found molded into the plastic case surrounding each pin. If only one mark is found on a connector or a color stripe on a ribbon cable going to a connector, it is typically pin 1.

VGA – 15-pin D-sub Connector



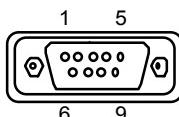
Pin #	Signal Name	Pin #	Signal Name	Pin #	Signal Name
1	Red	6	GND	11	NC
2	Green	7	GND	12	Vcc
3	Blue	8	GND	13	HSYNC
4	NC	9	NC	14	VSYNC
5	GND	10	GND	15	Vcc

USB - For connection to external USB



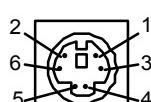
Pin #	Signal Name	Pin #	Signal Name	Pin #	Signal Name
1	Vcc	3	USB+	5	NC
2	USB-	4	GND	6	NC

COM – 9-pin D-sub Connector



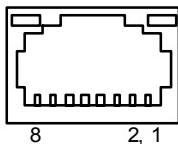
Pin #	Signal Name	Pin #	Signal Name	Pin #	Signal Name
1	DCD	4	DTR	7	RTS
2	RXD	5	GND	8	CTS
3	TXD	6	DSR	9	RI

PS/2 - Keyboard and Mouse – 6-pin Mini-Din



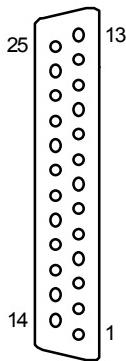
Pin #	Signal Name	Pin #	Signal Name	Pin #	Signal Name
1	KB CLK	3	GND	5	-
2	-	4	KB DATA	6	5V

Ethernet - RJ-45 Connector



Pin #	Signal Name	Pin #	Signal Name	Pin #	Signal Name
1	FTXD+	4	NC	7	NC
2	FTXD-	5	NC	8	NC
3	FRXIN+	6	FRXIN-	9	-

Parallel Printer (LPT) - DB25 Pinout (DB25 Male Connector)



Pin #	Signal Name	Pin #	Signal Name	Pin #	Signal Name
1	Strobe	10	Acknowledge	19	Signal ground
2	Data bit 0	11	Busy	20	Signal ground
3	Data bit 1	12	Paper out	21	Signal ground
4	Data bit 2	13	Select	22	Signal ground
5	Data bit 3	14	Autofeed	23	Signal ground
6	Data bit 4	15	Error	24	Signal ground
7	Data bit 5	16	Reset	25	Signal ground
8	Data bit 6	17	Select (Dir)	--	-
9	Data bit 7	18	Signal ground	--	-

Glossary

Assignment & Configuration File (.acf): An ASCII file (with the extension .acf) used by the older MAX+PLUS tool to store information about probe, pin, location, chip, clique, logic option, timing, connected pin and device assignments, as well as configuration settings for the Compiler, Simulator, and Timing Analyzer for an entire project. The ACF stores information entered with menu commands in all MAX+PLUS II applications. You can also edit an ACF manually in a Text Editor window. This same information is now found in the *.q* files in Quartus II.

Active-high (Active-low) node: A node that is activated when it is assigned a value one (zero) or Vcc (Gnd).

AHDL: Acronym for Altera Hardware Description Language. Design entry language that supports Boolean equation, state machine, conditional, and decode logic. It also provides access to all Altera and user-defined macrofunctions.

Ancillary file: A file that is associated with a Quartus II project, but is not a design file in the project hierarchy tree.

Antifuse: Any of the programmable interconnect technologies forming electrical connection between two circuit points rather than making open connections.

Architecture: Describes the behavior, RTL or dataflow, and/ or structure of a VHDL entity. An architecture is created with an architecture body. A single entity can have more than one architecture. In some VHDL tools, configuration declarations are used to specify which architectures to use for each entity.

Array: A collection of one or more elements of the same type that are accessed using one or more indices depending on dimension of array. Array data types are declared with an array range and array element type.

ASIC: Acronym for Application-Specific Integrated Circuit. A circuit whose final photographic mask process is user design dependent.

ASM: Acronym for Algorithmic State Machine Chart. A flow-chart based method used to represent a state diagram.

Assert: A statement that checks whether a specified condition is true. If the condition is not true, a report is generated during simulation.

Assignment: In VHDL, assignment refers to the transfer of a value to a symbolic name or group, usually through a Boolean equation. The value on the right side of an assignment statement is assigned to the symbolic name or group on the left.

Asynchronous input: An input signal that is not synchronized to the device Clock.

Attribute: A special identifier used to return or specify information about a named entity. Predefined attributes are prefixed with the ‘ character.

Back annotation: Process of incorporating time delay values into a design netlist reflecting the interconnect capacitance obtained from a completed design. Also, in Altera’s case, the process of copying device and resource assignments made by the Compiler into the Assignment and Configuration File for a project. This process preserves the current fit in future compilations.

Block: A feature that allows partitioning of the design description within an architecture.

Buried node: A combinatorial or registered signal that does not drive an output pin.

Cell: A logic function. It may be a gate, a flip-flop, or some other structure. Usually, a cell is small compared to other circuit building blocks.

Cell library: The collective name for a set of logic functions defined by the manufacturer of an FPGA or ASIC. Simulation and synthesis tools use cell libraries when simulating and synthesizing a model.

CLB: Acronym for Configurable Logic Block. This element is the basic building block of the Xilinx FPGA product family.

Clock: A signal that triggers registers. In a flip-flop or state machine, the clock is an edge-sensitive signal. In edge-triggered flip-flops, the output of the flip-flop can change only on the clock edge.

Clock enable: The level-sensitive signal on a flip-flop with E suffix, e.g., DFFE. When the Clock enable is low, clock transitions on the clock input of the flip-flop are ignored.

Compiler Netlist File (.cnf): A binary file (with the extension .cnf) that contains the data from a design file. The CNF is created by the Compiler Netlist Extractor module of the MAX+PLUS II Compiler.

Component: Specifies the port of a primitive or macrofunction in VHDL. A component consists of the name of the primitive or macrofunction, and a list of its inputs and outputs. Components are specified in the Component declaration.

Component instantiation: A concurrent statement that references a declared component and creates one unique instance of that component.

Configuration EPROM: A serial EPROM designed to configure (program) a FPGA.

Concurrent statements: HDL statements that are executed in parallel.

Configuration: It maps instances of VHDL components to design entities and describes how design entities are combined to form a complete design. Configuration declarations are used to specify which architectures to use for each entity.

Configuration scheme: The method used to load configuration (programming) data into an FPGA.

Constant: An object that has a constant value and cannot be changed.

Control unit: The hardware of a machine that controls the data path.

Cyclone: The FPGA family used on the UP3 boards.

CPLD: Acronym for complex programmable logic device. CPLDs include an array of functionally complete or universal logic cells with an interconnection network.

Data Path: The hardware path that provides data processing and transfer of information in a machine, as opposed to the controller.

Design entity: A file that contains description of the logic for a project and is compiled by the Compiler.

Design library: Stores VHDL units that have already been compiled. These units can be referenced in VHDL designs.

Design unit: A section of VHDL description that can be compiled separately. Each design unit must have a unique name within the project.

Dual-purpose pins: Pins used to configure an FPGA device that can be used as I/O pins after initialization.

Dynamic reconfigurability: Capability of an FPGA to change its function "on-the-fly"

Embedded Array Block (EAB): A physically grouped set of 8 embedded cells that implement memory (RAM or ROM) or combinatorial logic in a Cyclone 10K device. A single EAB can implement a memory block of 256 x 8, 512 x 4, 1,024 x 2, or 2,048 x 1 bits.

EPLD: Acronym for EPROM programmable logic devices. This is a PLD that uses EPROM cells to internally configure the logic function. Also, erasable programmable logic device.

Event: The change of value of a signal. Usually refers to simulation.

Event scheduling: The process of scheduling of signal values to occur at some simulated time.

Excitation function: A Boolean function that specifies logic that directs state transitions in a state machine.

Exit condition: An expression that specifies a condition under which a loop should be terminated.

FLEX 10K and FLEX 10KA: An Altera device family based on Flexible Logic Element MatriX architecture. This SRAM-based family offers high-performance, register-intensive, high-gate-count devices with embedded arrays. The Cyclone 10K device family includes the EPF10K100, EPF10K70, EPF10K50, EPF10K40, EPF10K30, EPF10K20, and EPF10K10 devices. The FPGA used on the UP2 board.

Fan-out: The number of output signals that can be driven by the output of a logic cell.

Fast Track interconnect: Dedicated connection paths that span the entire width and height of a Cyclone device. These connection paths allow the signals to travel between all LABs in device.

Field name: An identifier that provides access to one element of a record data type.

File type: A data type used to represent an arbitrary-length sequence of values of a given type.

For loop: A VHDL loop construct in which an iteration scheme is a for statement.

Finite state machine: The model of a sequential circuit that cycles through a predefined sequence of states.

Fitting: Process of making a design fit into a specific FPGA architecture. Fitting involves technology mapping, placement, optimization, and partitioning among other operations.

Flash: A non-volatile memory technology that also can be programmed in-circuit.

Flip-flop: An edge-sensitive memory device (cell) that stores a single bit of data.

Floorplan: Physical arrangement of functions within a connection framework of signal routing channels.

FPGA: Acronym for field programmable gate array. A regular array of logic cells that is either functionally complete or universal with an interconnection network of signal routing channels.

FPLD: Acronym for field programmable logic device. An integrated circuit used for implementing digital hardware that allows the end user to configure the chip to realize different designs. Configuring such a device is done using either a special programming unit or by doing it "in system". FLPDs include both CPLDs and FPGAs.

Functional simulation: A simulation mode that simulates the logical performance of a project without timing information.

Functional test vector: The input stimulus used during simulation to verify a VHDL model operates functionally as intended.

Functionally complete: Property of some Boolean logic functions permitting them to make any logic function by using only that function. The properties include making the AND function with an invert or the OR function with an invert or the OR function with an invert.

Fuse: A metallic interconnect point that can be electrically changed from short circuit to an open circuit by applying electrical current.

Gate: An electronic structure, built from transistors that performs a basic logic function.

Gate array: Array of transistors interconnected to form gates. The gates in turn are configured to form larger functions.

Gated clock: A clock configuration in which the output of an AND or OR gate drives a clock.

Generic: A parameter passed to a VHDL entity, component or block that describes additional, instance-specific information about that entity, component or block.

Glitch or spike: A narrow output pulse that occurs when a logic level changes two or more times over a short period.

Global signal: A signal from a dedicated input pin that does not pass through the logic array before performing its specified function. Clock, Preset, Clear, and Output Enable signals can be global signals.

GND: A Low-level input voltage. It is the default inactive node value.

Graphic Design File (.gdf): A schematic design file (with the extension .gdf) created with the MAX+PLUS II Graphic Editor.

HDL: Acronym for Hardware Description Language. A special language used to describe digital hardware.

Hexadecimal: The base 16 number system (radix). Hexadecimal digits are 0 through 9 and A through F.

Hierarchy: The structure of a design description, expressed as a tree of related components.

Identifier: A sequence of characters that uniquely identify a named entity in a design description.

Index: A scalar value that specifies an element or range of elements within an array.

Input vectors: Time-ordered binary numbers representing input values sequences to a simulation program.

I/O cell register: A register on the periphery of a Cyclone 8000 device or a fast input-type logic cell that is associated with an I/O pin.

IP core: An intellectual property (IP) core is a previously developed synthesizable hardware design that provides a widely used function. Commercially licensed IP cores include functions such as microprocessors, microcontrollers, bus interfaces, multimedia and DSP operations, and communications controllers.

LAB: Acronym for Logic Array Block. The LAB is the basic building block of the Altera MAX family. Each LAB contains at least one macrocell, an I/O block, and an expander product term array.

Latch: A level-sensitive clocked memory device (cell) that stores a single bit of data. A High to low transition on the Latch Enable signal fixes the contents of the latch at the value of the data input until the next Low-to-High transition on Latch Enable.

Latch enable: A level-sensitive signal that controls a latch. When it is High, the input flows through the output; when it is Low, the output holds its last value.

Library: In VHDL a library statement is used to store analyzed design units.

Literal: A value that can be applied to an object to some type.

Logic Synthesizer: The Compiler module that uses several algorithms to minimize gate count, remove redundant logic, and utilize the device architecture as efficiently as possible. Processing can be customized with logic options and logic synthesis style assignments. This module also applies logic synthesis techniques to help implement timing requirements for a project.

Least Significant Bit (LSB): The bit of a binary number that contributes the smallest quantity to the value of that number, i.e., the last member in a bus or group name. For example, the LSB for a bus or group named $a[31..0]$ is $a[0]$ (or a_0).

Logic Cell (LC): The generic term for a basic building block of an Altera device. In MAX devices, a logic cell (also called a macrocell) consists of two parts: combinatorial logic and a configurable register. The combinatorial logic allows a wide variety of logic functions. In Cyclone and FLEX devices, a logic cell (also called a logic element) consists of a look-up table (LUT) and a programmable register to support sequential functions.

Logic element: A basic building block of an Altera Cyclone device. It consists of a look-up table i.e., a function generator that quickly computes any function of four variables, and a programmable flip-flop to support sequential functions.

LPM: Acronym for library of Parameterized Modules. Denotes Altera's library of design units that contain one or more changeable parts, and parameters that are used to customize a design unit as the application requires.

Macro: When used with FPGAs, a logic cell configuration that can be repeated as needed. It can be a Hard or a Soft macro. Hard macros force predefined place and route rules between logic cells.

Macrocell: In FPGAs, a portion of the FPGA that is smallest indivisible building block. In MAX devices it consists of two parts: combinatorial logic and a configurable register.

MAX: Acronym for Multiple Array Matrix, which is an Altera product family. It is usually considered to be a CPLD.

MAX+PLUS II: Acronym for multiple array matrix programmable logic user system II. An older set of computer aided design (CAD) tools that allow design and implementation of custom logic circuits with Altera's MAX and Flex FPGA devices.

Memory Initialization File (.mif): An ASCII file (with the extension .mif) used by Quartus II to specify the initial content of a memory block (RAM or ROM), i.e., the initial data values for each memory address. This file is used during project compilation and/or simulation.

Mealy state machine: A type of state machine in which the outputs are a function of the inputs and the current state.

Microblaze: A soft core RISC processor supported on Xilinx FPGAs.

Moore state machine: A state machine in which the present state depends only on its previous input and previous state, and the present output depends only on the present state. In general Moore states machines have more states than a Mealy machine.

Most Significant Bit (MSB): The bit of a binary number that contributes the greatest quantity to the value of that number, and the first member in a bus or group name. For example, the MSB for a bus named $a[31..0]$ is $a[31]$.

Mode: A direction of signal (either in, out, inout or buffer) used as subprogram parameter or port.

Model: A representation that behaves similarly to the operation of some digital circuit.

MPLD: Acronym for Mask Programmed Logic Device.

Netlist: A text file that describes a logic design. Minimal requirements are identification of function elements, inputs, outputs, and connections.

Netlist synthesis: Process of deriving a netlist from an abstract representation, usually from a hardware description language.

Nios: A soft core RISC processor supported on Altera FPGAs.

NRE: Acronym for Non-Recurring Engineering expense. It refers to one-time charge covering the use of design facilities, masks and overhead for test development of ASICs.

Object: A named entity of a specific type that can be assigned a value. Object in VHDL include signals, constants, variables and files.

Octal: The base 8 number system (radix). Octal digits are 0 through 7.

One Hot Encoding: A design technique used more with FPGAs than CPLDs. Only one flip-flop output is active at any time. One flip-flop per state is used. State outputs do not need to be decoded and they are hazard free.

Package: A collection of commonly used VHDL constructs that can be shared by more than one design unit.

PAL: Acronym for programmable array logic. A relatively small FPLD containing a programmable AND plane followed by a fixed-OR plane.

Parameter: An object or literal passed into a subprogram via that subprogram's parameter list.

Partitioning: Setting boundaries between subsections of a system or between multiple FPGA devices.

Physical types: A data type used to represent measurements.

Pin Number: A number used to assign an input or output signal in a design file, which corresponds to the pin number on an actual device.

PLA: (programmable logic array) a relatively small FPLD that contains two levels of programmable logic—an AND plane and an OR plane.

PLL: (phase locked loop) a device that can be used to multiply and divide clock signals and adjust the phase delay.

Placement: Physical assignment of a logical function to a specific location within an FPGA. Once the logic function is placed, its interconnection is made by routing.

PLD: Acronym for programmable logic device. This class of devices is comprised of PALs, PLAs, FPGAs, and CPLDs.

Port: A symbolic name that represents an input or output of a primitive or of a macrofunction design file.

Primitive: One of the basic functional blocks used to design circuits with Quartus II software. Primitives include buffers, flip-flops, latch, logical operators, ports, etc.

Process: A basic VHDL concurrent statement represented by a collection of sequential statements that are executed whenever there is an event on any signal that appears in the process sensitivity list, or whenever an event occurs that satisfies condition of a wait statement within the process.

Product Term: Two or more factors in a Boolean expression combined with an AND operator constitute a product term, where "product" means "logic product."

Programmable switch: A user programmable switch that can connect a logic element or input/output element to an interconnect wire or one interconnect wire to another.

Project: A project consists of all files that are associated with a particular design, including all subdesign files and ancillary files created by the user or by Quartus II software. The project name is the same as the name of the top-level design file without an extension.

Propagation delay: The time required for any signal transition to travel between pins and/or nodes in a device.

Radix: A number base. Group logic level and numerical values are entered and displayed in binary, decimal, hexadecimal, or octal radix in Quartus II.

Reset: An active-high input signal that asynchronously resets the output of a register to a logic Low (0) or a state machine to its initial state, regardless of other inputs.

Range: A subset of the possible values of a scalar type.

Register: A memory device that contains several latches or flip-flops that are clocked from the same clock signal.

Resource: A resource is a portion of a device that performs a specific, user-defined task (e.g., pins, logic cells, interconnection network).

Retargetting: A process of translating a design from one FPGA or other technology to another. Retargetting involves technology-mapping optimization.

Reset: An active-high input signal that asynchronously resets the output of a register to a logic Low (0) or a state machine to its initial state, regardless of other inputs.

Ripple Clock: A clocking scheme in which the Q output of one flip-flop drives the Clock input to another flip-flop. Ripple clocks can cause timing problems in complex designs.

RTL: Acronym for Register Transfer Level. The model of circuit described in VHDL that infers memory devices to store results of processing or data transfers. Sometimes it is referred to as a dataflow-style model.

Scalar: A data type that has a distinct order of its values, allowing two objects or literals of that type to be compared using relational operators.

Semicustom: General category of integrated circuits that can be configured directly by the user of an IC. It includes gate arrays and FPGA devices.

Signal: In VHDL a data object that has a current value and scheduled future values at simulation times. In RTL models signals denote direct hardware connections.

Simulation: Process of modeling a logical design and its stimuli in which the simulator calculates output signal values.

Slew rate: Time rate of change of voltage. Some FPGAs permit a fast or slow slew rate to be programmed for an output pin.

Slice: A one-dimensional, contiguous array created as a result of constraining a larger one-dimensional array.

SOPC: Acronym for System On-a Programmable Chip. SOPC systems contain a hard or soft core processor in the FPGA in addition to other user logic.

Speed performance: The maximum speed of a circuit implemented in an FPGA. It is set by the longest delay through any for combinational circuits, and by maximum clock frequency at which the circuit operates properly for sequential circuits.

State transition diagram: A graphical representation of the operation of a finite state machine using directed graphs.

State: A state is implemented in a device as a pattern of 1's and 0's (bits) that are the outputs of multiple flip-flops (collectively called a state machine state register).

Structural-type architecture: The level at which VHDL describes a circuit as an arrangement of interconnected components.

Subprogram: A function or procedure. It can be declared globally or locally.

Sum-of-products: A Boolean expression is said to be in sum-of-products form if it consists of product terms combined with the OR operator.

Synthesis: The process of converting the model of a design described in VHDL from one level of abstraction to another, lower and more detailed level that can be implemented in hardware.

Test bench: A VHDL model used to verify the correct behavior of another VHDL model, commonly known as the unit under test.

Tri-state Buffer: A buffer with an input, output, and controlling Output Enable signal. If the Output Enable input is High, the output signal equals the input. If the Output Enable input is Low, the output signal is in a state of high impedance. Tri-state outputs can be tied together but only one should ever be enabled at any given time.

Timing Simulation: A simulation that includes the actual device delay times.

Two's Complement: A system of representing binary numbers in which the negative of a number is equal to its logic inverse plus 1. In VHDL, you must declare a two's complement binary number with a signed data type or use the signed library.

Type: A declared name and its corresponding set of declared values representing the possible values of the type.

Type declaration: A VHDL declaration statement that creates a new data type. A type declaration must include a type name and a description of the entire set of possible values for that type.

Universal logic cell: A logic cell capable of forming any combinational logic function of the number of inputs to the cell. RAM, ROM and multiplexers have been used to form universal logic cells. Sometimes they are also called look-up tables or function generators.

Usable gates: Term used to denote the fact that not all gates on an FPGA may be accessible and used for application purposes.

Variable: In VHDL, a data object that has only current value that can be changed in variable assignment statement.

Verilog: An HDL with features similar to VHDL with a syntax reminiscent of C.

VCC: A high-level input voltage represented as a High (1) logic level in binary group values.

VHDL: Acronym for VHSIC (Very High Speed Integrated Circuits) Hardware Description Language. VHDL is used to describe function, interconnect and modeling.

VITAL: Acronym for VHDL Initiative Toward ASIC Libraries. An industry-standard format for VHDL simulation libraries.

Index

A

Altera Cyclone Architecture, 62
Embedded memory blocks, 62
Input output elements (IOEs), 64
logic array block (LAB), 64
Logic elements, 62
PLLs, 62
Altera FLEX 10K70 CPLD, 60
Altera MAX 7000S Architecture, 60
ALTSYNCRAM, 122, 142
antifuse, 70
application specific integrated circuits (ASICs), 56
arithmetic logic unit (ALU), 117, 138
ASCII, 396

C

case statement, 109, 132
cathode ray tube (CRT), 192
clock edge, 112, 135
clocking in VHDL, 112, 135
color in video display, 192
complex programmable logic devices (CPLDs), 56
component, 124
computer aided design (CAD) tools, 67, 68
concurrent assignment statement, 109
conv_integer, 107
conv_std_logic_vector, 107

D

DE 1, 2, 46
Cyclone II device, 47
downloading, 19
other devices, 48
DE 2, 2, 46
Cyclone II device, 47
downloading, 22
other devices, 48
digital oscilloscope, 81
dithering, 207
DVD Instructions, 411

E

eCOS, 377
electric train
direction, 149
example controller, 151
I/O summary, 151
sensors, 150

simulation, 161
switches, 150
video output, 162
electrically erasable programmable read only memory (EEPROM), 60

F

field programmable gate arrays (FPGAs), 56
field programmable logic devices (FPLDs)
applications, 69
floating point hardware, 119, 140
for loop, 296

G

gate arrays, 56
global clock buffer lines, 59, 64

H

Hard Real-Time, 376
hardware emulator, 69
H-bridge, 271

I

I²C Bus Interface, 237
if statement, 111, 134

K

keyboard. *See* PS/2 keyboard

L

logic element (LE), 59
look-up table (LUT), 62
LPM_DIV, 118, 139
LPM_MULT, 118, 139
LPM_RAM_DQ, 122, 142
LPM_ROM, 201

M

macrocell, 60
metastability, 59
MicroBlaze, 310
MicroC/OS-II, 378
MIPS, 284
control, 291

decode, 296
 dmemory, 300
 execute, 298
 execution on UP 1, 302
 hardware implementation, 285
 ifetch, 293
 instruction formats, 284
 instructions, 285
 pipelined implementation, 286
 simulation, 301
 top_spim, 288
 VHDL synthesis model, 287
 MMU, 374
 mouse. *See* PS/2 mouse
 multiply and divide hardware, 118, 139

N

Nios, 310
 Nios Hardware, 352
 Nios II Command Shell, 382
 Nios II IDE Software, 324
 Nios II OS Support, 376
 Nios II Processor, 355
 Flash, 364
 Interval Timer, 359
 JTAG UART, 358
 LCD, 362, 363
 Parallel I/O, 360
 pin assignments, 353
 SDRAM, 362
 SDRAM PLL, 367
 SRAM, 361
 UART, 358
 Nios II Software
 Flash, 340
 Handling Interrupts, 334
 LCD Display, 336
 Parallel I/O, 335
 Peripherals, 326
 SRAM, 339
 timer, 327
 Nios II System Library, 325
 Nios Software, 322

O

open collector, 253
 open drain, 253
 Operating System, 374

P

Parallel I/O Interface, 232
 pin grid array package (PGA), 60
 pixels, 192

plastic J-lead chip carrier (PLCC), 60
 plastic quad flat pack (PQFP), 60
 port map, 125
 process, 109
 process sensitivity list, 109, 112, 135
 processor fetch, decode and execute cycle, 172
 programmable array logic (PALs), 57
 programmable interconnect array (PIA), 61
 programmable logic, 56
 programmable logic arrays (PLAs), 57
 programmable logic devices, (PLDs), 57
 PS/2 keyboard, 214
 communications protocol, 216
 connections, 214
 make and break codes, 215
 scan codes, 215
 VHDL example, 221
 PS/2 mouse, 224
 commands and messages, 224
 data packet format, 225
 data packet processing, 227
 example design, 228
 initialization, 226

Q

Quartus II
 assigning a device, 10
 assigning pins, 13
 buses, 78
 compilation, 16
 connecting signal lines, 14
 entering pin names, 14
 errors and warnings, 16
 file extensions, 393
 floorplan editor, 39
 graphic editor, 9
 hierarchy, 76
 Quartus settings file (*.qsf), 15, 32, 36
 report file (*.rpt), 16
 schematic capture. *See* graphic editor
 simulation, 17
 simulation test vectors or stimulus, 17
 simulator vector file (*.vec), 161
 symbol editor, 40
 symbol entry, 12
 timing analysis, 38, 79
 tutorial, 2, 74
 waveform editor file (*.scf), 17

R

radio-controlled (R/C) car, 267
 Real-Time System, 376
 reconfigurable computing, 69
 reduced instruction set computer (RISC), 284
 refresh. *See* VGA video display refresh

robot, 242
assembly, 259
battery, 264
battery charger, 265
communication, 249
electronic compass, 255
GPS and DGPS receivers, 257
gyros and accelerometers, 255
infrared proximity detector, 247
IR ranging, 251
line tracker sensor, 247
magnetic compass, 254, 258
modifying servos, 243
parts list, 263
sensors, 246
servo drive motors, 242
solid state cameras, 258
sonar, 251
thermal image sensors, 257
VHDL servo driver, 244
wheel encoder, 250
RS-232C Serial I/O Interface, 233
RTOS, 376
run length encoding (RLE), 207

S

Schematic View Tool, 33
seven segment decoder, 109, 132
shift operation in VHDL, 118
Soft Real-Time, 376
SOPC, 310
SOPC Builder, 353
SPI Bus Interface, 235
SR latch, 81
standard cells, 56
State Diagram View Tool, 160

T

testbench, 125
to_stdlogicvector, 107
train. *See* electric train
tri-state, 61, 112, 134, 253, 406

U

UART, 233
uC/OS-II, 378
uClinix, 379
Commands, 385
Network Support, 387
PS/2 Support, 386
USB Support, 387
Video Support, 386
unit under test (UUT), 125

UP 1, 2, 46
downloading, 27
FLEX device, 47
other devices, 48
UP 2, 2, 46
attaching power, 27
downloading, 27
FLEX device, 47
other devices, 48
UP 3, 2, 7, 46
attaching power, 19, 22, 25
Cyclone device, 47
downloading, 25
FPGA I/O pins, 51, 266
LEDs, 7
longer cable, 53
other devices, 48
Pin Assignments, 394
power supplies, 53
pushbutton contact bounce, 81
pushbuttons, 7
UP1core library
dec_7seg, 92
UP3 computer, 170
fetch, decode, and execute, 172
instructions, 171
VHDL model, 179, 182
UP3-bot. *See* robot
UP3core, 88
UP3core library, 88
char_ROM, 99
clk_div, 82, 96
debounce, 81, 94
dec_7seg, 90
installation, 74
keyboard, 100, 221
mouse, 102, 226
onepulse, 95
tutorial, 75
vga_sync, 97, 196

V

Verilog
always statement, 132
compilation, 36
continuous assignment statement, 35
data types, 130
errors and warnings, 37
hierarchy in models, 143
inferred latches, 136
operators, 131
reg type, 130
shift operations, 131
structural model, 143
synthesis of a counter, 136
synthesis of a multiplexer, 133

- synthesis of a state machine, 137
 synthesis of a tri-state output, 134
 synthesis of an adder, 138
 synthesis of an ALU, 138
 synthesis of an incrementer, 136
 synthesis of an subtractor, 138
 synthesis of digital hardware, 130
 synthesis of flip-flops and registers, 135
 synthesis of gate networks, 132
 synthesis of memory, 140
 synthesis of multiply and divide hardware, 139
 synthesis of seven segment decoder, 132
 tutorial, 34
 wire statement, 132
 wire types, 130
 VGA video display, 192
 bouncing ball example, 208
 character based, 200
 character font ROM, 203, 210
 color mixing using dithering, 207
 data compression, 207
 generation using an FPGA, 195
 graphics display, 206
 horizontal sync, 192
 pin assignments, 198
 refresh, 192
 RGB signals, 192
 using a final output register, 198
 vertical sync, 192
 video examples, 199
- VHDL**
 Architecture body, 31
 compilation, 32
 conversion of data types, 108
 data types, 106
 editor syntax coloring, 30, 34
 Entity, 30, 34
 errors and warnings, 33
 hierarchy in models, 123
- inferred latches, 114
 libraries, 106, 114
 operators, 107
 shift operations, 107
 standard logic (STD_LOGIC), 106
 structural model, 123
 synthesis of a counter, 114
 synthesis of a multiplexer, 111
 synthesis of a state machine, 115
 synthesis of a tri-state output, 112
 synthesis of an adder, 117
 synthesis of an ALU, 117
 synthesis of an incrementer, 114
 synthesis of an subtractor, 117
 synthesis of digital hardware, 108
 synthesis of flip-flops and registers, 112
 synthesis of gate networks, 108
 synthesis of memory, 119
 synthesis of multiply and divide hardware, 118
 synthesis of seven segment decoder, 109
 train state machine, 154, 157
 tutorial, 29
 using templates for entry, 30, 34
 video display. *See* VGA video display
 virtual memory, 374
- W**
- wait statement, 113
 wired-AND, 253
 with statement, 111
- X**
- Xilinx 4000 Architecture, 65
 configurable logic block (CLB), 65
 Input output blocks (IOBs), 67
 Xilinx Virtex, 70

About the Accompanying DVD

Rapid Prototyping of Digital Systems SOPC Edition, includes a DVD that contains Altera's QUARTUS II 7.1 SP1 Web Edition, Nios II IDE, SOPC Builder, University IP cores, and source code for all of the text's example VHDL, Verilog, Nios II SOPC reference designs, and Nios C/C++ example programs.

QUARTUS® II Software

The free Quartus® II 7.1 SP1 and Nios II Web Edition software includes everything you need to design for Altera's low-cost FPGA and CPLD families. Features include:

- Schematic- and text-based design entry
- Integrated VHDL and Verilog HDL logic synthesis and simulation
- SOPC Builder system generation software for the Nios II Processor
- C/C++ Compiler and debugger for Nios II Processor systems
- Place-and-route, verification, and FPGA programming functions
- Timing Optimization Advisor
- Resource Optimization Advisor

Installing the QUARTUS® II and Nios II Software

Insert the textbook's DVD in your DVD drive. Browse the file, **index.html**, on the DVD using a web browser for complete step by step instructions. Click on the link to the book's website at the end of the index.html file to check for new software updates and any errata.

Source Code for Design Examples from the Book

Browse the file, **index.html**, on the DVD using a web browser for complete step by step instructions. Design examples from the book for each *board* type are located in subdirectories \booksoft_fe\board\chapx, where x is the chapter number. To use the design files, copy them to the hard disk drive to your project directory or a subdirectory. In addition to *.bdf, *.vhd, *.v, and *.mif design files, be sure to copy any *.qpf, *.qsf, or *.qws files for each Quartus project. If you want to download a demo file, be sure to copy the *.sof device programming file. For Nios projects copy the entire project directory including subdirectories. The FPGACore library files are in \chap5. – See Section 1.1 if you need to identify your FPGA board type.

In some older versions of Windows prior to XP, DVD files that are copied to the hard drive may have the read only attribute set. If this is the case, after copying the design files you will need to clear the read only attribute on the hard disk copy of the files to be able to use them with the Altera tools. Using Windows Explorer, **select the files** and then use **FILE => PROPERTY** to **clear the read only attribute**. Control A can be used to select all of the files in a directory in Explorer. Failure to reset the read only attribute will cause file errors when running the Altera tools.

Springer Science+Business Media, LLC or the author(s) make no warranty or representation, either express or implied, with respect to this DVD or book, including their quality, merchantability, or fitness for a particular purpose. In no event will Springer Science+Business Media, LLC or the author(s) be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages arising out of the use or inability to use the disc or book, even if Springer Science+Business Media, LLC or the author(s) has been advised of the possibility of such damages.